No. 245

TITLE.

German Grammar

SCHOOL DISTRICT.

Norwalk

School.

This book is the property [illegible] the School District and parents of pupils using [illegible] will be held responsible for its loss or injury.

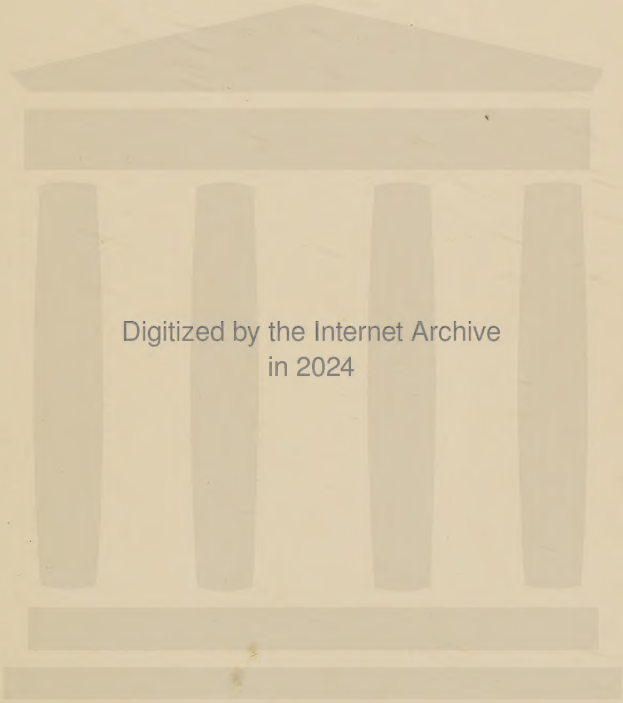
ADJUSTABLE SANITARY BOOK [illegible]VER.

NO PASTE REQUIRED.

CUMMINGS & JORDAN,
PATENTEES AND MANUFACTURERS.
OLYPHANT, PENN'A.

E

E



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2024

https://archive.org/details/practicalgermang0000calv_d8g5

THE LIFE AND WORKS OF SCHILLER

By Prof. CALVIN THOMAS. With six photogravure illustrations 481 pp Large 12mo. Gilt top. $3.25 *net* (postage 21c.).

"An eminently sympathetic study, which will commend itself to the general reader for its avoidance of the minor pedantries into which writers on German subjects—not excluding Carlyle—are prone to fall. Particularly interesting is Professor Thomas's discussion of the philosophy of Schiller."

—*N Y. Evening Post.*

GERMAN READER AND THEME BOOK

By CALVIN THOMAS and W. A. HERVEY. 438 pp. 12mo. $1.00 *net.*

A short and very easy reader, with composition exercises based on the text.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

To accompany THOMAS'S PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR. (Based in Part on the Reading Lessons and Colloquies) By W. A. HERVEY, *Instructor in Columbia University.* With vocabulary. 124 + 54 pp. 12mo. 20c. *net.*

HENRY HOLT & CO., PUBLISHERS

NEW YORK CHICAGO

A

PRACTICAL

GERMAN GRAMMAR

BY

CALVIN THOMAS

Professor of Germanic Languages and Literatures in Columbia University

NEW YORK

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

Copyright, 1895, 1898, 1902,
BY
HENRY HOLT & CO.

PREFACE.

This book is divided, on purely pedagogical grounds, into two parts. Part I is designed as a beginner's manual, and embodies those ideas of method which commend themselves to the author after some fifteen years of constant attention to the subject. I am of the opinion that learners who have passed the age of childhood should have grammar-lessons from the first, or at least after a sufficient preliminary drill upon pronunciation. At the same time it has to be remembered that the object of study is the language, not the grammar. The latter is only the means to an end. The learner should accordingly begin at once to read, hear and use the language, letting the grammatical text-book save his time by systematizing his knowledge and showing him what to look for. This means that the beginner's grammar-lessons should deal only with matters that are of fundamental importance and should avoid all confusing details. And the knowledge gained should be applied at once in the reading, memorizing and repetition of appropriate exercises upon the language.

Part I of this work, therefore, aims to present the fundamental facts of the grammar without omitting anything necessary, or including anything unnecessary, to a bird's-eye view of the subject such as will fit the learner to begin reading easy prose. All minutiæ of grammatical scholar-

ship, word-lists that do not need to be learned; and syntactical principles that can best be studied in connection with the reading of literature, are postponed to Part II. The order of presentation is that usually followed in scientific grammars, it being my conviction that for students who have reached the high-school age, a systematic treatise has decided advantages over a lesson-book in which the matter is presented in arbitrary installments.

Great care has been bestowed upon the exercises, since it is here, as it seems to me, that the existing grammars fail to meet the present demand. What the learner of a living language most needs to develop is a sensitive and trustworthy *feeling* for the language. This is of more importance than anything else, whatever the object in view may be—whether speaking, writing, reading, or scholarship. From this it follows that he should occupy his mind and store his memory with nothing but natural forms of expression as they occur in use. Anything else is not German. He should be taught that the sentence, not the word, is the real unit of language, and that he must learn German by learning sentences such as Germans use. He should not waste his time upon mechanical Ollendorffian preparations, such as are never heard or seen outside the school-room, nor should he get the idea that he can make German of his own by piecing together words with the help of his grammar and dictionary. His task, and his ideal of progress, should be simply to reproduce, orally and in writing, what he hears and reads; first to reproduce it intelligently, with the aid of his grammar, and then to reproduce it frequently, until it becomes second nature. This means that for a long time his efforts at translating from English into German should be confined to easy variations upon a German original. I am fully persuaded that the disconnected, vacuous, often puerile, sentences with which the most of the school grammars require the beginner to concern himself, do more harm than good. They blight the sense

for idiom, lead to mechanical habits of translating, which are difficult to break up, and furnish nothing valuable for the memory to appropriate.

I have tried, therefore, to prepare a series of graduated exercises, containing nothing that is not at least decent every-day German, and to give them a small measure of connected human interest. The task was difficult on account of the necessary limitations of vocabulary and grammatical gradation. Not being to the manner born in German, I have submitted the exercises to various German friends, among whom I am under special obligations to Mr. Ernst Voss, Mr. E. H. Mensel and Mr. E. C. Roedder, of the University of Michigan. Remediable defects which may have escaped these gentlemen, as well as myself, I shall be glad to correct as they are pointed out to me. Mr. Mensel and Mr. Roedder have also read the proofs of Part II.

Part II is devoted to the less fundamental matters of grammatical scholarship, and is meant to be used for systematic study, and for reference, in connection with the reading of German authors. For reasons that are implied in what is said above, it contains no exercises. After the essentials of the grammar as set forth in Part I are thoroughly mastered, further progress will best be insured, for some time to come, by systematic grammar-lessons illustrated and enforced from day to day by thorough drill upon the text read. I am strongly of the opinion that this drill ought to be carried on chiefly, if not entirely, in the German language. The pupil's time is better spent in learning to express himself, under the guidance and stimulus of the teacher's questions, about that which he is reading, and which has for him a living interest, than in translating out-of-the-way indigestible sentences from English into German. The translation of connected English into German belongs to a later stage of study than that of which I now speak, and should presuppose a considerable time spent in reading.

In the preparation of Part II I have of course profited by the labors of preceding grammarians, among whom I owe special acknowledgments to Andresen, Blatz, Brandt, Heyse, von Jagemann, Krause, Sanders, Vernaleken, Whitney, Wunderlich and Wustmann. While the examples of Part I are from the language of every-day life, those of Part II are mainly from the classics. I have relied for them primarily upon my own reading and notes, and secondarily upon the Grimm Dictionary; but I have not scrupled to borrow a needed illustration from any of my predecessors. It may not be superfluous to remark that my work is not a historical nor a comparative grammar, but a grammar of late modern German. I have indulged but sparingly in historical commentary, and hardly at all in comparisons from other languages than English. I have, however, for pedagogical reasons that I trust will be generally approved, drawn attention from the first to the subject of cognates. Throughout my aim has been 'practical'; that is, I have purposed to make a serviceable working grammar for students and teachers, and have subordinated all other considerations to that purpose.

C. T.

University of Michigan,
June, 1895.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

ASIDE from the correction of misprints and other little oversights here and there, this third edition of my German Grammar differs from the second by the addition of a set of English-German exercises upon syntax, designed to accompany the presentation of the subject in Part Second, and also by the very considerable expansion of the final vocabularies. The new exercises have been supplied to meet the wishes of a large number of teachers who prefer to take up Part Second in a course of systematic lessons rather than to use it merely as a work of reference. The final vocabularies have been expanded so as to include not only the words contained in these new exercises to Part Second, but also those contained in a set of supplementary exercises to Part First, which have been prepared by Mr. W. A. Hervey, of Columbia University. It is hoped that these supplementary exercises, which follow the same general line as those in the Grammar, and which offer a variety of material ranging from the very easy to that which is not quite so easy, will make it possible, through judicious selection, to vary the work of classes from year to year.

C. T.

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY, June, 1901.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

PAGE

INTRODUCTORY 1

PRONUNCIATION 6
Vowels 7
Diphthongs 12
Consonants 14
Accentuation 20

THE PARTS OF SPEECH AND THEIR VARIATIONS 25

THE ARTICLE: DECLENSION 26
THE NOUN: DECLENSION 29
Strong Declension 31
Weak Declension 48
Mixed Declension 54
Declension of Proper Names 59
THE ADJECTIVE: DECLENSION AND COMPARISON 62
The Numerals 84
THE PRONOUN: DECLENSION 90
Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns 90
Possessive Pronouns 94
Demonstrative and Determinative Pronouns 102
Relative Pronouns 107
Interrogative Pronouns 112
Indefinite Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives 115
THE VERB: CONJUGATION 121
Weak Conjugation 130
Strong Conjugation 136
Modal Auxiliaries and wiſſen 148
Passive Voice 158
Reflexive Verbs 164
Impersonal Verbs 166
Compound Verbs 170
THE PARTICLES 179

PART SECOND.

PAGE

PRELIMINARY 185
THE ARTICLES: USE 187
THE NOUN 194
Rules for Gender 194
Syntax of Number 200
Syntax of the Cases 202
Supplementary Details on Declension 227
THE ADJECTIVE: SYNTAX 238
Use of the Numerals 247
THE PRONOUN: SYNTAX 248
Personal Pronouns 248
Possessive Pronouns 253
Demonstrative Pronouns 255
Interrogative Pronouns 257
Relative Pronouns 258
Indefinite Pronouns 260
THE VERB 264
Supplementary Details on Conjugation 264
Use of the Modal Auxiliaries 279
Impersonal Verbs 284
Compound Verbs 285
Use of the Passive Voice 288
Syntax of Number and Person 290
Use of the Tenses 291
Use of the Modes 294
Use of the Infinitive 303
Use of the Participle 308
THE ADVERB: SYNTAX 311
THE PREPOSITION: SYNTAX 315
THE CONJUNCTION: SYNTAX 327
THE INTERJECTION 334
WORD-FORMATION 335
Derivation of Nouns 336
Derivation of Adjectives 340
Derivation of Verbs 344
Derivation of Pronouns and Particles 349
WORD-COMBINATION 350
Compound Nouns 350
Compound Adjectives 352
Compound Verbs, Pronouns, and Particles 354

PAGE

THE SENTENCE 354
Dependent Clauses 356
WORD-ORDER 359
Position of Adjuncts 366
EXERCISES IN SYNTAX 370
APPENDIX I: ORTHOGRAPHY 385
APPENDIX II: ENGLISH-GERMAN COGNATES 388
APPENDIX III: THE GERMAN SCRIPT 396
VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES 401
INDEX 455

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PART FIRST.

INTRODUCTORY.

1. German and English. German and English are sister languages. Both are descended from a language spoken, centuries before the Christian era, by a European people whose exact place of abode is not known with certainty. In time this people spread far and wide over north-central Europe, and there its various tribes became known to the Romans under the collective name of *Germani*. In the fifth century, A. D., *Germani* from the northwestern lowlands occupied Britain and introduced there their own language, which came to be known as 'English.' The descendants of the continental *Germani* that have remained in the old home now speak various languages, of which the most important is the one called 'German' by us, but *Deutsch* by those who use it. It is the language of the entire German Empire, of a large part of Austria and Switzerland, and of numerous colonies.

1. *Deutsch* is the same word as our 'Dutch,' but the latter term has come to be applied exclusively to the language of Holland. Dutch is not German, nor a dialect of German, but a distinct language.

2. Owing to this common origin German and English have in common a great many words that belonged to the

language from which both have descended. Such words are called 'cognates.' Cognates may resemble each other closely in form and meaning, or they may not. Thus the German word *Bruder* is cognate with *brother* and means *brother*, while *Baum* is cognate with *beam*, but means *tree*.

3. On the other hand, in spite of this common origin, German grammar seems at first to have little resemblance to English grammar. This is because English has lost nearly all of those grammatical distinctions which were once common to both languages, whereas German has preserved them much more fully.

2. The German Alphabet. The Germans often print their language in Roman letters like those employed for English; more commonly, however, they use the so-called 'German' characters, which developed out of the Roman previous to the invention of printing. The letters and their German names are as follows:

German form.	Roman form.	German name.	German form.	Roman form.	German name.
𝔄, 𝔞	A, a	ah	𝔑, 𝔫	N, n	en
𝔅, 𝔟	B, b	bay	𝔒, 𝔬	O, o	oh
ℭ, 𝔠	C, c	tsay	𝔓, 𝔭	P, p	pa
𝔇, 𝔡	D, d	day	𝔔, 𝔮	Q, q	koo
𝔈, 𝔢	E, e	ay	𝔯, 𝔯	R, r	er (*very*)
𝔉, 𝔣	F, f	eff	𝔖, 𝔰, ſ	S, s	ess
𝔊, 𝔤	G, g	gay	𝔗, 𝔱	T, t	tay
ℌ, 𝔥	H, h	hah	𝔘, 𝔲	U, u	oo
ℑ, 𝔦	I, i	ee	𝔙, 𝔳	V, v	fow (*fowl*)
𝔍, 𝔧	J, j	yot	𝔚, 𝔴	W, w	vay
𝔎, 𝔨	K, k	kah	𝔛, 𝔵	X, x	ix
𝔏, 𝔩	L, l	el	𝔜, 𝔶	Y, y	ipsilon
𝔐, 𝔪	M, m	em	ℨ, 𝔷	Z, z	tset

1. Of the two forms ſ and s, the latter, called 'final s,' is used at the end of a word, or of a stem-syllable; elsewhere the 'long s,' is used. Thus: das, *the*, dasſelbe, *the same*; weiſe, *wise*, but Weisheit, *wisdom*.

a. The form ſ is used also in foreign words and proper names before other consonants than p or t; thus Presbyter, Discours, Bismarck, but Reſpekt, Myſtik.

2. To the above list of alphabetic characters should be added: (1) the digraphs ch = ch, ck = ck, ng = ng, pf = pf, ph = ph, ß = ss, th = th, and tz = tz; (2) the trigraph ſch = sch; (3) the diphthongs ai = ai, au = au, ei = ei, eu = eu, and (4) the umlauts ä = ä or æ, ö = ö or œ, ü = ü or ue, and äu = äu or æu.

a. The digraphs, trigraph and diphthongs are named by combining the names of their component parts (thus ch is called *tsay-hah);* the umlauts by pronouncing the sounds they denote, or by saying 'a-umlaut,' 'o-umlaut,' etc. They are also called 'modified a,' 'modified o,' etc.

3. The character ß, called *ess-tset*, takes the place of ſs at the end of a word and of ſſ before t or after a long vowel or a diphthong; thus, wiſſen, *to know*, but wußte. *knew*, and ich weiß, *I know;* Schuß, *shot* (with short u), plural Schüſſe, but Fuß, *foot* (with long u), plural Füße. In Roman letters ß appears variously as ss, sz or fz. The official rules (see below) prescribe ſs.

3. Orthography. There has long been in German, as in English, more or less difference of usage in the spelling of certain words and classes of words. In recent years several of the German governments have adopted official rules regulating doubtful points. This official spelling is taught in the schools and has made its way largely into books and journals, though the older spelling is also in very general use. This grammar will follow the rules of the Prussian spelling-book. (See Appendix I.)

4. Initial Capitals. German, like English, uses a capital letter at the beginning of sentences, lines of poetry, direct quotations, proper nouns and most adjectives derived from them, and adjectives of title. The important principles peculiar to German are as follows:

1. Every noun and word used as a noun begins with a capital; as das Haus, *the house;* das Schöne, *the beautiful;* das Geben, *giving;* etwas Gutes, *something good.*

a. But a noun-form not used substantively takes a small initial; as Abend, *evening,* but abends, *in the evening;* Paar, *pair,* but ein paar Minuten, *a few minutes.* The same is true of nouns forming a part of certain phrases; as Teil, *part,* but teilnehmen, *participate;* Statt, *place,* but ſtattfinden, *take place.*

2. The pronoun Sie, meaning *you,* and its possessive Ihr, meaning *your,* are given a capital to distinguish them from ſie, *they* or *she,* and ihr, *their* or *her.* The rule applies to all the case-forms of Sie and Ihr, but not to the reflexive ſich. With regard to du, *thou,* dein, *thy,* and their case-forms, usage varies; but they should at any rate be capitalized in letters.

3. Adjectives denoting nationality take a small initial: as die deutſche Sprache, *the German language;* das amerikaniſche Volk, *the American people.*

5. Syllabication. Words are divided at the end of a line in accordance with the following principles:

1. Between two vowels any simple consonantal sign, or any combination (except ng) denoting a simple consonantal sound, goes with the following vowel. Examples: ge=ben, ſe=hen, la=chen, grü=ßen, ha=ſchen, rei=zen, He=xe, Stä=dte; but ſin=gen, Hun=ger.

2. Of two or more consonants occurring between two vowels only the last goes with the following vowel. Examples: Al=ter, Ap=fel, krat=zen, Knoſ=pe or Knos=pe, Stük=ke (for Stüc=ke, ck being always resolved into k=k).

3. Excepted from these rules are (1) compounds, which should keep their parts intact, and (2) cases in which a strict application of the rules would result in breaking up a natural sound-group; thus dar=in, not da=rin, *therein;* Baum=aſt, not Bau=maſt, *branch of a tree;* ge=pflegt, not ge=pf=legt, from pflegen. So also one writes A=pri=koſe, Aſ=tronom, Mi=kro=ſkop, Di=ſtink=tion.

6. Punctuation. The ordinary marks of punctuation are the same in German as in English, but the comma is used more freely to set off subordinate clauses of all kinds. The hyphen is a double stroke (=) and is employed, in addition to the uses familiar in English, to take the

place of a suppressed member of a compound; thus Land- und Waſſertiere, *land-animals and water-animals.* In ordinary compounds the hyphen is not used; e. g., Fenſterſcheibe, *window-pane.* Quotation-marks ordinarily appear thus: „Ende gut, alles gut", *all's well that ends well.* Emphasis is indicated by spaced type; e. g., bedenke erſt das Wie, dann das Warum, *think first of the* HOW, *then of the* WHY.

7. The German Script. There is a peculiar script, or written alphabet, which is employed by most Germans in their ordinary writing, though they also read and write the Roman script. The letters are as follows: *

Capital.	Small.	Roman.	Capital.	Small.	Roman.	Capital.	Small.	Roman.
A	a	a	J	j	j	P	p	p
B	b	b	K	k	k	Q	q	q
C	c	c	L	l	l	R	r	r
D	d	d	M	m	m	S	ſ	s
E	e	e	N	n	n	T	t	t
F	f	f	O	o	o	U	u	u
G	g	g	P	p	p	V	v	v
H	h	h	Q	q	q	W	w	w
I	i	i	R	r	r	X	x	x
						Y	y	y
						Z	z	z
							ß	ß

* It is not at all important that a beginner learn the German script at once, though he should certainly learn it sooner or later. Script texts for practice in reading will be found in an Appendix.

PRONUNCIATION.

8. The Standard. Since German has a long history and is spoken over a large area, the pronunciation of the language naturally varies considerably in different localities. This is especially true of the uneducated, whose local dialects differ greatly from one another and from the speech of the educated. The standard at which a student should aim is not the dialect of any one locality, but rather the average pronunciation of educated Germans, as heard in their use of the *Schriftsprache*, or standard literary language. This language, as printed, is substantially the same everywhere. In pronouncing it the aim of the best speakers is to avoid all local dialect whatsoever.

9. Learning to Pronounce. The beginner in German is sure to pronounce at first with a marked English 'accent,' which it should be his aim to get rid of. This can be done only by long practice in the imitation of good models. Even then, unless the practice begins in infancy, one's foreign 'accent' never disappears entirely, though it is possible for almost any one, by careful attention to the subject, to acquire a pronunciation that will not offend even a fastidious German ear. What is called 'accent,' or 'brogue,' is mainly due to slight errors in adjusting the organs of speech to the foreign sounds. Hence it is a great help in learning to pronounce to know just how the foreign sounds are produced and how they differ from the English sounds with which they are most likely to be confounded.

1. We will therefore proceed to describe the German sounds in detail; but since several of them do not exist in English, we cannot describe them adequately by means of English key-words. Moreover, the pronunciation of English itself differs very greatly in different parts of the English-speaking world. These facts necessitate the use of a few technical terms which the student should master

if he is not already familiar with them. First, however, attention may be called to

10. A General Rule. Excepting h, medial or final, and e in the digraph ie = long i, there are no silent letters in genuine German words. Every letter is to be pronounced; e. g., the K in Knabe, the G in Gnade, and the final e in both.

THE VOWELS.

11. Rounded Vowels. Let the learner begin to pronounce *ah*, and then, while uttering a continuous vowel-sound, gradually round the cheeks to the position required for the *oo* of *pool*. He will thus produce a series of vowel-sounds as follows: (1) *a* in *ah;* (2) *aw* in *awe;* (3) a short *o*-sound not heard in standard English, but common in German; (4) *o* in *note;* (5) *u* in *full;* (6) *oo* in *pool*. This process is called 'rounding'; and since rounding brings the lips closer together, a vowel which is more 'rounded' is also said to be 'closer' or 'less open.'

12. Fronted and Raised Vowels. Returning to the *ah* position, pronounce a continuous vowel-sound while gradually raising the front part of the tongue to the position required for the *ee* in *eel*. A series of vowel-sounds will be produced as follows: (1) *a* in *ah;* (2) *a* in *hat;* (3) *e* in *met;* (4) *ay* in *day;* (5) *i* in *it;* (6) *ee* in *eel*. This process is called 'fronting,' and involves also an act of 'raising.' The *e* in *met* is said to be 'higher' than the *a* in *hat*, and 'lower' than the *i* in *it*. And since raising the tongue closes the air-passage above it, a vowel that is 'higher' is also said to be 'more close,' and one that is 'lower' is also called 'more open.'

13. Slurred Vowels. In English we tend to pass very lightly over any vowel in the syllable next after a strongly accented syllable. By this process, which is called 'slurring,' we deprive the vowel of its distinctive character, and convert it into an 'obscure' sound resembling that

of *u* in *but*. Note the identical sound of the unaccented *a, e, i, o, u* in the penult of *separate, celery, visible, ebony, awfully.*

1. In German no vowel except unaccented e should ever be slurred.

14. Quantity of Vowels. The quantity of a sound, properly speaking, is simply the relative length of time taken in uttering it; in common usage, however, the words 'long' and 'short' imply quality as well as quantity, a short vowel being usually more open than the corresponding long. In German, as in English, vowel-quantity is often indicated by the spelling of the word. The important rules are these:

1. A vowel doubled or followed by ɦ is thereby shown to be long. Examples: Aal, Ahle, Beet, geht, ihn, Stuhl, kühn.

a. The only vowels ever doubled are a, e and o, and even with these the inserted ɦ is the more usual device for indicating length. Long i appears as ih only in some pronouns and proper names; elsewhere usually as ie.

b. Vowels brought together by composition are not to be regarded as doubled vowels, but are pronounced separately; e. g., beehren, i. e., be-ehren, *to honor.*

2. An accented vowel that ends a syllable, or is followed by a single consonant, is generally long; if followed by two consonants, it is short; thus the vowel is long in du, Plan, rot, but short in dumm, Band, Roſt; it is long in the accented syllable of We'ſen, ho'len, Gebe't, Verbo't, but short in that of we'ſſen, ſo'llen, gebe'ttet, verſto'rben. But a long stem-vowel remains long in derived forms; thus the first vowel being long in le'gen, *lay*, and e'del, *noble*, it is also long in legte, *laid*, and edler, *nobler.*

a. A syllable ending in a vowel is said to be 'open'; one ending in a consonant, 'closed. It is an important rule that the vowel of an accented open syllable is long.

b. Observe, however, that ch, ng and ſch, though each denotes a simple consonantal sound, cannot be doubled. Before ch the vowel may be short, as in brechen, or long, as in brachen. Before ſch it is short, as in miſchen (unless it

be a diphthong, as in rauſchen). Before ng it is always short. x = ks, z = zz and ck = kk count as two consonants. Before ß the vowel may be short, as in Kuß, küßte, or long, as in Gruß, grüßte.

c. Other exceptions to the rule in § 14, 2, are not uncommon, especially among monosyllables; thus the vowel is short in an, mit, ob; long in Bart, Magd, ſtets; long in düſter, Wüſte; short in Gramma'tik, Kapi'tel.

15. A. A has but one sound, which, however, may be long or short. Long a is like *a* in *ah;* short a is the same sound uttered quickly. *

1. A should never be raised, rounded or slurred. Thus pronounce the a of man, als, langſam, each time as a quick *a* in *ah*, not like the sounds heard in *man, alter, handsome.*

16. E. E has three sounds: (1) an open short sound like that of *e* in *met;* (2) a close long sound like that of *ay* in *day;* (3) an 'obscure' sound more or less like that of *a* in *mature.* The first two are heard in accented, the third in unaccented, syllables.

1. Do not change the quality of open short e before r: pronounce der, Herr, Herz with the vowel as in *herring*, not as in *her.*

2. Do not make a diphthong of close e by raising it during the act of utterance, thus giving it a vanishing *i*-sound. (Many speakers of English habitually make a diphthong of the so-called 'long *a*' in *day, fate).*

3. Do not fail to slur unaccented e: make De'cke rhyme with *Mecca*, not with *flecky;* be'te with *data;* e'del with *ladle;* gu'tem with *shoot'em;* lei'ten with *frighten;* Zi'mmer with *glimmer.* Give the same sound also in ha'ndeln, ha'ndelte, wa'ndern, wa'nderte. The obscure sound is heard especially when final, or before l, m, n, r, and in final es (neues rhyming with *joyous*). In other positions unaccented e sometimes approaches the sound of open e or i; thus make beteſt rhyme with *latest,* redet with *made it.* So also be in beei'len.

4. Final e is never silent except in some borrowed words, as Revue (= Revü).

* For examples to practice on see Exercise I below.

17. J. J has two sounds: (1) an open short, like that of *i* in *bit;* (2) a close long, like that of *i* in *police.*

1. Do not slur unaccented i, nor change its character before r: distinguish between Hirtin, *shepherdess,* and Hirten, *shepherds,* and make neither of them rhyme with *certain.*

2. Long i usually appears as ie; e. g., in tief, nieder, rhyming with *chief, feeder.* At the end of borrowed words this ie is generally accented, and has then its regular sound; e. g., Chemie', Harmonie', Philoſophie'. But some words throw the accent back; the ie is then pronounced in two syllables as i=e (e obscure); thus Fami'lie (Fa=mi'=li=e), Li'lie (Li'=li=e), Stu'die (Stu'=di=e).

a. A similar difference appears in borrowed words in ier. The most make this syllable rhyme with *cheer,* as Offi=zie'r, Barbie'r; but others drop the r and separate ie into i=e', as Banquier (Ban=ki=e'), Portier (Por=ti=e').

18. O. O has two sounds: (1) an open short, not heard in standard English, but intermediate in roundness between the *aw* of *awe* and the *o* of *note;* (2) a close long, like the *o* of *note.*

1. Do not fail to round short o and do not round it too much: toll must not rhyme with *doll,* nor with *toll,* but lie between the two.

2. Do not make a diphthong of long o by rounding it during the act of utterance, thus giving it a vanishing *u*-sound. (Many speakers of English habitually make a diphthong of the 'long *o*' in *note, know).*

3. Do not slur unaccented o: pronounce Do'ctor with two short o's, not with the sounds heard in *doctor.*

19. U. U has two sounds: (1) an open short, like that of *u* in *full;* (2) a close long, like that of *oo* in *pool.*

1. Never give to u the sound of English *u* in *union, cube.*

2. Do not slur unaccented u: pronounce Fo'kus, Glo'bus with a duly rounded short u.

20. Ÿ. Ÿ occurs only in proper names and borrowed words, and has the sound of ü (§ 24).

1. But it is also proper to give to ÿ the sound of i, especially in common words and where it is not accented; e. g., Cylí'nder, *tall hat.*

21. The Umlauts, or Modified Vowels. The term umlaut is applied to a peculiar modification of the vowels a, o, u and the diphthong au, due originally to the influence of an i or j in the next syllable. The effect of this i or j was to make the preceding vowel more like itself, i. e., to raise and front it.

1. The sign of umlaut was at first an e written above the vowel affected, but in time this e became reduced to two dots; thus: ä, ö, ü, äu. In the old spelling Aͤ, Oͤ, Uͤ and Aͤu were often written Ae, Oe, Ue, Aeu. In Roman letters one often sees æ, œ, ue and æu.

2. Umlaut was once a living principle in English. We owe to it such variations as *man—men, mouse—mice, full —fill, cool—chilly.*

22. Ä. Ä has two sounds: (1) an open short, identical with open short e, as in Hände, which rhymes exactly with Ende; (2) an open long, like that of *ei* in *their*, as in Väter. The latter is more open than close e, but not quite so open as short e.

1. Distinguish between Ehre, *honor*, and Ähre, *ear of corn;* between mehren, *increase*, and Mähren, *mares.*

23. Ö. Ö has two sounds, neither of which is heard in English: (1) an open short, (2) a close long. To get the long sound, as in Höhle, pronounce the *ay* of *day* with the lips in position for the *o* of *pole.* The sound is a rounded long e, or a fronted long o. The open short sound is the same, only a little less rounded.

1. Do not fail to round ö properly: distinguish between kennen, *know*, and können, *be able;* between Höhlen, *caves*, and hehlen, *hide.*

2. Do not fail to front ö properly: distinguish between konnte, *was able*, and könnte, *might be able*; between hohlen, a case-form of hohl, *hollow*, and Höhlen, *caves*.

24. ü. Ü has two sounds, neither of them heard in English: (1) an open short, (2) a close long. To get the latter, as in über, pronounce the *ee* of *eel* with the lips in position for the *oo* of *pool*. The sound is a rounded long i or a fronted long u. The short sound is similar, but a little opener.

1. Do not fail to round ü properly: distinguish between liegen, *lie (recline)*, and lügen, *lie (speak falsely)*; between Kiſſen, *cushion*, and küſſen, *kiss*.

2. Do not fail to front ü properly: distinguish between mußte, *had to*, and müßte, *would have to*; between Fluſſe and Flüſſe, both case-forms of Fluß, *river*.

25. Nasal Vowels. These occur only in words borrowed from the French; but since the words containing them are both numerous and common, the sounds require explanation. A vowel is made nasal by lowering the veil of the palate during the act of utterance, thus allowing the vocal current to vibrate in the nasal passage. There are four such vowels having respectively the tongue-position of (1) *a* in *man*, as in Baſſi'n; (2) *a* in *ah*, as in Comme'nt; (3) *aw* in *awe*, as in Ballo'n; (4) *u* in *but*, as in Parfu'm.

1. In German, as in English, speakers unacquainted with French often pronounce the nasal vowels as ordinary oral vowels followed by *ng*; calling Baſſin, *bassa'ng*, Saiſon, *sayzo'ng*, etc. But this is not to be approved.

THE DIPHTHONGS.

26. Nature of the Diphthongs. The German diphthongs are combinations of certain vowels with a short ı or u. The first element is always phonetically an *a*-sound or an *o*-sound, ei being pronounced as ai, and eu as oi. Thus the five signs ai, au, ei, eu and äu really represent but three different diphthongs, äu being the same as eu.

27. Ai. Ai consists of short a plus short i. Its sound is like that of *i* in *pine*, when the English diphthong is pronounced with a quick *a*, as in *ah*, for its first element.

1. In French words ai has the sound of ä, as in Affai're, Saiſon'.

28. Au. Au consists of short a plus short u. Its sound is that of *ow* in *now*, as pronounced with a quick *a*, as in *ah*, for its first element.

1. Do not raise the first element of au to a sound like that of *a* in *man*. (This is a very common pronunciation of the *ow* in *now*).

2. In French words au and eau have the sound of o, as in Chauſſee', Plateau'.

29. Ei. Ei is pronounced like ai.

1. Ey and ay were once common for ei and ai, but are now used only in proper names.

30. Eu. Eu consists phonetically of short o plus short i. Its sound is like that of *oi* in *oil*, save that the first element is a little more rounded.

1. Pronounce eu with a pure short o as its first element, not exactly as in English *oil*, which is usually made to sound like *aw-il*.

31. Äu. Äu is the umlaut of au and has the sound of eu.

32. Non-diphthongal Combinations. The above are all of the true diphthongs that occur in German, but there are certain other vowel-combinations that require notice. Except in the interjections hui and pfui, pronounced *hwee*, *pfwee* (but see § 49), ua, ue, ui and uo occur in native German words only after q ; for their sound see under q (§ 50). In French words the u of these combinations is usually silent, as in Guita'rre, Bouque't. Oi and ou occur mostly in French words, oi sounding like *wah*, as in Toile'tte, and ou like long u, as in Tour, Bouque't.

THE CONSONANTS.

33. Definitions. A 'stop' is a consonantal sound produced by a complete closure of the oral passage at some point, as *k, d, p;* it consists always of a slight explosion and cannot be prolonged. A 'spirant' is produced by a *nearly* complete closure, as *s, v, th;* it is made by the rubbing of the breath against the walls of a narrow gateway and can always be prolonged. The term 'spirant,' however, is not applied to *l, r, m, n* or *ng,* though these can be prolonged. *L* and *r* are called 'liquids,' *m, n* and *ng* 'nasals.'

1. A consonantal sound produced with the vocal chords vibrating, as *g, d, z, v,* is said to be 'voiced'; if produced with the chords quiescent, as *k, t, s, f,* it is 'voiceless.'

2. A consonant produced between the back part of the tongue and the opposite portion of the soft palate, as *g* in *go, ck* in *duck,* is called a 'guttural'; produced in a similar way, but farther forward, it is a 'palatal'; produced between the fore part of the tongue and the upper teeth or gums, as *d, th, s,* it is a 'dental'; produced between the lips, as *p, b,* it is a 'labial' or 'bilabial,' and produced between the lips and teeth, as *f, v,* a 'labio-dental.'

34. General Rules. Of the two following rules, the first is applicable to English as well as German, the second to German only:

1. Doubled consonants are to be pronounced like the corresponding single consonants; e. g., the tt in bitter just like the t in mit.

a. The doubling of a consonant is simply a device (as in English) to indicate that the preceding vowel is short. The only consonants never doubled are ch, j, sch, v and w.

b. The rule does not apply to consonants brought together by composition; pronounce the tt in mitteilen as in *cat-tail,* not as in *bitter.*

2. A voiced consonant when final becomes voiceless; thus ab, as if written ap; Tod, as if Tot.

a. In applying this rule a consonant is to be understood as 'final' not only when it ends a word, but when it ends a stem-syllable that is followed by a suffix beginning with a consonant; e. g., lieblich, Mädchen (pronounce lieb-lich, Mät-chen).

35. B. B has two sounds: (1) when initial or medial, that of *b* in *by*, as in beben, albern; (2) when final, that of *p* in *pen*, as in ab, lieblich.

36. C. C occurs only in borrowed words and has three sounds: (1) before low vowels (a, o, u, au) and before consonants, that of *k*, as in Café, Clique; (2) before high vowels (e, i, y, ä, ö), that of z = *ts*, as in Ceder, Cyli'nder; (3) before e in a few French words, that of voiceless *s*, as in Chance.

1. A foreign *c* which is to sound like k is often written k, and one which is to sound like z is written z. In some cases, however, usage is unsettled and the official rules are not consistent. Thus we have Ceder or Zeder; Karzer or Carcer; Kommo'de but Coupe'rt.

2. Ck always sounds like k.

37. Ch. Ch has in native German words two sounds, neither of them heard in English: (1) after a low vowel (a, o, u, au), that of a guttural spirant, as in Dach, auch; (2) after a high vowel (e, i, ä, ö, ü, eu, äu) or a consonant, that of a palatal spirant, as in ich, durch. To pronounce Dach utter English *dock*, but without the complete closure necessary for the final click. Instead of the click let the breath make an audible sound of rubbing or rasping. To pronounce ich press the tip of the tongue firmly against the lower teeth and try to say *ish*.

1. Avoid making guttural ch either a k or a silent h: distinguish the final sounds of roch, roh and Rock.

2. Avoid making palatal ch either a k or an sch: distinguish the final sounds of dich, dick and Tisch.

3. In words from the Greek ch before a o, l or r is usually pronounced like k, as in Chara'kter, Chor, Chro'nik; before e or i, like ch in ich, as in Chemie', Chiru'rg.

4. In words from the French ch sounds like sch, as in Cha'mois, Chaussee'.

5. Chs belonging to one and the same stem sounds like x, as in Fuchs, Ochse; but when the s belongs to a suffix ch has its separate spirant sound, as in wachsam.

38. D. D has two sounds: (1) when initial or medial, that of *d* in *do*, as in du, Widder; (2) when final that of *t* in *to*, as in Tod, ländlich, Wildnis.

1. Dt sounds like *t*, as in Stadt.

39. F. F is always like English *f* in *for*; e. g., falsch, offen, tief.

40. G. G has in native German words five sounds: (1) when initial, or before a consonant, or doubled, that of a guttural stop like English *g* in *go*, as in gehen, Glück, Dogge; (2) when final after a low vowel (a, o, u), that of a voiceless guttural spirant = guttural ch, as in Tag, flog, schlug; (3) when final after a high vowel (e, i, ei) or a consonant, that of a voiceless palatal spirant = palatal ch, as in König, Teig, Berg; (4) when medial after a low vowel, that of a voiced guttural spirant, as in Tage, Lauge; (5) when medial after a high vowel or a consonant, that of a voiced palatal spirant, as in Könige, Beschäftigung, Berge.

1. There is good usage in favor of pronouncing final g always as k and medial g as *g* in *go*, but the weight of authority is in favor of the pronunciation described above. The voiced spirants are somewhat difficult. To get the g in lagen first pronounce lachen; then learn to voice the spirant by keeping up the glottal buzz of the a. By placing the finger against the glottis (just above the 'Adam's apple') the buzz will be distinctly felt if the consonant is properly voiced.

2. In words from the French g before e has usually the sound of *z* in *azure*, as in Genie', Passa'ge, Dra'nge; and g with following n that of *ni* in *union*, as in Champa'gner.

41. H. H at the beginning of a word or a suffix sounds like *h* in *his*, as in Herr, Freiheit; after a vowel it is silent

and serves to indicate that the vowel is long, as in Ahle, fehr. Between vowels h has the effect of a diæresis; thus ruhig = ru'-ig.

42. J. J has the sound of *y* in *yes*, as in je, Jahr.

1. In a few French words j sounds like *z* in *azure;* e. g., Journa'l.

43. K. K has the sound of *k* in *kiss*, as in kahl, Glück (ck being written for double k).

44. L. L is like, or at least very nearly like, the ordinary English *l* in *let;* e. g., Leben, Ball.

1. Do not drop l in any position; e. g., not in halb, Qualm, Palme.

2. In words from the French ll sounds like *lli* in *William*, as in Bille't, Bouillo'n.

45. M. M is always like English *m* in *met*, as in mehr, Lehm.

46. N. N is regularly like English *n* in *no*, as in nie, an.

1. N before k sounds, as in English, like ng; thus sinken = singken, just as in English *think* = *thingk*.

2. In words from the French n after a vowel (except between vowels) is not pronounced as a consonant, but serves to indicate nasality in the vowel (§ 25); e. g., Saiso'n.

47. Ng. Ng is not a compound of n and g, but a simple sound. It is always like *ng* in *singer*, never like *ng* in *linger*. Examples: lang, länger. Pronounce separately in compounds, as u'n-gern, a'n-geht.

48. P. P is always like *p* in *pen*, as in Pech, Mappe.

1. Ph occurs only in borrowed words (except Epheu, *ivy*,) and sounds like f, as in Sylph, Philosophie'.

49. Pf. Pf is not exactly p plus f. To pronounce it begin as for a *p* and then convert the *p* into an *f* before the closure is complete. Examples: Pflanze, empfinden, Pfropf.

50. Q. Q occurs, as in English, only before u, the combination qu being pronounced like kw, the w denoting here a bilabial spirant (§ 58). Examples: Quelle, erqui'cken.

1. German qu is not exactly like *qu* in *quit*, nor like *kv* in *black vest*. It differs from the former in that the lips are less rounded, and from the latter in that the sound is produced between the lips and not between the upper teeth and lower lip.

51. R. There are two modes of pronouncing r. The 'lingual' or 'trilled' r is made by vibrating the tip of the tongue; the 'guttural' or 'uvular' r by raising the back part of the tongue until it meets the soft palate and forcing the breath through the narrow gateway thus formed, with an accompanying vibration or flapping of the uvula.

1. The learner should at least begin with the lingual r, which is not so very different from the ordinary English initial *r*, as in *red*. In pronouncing it, however, let the vibratory trill be always distinctly heard. This caution is especially important for those who in speaking English habitually drop *r* after a vowel, making, e. g., no distinction between *farther* and *father*, but giving both as *fathuh*.

2. The guttural r is rapidly superseding the trilled r, and is the one now used by the majority of Germans. It is, however, very difficult to acquire after childhood.

52. S. S has three sounds: (1) when final, or medial with a consonant following, that of *s* in *sit*, as in das, ist; (2) when initial before a vowel, or between two vowels, that of *z* in *zeal* (only a little less forcibly voiced), as in See'le, Ro'se, langsam; (3) before p or t at the beginning of a word, that of a quickly uttered sch = *sh*, as in Stand, Sprache.

1. The voiced s is never doubled, whence ss and ß are always voiceless.

2. A voiced s occurring between vowels, as in Ro'se, Na'se, Wei'se, becomes voiceless in derivatives such as Rö'slein, Näschen, Weisheit; i. e., it is there 'final' (§ 34, 2, *a*), and hence written s.

53. Sch. Sch sounds like *sh* in *ship*, as in ſchnell, Rauſch.

1. But where ch begins a suffix, as in Näschen, from Naſe, ch has its separate palatal sound.

54. T. T in native German words has always the sound of *t* in *tin*, as in mit, treten.

1. In words from the Latin t before unaccented i sounds like *ts*; e. g., Natio'n, partia'l; but not when following ſ, as in beſtia'liſch.

55. Th. Th has always the sound of t, never that of English *th* in *this* or in *thin*; e. g., thun, Theologie'.

1. Th appears (1) in some foreign words like These, including Greek words, in which it represents θ; (2) in a few German words as a sign of vowel-length, th before the vowel being used instead of h after it; e. g., thun instead of tuhn, Thor instead of Tohr.

56. Tz. Tz is simply double z and has the same sound, namely, that of *ts*; e. g., Schatz, ſitzen.

57. V. V has in native German words the sound of f, as in Vater, vor.

1. But in words from the French or Latin, except when final, v sounds like *v* in *vat*, as in Vaſe, Pulver (but like f in brav, Crediti'v).

58. W. W has two sounds: (1) when initial, or after a vowel, that of a labio-dental spirant like *v* in *vat*, as in Welle, Löwe; (2) after a consonant, that of a bilabial spirant, as in zwei, Schwelle.

1. The bilabial w sounds at first much like English *w* in *win*, but differs from it in that the lips are less rounded and that it is a true spirant rather than a semivowel. The student will do best to pronounce zwei, Schwelle, as also Quelle, at first with a *v*-sound rather than a *w*-sound, the latter being the harder to correct. In large parts of Middle and South Germany the bilabial w is the only one used.

59. X. X is always like English *x*; e. g., in Axt, Xenien.

60. Z. Z has always the sound of *ts* in *fits*, as in zu, Herz, ſitzen (tz being the written form of zz).

ACCENTUATION.

61. Kinds of Accent. Accent is special stress in pronunciation. Word-accent is special stress upon one or more syllables of a word; sentence-accent (often called 'rhetorical accent,' or simply 'emphasis') is special stress upon one or more words of the sentence.

1. Accent is either strong or weak, and there are different degrees of weakness; thus in *constitutionality* the strong stress is upon *al*, and there is a weak stress upon *tu*, and a still weaker one upon *con*. Such shades and more are heard also in German, but the beginner may safely ignore all but two and think of every syllable as having either chief stress (´), weak stress (ˋ), or no stress at all; e. g., Freu'de, *joy;* freu'dlo's, *joyless;* Freu'dlo'ſigkei't, *joylessness.*

62. Simple Words. An uncompounded word, if of native German stock, has the chief stress on the root-syllable, and not on any suffix; e. g., ha'ndeln, *act;* ha'ndelte, *acted;* Kö'niginnen, *queens;* A'ltertümer, *antiquities.*

1. Exceptions are verbs in ie'ren and nouns in ei; e. g., ſtudie'ren, *study;* marſchie'rt, *marched;* Malerei', *painting.*

2. There are also a few other anomalous exceptions, as lebe'ndig, *living*, from le'ben; wahrha'ftig, *true*, from wa'hrhaft.

63. Compounds. German forms compounds very freely and in great variety, and their accent cannot be brought under any simple rules. The beginner will do best to be guided at first by English analogy, which will cover multitudes of cases; e. g., Fra'chtzu'g, *frei'ght-trai'n;* Blu'menga'rten, *flo'wer-ga'rden;* Fe'ſtla'nd, *mai'n-la'nd;* ro't-fa'rbig, *re'd-co'lored;* Vergi'ßmeinni'cht, *forge't-me-no't.* Then let the following points be noted:

1. Compound particles generally accent the second member; as herau'f, *(here)up;* darü'nter, *thereunder;* ſtroma'b, *downstream.*

2. The six prefixes be, ent (emp), er, ge, ver and zer are *never* accented.

3. The prefix un, *un*, is very often, but not always, accented; e. g., u'ntreu, *untru'e;* u'ngern, *unwi'llingly;* but une'ndlich, *une'nding.*

64. Borrowed Words. These are apt to accent the ultima, the following examples being each typical of many: Partie', *party;* Portio'n, *portion;* Muſi'k, *music;* Stude'nt, *student;* partia'l, *partial;* Regime'nt, *regiment;* abſolu't, *absolute;* religiö's, *religious.*

1. Exceptions occur principally among Latin words in or, el, er, ium; as Do'ktor (plural Dokto'ren), *doctor;* Kö'rper, *body;* Ti'tel, *title;* plauſi'bel, *plausible;* Stu'dium, *study.*

EXERCISE I.

Pronunciation of Vowels.

Note.—Accent the first syllable unless the accent is marked. Words connected by an English hyphen are to be carefully distinguished in pronunciation.

Long a.—Aal, Hahn, Draht, lahm, Fraß, Bart, Papſt.

Short a.—Als, bald, Band, Gaſt, Ball, hart, Lamm.

Obscure e.—Habe, Gatte, Gema'hl, Geſa'ng, Kaba'le, Mantel, altem, Garten, Vater, handeln, handelte.

Short e *and* ä.—Es, Ende, Hände, gefä'llt, Äpfel, Blätter, Ärger, E'rbhe'rr, A'bende'ſſen, Be'ttde'cke.

Long e.—Beere, fehlen, Ehre, beben, Gebe't.

Long ä.—Väter, Thäler, gähren; Ähre – Ehre, Mähren – mehren, Säle – Seele, währen – wehren.

Short i.—Iſt, mit, irren, Gebi'ß, Inſe'kt, gebi'ſſen.

Long i *and* ie.—Mir, Igel, ihnen, hier, viel, gedie'nt.

Long o.—Boot, Ohr, ohne, Moos, rot, gelo'bt, Natio'n.

Short o.—Toll, Bock, fort, Dogge, Goſſe, Folge, Morgen, verdo'rben, gekо'nnt, Offizie'r.

Long u.—Du, thun, Huhn, Ruhe, Bude, Gruß, gebu'hlt.

Short u.—Kuß, Bruſt, dunkel, Dutzend, gemu'rrt.

Short ö.—Böcke, Körner, Töpfer, Förſter, Gewö'lke; können – kennen, Hölle – Helle, könnte – konnte – kennte.

Long ö.— Öl, böſe, hören, gekrö'nt, größer ; Söhnen – ſehnen, leſen – löſen, böte – Bote – Beete – bäte, Mohren – Mähren – mehren – Möhren.

Short ü.— Bücken, müſſen, mürbe, Hülle, bürgen ; Lüſte – Liſte, mußten – müßten – mißten, Kuſſe – küſſen – Kiſſen.

Long ü.—Über, müde, grün, Gefühl ; ſpulen – ſpielen – ſpülen.

Ai *and* ei.— Bai, Hain, Beil, keimen, Ei'telkei't ; ſei – ſie, lieblich – leiblich, reiten – rieten.

Au.— Baum, aus, Maul, ſauſen, au'fgebau't.

Eu *and* äu.— Freude, Bäume, Beute, Mäuſe, Eule ; baute – Beute, heute – haute.

Nasal vowels. —Comme'nt, Penſio'n (on not nasal), Ora'nge, Bankie'r (r silent), Baſſi'n, Gami'n, Ballo'n, Garço'n, Parfu'm.

EXERCISE II.

Pronunciation of Consonants.

B, *voiced.*— Bibel, beben, Ebbe, Gebo't, Verba'nd.

B, *voiceless.*— Ab, ob, liebt, lieblich, lie'brei'ch, Lo'bre'de.

C = k.— Caſus, Codex, Couſi'ne, Carrie're, Coupé.

C = z.— Cirkus, Ceſſio'n, Cicero, Ciga'rre, Cyli'nder, centra'l.

Ch *as voiceless guttural spirant.*— Ach, auch, Buch, doch, lachen, machen, ſuchen, beda'cht, Rau'chlo'ch ; wachen – waſchen, roch – roh – Rock, rauhen – rauchen – rauſchen.

Ch *as voiceless palatal spirant.*— Echt, ich, Bäche, Bücher, euch, reich, leuchtet, däuchtet, durch, Kelch, mancher, Mädchen, griechiſch ; dich – dick, Löcher – lecker, Kirche – Kirſche, frech – friſch, rächen – Recken.

Ch = k.— Chaos, Chara'kter, Chor, Cholera, chroma'tiſch, Chronologie'.

Ch = ſch.— Cha'mois, Champa'gner, Chauſſee', charma'nt, Chica'ne, chokie'ren.

Chs = x.— Achſe, Dachs, Ochſe ; wachſen – waſchen – wachen.

D, *voiced.*— Du, denn, edel, oder, Widder, gere'det.

D, *voiceless.*— Eid, Tod, und, Abend, redlich, Mädchen, bere'd-ſam.

G *as voiced guttural stop.*—Ganz, Gruß, Flagge, glühen.

G *as voiceless guttural spirant.*— Tag, Bug, flog, flug, Magd, ragt, wagt, getau'gt, genu'g, Befu'gnis.

G *as voiceless palatal spirant.*— König, einig, ruhig, Teig, fliegt, beugt, ſägt, lügt, Balg, Berg, genü'gt.

G *as voiced guttural spirant.*— Tage, Bogen, Augen, flogen, trugen, lagen, Tugend, Jugend, Lauge, Tau'geni'chts.

G *as voiced palatal spirant.*— Könige, einige, ruhige, fliegen, beugen, ſägen, lügen, Bälge, Berge, Morgen, Beſchä'ftigung.

G *as voiced* ſch.— Baga'ge, Eta'ge, Paſſa'ge, Genie', Gelee', Genda'rm, Ora'nge.

Ng.— Eng, bang, lang, ſingen, Finger, Sänger.

Pf.— Pfahl, Pflanze, Apfel, hüpfen, Pfro'pfenzie'her.

Qu.— Quark, Quelle, quer, erqui'cken.

R.— Er, der, her, rot, rügen, Brot, größer, hart, Herz, Dirne, Fürſten, härter, veri'rren.

S, ſ, *voiced.*— Saal, Seele, Sohn, Beſen, Buſen, grauſam, Roſe, Rätſel, Naſe, Trübſal, Hö'rſaa'l.

S, ſſ, ß, *voiceless.*— Iſt, Aſt, Neſt, liſpeln, als, das, Haß, beſſer, größer, Röslein, Näschen; reiſen – reißen, weiſen – weißen.

Sp, ſt, *initial.*— Stark, Stände, Sprache, ſpülen, Bau'ſtei'n, Sta'hlſti'ch, Spru'chſpre'cher, Gei'ſterſpu'k.

Sch.— Schelle, Schimpf, Marſch, löſchen, rauſchen.

T, Th.— Tau, Tod, treu, Rat, thun, Thor, Theologie'.

T = z.— Natio'n, Portio'n, partia'l, Patie'nt, Curtius.

V = f.— Vater, viel, vor, Vogel, brav, relati'v.

V = w.— Vaſe, Verb, viole'tt, Pulver, revidie'ren.

W *as labio-dental voiced spirant.*—Wachs, Wage, Wehen, weiſe, Wurſt, Löwe, verwi'rkt, gewa'ndt.

W *as bilabial voiceless spirant.*—Dwall, zwei, Zwerg, Zwirn, Schwulſt, ſchwarz, geſchwo'llen, verſchwi'nden.

Z, tz.— Zu, Zucker, Schmerz, erzä'hlen, ſitzen, ſchwatzen; Spaß – Spatz; reizen – reiſen – reißen.

EXERCISE III.

Pronunciation of Connected Discourse.

Note.—This exercise is intended to cultivate fluency in reading. Practice upon it until it can be read without hesitation. To assist the beginner the emphatic words (those that bear the sentence-accent) are here printed in spaced type, though that would not ordinarily be done.

Guten Morgen! *Good morning!*

Wie befi'nden Sie ſich? *How do you do?*

Danke, recht gut. *Very well, thank you.*

Und wie geht es Ihnen heute? *And how are* you *to-day?*

So ziemlich; nur habe ich ein wenig Ko'pfweh. *Pretty well; only I have a little headache.*

Das thut mir leid; es iſt doch nicht ſchlimm? *I am sorry for that; it isn't bad, I hope?*

O nein! es wird auch ſchon beſſer. *Oh no; it is getting better, too, already.*

Aber wo gehen Sie jetzt hin? *But where are you going now?*

Ich gehe nur ſpazie'ren; kommen Sie mit. *I am only taking a walk; come along.*

Sehr gern; aber ſagen Sie mir erſt, wie viel Uhr es iſt. *With pleasure; but tell me first what time it is.*

Oh, Sie haben noch Zeit genug; es iſt erſt halb neun. *Oh, you have still time enough; it is only half-past eight.*

Schönes Wetter heute, nicht wahr? *Fine weather to-day, isn't it?*

Prächtig; wir haben nur ſelten ſolche He'rbſttage. *Splendid; we but rarely have such autumn days.*

Sehen Sie nur dorthi'n; iſt das nicht eine herrliche Ausſicht? *Just look yonder; isn't that a glorious view?*

Wu'nderſchö'n! ich glaube, ich könnte ſie ſtu'ndenla'ng betra'chten. *Wonderfully fine; I believe I could look at it for hours.*

Was treiben Sie denn eigentlich in der letzten Zeit? *What are you doing, pray, these days?*

Ich lerne jetzt Engliſch. Das iſt meine Hau'ptbeſchä'f-tigung. *I am learning English now. That is my principal occupation.*

Da haben Sie gewi'ß genu'g zu thun. Engliſch leſen iſt zwar leicht, aber die Au'sſpra'che iſt fü'rchterlich. *Then you certainly have enough to do. To be sure it is easy to read English, but the pronunciation is fearful.*

THE PARTS OF SPEECH AND THEIR VARIATIONS.

65. Inflection. Of the nine parts of speech—they are the same in German as in English—the article, noun, adjective, pronoun and verb are subject to inflection; that is, variation of form to denote different grammatical relations. The uninflected parts of speech, or 'particles,' are the adverb, preposition, conjunction and interjection.

66. Declension. The inflection of the article, noun, adjective and pronoun is called 'declension.' Declension shows how a word varies for gender, number and case.

67. Conjugation. The inflection of the verb is called 'conjugation'; it shows how a verb varies for voice, mode, tense, person and number.

68. Gender. There are three genders, the masculine, feminine and neuter, which may or may not correspond to the sex of the object designated.

1. For example, Weib, *woman*, is neuter, Stein, *stone*, is masculine, and Roſe, *rose*, is feminine. This gender which is out of relation to sex is sometimes called 'grammatical,' in distinction from 'natural,' gender.

69. Number. There are two numbers, the singular and the plural.

70. Case. There are four cases: the nominative, which is the case of the subject; the genitive, corresponding to the English possessive, or objective with *of;* the dative, corresponding to the English objective with *to* or *for*, and the accusative, which is the case of the direct object.

1. This is only a rough general statement. Each of the cases has its peculiar uses, which are expressed in English in various ways. (See §§ 241–72.)

71. Variations of the Verb. The verb has an active and a passive voice, and each voice has four modes, viz.: the indicative, the subjunctive, the conditional and the imperative. There are two infinitives and two participles, a present and a perfect. The indicative and subjunctive mode have each six tenses, viz.: the present, the preterite, the perfect, the pluperfect, the future and the future perfect. Each tense has two numbers, a singular and a plural, and each number has a first, second and third person.

THE ARTICLE.

72. The Definite Article. The definite article der is declined fully in the singular to agree with the case and gender of its noun; in the plural it varies for case only, not for gender. The declension is as follows:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
Nom., *the,*	der	die	das	die
Gen., *of the,*	des	der	des	der
Dat., *to the,*	dem	der	dem	den
Acc., *the,*	den	die	das	die

1. Certain case-forms of der often combine with certain prepositions into one word. Thus we have am for an dem, im for in dem, zur for zu der, aufs for auf das, etc.

2. The use of der corresponds in general to that of *the*, but with many exceptions. Sometimes it is used where English does not use *the*, and again it is omitted where *the* is required. Often it takes the place of an English possessive. (See Part II, §§ 223-9.)

73. The Indefinite Article. The indefinite article ein, *a, an*, is declined in the singular only, the forms being as follows:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom., *a,*	ein	eine	ein
Gen., *of a,*	eines	einer	eines
Dat., *to a,*	einem	einer	einem
Acc., *a,*	einen	eine	ein

1. In the phrases ein paar, *a few*, and ein wenig, *a little*, ein is uninflected; e. g., in ein paar Minuten, *in a few minutes.*

2. The use of ein corresponds in the main to that of *a*, but it is sometimes omitted where *a* is required in English.

EXERCISE IV.

READING LESSON: SENTENCES SHOWING THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

[Learn the present indicative of haben, *to have*, and of ſein, *to be*, viz.: ich habe, *I have;* du haſt, *thou hast;* er hat, *he has;* wir haben, *we have;* ihr habt, *ye have;* ſie haben, *they have;* Sie haben, *you have;* ich bin, *I am;* du biſt, *thou art;* er iſt, *he is;* wir ſind, *we are;* ihr ſeid, *ye are;* ſie ſind, *they are;* Sie ſind, *you are.*]

Der Mann iſt ein Engländer[1]. — Das Buch iſt intereſſant. — Die Feder gehört[2] dem Lehrer. — Haben Sie einen[3] Bleiſtift oder eine[3] Feder in[4] der Taſche[5]? — Sehen[6] Sie den Mann da im Garten? — Der Mann iſt wohl Lehrer[7]; er hat immer[8] ein Buch in der Hand. — Die Zeit[9] iſt lang, aber das Leben[9] iſt kurz.

Vocabulary.

Note.—English cognates are printed in **black letter**, and put in [ ] when they are not in common use or do not properly translate the German cognate. Italics mean that the word so printed is borrowed from the same source as the German equivalent; *m.* means masculine noun; *f.*, feminine noun; *n.*, neuter noun. The other abbreviations will be readily understood.

aber, *conj.*, but, however.
Blei'ſti'ft, *m.*, lead-pencil.
Buch, *n.*, **book.**
da, *adv.*, there.
E'nglä'nder, *m.*, Englishman.
Feder[10], *f.*, pen, **feather.**
Garten, *m.*, **garden**, [yard].
gehören, *v.* (*dat.*), belong to.
Hand, *f.*, **hand.**
immer, *adv.*, always.
in, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), in, into.
intereſſa'nt, *adj.*, *interesting.*
kurz, *adj.*, short, [*curt*].
lang, *adj.*, **long.**
Leben, *n.*, life, [**live**].
Lehrer, *m.*, teacher.
Mann, *m.*, **man.**
oder, *conj.*, or.
ſehen, *v.*, **see.**
Taſche, *f.*, pocket.
und, *conj.*, **and.**
wohl, *adv.*, probably, I presume, **well.**
Zeit[10], *f.*, time, [**tide**].

Notes. — [1] **Engländer**; pronounce E'ng-lä'nder without slurring the ä; not Ing-länder, nor Ing-gländer. — [2] **gehört,** *belongs to;* the verb is 3. pers. sing., and governs the dat. — [3] **einen, eine**; the article has to be repeated because the nouns are of different gender. — [4] **in**; in governs the dat. when it means *in*, the acc. when it means *into*. — [5] **in der Taſche,** *in* your *pocket;* der takes the place of an Eng. possessive, there being no doubt as to whose pocket is meant. So one says: ich habe es in der Taſche, *I have it in* my *pocket.* This use of der is most common with nouns denoting a part of the body, or of the clothing, or a near relative. — [6] **Sehen Sie,** *do you see;* German gets along without an auxiliary corresponding to our *do*. — [7] **Lehrer,** a *teacher;* a noun denoting vocation and standing alone in the predicate is used without ein. — [8] **hat immer**; note that the German says *has always* instead of *always has*. — [9] **die Zeit, das Leben,** not the *time*, the *life*, but simply *time, life.* Der is commonly used with any noun having a general or abstract sense (the so-called 'generic article'). Die Zeit might, however, mean the *time* if it referred to a particular time. — [10] **Feder, Zeit;** observe the cognates *feather, tide.* Cognates have regular correspondences of sound; e. g., Ger. d corresponds *regularly* to Eng. *th*, as in du = *thou*, and Ger. initial z to Eng. *t*, as in zwei = *two*. Let the learner discover other similar rules for himself. (See Appendix II.)

THE NOUN.

74. Variations of the Noun. The declension of a noun shows how it varies its form for case and number. The endings of declension are applied to the 'stem,' which for practical purposes may be regarded as identical with the nominative. The nominative never has a case-ending.

1. The plural of some nouns is further characterized by umlaut of the root-vowel, as in Baum, *tree*, but Bäume, *trees*. A few such umlauted plurals exist in modern English, as *foot–feet, mouse–mice*. In German they are far more numerous.

2. Nouns are divided into declensions with reference to their form and gender. It is of importance to remember the gender of every noun learned.

75. The Determination of Gender. The gender of a noun depends, first, upon its *meaning*. Names of males, of the seasons, months and days of the week are in general masculine. Names of females, flowers, trees and German rivers are mostly feminine, and names of metals and countries are mainly neuter. But these rules are not without exception.

1. If a noun has more than one syllable its gender can often be told with certainty from its *ending*. The most helpful rules of this kind will be given as they are needed.

2. In very many cases, however, particularly of monosyllables, the gender of a noun cannot be told either from its meaning or from its form, but must be learned from the dictionary.

3. Compound nouns have the gender of their final element; e. g., der Fruchtgarten, *the fruit-garden;* die Gartenfrucht, *the garden-fruit*. But there are a few exceptions to this rule.

4. Some words have two genders, sometimes with difference of meaning; e. g., das or der Pult, *the desk;* der Thor, *the fool;* das Thor, *the gate.*

DECLENSION.

76. Systems of Declension. There are three declensions, the Strong, the Weak and the Mixed, the basis of classification being as follows:

1. A noun is of the Strong Declension if its genitive singular has the ending (e)s, or no ending at all, and its nominative plural is *not* formed by means of the ending (e)n.

2. A noun is of the Weak Declension if its genitive singular has the ending (e)n, or no ending at all, and its nominative plural the ending (e)n.

3. A noun is of the Mixed Declension if its genitive singular has the ending (e)s and its nominative plural the ending (e)n.

77. General Rules. The following general rules, applicable to all declensions alike, will be helpful:

1. Feminine nouns do not vary in the singular.

2. The dative plural always ends in n.

3. The nominative and accusative singular of a strong noun are always alike.

4. The nominative, genitive and accusative plural of any noun are always alike.

78. Classes of Strong Nouns. Nouns of the strong declension are subdivided, with reference to the formation of the nominative plural, into three classes, the First Class having no ending in the nominative plural, the Second Class the ending e, and the Third Class the ending er.

First Class, Strong Declension.

79. Membership. The first class embraces: (1) all masculine and neuter nouns ending in el, en, er, together with the two feminines Mutter and Tochter; (2) diminutives in chen and lein, which are always neuter; (3) neuter nouns having the prefix ge and the suffix e.

1. Some additional members of the first class, of less importance to remember, are mentioned in Part II, § 274. Note that the class contains, in general, no monosyllables, no words accented on the last syllable, and only two feminines.

80. The Singular Cases. The genitive singular adds s (never es) to the nominative; the other cases have no distinctive ending, but are like the nominative.

81. The Plural Cases. Most nouns of the first class have the nominative plural like the nominative singular, as das Fenster, *the window*, die Fenster, *the windows;* der Bürger, *the citizen*, die Bürger, *the citizens.* A certain few, however, modify the root-vowel, as der Vater, *the father*, die Väter, *the fathers;* der Vogel, *the bird*, die Vögel, *the birds.*

1. The nouns that have or may have umlaut as a plural-sign number nearly thirty. The list * embraces the most of the modifiable masculines, the two feminines Mutter and Tochter, and one neuter, viz., Kloster, *convent.*

2. The dative plural adds n unless the stem already ends in n; thus from Vogel the dative plural is Vögeln, but from Mädchen, Mädchen.

---

* For word-lists that are useful for reference, but do not need to be committed to memory, see Part II.

82. Examples.

1. Without plural-sign: Kaſten, *box;* Gebäude, *building;* Fräulein, *young lady, Miss.*

Singular.

Nom.	der Kaſten	das Gebäude	das Fräulein
Gen.	des Kaſtens	des Gebäudes	des Fräuleins
Dat.	dem Kaſten	dem Gebäude	dem Fräulein
Acc.	den Kaſten	das Gebäude	das Fräulein

Plural.

Nom.	die Kaſten	die Gebäude	die Fräulein
Gen.	der Kaſten	der Gebäude	der Fräulein
Dat.	den Kaſten	den Gebäuden	den Fräulein
Acc.	die Kaſten	die Gebäude	die Fräulein

2. With umlaut as plural-sign: Vater, *father;* Mutter, *mother;* Kloſter, *convent.*

Singular.

Nom.	der Vater	die Mutter	das Kloſter
Gen.	des Vaters	der Mutter	des Kloſters
Dat.	dem Vater	der Mutter	dem Kloſter
Acc.	den Vater	die Mutter	das Kloſter

Plural.

Nom.	die Väter	die Mütter	die Klöſter
Gen.	der Väter	der Mütter	der Klöſter
Dat.	den Vätern	den Müttern	den Klöſtern
Acc.	die Väter	die Mütter	die Klöſter

EXERCISE V.

READING LESSON*: STRONG NOUNS, FIRST CLASS.

Ich ſchreibe[1] diesmal[2] aus einem Dörfchen[3] im Harzgebirge.[4] Ich beſuche[5] hier einen Onkel, einen Bruder[6] des Vaters.[7] Die Bewohner des Dörfchens ſind meiſtens Arbeiter. Der Onkel iſt

* From this point on the reading lessons will take, for the most part, the form of letters, or extracts from letters, which may be thought of as written by a German-American boy who goes to Germany for study and travel.

Schriftſteller[8] und wohnt nur im Sommer hier. Das Leben der Dorfbewohner iſt nicht ſehr intereſſant. Ich gehe morgen nach' Göttingen.[10]

EXERCISE V a.

1. Ich bin Arbeiter. 2. Er iſt Schriftſteller. 3. Er wohnt in einem Dörfchen. 4. Der Sommer im Gebirge iſt ſehr intereſſant. 5. Das Leben in einem Kloſter iſt nicht ſehr intereſſant. 6. Wir ſind Brüder. 7. Der Kaſten gehört einem Arbeiter. 8. Die Kaſten gehören den Arbeitern. 9. Gehen Sie morgen nicht ins Gebirge? 10. Hat das Fräulein eine Mutter? 11. Haben Sie einen Bruder? 12. Ich habe einen Bruder, aber er wohnt nicht hier.

EXERCISE V b.

1. He is a workingman. 2. He is a brother of the author. 3. The building there is a convent. 4. The buildings there are convents. 5. The young ladies live in a convent. 6. The young lady is going into a convent.[11] 7. The father of the young lady is an author. 8. I am visiting a brother of my[12] mother. 9. I am going into the mountains tomorrow.[13] 10. The little villages here in the mountains are very interesting.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The abbreviation *s.* after a noun means 'strong'; *w.*, 'weak'; *mx.*, 'mixed.' The figure gives the class. If a noun has umlaut as plural-sign the fact will always be indicated. Thus Bruder, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ü), is to be read: Bruder, masculine noun, strong declension, first class, plural Brüder.

A'rbei'ter, *m. s. 1*, workingman.
aus, *prep. (dat.)*, from, out of.
beſu'chen, *v.*, visit, [-seek, beseech].
Bewo'hner, *m. s. 1*, inhabitant.
Bruder, *m. s. 1 (pl.* ü), brother.
diesmal, *adv.*, this time, [-mole].
Do'rfbewo'hner, *m. s. 1*, villager.
Dörfchen, *n. s. 1*, little village, [thorp-ſ.

Gebi'rge, *n. s. 1*, mountains; Ha'rzgebi'rge, Harz Mts.
gehen, *v.*, **go.**
hier, *adv.*, **here.**
Leben, *n. s. 1*, life, [**live**].
meiſtens, *adv.*, **most**-ly.[14]
Morgen, *m. s. 1*, morning; *as adv.*, morgen, to-**morrow.**
nach, *prep. (dat.)*, **after**, to, [**nigh**].
nicht, *adv.*, not, [**naught**].
nur, *adv.*, only, just.
Onkel, *m. s. 1*, *uncle.*
ſchreiben, *v.*, write, [*shrive, scribe*].
Schri'ftſte'ller, *m. s. 1*, writer, **author.**
ſehr, *adv.*, very, [**sore**].
Sommer, *m. s. 1*, **summer.**
wohnen, *v.*, dwell, live.

NOTES.— [1] **Ich ſchreibe,** *I write.* The verb-form given in the vocabulary is always the infinitive, which generally ends in en. To get the stem of the present tense, drop the en; then add e to the stem for the 1. pers. sing., t for the 3. pers. sing., and en for the 1. or 3. pers. plu. Thus, ich ſchreibe, *I write;* er ſchreibt, *he writes;* wir ſchreiben, *we write;* ſie ſchreiben, *they write* — [2] **diesmal;** note the cognate of mal. The parent-word meant *spot, mark, birth-mark, thing to remember,* or *remember by;* hence, in German, *occasion, time.*— [3] **Dörfchen,** diminutive of Dorf, *village,* which is cognate with *thorp,* now preserved in proper names only. Observe that the suffixes chen and lein when appended to a noun cause umlaut of the root-vowel. The suffix chen is cognate with *kin* in *lambkin.*— [4] **Gebirge,** from Berg, *mountain.* The prefix ge here denotes a number or mass taken together; hence 'collection of mountains,' 'mountain-range.'— [5] **Ich beſuche,** *I am visiting;* German has not the 'progressive' tense-forms of English, so that, e. g., ich gehe must be translated by *I go,* or by *I am going,* according to the connection.— [6] **Bruder,** in apposition with Onkel, with which it must agree in case.— [7] **des Vaters,** MY *father* (Ex. IV, n. 5).— [8] **Schriftſteller,** A *writer* (Ex. IV, n. 7).— [9] **nach** translates Eng. *to* before names of places.— [10] **Göttingen,** a well-known university town of north-central Germany. Proper names that are the same in English as in German will not be given in the vocabularies. The inflection of proper names is a subject by itself; they are not included in the three declensions.— [11] **into a convent;** idiom requires ins, instead of in ein.— [12] **my;** see Ex. IV, n. 5.— [13] **to-morrow;** the adv. morgen comes directly after the verb.— [14] **most**-ly; this mode of printing means that the root meiſt is cognate with *most,* while the ending ens is not cognate with the ending *ly.*

EXERCISE VI.

Colloquy.*

I.

Wer iſt das Fräulein im Garten dort?
Das iſt Fräulein Bertha,[1] die Tochter des Gärtners.
Und das Mädchen da am Fenſter des Häuschens — wer iſt ſie?
Sie iſt auch eine Tochter des Gärtners; er hat zwei Töchter.
Kennen Sie[2] die Mutter der Mädchen?
Nur ein wenig; aber ich kenne den Vater ſehr gut.

II.

Who lives in the cottage yonder?
That is the gardener's cottage.
And who are the young ladies at the window?
They are[3] the gardener's daughters.[4]
Do you know the girls?
Only a little; but I know the father and mother[5] very well.[6]

EXERCISE VI a.

1. Wer wohnt in dem Häuschen? 2. Wer ſind Sie? 3. Wer ſind ſie? 4. Wer iſt ſie? 5. Der Garten gehört dem Kloſter. 6. Die Gärten gehören den Bewohnern des Dörfchens. 7. Kennen Sie das Mädchen? 8. Hat der Gärtner eine Tochter? 9. Die zwei Mädchen ſind Töchter des Gärtners. 10. Wer geht[7] da im Garten? 11. Sie geht in den Garten. 12. Das Mädchen hat zwei Brüder. 13. Wir haben ein Sommerhäuschen im Garten. 14. Der Gärtner iſt nicht nur Gärtner; er iſt auch ein wenig[8] Schriftſteller.

---

* The 'colloquies' are divided, in each case, into two parts. The first, or German-English part, will serve first as a reading lesson in colloquial German. After it has been read and translated, it should be committed to memory and repeated frequently until the German forms of expression come fluently from the tongue. The second part is to be put into German.

EXERCISE VIb.

1. The girls are daughters of a workingman. 2. The girl is in the garden. 3. The little house has only two windows. 4. The life of a gardener is very interesting. 5. Do you know the girl's brother? 6. We have a cottage in the mountains. 7. The young ladies are daughters of a gardener. 8. The girl's father is an Englishman. 9. The father and mother of the girl are yonder in the garden. 10. I know the mother but not the father.

VOCABULARY.

an, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*,[9] on, by, at.
auch, *adv.*, also, too, [eke].
das, *pron. (dem.)*, that.
dort, *adv.*, yonder, there.
Fenſter, *n. s. 1*, window.
Garten, *m. s. 1 (pl. ä)*, garden.
Gärtner, *m. s. 1*, gardener.
gut, *adj.*, good; *as adv.*, well.
Häuschen, *n. s. 1*, little house, cottage.
kennen, *v.*, know, [ken].
Mädchen, *n. s. 1*, girl, maid-en.
Sie, *pron.*, you; ſie, she, they.
Tochter, *f. s. 1 (pl. ö)*, daughter.
wenig, *adj.*, little; ein wenig, a little.
wer, *pron. (inter.)*, who.
zwei, *num.*, two.

NOTES.— [1] **Fräulein Bertha**, *Fräulein Bertha*, rather than *Miss Bertha*. Pronounce Bertha without slurring the a (see also § 16, 1). [2] **Kennen Sie**, *do you know* (lit., *know you*). Sie is used for *you* in speaking to any one who is not a relative nor a very intimate friend. It takes its verb in the 3. pers. pl. Notice, therefore: Sie kennen, *you know;* ſie kennen, *they know;* ſie kennt, *she knows*. [3] **They are,** ſie ſind, or, better, das ſind, *those are*. Das, though neut. sing., can be used without reference to the gender or number of the predicate noun. [4] **the gardener's daughters;** either des Gärtners Töchter, or die Töchter des Gärtners, or, making a compound, die Gärtnerstöchter, but not die Gärtners Töchter. So above, *the gardener's cottage* = des Gärtners Häuschen, or das Häuschen des Gärtners, but never das Gärtners Häuschen. [5] **the father and mother;** der must be repeated (see Ex. IV, n. 3).— [6] **very well,** ſehr gut, rather than ſehr wohl.— [7] **geht;** here = *is walking*. [8] **ein wenig,** *a little bit of, on a small scale*.— [9] **an;** when a prep. is given as governing both dat. and acc., that does not mean that either case can be used at pleasure. The dat. is used in answer to the question 'where'? and the acc. in answer to the question 'whither'?

SECOND CLASS, STRONG DECLENSION.

83. Membership. The second class embraces: (1) a very large number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly masculine, but with a few feminines and some neuters; (2) nouns ending in ig, ing, ling, nis, ſal, and some other not very common suffixes.

1. The phrase 'monosyllabic nouns' must be understood to include compounds in which the final element would belong to this class if uncompounded; e. g., Zu'fall, *accident*, and Vo'rſtadt, *suburb*, as well as Fall, *case*, and Stadt, *city*.

2. Nouns in ig and ling are masculine; those in nis and ſal are mainly neuter, but a few are feminine.

3. This class is, then, pre-eminently the class of monosyllabic masculines.

84. The Genitive and Dative Singular. The genitive has the ending es or s; the dative the ending e or no ending at all.

1. The ending es is used regularly with monosyllables, but *may* always be reduced to simple s unless the stem ends in an *s*-sound (s, ß, z, tz, ſch); thus Baum, *tree*, has usually Baumes, but very often Baums, while Fluß, *river*, always has Fluſſes. The ending s belongs regularly to polysyllables that do not end in an *s*-sound; thus König, *king*, Jüngling, *youth*, have Königs, Jünglings.

2. The use of e in the dative is largely optional, being dependent on habit or the sense of euphony. In general, monosyllables are apt to have it, polysyllables to be without it. See § 275 and 275, *a*.

85. Formation of the Plural. The nominative plural always has the ending e, with umlaut of the root-vowel in some words, without it in others. The dative plural adds n to the nominative plural.

1. Of the monosyllabic nouns all the feminines and the most of the masculines have umlaut in the plural if the vowel admits it. Of the neuters only three or four have umlaut. For lists see § 275.

a. Nouns having aa or oo in the stem drop one vowel when they undergo umlaut, as Saal, *hall*, pl. Säle; Boot, *boat*, pl. Boote or Böte.

2. Nouns in nis double the s in inflection; e. g., Bündnis, *covenant*, gen. Bündniſſes, pl. Bündniſſe.

86. Examples.

1. Without umlaut in the plural: Tag, *day;* Monat, *month;* Jahr, *year.*

Singular.

Nom.	der Tag	der Monat	das Jahr
Gen.	des Tages	des Monats	des Jahres
Dat.	dem Tage	dem Monat	dem Jahre
Acc.	den Tag	den Monat	das Jahr

Plural.

Nom.	die Tage	die Monate	die Jahre
Gen.	der Tage	der Monate	der Jahre
Dat.	den Tagen	den Monaten	den Jahren
Acc.	die Tage	die Monate	die Jahre

a. So, also, das Bündnis, *covenant*, gen. sing. des Bündniſſes, nom. pl. die Bündniſſe; die Wildnis, *wilderness*, gen. sing. der Wildnis (§ 77, 1), nom. pl. die Wildniſſe; das or die Trübſal, *affliction*, gen. of das Trübſal, des Trübſals, gen. of die Trübſal, der Trübſal, nom. pl. of either, die Trübſale.

2. With umlaut in the plural: Baum, *tree;* Nacht, *night;* Chor, *choir.*

Singular.

Nom.	der Baum	die Nacht	das Chor
Gen.	des Baumes	der Nacht	des Chores
Dat.	dem Baume	der Nacht	dem Chore
Acc.	den Baum	die Nacht	das Chor

Plural.

Nom.	die Bäume	die Nächte	die Chöre
Gen.	der Bäume	der Nächte	der Chöre
Dat.	den Bäumen	den Nächten	den Chören
Acc.	die Bäume	die Nächte	die Chöre

EXERCISE VII.

87. Rule of Order I: The Inverted Order. If a sentence begins with any other element than the subject, the subject must follow the verb; e. g., da iſt er, *there he is;* das verſtehe ich nicht, *that I do not understand;* ſchön iſt ſie nicht, *beautiful she is not.*

1. This order, verb-subject, is called 'inverted,' the 'normal' order being subject-verb, as in er iſt da; ich verſtehe das nicht.

2. Inversion occurs in English, e. g., in *said I, great is Mammon;* but while it is somewhat rare in English, it is exceedingly common in German. German tends to begin the sentence with that element which is most prominent in the speaker's thought; and when this is done and the word so put first does not happen to be the subject, inversion must follow. In translating do not imitate the German inverted order at the expense of English idiom.

3. The general connectives meaning *and, but* and *for* constitute an important exception to the above rule. They do not affect the order.

READING LESSON: STRONG NOUNS, SECOND CLASS.

Ich bin[1] nun zwei Tage[2] in Göttingen. Ich habe ein Zimmer mit einem Ofen, einem Tiſche und ein paar[3] Stühlen. Durchs Fenſter ſieht[4] man einen Park mit allerlei Bäumen. Die Stadt liegt an[5] einem Fluſſe. Auf[5] dem Fluſſe ſieht man heute ein paar Kähne.[6] Wir ſind am Anfang des Herbſtes, aber die Luft iſt noch immer[7] warm.

EXERCISE VII a.

1. Haben Sie einen Kahn? 2. Ich habe zwei Kähne auf dem Fluſſe. 3. Wer iſt das in dem Kahne dort? 4. Der Stadtpark liegt am Fluſſe. 5. Wir haben einen Tiſch und ein paar Stühle im Garten. 6. Der Kaſten liegt auf dem Tiſche. 7. Im Herbſte gehen wir nach der Stadt. 8. Am Anfang des Sommers gehen wir ins Gebirge. 9. Ich bin nun zwei Jahre und einen Monat in Göttingen. 10. Im Park ſieht man allerlei Bäume. 11. Wir haben nur noch ein paar Tage des Herbſtes. 12. Die Arbeiter wohnen meiſtens in den Städten.

EXERCISE VII b.

1. The days are long in the summer. 2. In the summer the nights are short. 3. I write this time from the city. 4. I am living in a little house by the river. 5. In the garden are tables and chairs. 6. I am writing at a table in the garden. 7. Yonder one sees the river and all sorts of boats. 8. One sees also the beginning of the park. 9. Father has a boat on the river. 10. In a few days I am going into the mountains.

VOCABULARY.

a'llerlei', *adj.*, all sorts of.
A'nfa'ng, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä), beginning.
auf, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, on, up-on.
durch, *prep. (acc.)*, through.
Fluß, *m. s. 2 (pl.* -üſſe), river.
Herbſt, *m. s. 2*, autumn, [harvest].
heute, *adv.*, to-day.

Kahn, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä), boat, row-boat.
liegen, *v.*, lie, be situated.
Luft, *f. s. 2 (pl.* ü), air.
man, *pron. (indef.)*, one, [man].
mit, *prep. (dat.)*, with.
noch, *adv.*, yet, still (of time).
nun, *adv.*, now, well.
Ofen, *m. s. 1 (pl.* ö), stove, [oven].
Paar, *n. s. 2, pair;* ein paar, a few.
Park, *m. s. 2, park.*
Stadt, *f. s. 2 (pl.* ä), city.
Stuhl, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ü), chair, [stool].
Tisch, *m. s. 2*, table, [dish].
warm, *adj.*, **warm.**
Zimmer, *n. s. 1*, room, [timber].

NOTES.—[1] **Ich bin;** translate *I have been.* German uses the present tense, generally with an adverb referring to present time, to denote that which has been and still is. In such a case English uses the perfect.—[2] **Tage,** acc. of measure · duration of time is expressed by the acc.—[3] **ein paar;** §§ 4, 1, *a* and 73, 1.—[4] **sieht,** *sees;* from sehen, which changes its root-vowel in the 2. and 3. pers. sing. See §184.—[5] **an, auf;** both these words mean *on,* auf in the sense of *over and upon,* and an in that of *close to.* Thus a boat is auf dem Flusse, a city an dem Flusse (on the spelling Fluß-Flusse, as compared with Fuß-Fuße, see § 2, 3).—[6] **Kähne,** *row-boats;* not cognate with *canoe,* which is a Spanish-Indian word.—[7] **noch immer;** the two words together mean *still, even now;* said of that which has been and still is.

EXERCISE VIII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Der Park ist schön am Abend,[1] nicht wahr[2]?

Ja wohl[3]; setzen wir uns[4] einen Augenblick.[5] Da ist eine Bank unter dem Baume dort.

Sehr gern[6]; aber gehen Sie nicht noch heute abend[7] ins Konzert[8]?

Wohl nicht[9]; die Plätze sind zu teuer. Am Schlusse[10] des Monats bin ich immer arm.

Das ist also[11] das Hindernis! Nun, zum Glück[12] habe ich zwei Billette.[13] Kommen Sie nur mit.[14]

II.

It is lovely in the park to-night, isn't it[3]?

Yes indeed; let[4] us sit down a moment. There are chairs yonder.

Very well[15]; but only a moment.[5] I am going to the concert yet this evening.[16]

Have you a seat already?[17]

Yes, I have two tickets. Pray come along.

EXERCISE VIII a.

1. Die Abendkonzerte im Park ſind ſehr gut. 2. Ich komme in einem Augenblick. 3. Haben Sie ein Billet zum Konzert? 4. Ein Arbeiter hat allerlei Hinderniſſe im Leben. 5. Der Kaſten liegt unter dem Tiſche. 6. Die Plätze ſind ſehr teuer, nicht wahr? 7. Am Schluſſe des Tages ſieht man allerlei Arbeiter auf den Bänken im Park. 8. Kommen Sie mit uns in den Park; es iſt ſehr ſchön unter den Bäumen. 9. Ich bin im Zimmer nur am Tage, nicht in der Nacht.

EXERCISE VIII b.

1. In the daytime the air is very warm. 2. He lives two months of the year in a little house on the river. 3. I see Fräulein Bertha yonder under the trees. 4. We are already at the beginning of the end. 5. Come[14] along to the concert; luckily I have two seats. 6. Are the tickets very expensive? 7. There is[18] still a place at the table. 8. Here you have a chair and yonder are two seats on[19] the bench. 9. I see difficulties right at[20] the beginning.

VOCABULARY.

Abend, *m. s. 2*, even-ing.
alſo, *adv.*, so, then, [also].
arm, *adj.*, poor.
Au'genbli'd, *m. s. 2*, moment.
Bank, *f. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, bench.
Bille't, *n. s. 2 (pl. –tte)*, ticket.
es, *pron.*, it, there.
gern, *adv.*, willingly, gladly.
Glück, *n. s. (no plural)*, luck, fortune.

Hi'ndernis, *n. s. 2* **hindr-ance, difficulty.**
ja, *adv.*, yes.
kommen, *v.*, **come.**
Konze'rt, *n. s. 2, concert.*
Platz, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä), place,* **seat.**
Schluß, *m. s. 2 (pl.* Schlüſſe*),* **end, close.**
ſchon, *adv.*, already, quite.
ſchön, *adj.*, **beautiful, lovely,** [**sheen**]
ſetzen, *v.*, **set, seat.**
teuer, *adj.*, **dear,** expensive.
uns, *pron. (dat. and acc.)*, us.
unter, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, **under,** among.
wahr, *adj.*, true.
zu, *prep. (dat.)*, **to, at,** for; *as adv.*, **too.**

NOTES.—[1] **am Abend,** *in the evening;* so, also, am Tage, *in the daytime.*—[2] **nicht wahr,** *isn't it?* for iſt es nicht wahr, *is it not true?* A very common phrase, implying that an affirmative answer is expected.—[3] **Ja wohl,** *yes indeed;* wohl is often added to break the abruptness of a simple ja.—[4] **ſetzen wir uns,** *let us sit down;* literally, *seat we us.* The verb is a subjunctive, 1. pers. pl., best translated by *let* —[5] **Augenblick,** acc. of measure.—[6] **Sehr gern,** *all right, very well.*—[7] **heute abend,** *this evening, to-night.*—[8] **ins Konzert,** *to the concert;* note the preposition and the *case* (Ex. VI, n. 9).—[9] **Wohl nicht,** *probably not;* the wohl implying uncertainty.—[10] **Schluſſe;** what is the quantity of the u?—[11] **Das iſt alſo,** *so that is;* remember that alſo *never* means *also.*—[12] **zum Glück,** *luckily;* literally, *for luck.* Glück is for Ge-lück; it is only -lück that is cognate with *luck.*—[13] **Billette;** t doubled to mark the preceding vowel as short (§ 14, 2, and 34, 1, *a*). Pronounce *Bil-yét-e.*—[14] **Kommen Sie nur mit,** *pray come along.* The verb is imperative, 2. pers. pl. With this form of address Sie cannot be omitted as *you* is in English. Nur with an imperative means *just* or *pray.*—[15] **Very well,** not ſehr wohl, nor ſehr gut (see note 6 above).—[16] **I am going,** etc. The order is: *I go yet this evening to, etc.*—[17] **already;** the order: *Have you already, etc.*—[18] **There is;** da iſt if 'there' means 'in that place,' otherwise es iſt.—[19] **on,** auf; see Ex. VII, n. 5.—[20] **right at,** ſchon an.

THIRD CLASS, STRONG DECLENSION.

88. Membership. The third class embraces: (1) a large number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly neuter, but with a few masculines; (2) all nouns in tum; (3) a few neuters of foreign origin with accent on the ultima; e. g., Spita'l, *hospital*, pl. Spitä'ler.

1. Note that this class contains no feminines. It is pre-eminently the class of monosyllabic neuters. See § 276, 1.

2. Nouns in tum (cognate with *dom* in *kingdom*) are, with two or three exceptions, neuter.

89. The Genitive and Dative Singular. The genitive has the ending es or s, the dative the ending e or no ending at all, precisely as in the second class.

90. Formation of the Plural. The nominative plural always has the ending er, to which the dative adds n. The vowel preceding er always has umlaut, if capable of it, nouns in tum making the plural in tümer.

1. A number of nouns belong both to the third and to the second class, having two plurals, one in er, the other in e, usually with difference of meaning; thus Band, n., means either *bond* or *ribbon*, but in the plural Bande means *bonds*, while Bänder means *ribbons*. See § 276.

91. Examples. Mann, *man;* Haus, *house;* Altertum, *antiquity.*

Singular.

Nom.	der Mann	das Haus	das Altertum
Gen.	des Mannes	des Hauses	des Altertums
Dat.	dem Manne	dem Hause	dem Altertum
Acc.	den Mann	das Haus	das Altertum

Plural.

Nom.	die Männer	die Häuser	die Altertümer
Gen.	der Männer	der Häuser	der Altertümer
Dat.	den Männern	den Häusern	den Altertümern
Acc.	die Männer	die Häuser	die Altertümer

EXERCISE IX.

READING LESSON: STRONG NOUNS, THIRD CLASS.

Die Leute hier im Hause[1] sind sehr freundlich. Der Wirt ist Kaufmann[2] und ein Mann von Geist und Gemüt. Also ist er natürlich ein Freund von Büchern[3] und Bildern. Er hat zwei Kinder, einen Sohn und eine Tochter. Ich war[4] gestern mit den

Kindern auf dem Lande[5] und besuchte[6] das Schloß eines Edelmanns. Vom Turme des Schlosses sieht man über Thäler und Wälder[7] bis ans Gebirge.

EXERCISE IX a.

1. Die Bücher auf dem Tische gehören einem Freunde des Hauses. 2. Da kommen zwei Männer durch den Wald. 3. Sie ist die Mutter von zwei Kindern. 4. Das Haus eines Edelmannes ist ein Schloß. 5. Edelleute sind nicht immer Kinder des Glückes und wohnen nicht immer in Schlössern. 6. Wer wohnt in den Häusern am Flusse? 7. Die Bewohner der Häuser sind meistens Arbeiter. 8. Der Anfang des Buches ist sehr interessant; den Schluß kenne ich noch nicht. 9. Das Bilderbuch gehört den Kindern. 10. Die Thäler und Wälder des Gebirglandes sind sehr schön im Herbste.

EXERCISE IX b.

1. That is the picture of a friend. 2. Those are pictures of[8] friends. 3. She has two sons and two daughters. 4. People of[8] intelligence are always friends of the country. 5. I see a few houses in the valley. 6. He has the intelligence of a man, the feeling of a child. 7. He has two castles in the country. 8. Do you see the castle yonder with the two towers? 9. The books and pictures belong to the man-of-the-house.[9] 10. Are you a friend of[8] children?

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—Since *all* nouns of the third class have umlaut in the plural, if possible, the modification of the vowel does not need to be specially indicated for words of that class.

Bild, *n. s. 3*, picture.
bis, *prep. (acc.)*, up to, until; bis an, clear to, as far as.
Buch, *n. s. 3*, **book**.
Edelmann, *m. s. 3*, noble-man.
Freund, *m. s. 2*, **friend**.
freundlich, *adj.*, **friendly**, kind.
Geist, *m. s. 3*, intelligence, spirit, **ghost**.
Gemüt, *n. s. 3*, feeling, soul.

geſtern, *adv.*, **yester-day.**
Kaufmann, *m. s. 3.*, merchant; [**chapman**].
Kind, *n. s. 3*, child.
Land, *n. s. 2–3*[10], **land**, country.
Leute, *pl. only*, people.
natürlich, *adv.*, *naturally*, of course.
Schloß, *n. s. 3 (pl. ¨ſſ)*, castle.
Sohn, *m. s. 2 (pl. ö)*, **son.**
Thal, *n. s. 3*, valley, **dale.**
Turm, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, tower.
über, *prep. (acc. and dat.)*, **over**, about.
von, *prep. (dat.)*, from, of.
Wald, *m. s. 3*, forest, [**wold**].
Wirt, *m. s. 2*, **landlord**, man-of-the-house.

NOTES.—[1] **Im Hauſe**, *in the house; at home* = zu Hauſe.—[2] **Kaufmann**; this and some other compounds of Mann have two plurals, one in ¨männer, the other in ¨leute, the latter being without reference to sex; thus Kaufmänner, *merchants, tradesmen;* Kaufleute, *tradespeople.*—[3] **von Büchern**, *of books;* von with a dat. may take the place of a gen., ein Freund von Büchern being = ein Freund der Bücher. One could not say ein Freund Bücher.—[4] **war**, *was;* preterite 1. and 3. pers. sing. of ſein, *to be.* See § 171.—[5] **auf dem Lande**, *in the country*, as opposed to *in the city.* Im Lande means *in the country* taken as a whole, including the cities.—[6] **beſuchte**, *visited;* pret. 1. and 3. pers. sing. of beſuchen. See § 174.—[7] **über Thäler und Wälder**; über takes the acc. here because the phrase answers the question 'whither'? (see Ex. VI, n. 9).—[8] **of**, von.—[9] **man-of-the-house**; words thus joined by hyphens are to be translated in German as one word.—[10] **Land**; the usual plural of Land is Länder; Lande is poetic, or used in compounds, as die Niederlande, *the Netherlands.*

EXERCISE X.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Wie ſpät iſt es wohl[1]? Gehen wir nicht bald nach Hauſe[2]?

Es iſt wohl[3] ziemlich ſpät; ich ſehe ſchon Lichter in der Stadt dort.

Ja, es wird[4] ſchon dunkel, und der Weg[5] durch den Wald iſt ziemlich lang.

Alſo gehen wir quer durch die Felder.

Sehr gern; aber was iſt das Ding dort am Rande des Holzes[6]?

Ich weiß nicht; ein Geſpenſt vielleicht.

Da biſt du wohl im Irrtum; für die Geiſter iſt es noch zu früh am Abend.

II.

Let us go[7] home; it is getting late.

Yes, there is a light in the little house yonder already.[8]

It is pretty dark in the woods; do you know[9] the way?

Not very well[10]; let us go across through the field.

Very well; but what is that thing yonder among[11] the leaves?

I do not know; perhaps it is a spook.

It is pretty early in the evening for spooks, isn't it?

EXERCISE X a.

1. Ich ſehe ein Licht durch die Blätter der Bäume. 2. Die Dinge auf dem Tiſche gehören den Kindern. 3. Gehen wir durchs Feld oder durch den Wald? 4. Ich ſehe Lichter in den Fenſtern des Schloſſes. 5. Ich kenne zwei Wege von hier nach der Stadt. 6. Das Buch hat allerlei Bilder am Rande der Blätter. 7. Es ſind allerlei Irrtümer in dem Buche. 8. Der Weg durchs Thal iſt ſehr gut bis an den Rand des Fluſſes. 9. Ich habe das Buch und die Bilder von einem Freunde. 10. Die Geiſter des Gebirges ſind freundlich.

EXERCISE X b.

1. I am going home. 2. Father is not at home. 3. Mother is in the house. 4. I see you know[12] very little of[13] books and pictures. 5. For the mother the children are the light of the house. 6. Do you know[9] the way through the fields? 7. The thing is among the books on the table. 8. What do you know[12] of[13] ghosts and spooks? 9. The spirit of the book is good, but it has a few errors. 10. How long is the way from here to[14] the edge of the woods?

Vocabulary.

bald, *adv.*, soon, [**bold**].
Blatt, *n. s. 3*, leaf, [**blade**].
Ding, *n. s. 2*, **thing**.
dunkel, *adj.*, dark.
Feld, *n. s. 3*, **field**.
früh, *adv., adj.*, early.
für, *prep. (acc.)*, **for**.
Geſpe'nſt, *n. s. 3*, ghost, spook.
Holz, *n. s. 3*, wood, forest.
Irrtum, *m. s. 3*, **error**.
Licht, *n. s. 3*, **light**.
quer, *adv.*, across.
Rand, *m. s. 3*, edge, border.
ſpät, *adv., adj.*, late.
vielleicht, *adv.*, perhaps.
was, *pron. (inter.)*, **what**.
Weg, *m. s. 2*, **way**.
werden, *v.*, become; es wird, it is becoming.
wie, *adv.*, how, as, [**why**].
wiſſen, *v.*, know; ich weiß, I know, [**to wit**].
ziemlich, *adv.*, pretty, tolerably.

Notes.—[1] **wohl**, *I wonder.*—[2] **nach Hauſe**, *home.*—[3] **wohl**, *probably, no doubt, I presume, I reckon, I guess.*—[4] **es wird**, *it is getting;* 3. pers. sing. pres. of werden, which is cognate with the verb *worth* in *woe worth the day;* i. e., *woe come unto the day.* [5] **Weg**; pronounce with long e; but there is an adverb weg, *away*, which has short e.—[6] **Holzes**; here = Wald, *woods*. The more common sense is *wood*, as a material.—[7] **Let us go**, gehen wir (see Ex. VIII, n. 4).—[8] **already**, ſchon; directly after iſt.—[9] **do you know**, kennſt du; the use of du in this exercise, instead of Sie, presupposes that the speakers are very intimate friends.—[10] **Not very well**, nicht ſehr gut; but in the next sentence *very well* = ſehr gern.—[11] **among**, unter, with dat.—[12] **you know**, du weißt.—[13] **of**, von.—[14] **to**, bis an, with acc.

The Weak Declension.

92. Membership. The weak declension embraces: (1) a considerable number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly feminine, but with a few masculines; (2) nearly all the polysyllabic feminines in the language; (3) masculines that end in e; (4) many foreign masculines that have the accent on the ultima.

1. There are no neuter nouns of the weak declension. While it contains a good many masculines, it is chiefly made up of polysyllabic feminines, the only nouns of the

latter class that do not belong to it being Mutter, Tochter, and a few in nis, ſal and kunſt.

93. A Rule of Gender. The suffixes ei, heit, keit, in, ſchaft and ung invariably form feminine nouns.

1. This rule covers a very large number of words. The ending heit, cognate with *hood* in *manhood*, forms a multitude of abstracts from adjectives, as Freiheit, *freedom*, from frei, *free;* keit has a similar function; in forms feminines that correspond to masculines, as König, *king*, Königin, *queen;* ſchaft is cognate with *ship* in *friendship* = Freundſchaft, and ung with *ing* in *warning* = Warnung.

2. The foreign suffixes ie, if and ion also form feminine nouns.

94. Formation of the Cases. Masculines add (e)n to the nominative singular to form all the other cases, singular and plural. Feminines add (e)n throughout the plural.

1. The case-ending is n if the noun ends in e, el, er or ar, otherwise it is en. But Herr, *gentleman, sir*, generally has in the singular Herrn, in the plural Herren.

2. Feminines in in have the plural in innen.

3. No weak noun takes umlaut as a plural-sign.

95. Examples. Menſch, *man, mankind;* Knabe, *boy;* Frau, *wife, Mrs.;* Blume, *flower.*

Singular.

N.	der Menſch	der Knabe	die Frau	die Blume
G.	des Menſchen	des Knaben	der Frau	der Blume
D.	dem Menſchen	dem Knaben	der Frau	der Blume
A.	den Menſchen	den Knaben	die Frau	die Blume

Plural.

N.	die Menſchen	die Knaben	die Frauen	die Blumen
G.	der Menſchen	der Knaben	der Frauen	der Blumen
D.	den Menſchen	den Knaben	den Frauen	den Blumen
A.	die Menſchen	die Knaben	die Frauen	die Blumen

1. So also der Stude'nt, *the student;* gen. des Studenten, dat. dem Studenten, acc. den Studenten, pl., in all cases, Studenten.

EXERCISE XI.

READING LESSON: WEAK NOUNS.

96. Rule of Order II: Position of Adverbs. In the normal order an adverb must not come between the subject and the verb; thus *I hardly know*, ich weiß kaum; *he never goes to church*, er geht nie in die Kirche.

1. An adverb of time usually takes precedence of other adverbs; thus *I knew him very well at that time*, ich kannte ihn damals ſehr gut; *he is usually at home evenings*, er iſt abends gewöhnlich zu Hauſe.

Ich bin[1] ſchon zehn Wochen in der Fremde,[2] und die Zeit vergeht mir ſehr ſchnell unter der Arbeit.[3] Ich habe täglich eine Sprachſtunde[4] und zwei Stunden wöchentlich in der Muſik. Für die Sprache habe ich einen Lehrer, für die Muſik eine Lehrerin.[5] Über die Familie,[6] beſonders über den Hausherrn[7] und die Kinder, ſchrieb[8] ich neulich ein paar Zeilen. Die Frau Wirtin[9] iſt eine Weltdame[10] und geht viel in Geſellſchaft.

EXERCISE XI a.

1. Ich habe Arbeit auf[11] zwei Wochen. 2. Das Leben des[12] Menſchen iſt kurz. 3. Der[12] Menſch iſt immer das Kind der Zeit. 4. Die[12] Menſchen ſind Kinder der Zeiten. 5. Wer iſt der Vater des Knaben? 6. Iſt die Dame eine Frau oder ein Fräulein? 7. Kennen Sie die Mutter der Knaben? 8. Es iſt die Zeit der[12] Blumen. 9. Die Dame iſt eine Freundin der

Familie. 10. Die Mädchen ſind Freundinnen der Muſik. 11. Die Familie geht nach zwei Wochen in die Fremde. 12. Das iſt Arbeit für eine Dame, nicht für einen Herrn. 13. Ich ſchreibe diesmal nur ein paar Zeilen; ich habe wenig Zeit.

EXERCISE XIb.

1. Work[13] is good for man.[13] 2. The lady is the mother of[14] ten children. 3. Two of[14] the ten children are boys. 4. The man-of-the-house is a friend of society.[15] 5. What do you know[15] of[14] the language of flowers[13]? 6. The time is too short for a music-lesson. 7. Well, how goes it with the language-lessons? 8. The boy's mother is a teacher.[16] 9. He is a student and knows[17] all sorts of languages. 10. The weeks pass very quickly; it is already the beginning of the autumn-time.

Vocabulary.

Arbeit, *f. w.*, work.
beſonders, *adv.*, especially.
Dame, *f. w.*, lady, *dame.*
Fami'lie, *f. w.*, *family.*
Fremde, *f. w.*, foreign land.
Geſellſchaft, *f. w.*, society.
Lehrer, *m. s. 1*, teacher.
mir, *pron. (dat.)*, to me, for me.
Muſi'k, *f. w.*, *music.*
neulich, *adv.*, lately, [**newly**].
o, *interj.*, O, oh.
ſchnell, *adj.*, swift; as *adv.*, swiftly.
Sprache, *f. w.*, **language.**
Stunde, *f. w.*, hour, lesson.
täglich, *adj.*, *adv.*, **daily.**
verge'hen, *v.*, pass, [**for(e)go**].
viel, *pron.*, *adj.*, *adv.*, much.
Welt, *f. w.*, **world.**
Woche, *f. w.*, **week.**
wöchentlich, *adv.*, **weekly.**
zehn, *num.*, **ten.**
Zeile, *f. w.*, line.
Zeit, *f. w.*, time, [**tide**].

Notes.— [1] **Ich bin (ſchon)**, *I have been* (see Ex. VII, n. 1).— [2] **in der Fremde**, *abroad.*— [3] **unter der Arbeit**, *at work, occupied as I am with work.*— [4] **Sprachſtunde**, *language-lesson;* a compound of Sprache (with e dropped) and Stunde.— [5] **Le'hreri'n**, *woman teacher*, Lehrer being

always a *man teacher*.—[6] **Familie**; pronounce Fa-mi'-li-e (§ 17, 2); über in the sense of *concerning, about*, always takes the acc.—[7] **Hausherrn**, *man-of-the-house*.—[8] **ſchrieb ich**, *I wrote*: inverted because an adverbial phrase precedes. The verb is pret. 1. pers. sing. of ſchreiben, *to write*. [9] **die Frau Wirtin**, *my landlady*: Herr and Frau often precede titles for courtesy's sake. When thus used they should not be translated. [10] **Weltdame**, *woman of the world*, i. e., *of fashion*.—[11] **auf**; here = *for*. It is thus used, with the acc., to denote extent of time, looking ahead.—[12] **des, der**; see Ex. IV. n. 9. Menſch = 'man' in distinction from animals; Mann = 'man' in distinction from women.—[13] Use the generic article (Ex. IV. n. 9).—[14] **of**, von. [15] **do you know**, wiſſen Sie, or weißt du.—[16] **teacher**, Lehrerin.—[17] **knows**, kennt.

EXERCISE XII

Colloquy.

I

Nun, was giebt es in der Zeitung?

Nicht viel; nur eine Menge[1] Kleinigkeiten.

Es iſt[2] doch wohl etwas darin über[3] Politik, über die Wahlen?

Sehr wenig; aber die Nachrichten deuten auf einen Sieg für die Demokraten.

Meinen Sie in der Nation überhaupt, oder nur in der Stadt?

Ich meine in der Nation; aber die Sache iſt noch nicht gewiß.

Wie groß iſt die Mehrheit der Demokraten hier in der Stadt?

Sie haben eine Mehrheit von etwa zweihundert Stimmen.

II.

I see you have a paper. How is[4] the election going?

The evening papers[5] have not much about politics.

But they surely have[6] reports from the city, have they not?

Oh yes; luck[7] is on the side[8] of the Democrats.

How large is the majority?

According[9] to the papers they have a majority of about two hundred votes.

EXERCISE XII a.

1. Die Mehrheit der Arbeiter ſind Demokraten. 2. Die Stadt hat etwa zehn Zeitungen, ein Abendblatt[10] und eine Menge Morgenblätter. 3. Es iſt die Zeit der Stadtwahlen, aber ich weiß ſehr wenig von der Politik. 4. Die Wege der Politik ſind meiſtens ſehr dunkel. 5. Hier ſind Blumen in Menge[11] und für eine Kleinigkeit zu haben.[12] 6. Der Friede iſt nicht immer ein Glück[13] im Leben der Nationen. 7. Es giebt eine Menge Geſellſchaften unter den Studenten. 8. Wie ſchnell vergehen die Tage und Wochen! 9. Die Nachricht von einem Siege der Arbeiter iſt gewiß nicht wahr. 10. Ich ſchreibe ein Buch über die Sprache der Kinder.

EXERCISE XII b.

1. There comes the boy with the evening paper. 2. Here are only a few lines about politics. 3. The inhabitants of the city are mostly Democrats. 4. I am a Democrat and the son of a Democrat. 5. Politics is not the affair of a boy. 6. That points to a victory for the workingmen, does it not? 7. He wrote[14] a mass of books about all sorts of things. 8. Are you on the side of the majority in the matter of the city-park? 9. There are[15] all sorts of people in the world. 10. Is there[16] a language of flowers[17]?

VOCABULARY.

darin', *adv.*, **therein**, in it.
Demokra't, *m. w.*, *democrat*.
deuten (auf, *acc.*), *v.*, point (to).
doch, *adv.*, yet, still, **though**.
etwa, *adv.*, about, approximately.
etwas, *pron. (indef.)*, something.
geben, *v.*, **give**; es giebt *(with acc.)*, there is, there are.
gewiß, *adj.*, certain; as *adv.*, certainly, to be sure.
groß, *adj.*, **great**.
hundert, *num.*, **hundred**.
Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*, trifle, small matter, triviality.
Mehrheit, *f. w.*, majority, [**more-hood, more-ness**].
meinen, *v.*, **mean**.

Menge, *f. w.*, mass, multitude.
Nachricht, *f. w.*, report, news, tidings.
Natio'n, *f. w.*, *nation.*
Politi'k, *f. w.*, *politics.*
Sache, *f. w.*, affair, thing, [**sake**].
Seite, *f. w.*, **side.**
Sieg, *m. s. 2*, victory.
Stimme, *f. w.*, voice, vote.
überhau'pt, *adv.*, in general, at large, [**over-head**].
Wahl, *f. w.*, choice, election.
Zeitung, *f. w.*, newspaper, [**tiding**].

NOTES.—[1] **Menge Kleinigkeiten,** *mass of trifles;* notice the absence of a prep. Kleinigkeiten is in apposition with Menge (see § 246, 1, *a*).—[2] **Es iſt doch wohl etwas,** *there is surely something;* doch wohl, *surely,* doch emphasizing the probability implied by wohl.—[3] **über Politik,** *on (about) politics.* Observe that the English plurals in *-ics*, e. g., *politics, physics, mathematics,* are not plural in German.—[4] **is . . . going,** geht (see Ex. V, n. 5).—[5] **evening paper,** Abendzeitung.—[6] **They surely have . . . have they not,** man hat doch wohl . . . nicht wahr?—[7] **luck,** das Glück.—[8] **on the side,** auf der Seite.—[9] **According to,** nach, with dat.—[10] **Abendblatt;** Blatt is a common word for *journal, gazette.*—[11] **in Menge,** *in abundance, in quantity.*—[12] **zu haben,** *to be had.*—[13] **Glück,** *piece of good fortune, blessing.*—[14] **He wrote,** er ſchrieb.—[15] **There are,** es giebt.—[16] **Is there,** giebt es.—[17] **language of flowers,** Sprache der Blumen, or Blumenſprache.

The Mixed Declension.

97. Membership. The mixed declension comprises a number of masculine and neuter nouns (no feminines) that inflect the singular after the manner of the strong declension, but the plural after the manner of the weak. To it belong:

1. A small group of words having no common characteristic of form and represented below by der Staat and das Auge.

2. Nine or ten masculines in e which add ns for the genitive singular and n for all other cases.

a. The ending ens appears also in the genitive of Herz, n., *heart,* the real stem being Herzen; the inflection runs: nom. and acc. Herz, gen. Herzens, dat. Herzen, pl. Herzen.

3. Latin nouns in unaccented or, with plural in o'ren.

4. A number of Latin and Greek neuters which make the plural in en, or ien if the Latin plural ended in *ia*.

98. Examples. Staat, *state;* Name, *name;* Doktor, *doctor;* Auge, *eye;* Drama, *drama;* Studium, *study.*

Singular.

Nom.	der Staat	der Name	der Doktor
Gen.	des Staates	des Namens	des Doktors
Dat.	dem Staate	dem Namen	dem Doktor
Acc.	den Staat	den Namen	den Doktor

Plural.

Nom.	die Staaten	die Namen	die Doktoren
Gen.	der Staaten	der Namen	der Doktoren
Dat.	den Staaten	den Namen	den Doktoren
Acc.	die Staaten	die Namen	die Doktoren

Singular.

Nom.	das Auge	das Drama	das Studium
Gen.	des Auges	des Dramas	des Studiums
Dat.	dem Auge	dem Drama	dem Studium
Acc.	das Auge	das Drama	das Studium

Plural.

Nom.	die Augen	die Dramen	die Studien
Gen.	der Augen	der Dramen	der Studien
Dat.	den Augen	den Dramen	den Studien
Acc.	die Augen	die Dramen	die Studien

EXERCISE XIII.

READING LESSON: NOUNS OF THE MIXED DECLENSION.

Von Tag zu Tag[1] mache ich allerlei Bekanntſchaften unter den Nachbarn. Geſtern abend war ich zu Tiſche[2] bei einem Herrn Namens Schmidt, einem Vetter meiner[3] Wirtin. Herr Schmidt iſt Doktor[4] der Philoſophie und Profeſſor an[5] der Univerſität.

Die Gesellschaft bestand aus lauter Doktoren, Professoren und Studenten. Man redete[6] viel von Büchern und Studien, aber auch von Angelegenheiten des Staates. Das Interesse für Politik[7] ist jetzt sehr lebhaft. Wir leben noch im Frieden, aber vielleicht ist die Zeit des Friedens beinahe zu Ende.

EXERCISE XIIIa.

1. Das Gebäude gehört dem Staate, nicht der Stadt. 2. Eine Nation besteht aus einem Staate, oder aus einer Menge Staaten. 3. Kennen Sie die Namen der Leute am Tische dort? 4. Ich schreibe ein paar Zeilen im Namen des Doktors. 5. Sie hat die Augen und die Stimme der Mutter. 6. Das Interesse fürs Drama und fürs Studium des Dramas ist jetzt sehr lebhaft. 7. Der Herr Doktor hat eine Menge Vettern Namens Schmidt. 8. Das ist die Arbeit eines Vetters[8] von dem Professor. 9. Das ist gewiß der Anfang des Endes. 10. An den Enden des Zimmers sieht man Bilder aus[9] dem Familienleben.

EXERCISE XIIIb.

1. What is the gentleman's name? 2. That is the son of a neighbor. 3. The neighbors are very friendly. 4. The professor is writing a book on[10] the study of the drama. 5. Music[11] is the language of the heart. 6. That is in the interest of the city, not of the state. 7. The interests of the majority are always on the side of peace.[11] 8. The universities are here an affair of the states. 9. The eyes are the windows of the heart. 10. I am making a number[12] of acquaintances among the students of the university.

Vocabulary.

A'ngele'genheit, *f. w.*, affair.
bei, *prep. (dat.)*, by, at, at the house of.
beina'he, *adv.*, almost, [by-nigh].
Beka'nntschaft, *f. w.*, acquaintance.
beste'hen (aus), *v.*, consist (of); *pret.*, bestand.
Ende, *n. mx. (gen. -s)*, end.

Friede, *m. mx. (gen. –ns)*, peace.
Intere'ſſe, *n. mx. (gen. –s)*, *interest.*
jetzt, *adv.*, now.
lauter, *adv.*, exclusively, none but.
leben, *v.*, live.
lebhaft, *adj.*, live-ly.
machen, *v.*, make.
mein, *pron. (poss.)*, my.
Nachbar, *m. mx.*, neighbor.
Philoſophie', *f. w.*, *philosophy.*
Profe'ſſor, *m. mx.*, *professor.*
reden, *v.*, talk; *pret.*, redete.
Univerſität', *f. w.*, *university.*
Vetter, *m. mx.*, cousin.

NOTES.—[1] **Von Tag zu Tag**; in this phrase the e of the dat. is very often omitted.—[2] **zu Tiſche**, *at table*; i. e., in this case, *at supper.*—[3] **meiner Wirtin**, *of my landlady*; mein is declined in the singular like ein.—[4] **Doktor**; see Ex. IV, n. 7.—[5] **an**; observe the preposition; one is a professor a n einer Univerſität, but a student a u f einer Univerſität.—[6] **man redete viel**, *they talked much, there was much talk.*—[7] **für Politik**, IN *politics.*—[8] **Vetters**; or one might say: Von einem Vetter des Profeſſors. It is better to avoid two genitives (eines Vetters des Profeſſors). See § 247, 3.—[9] **aus**, *from*, i. e., *pertaining to.*—[10] **on**, über, with acc.—[11] Use the generic article.—[12] **number of**, Menge, without prep.

EXERCISE XIV.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Iſt Herr Doktor[1] Schmidt zu Hauſe?

Ja wohl; aber er liegt noch im Bette. Was wünſchen Sie?

Ich komme wegen eines Augenleidens.[2]

Aber mein Vater iſt kein Arzt; er hat nichts mit Augenkrankheiten zu thun.[3]

Wirklich? Er hat doch den Titel eines Doktors.

Richtig, aber er iſt Doktor der Philoſophie.

Hat er vielleicht einen Bruder oder einen Namensvetter[4] in der Stadt?

Ja, freilich; es giebt einen Arzt Namens Schmidt. Er iſt ein Vetter des Vaters.

II.

Is this the residence of Professor[5] Schmidt?

Yes, but he is not at home; he is away on business[6] of state.

You are perhaps the professor's son?

Yes; do you wish something from father[7]? You are a student, I presume[8].

No, I come from the museum; I am the son of the director.

Perhaps then you have something for father.

Correct; the box here contains a quantity[9] of minerals and fossils.

EXERCISE XIV a.

1. Das war gewiß die Stimme des Herzens. 2. Er iſt wie[10] ein Kind und kennt die Herzen der Kinder. 3. Kennen Sie den Herrn Direktor des Muſeums? 4. Meinen Sie das Stadtmuſeum? Es giebt zwei Muſeen und zwei Direktoren. 5. Das ſind Studenten der Univerſität. 6. Wünſchen Sie ein Zimmer mit einem[11] Bette oder mit zwei Betten? 7. Hier lebt der Student nicht unter den Augen des Profeſſors. 8. Der Friede iſt immer ein Glück für die Nationen der Welt. 9. Zwei Zimmer des Muſeums enthalten Mineralien und Foſſilien. 10. Der Kaſten gehört in[12] die Wohnung des Direktors.

EXERCISE XIV b.

1. I wish a room with two windows and two beds. 2. We have two castles and two museums in the city. 3. Physicians are always doctors, but doctors are not always physicians. 4. The windows are too large, the beds too short. 5. That is the affair of a workingman, not of a student. 6. Yonder is the residence of the director. 7. I am going home on account of the illness of my mother. 8. What have I to do with minerals and fossils? 9. It is a time of suffering among the workingmen. 10. The children are cousins.

Vocabulary.

Arzt, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä), physician.
Bett, *n. mx.*, **bed.**
dies, *pron. (dem.)*, **this.**
Direktor, *m. mx.*, *director.*
enthalten, *v.*, contain ; enthält, contains, [**-hold**].
fort, *adv.*, away.
Fossil, *n. mx. (pl.* -ien), *fossil.*
freilich, *adv.*, to be sure.
Geschäft, *n. s. 2*, business.
kein, *adj.*, no, not a, none.
Krankheit, *f. w.*, sickness, disease.
Leiden, *n. s. 1*, suffering, trouble, [**loathe**].
Mineral, *n. mx. (pl.* -ien), *mineral.*
Museum, *n. mx. (pl.* -en), *museum.*
nein, *adv.*, no, [**none**].
nichts, *pron.*, **nothing.**
richtig, *adj.*, **right, correct.**
thun, *v.*, **do.**
Titel, *m. s. 1, title.*
wegen, *prep. (gen.)*, on account of.
wirklich, *adv.*, really.
Wohnung, *f. w.*, dwelling, residence.
wünschen, *v.*, **wish.**

Notes. — [1] **Herr Doktor ;** translate simply *doctor* (Ex. XI, n. 9).— [2] **Augenleidens,** *eye-trouble, trouble with (my) eyes.*— [3] **zu thun,** *to do.* A dependent infinitive usually comes at the end of the sentence ; see § 187.— [4] **Namensvetter,** *namesake,* in the sense of 'one having the same name.'— [5] **of Professor,** des Herrn Professor.— [6] **on business of state,** in Geschäften des Staats or in Staatsgeschäften. [7] **from father,** vom Vater (Ex. IV, n. 5).— [8] **are a student, I presume,** sind wohl Student. — [9] **a quantity of,** eine Menge (without prep.).— [10] **wie,** *like.*— [11] **einem ;** here = *one.*— [12] **gehört in,** *belongs in.* The box is not in place ; so the acc. tells *whither* it must be taken to be where it 'belongs.' See Ex. IV, n. 4, and Ex. VI, n. 9.

Declension of Proper Names.

99. Names of Persons. Names of persons have, in general, no inflection except in the genitive singular ; in all other cases the form remains the same, the article being used, if necessary, for the sake of clearness ; e. g., ich lese (den) Schiller, *I am reading Schiller ;* im Lande der Mozart und der Wagner, *in the land of the Mozarts and the Wagners.*

1. The genitive singular has the ending s, unless the name ends in an s-sound, when an apostrophe is commonly used; e. g., Schillers Werke, or die Werke Schillers, *Schiller's works, the works of Schiller;* Opitz' Gedichte, *Opitz's poems;* Maries Eltern, *Marie's parents.* (Opitzens, Mariens are no longer usual, though quite permissible.)

a. But the ending s is omitted if the name is precede by an article or pronoun in the genitive (an intervening adjective or noun makes no difference); e. g., die Werke eines Schiller, des Dichters Schiller, des jungen Schiller, meines geliebten Schiller, *the works of a Schiller, of the poet Schiller, of the youthful Schiller, of my beloved Schiller.*

100. Names of Places. Names of towns and countries are mostly neuter nouns, used without the article unless an adjective precedes. They have no inflection except an s in the genitive singular, and the use of this follows the rule given above for names of persons; e. g., die Mauern Roms, *the walls of Rome;* but die Mauern des alten Rom, der Stadt Rom, *the walls of ancient Rome, of the city of Rome.*

1. If the name ends in an s-sound the genitive is best replaced by von with the dative, unless one prefers an adjective construction; e. g., die Straßen von Paris, or die Pariser Straßen, *the streets of Paris.*

2. But some names of countries, provinces, mountain districts, etc., and all names of rivers, are regularly used with the article. Such names, if masculine or neuter, often retain the s of the genitive even after the article; e. g., der Gipfel des Brockens, *the summit of the Brocken;* die Ufer des Rheins, *the banks of the Rhine.* Feminine names of countries are, of course, without inflection; e. g., die Berge der Schweiz, *the mountains of Switzerland.*

EXERCISE XV.

Reading Lesson: Proper Nouns.

Ich war neulich im Theater bei einer Vorstellung von[1] Schillers „Wilhelm Tell". Ein Schauspieler Namens Müller spielte die Rolle des Tell, ein Fräulein Braun die Rolle der Bertha. Die Vorstellung war sehr gut, besonders der Apfelschuß Tells und der Tod Geßlers. Nur war die Liebesscene[2] zwischen Bertha und Rudenz etwas kalt, denn[3] Berthas Stimme war unangenehm. In Deutschland, dem Lande der Wagner und der Beethoven, war die Musik natürlich auch gut. Ich lese jetzt Schillers Werke; er ist groß, aber er hat nicht die Kraft eines Shakespeare.[4] In ein paar Tagen mache[5] ich eine Reise über[6] Weimar nach Leipzig[7] und Dresden. Weimar war vor hundert Jahren[8] der Wohnort der Dichter Goethe und Schiller. Es liegt an der Ilm, einem Nebenflusse der Saale.

EXERCISE XV a.

1. I am reading Schiller's dramas. 2. I have also the works of Goethe. 3. Germany is a land of music. 4. The journey from Göttingen to[9] Weimar is not very interesting. 5. This evening there is[10] a performance of Shakespeare's *Hamlet*. 6. An actress from Dresden plays the part of Ophelia.[11] 7. Weimar is interesting on account of the poets Goethe and Schiller. 8. The park of Weimar belongs among[12] the works of Goethe. 9. There is[10] a *Life of Schiller* by[13] Thomas Carlyle. 10. *Werther's Sufferings* is the title of a book by[13] Goethe.

Vocabulary.

Apfel, *m. s. 1 (pl.* ä), apple.
denn, *conj., adv.*, for, then.
Deutschland, *n.*, Germany.
Dichter, *m. s. 1*, poet.
kalt, *adj.*, cold.
Kraft, *f. s. 2 (pl.* ä), strength, force, [craft].
lesen, *v.*, read.
Liebe, *f. w.*, love.
Nebenfluß, *m. s. 2 (pl.* -flüsse), tributary.

Reiſe, *f. w.*, journey, [**rise**].
Rolle, *f. w.*, *rôle*, part.
Scene, *f. w.*, *scene*.
Schauſpieler, *m. s. 1*, actor.
Schuß, *m. s. 2 (pl.* Schüſſe*)*, **shot**.
ſpielen, *v.*, play; *pret.* ſpielte.
Thea'ter, *n. s. 1*, *theater*.
Tod, *m. s. 2 (no pl.)*, **death**.
una'ngenehm, *adj.*, unpleasant.
vor, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, before, [**fore**].
Vo'rſtellung, *f. w.*, performance.
Werk, *n. s. 2*, **work**.
Wohnort, *m. s. 2*, abode, dwelling-place.
zwiſchen, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, be-tween.

Notes.—[1] **von**; see Ex. XIII, *a*, n. 8.—[2] **Liebesſcene**; pronounce -ze'ne. A feminine noun in composition sometimes takes the ending s, thus constituting an exception to § 77, 1.—[3] **denn** at the beginning of a sentence means *for*, elsewhere *then*. On the order see § 87, 3.—[4] **Shakespeare**; pronounce as in English.—[5] **mache ich**, *I shall make, I am going to make;* the pres. tense denoting here a present purpose.—[6] **über**, *by way of*.—[7] **Leipzig**, *Leipsic*. But some prefer to use in English the German form *Leipzig*. Other names of cities which have an English name differing from the German are Wien, *Vienna;* München, *Munich;* Köln, *Cologne;* Genf, *Geneva*. In most cases the form of the name is the same in both languages.—[8] **vor hundert Jahren**, *a hundred years ago;* lit., *before a hundred years*.—[9] **to**, nach; see Ex. V. n. 9.—[10] **there is**, es giebt (or giebt es, § 87).—[11] **of Ophelia**, der Ophelia.—[12] **among**, unter with acc.—[13] **by**, von.

THE ADJECTIVE.

INFLECTION.

101. Inflected and Uninflected Adjectives. The adjective is inflected only when it qualifies a following noun, expressed or understood, or is itself used substantively; if used alone in the predicate, or after its noun, or adverbially, it is uninflected. Thus: ein hübſches Mädchen, *a pretty girl;* but das Mädchen iſt hübſch, *the girl is pretty;* nennt ſich hübſch, *calls herself pretty;* trägt ſich hübſch, *carries herself prettily*. So also, poetically, as in English, ein Mädchen hübſch und jung, *a maiden fair and young*.

1. When inflected, the adjective agrees with its noun, unless it is itself used as a noun, in gender, number and case.

2. Almost any adjective can be used in its uninflected form as an adverb.

3. Participles when used as adjectives have the inflection of adjectives.

102. Strong and Weak Inflection. Adjectives are inflected in two different ways, according as they are or are not preceded by an article or pronoun having a distinctive ending. The inflection used when such a word precedes is called 'weak'; the inflection used when no such word precedes is called 'strong.'

1. It will be seen, then, that the terms 'strong' and 'weak' do not mean, as in the case of nouns, that some adjectives are declined in one way, and others in another, but that any adjective, in any particular case, takes the one or the other of two endings, according to what goes before. The use of the weak inflection is to avoid the unnecessary repetition of grammatical distinctions. Thus in das neue Haus, *the new house*, das shows the gender; hence the adjective does not need to show it and becomes weak. But in ein neues Haus, *a new house*, ein is not a distinctive form, since of itself it is either masculine or neuter; hence the adjective is given the strong, or distinctive ending.

103. The Endings. The endings are as follows:

	STRONG.				WEAK.			
	Sing.			*Plur.*	*Sing.*			*Plur.*
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	M. F. N.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	M. F. N.
N.	er	e	es	e	e	e	e	en
G.	es	er	es	er	en	en	en	en
D.	em	er	em	en	en	en	en	en
A.	en	e	es	e	en	e	e	en

1. Observe that in four cases, viz., the nominative and accusative singular feminine, the accusative singular masculine and the dative plural, there is no difference between the strong and the weak inflection.

2. Before the e of these endings a final e of the stem is dropped; as in ein weiſer Mann, from weiſe, *wise*. Words in unaccented el, en, er, generally drop the e of the stem; e. g., ein edles Herz, from edel, *noble;* ein offnes Fenſter, from offen, *open;* ein heit(e)rer Tag, from heiter, *bright.*

104. Use of the Strong Endings. An adjective has strong inflection:

1. If no article or pronominal modifier precedes; e. g., guter Wein iſt teuer, *good wine is dear;* mit frohem Herzen, *with happy heart.*

a. But in the genitive singular, masculine and neuter, weak inflection (the ending en instead of es) is permissible; e. g., frohen Mutes (or frohes Mutes) ſein, *to be in good spirits;* ein Trunk kalten Waſſers, *a drink of cold water.* But one may also say ein Trunk kaltes Waſſer. See § 246, 1, *a.*

2. After any indeclinable pronoun or numeral, including also the interrogative was; e. g., etwas Neues, *something new;* allerlei gutes Obſt, *all sorts of good fruit;* zwei frohe Herzen, *two happy hearts;* was giebt es Neues? *what is there (that is) new?*

a. After these indeclinables an adjective not followed by a noun is itself treated as a substantive in apposition, and is therefore written with a capital; e. g., nichts Gutes, *nothing good.*

3. After an *uninflected form* of any of the following words: (1) the article ein and its negative kein; (2) the possessives mein, dein, ſein, unſer, euer, and ihr (also Ihr); (3) the pronominal adjectives all, manch, ſolch, viel, welch, and wenig; e. g., ein ſchöner Tag, *a fine day;* mein lieber Freund, *my dear friend;* welch hübſches Bild, *what a pretty picture.*

a. The uninflected forms of ein, kein, mein, dein, ſein, unſer, euer, ihr are three in number, viz., the nominative singular, masculine and neuter, and the accusative singular neuter. These three forms of these eight words *never* have an ending (if a noun follows) and an adjective following them is *always* strong; thus one says mein guter Freund (never meiner gute Freund); Ihr neues Haus (never Ihres neue Haus). All the other forms of the eight words have a distinctive ending and a following adjective is weak; hence meines guten Freundes (never meines gutes Freundes).

b. On the other hand, in the case of the pronominals all, manch, ſolch, viel, welch and wenig, the omission of the ending is optional. If it is omitted the following adjective is strong, otherwise weak; thus for *many a good man* one may say manch guter Mann or mancher gute Mann.

4. After a personal pronoun in the nominative or accusative singular; e. g., du armes Kind, *you poor child;* Sie glücklicher Menſch, *you happy man.*

105. Examples of Strong Inflection: Gut, *good,* with Kopf, m., *head;* Seele, f., *soul,* and Herz, n., *heart.*

1. The adjective not preceded by an article or pronoun:

Singular.

Nom.	guter Kopf	gute Seele	gutes Herz
Gen.	gutes* Kopfes	guter Seele	gutes* Herzens
Dat.	gutem Kopfe	guter Seele	gutem Herzen
Acc.	guten Kopf	gute Seele	gutes Herz

Plural.

Nom.	gute Köpfe	gute Seelen	gute Herzen
Gen.	guter Köpfe	guter Seelen	guter Herzen
Dat.	guten Köpfen	guten Seelen	guten Herzen
Acc.	gute Köpfe	gute Seelen	gute Herzen

* See § 104, 1, *a.*

2. The adjective preceded by an uninflected form of ein, kein, mein, dein, ſein, unſer, euer, ihr.

Singular.

Nom.	ein guter Kopf	ein gutes Herz
Acc.		ein gutes Herz

All the other forms are weak. For a complete paradigm of an adjective after kein see § 107, 2.

3. The adjective preceded by an uninflected form of all, manch, ſolch, viel, welch or wenig.

Singular.

Nom.	manch guter Kopf	manch gute Seele	manch gutes Herz
	or	or	or
	mancher gute Kopf	manche gute Seele	manches gute Herz
	etc.*	etc.	etc.

EXERCISE XVI.

READING LESSON: STRONG ADJECTIVES.

Mein lieber Freund![1] Ich bin jetzt auf kurze Zeit[2] in Leipzig. Ich habe ein kleines freundliches[3] Zimmer mit guter Bedienung zu billigem Preiſe. Der Hauswirt iſt ein intereſſanter alter Herr mit weißem Bart und weißen[4] Haaren. Vor Jahren[5] war er reich, aber jetzt hat er nur ein kleines Vermögen. Seine Frau iſt tot, und die Stütze ſeines Alters iſt ſeine Tochter, ein liebenswürdiges Mädchen von ſeltner Schönheit. Vater und Tochter nehmen ein freundliches Intereſſe an meinen Studien; ſie verbeſſern mein ſchlechtes Deutſch und erzählen mir allerlei Intereſſantes[6] von der Stadt.

---

* For the complete paradigm see § 107, 3. Inflected forms of all, manch, ſolch, viel, welch and wenig are on the whole more common than uninflected; hence the weak inflection of a following adjective may be regarded as the normal inflection. This is why, to avoid repetition, we give the paradigm under the head of the weak declension.

EXERCISE XVIa.

1. Er iſt ein ſehr reicher Mann. 2. Iſt das aber[7] ein ſchönes Mädchen! 3. Ich habe ein neues Haus. 4. Ich gehe in kurzer Zeit nach Hauſe. 5. Wir ſind alte Freunde. 6. Sind Sie ein Freund von ſeltnen Büchern? 7. Kennen Sie einen guten Arzt in der Stadt? 8. Die Sache hat eine gute und eine ſchlechte Seite. 9. Zwei lange Jahre wohne ich nun in Deutſchland. 10. Armes Kind! du haſt alſo keine Mutter? 11. Gute Äpfel ſind jetzt ſehr teuer. 12. Für einen jungen Knaben ſchreiben Sie ſehr intereſſante Briefe.

EXERCISE XVIb.

1. Poor man! that comes of[8] bad company. 2. Dear old city! Mother of great men and fair[9] women! 3. It is a very good book. 4. He is a good man, but no great poet. 5. The house is small, but it has two good large rooms. 6. Bad newspapers are nothing rare. 7. He writes with great power. 8. He is an old friend of the family. 9. We are good friends. 10. This is Herr Müller, my old teacher. 11. The book contains much (that is) good, but also all sorts of bad (things). 12. Great heart! Beautiful victory over[10] long suffering!

VOCABULARY.

alt, *adj.*, **old.**
Alter, *n. s. 1*, **old age.**
Bart, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, **beard.**
Bedienung, *f. w.*, **service.**
billig, *adj.*, **cheap, moderate.**
Deutſch, *n. (indecl.)*, **German.**
erzählen, *v.*, **relate, tell**, [**-tell**].
Haar, *n. s. 2*, **hair.**
klein, *adj.*, **small.**
lieb, *adj.*, **dear**, [**lief**].
lie'benswü'rdig, *adj.*, **lovely**, [**loveworthy**].
nehmen, *v.*, **take.**
Preis, *m. s. 2*, *price.*
reich, *adj.*, **rich.**
ſchlecht, *adj.*, **bad.**
Schönheit, *f. w.*, **beauty.**
ſein, *poss.*, **his.**
ſelten, *adj.*, **rare**, [**seldom**].
Stütze, *f. w.*, **prop, support.**
tot, *adj.*, **dead.**
verbeſſern, *v.*, **correct**, [**-better**]
Vermögen, *n. s. 1*, **property.**
weiß, *adj.*, **white.**

NOTES.— [1] It is customary to use an exclamation point after the formal address in a letter.— [2] **auf kurze Zeit,** *for* A *short time;* note the omission of ein (§ 73, 2). The meaning is not 'I have been in L. for a short time' (which would be expressed by eine kurze Zeit without a preposition), but 'I am expecting to stay for a short time.'— [3] **freundliches,** *pleasant, cozy,* as applied to a room. Observe that two adjectives occurring together have the same inflection; i. e., the first does not affect the second.— [4] **weißen Haaren;** 'the hair' of the head is either das Haar or die Haare. It is here used as a plural, whence the repetition of weiß. But one might also write mit weißem Bart und Haar(e).— [5] **Vor Jahren,** *years ago.*— [6] **allerlei Interessantes,** *all sorts of interesting (things).*— [7] **Ist das aber,** *but isn't that.*— [8] **of,** von.— [9] **fair,** schön.— [10] **over,** über with acc.

EXERCISE XVII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Guten [1] Morgen. Schönes [2] Wetter heute, nicht wahr?

Es ist ein prächtiger Tag. Was sagen Sie zu einem Spaziergang?

Ein guter Gedanke; ich habe sonst nichts Wichtiges zu thun.

Nun, was giebt's [3] Neues? Sie sind offenbar in froher Stimmung.

Ja, das bin ich, und ich habe guten Grund; mein alter Freund Max kommt heute nach der Stadt.

Das ist freilich eine große Freude für Sie.

Nicht wahr? Er ist ein prächtiger Kerl.

II.

Where are you living [4] now? Have you a good room?

Not so good a one [5] as last year.[6] I am living [7] at No. 2 Königstraſse.[8]

I think I know [9] the house; it is an old, low building, isn't it?

Well,[10] it is not a [11] royal palace, to be sure, but the rooms are cheap.

Do you have good fare? That is an important point.

No, the fare is bad too; good coffee is not to be had.[12]

Poor fellow! That is a miserable life.

EXERCISE XVII a.

1. Ein gutes Buch iſt immer eine wahre Freude. 2. Dort kommen Fritz und ſein kleiner Vetter, — ein hübſches Paar, nicht wahr? 3. Wir haben ſchon zwei Tage ſchlechten Wetters. 4. Von meinem Fenſter ſieht man ein altes Schloß mit prächtigen Türmen. 5. Er war gewiß groß als Menſch, aber kein großer Schriftſteller. 6. Da wohnt ein gewiſſer Herr Müller, ein reicher Kaufmann. 7. Zwiſchen der Stadt und dem Gebirge liegen ſchöne Thäler und große dunkle Wälder. 8. Noch immer reden Sie von deutſcher Politik! Kommen wir nun zu etwas Neuem! 9. Sehr gern, mein guter Freund, aber wiſſen Sie denn etwas Neues? 10. Das iſt zu teuer; ſo etwas[13] iſt nicht für arme Leute.

EXERCISE XVII b.

1. It is a beautiful evening. 2. Here is a new book; it contains all sorts of good ideas. 3. Wretched fellow! He is always in the society of low people. 4. What you say gives me[14] great pleasure. 5. That was a long walk for such a[15] little child. 6. That is no great piece-of-luck[16] for us. 7. I go in (a)[17] short time, perhaps to-morrow. 8. We are having very cold weather. 9. They have two lovely daughters. 10. You write very good German. 11. I go with happy heart. 12. At Frau Müller's[18] one has good society, but bad coffee.

VOCABULARY.

denken, *v.*, think.
elend, *adj.*, wretched.
Freude, *f. w.*, joy, pleasure.
froh, *adj.*, happy.
Gedanke, *m. mx. (gen. -ns)*, thought, idea.
Grund, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, ground.
Kaffee, *m. s. (no pl.)*, *coffee.*
Kerl, *m. s. 2*, fellow, [churl].
königlich, *adj.*, royal, kingly.
Koſt, *f. w.*, fare, board.
neu, *adj.*, new.
niedrig, *adj.*, low.
Numero, *m. (indecl.)*, at No.
offenbar, *adj.*, evident, [open-].
Pala'ſt, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, *palace.*
prächtig, *adj.*, splendid.
Punkt, *m. s. 2*, *point.*
ſagen, *v.*, say.
ſo, *adv.*, so.

ſonſt, *adv.*, else, otherwise.
Spazie'rgang, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä), walk.
Stimmung, *f. w.*, mood.
Straße, *f. w.*, street.
vorig, *adj.*, last, former.
Wetter, *n. s. 1*, weather.
wichtig, *adj.*, important, weighty.
wo, *adv.*, where.

NOTES. — [1] **Guten Morgen**; the acc. is used in greetings such as guten Morgen, guten Abend, guten Tag, gute Nacht, there being a verb of 'wishing' or 'bidding' understood.—[2] **Schönes Wetter**; i. e., es iſt ſchönes Wetter.—[3] **was giebt's Neues?** *What's the news?* giebt's = giebt es.—[4] **Where are you living?** Wo wohnen Sie?—[5] **Not so good a one,** kein ſo gutes; *not a, not a one,* = kein.—[6] **last year,** voriges Jahr; acc. of time.—[7] **I am living at No. 2 Königstraſse,** ich wohne Königſtraße (or in der Königſtraße) Numero 2.—[8] **Königstraſse,** lit., *King Street;* but names of streets are best transferred, not translated.—[9] **I think I know,** ich denke, ich kenne. —[10] **Well,** nun, not wohl.—[11] **it is not a . . . to be sure,** es iſt freilich kein; see note 5 above.—[12] **not to be had,** nicht zu haben; lit., *not to have, not for having.*—[13] **ſo etwas,** *such a thing.* —[14] **me**; i. e., *to me,* mir.—[15] **such a,** ſo ein; see § 135, 1, *a.*—[16] **piece-of-luck,** Glück.—[17] **(a)**; the indef. art. is not needed in German.—[18] **at Frau Müller's,** bei Frau Müller.

106. Use of the Weak Endings. An adjective has weak inflection:

1. After all forms of der, dies, jed-, jeglich and jen-;* e.g., das gute Herz, *the good heart;* dieſer arme Kerl, *this poor fellow;* jenes neue Haus, *that new house;* an jedem ſchönen Tage, *on every fine day.*

2. After an *inflected form* of (1) ein, kein, (2) mein, dein, ſein, unſer, euer, ihr or Ihr, (3) all, manch, ſolch, viel, welch, wenig, and also (4) after ander-, einig-, etlich- and mehrer-; e. g., an einem ſchönen Tage des vorigen Sommers, *on a fine day (of the) last summer;* meine lieben Freunde, *my dear friends;* die Hoffnung vieler guten Männer, *the hope of many good men.*

a. But in the nominative and accusative plural an adjective following alle, manche, ſolche, viele, welche, wenige, andere, einige, etliche or mehrere, *may* take strong inflection;

* The hyphen after certain of these words means that the words never occur in the stem-form, but always have an inflectional ending.

e. g., viele guten (or gute) Freunde, *many good friends;* alle großen (or große) Männer, *all great men.* See § 288, 3, *a.*

3. After a personal pronoun, except in the nominative and accusative singular; e. g., weh mir armen Manne, *woe to me, poor man;* lebt wohl, ihr lieben Freunde, *farewell, dear friends.*

4. Optionally in the genitive singular, masculine and neuter, when no article or pronominal modifier precedes. See § 104, 1, *a.*

107. Examples of Weak Inflection.

1. After der, dies, jed-, jeglich or jen-.

Singular.

N.	der gute Kopf	die gute Seele	das gute Herz
G.	des guten Kopfes	der guten Seele	des guten Herzens
D.	dem guten Kopfe	der guten Seele	dem guten Herzen
A.	den guten Kopf	die gute Seele	das gute Herz

Plural.

N.	die guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
G.	der guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
D.	den guten Köpfen,	Seelen,	Herzen
A.	die guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen

2. After ein, kein, or a possessive.

Singular.

N.	[kein guter Kopf]	keine gute Seele	[kein gutes Herz]
G.	keines guten Kopfes	keiner guten Seele	keines guten Herzens
D.	keinem guten Kopfe	keiner guten Seele	keinem guten Herzen
A.	keinen guten Kopf	keine gute Seele	[kein gutes Herz]

Plural.

N.	keine guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
G.	keiner guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
D.	keinen guten Köpfen,	Seelen,	Herzen
A.	keine guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen

3. After all, manch, ſolch, viel, welch, or wenig. The alternative strong forms (§ 104, 3, *b*) are put in brackets.

Singular.

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	mancher gute [manch guter]	manch(e) gute	manches gute [manch gutes]
Gen.	manches guten	mancher guten [manch guter]	manches guten
Dat.	manchem guten [manch gutem]	mancher guten [manch guter]	manchem guten [manch gutem]
Acc.	manch(en) guten	manch(e) gute	manches gute [manch gutes]

Plural.

Nom.	manche gute(n) [manch gute]
Gen.	mancher guten [manch guter]
Dat.	manch(en) guten
Acc.	manche gute(n) [manch gute]

108. The Adjective used Substantively. Adjectives are often used substantively, and when so used they have the capital initial of a noun, but the inflection of an adjective; as der Alte, *the old man;* die Alte, *the old woman;* die Alten, *the old people*; das Alte, *the old, that which is old.*

1. As the examples indicate, the masculine and feminine singular and the plural of a substantive adjective designate persons. The neuter singular generally denotes the quality abstractly, and has to be translated in different ways; e. g., er liebt das Schöne, *he loves the beautiful* (die Schöne would mean *the beautiful woman,* die Schönen, *the fair sex);* das Buch enthält Altes und Neues, *the book contains old (matter) and new;* er hat Großes gethan, *he has done great (things);* er hat mir ein Leids gethan, *he has done me a grievous (turn).*

2. The use of the substantive adjective after indeclinables has already been explained (§ 104, 2, *a*).

109. Irregular and Defective Inflection. The most important cases are as follows:

1. The stem of the adjective hoch, *high*, changes to hoh in all inflected forms; e. g., ein hoher Baum, *a high tree.*

2. Adjectives in er from names of towns are indeclinable; e. g., der Kölner Dom, *the Cologne cathedral.*

3. Ganz, *all*, and halb, *half*, when not preceded by the article are uninflected before neuter names of places; e. g., ganz England freute sich, *all England rejoiced;* durch halb Berlin, *through half of Berlin.*

4. Some adjectives are used only in the predicate, and hence are never declined; as bereit, *ready;* feind, *hostile.*

5. The first of two adjectives forming a compound adjective is uninflected; e. g., der deutsch-französische Krieg, *the Franco-German war;* dunkelbraunes Haar, *dark-brown hair.*

110. The Predicate Adjective. A predicate adjective if it stands alone is uninflected; e. g., mein Schicksal ist schwer, *my fate is hard;* die Antwort ist richtig, *the answer is right.* But if an article precedes, the predicate adjective then becomes an attributive adjective, with noun understood, and is inflected; e. g., mein Schicksal ist ein schweres, *my fate is a hard one;* die Antwort ist die richtige, *the answer is the right one.*

1. Further varieties of predicate adjective are:

a. The appositional predicate, in apposition with either subject or object; e. g., trostlos irrt er umher, *he wanders about inconsolable;* ich fand ihn krank im Bette, *I found him sick in bed.*

b. The factitive predicate, denoting the state to which an object is brought by the action of the verb; e. g., ich könnte mich tot lachen, *I could laugh myself dead;* er malt das Bild schwarz, *he paints the picture black.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

READING LESSON: WEAK ADJECTIVES.

Leipzig, den 1.[1] Januar.

Meine lieben Eltern! Heute ist der Anfang des neuen Jahres und ich bin immer noch[2] in dieser[3] interessanten alten Stadt. Leipzig liegt in einer weiten Ebene; in der ganzen Umgebung sieht man keine Berge, keine hohen Hügel. Die Stadt ist berühmt wegen ihrer[4] großen Universität und ihres reichen Handels; sie ist der eigentliche Mittelpunkt des Buchhandels für ganz Deutschland. Die Leipziger Theater sind besonders gut; beinahe jeden[5] Abend besuche ich das alte oder das neue Theater und gewinne so täglich an[6] Kenntnis der deutschen Sprache und an Einsicht in das deutsche Leben. Ich wünsche Euch[7] Glück[8] zum neuen Jahre; möge[9] es Euch in seinem ganzen Verlaufe nur Gutes bringen.[10]

EXERCISE XVIII a.

1. Der alte Herr ist sehr freundlich. 2. Die ganze Familie ist jetzt von Hause[11] auf einer langen Reise. 3. Sehen Sie das neue Haus mit den großen Fenstern? 4. Dieses schlechte Wetter ist sehr unangenehm. 5. Sehen Sie nur jene prächtigen alten Bäume! 6. Was denken Sie von dem neuen Lehrer? 7. Wer wohnt in jenem weißen Hause am Ende der Hohen Straße[12]? 8. An jedem schönen Abend giebt es ein gutes Konzert im Parke. 9. Die reichen Leute der Stadt kommen nur selten unter die armen. 10. Der Reiche hat meistens wenig Gefühl für die Freuden und Leiden des Armen. 11. Jenes hohe Gebäude ist das neue Museum. 12. Es giebt ein Buch mit dem Titel: Über das Wahre, das Schöne und das Gute. 13. Zwischen uns liegen jetzt mancher hohe Berg und manches weite Thal.

EXERCISE XVIII b.

1. That is the new teacher. 2. The little city is very lively. 3. The cold weather of the first two days was very unpleasant. 4. Where are the parents of the little fellow? 5. There is[13] a great difference between the good[14] and the bad.[14] 6. On account of the bad weather

there is[15] no performance. 7. He is coming to-morrow with the whole family. 8. This is a picture of my little daughter. 9. The new drama is certainly the work of a great poet. 10. He has not a real friend in the whole wide world. 11. He is a famous teacher of the ancient[16] languages. 12. The spirit of the ancients lives still in the works of their great poets. 13. The high tower belongs to the royal palace. 14. Many a bad poet is famous in his own little world.

Vocabulary.

Berg, *m. s. 2*, mountain.
berühmt, *adj.*, famous.
bringen, *v.*, bring.
Ebene, *f. w.*, plain, [even].
eigen, *adj.*, own.
ei'gentlich, *adj.*, real, actual.
Einſicht, *f. w.*, insight.
Eltern, *pl. only*, parents, [elders].
erſt, *adj.*, first, [erst].
euch, *pron. (dat., acc.)*, you.
gewinnen, *v.*, gain, -win.
Handel, *m. s. (no pl.)*, trade, commerce, [handle].
Hügel, *m. s. 1*, hill.
ihr, *poss.*, her, their.
Janua'r, *m. s. 2*, *January*.
jed-, *pron.*, every, each.
jen-, *pron.*, that [yon].
Kenntnis, *f. s. 2*, knowledge.
manch, *pron. adj.*, many (a).
mittel, *adj.*, middle.
mögen, *v.*, may.
Umge'bung, *f. w.*, environs.
Unterſchied, *m. s. 2*, difference.
Verlau'f, *m. s. 2 (pl. äu)*, course, [-leap].
weit, *adj.*, wide, broad, far.

Notes.—[1] **den 1.**, i. e., den erſten Tag; in dating a letter the acc. is used, the name of the month following without a prep. —[2] **immer noch**, *still* (see Ex. VII, n. 7). —[3] **dieſer**; dies, jed- and jen- are declined like an adjective; see § 129. —[4] **ihrer**, *its*, lit., *her*, the noun Stadt, to which it refers, being fem. —[5] **jeden Abend**, acc. of time.—[6] **an Kenntnis**, IN *knowledge;* note the prep.—[7] **Euch** is the dat. pl. of du, the pronoun of familiar address; written with a capital because it occurs in a letter (§ 4, 2).—[8] **Glück zum neuen Jahre**, *happiness for the new year = a happy new year.*—[9] **möge es**, *may it;* the verb is a subjunctive expressing a wish.—[10] **bringen**; on its position see Ex. XIV, n. 3.—[11] **von Hauſe**, *away from home.*—[12] **die Hohe Straße** = *High Street.*—[13] **there is**, es iſt. [14] **good, bad**; dat. sing. neu., if it means *goodness and badness;* dat. plu., if it means *good and bad people.*—[15] **there is, giebt es.**—[16] **ancient**, alt.

EXERCISE XIX.

Colloquy.

I.

Wie lange waren[1] Sie in der Alten Welt?

Beinahe ein Jahr; es war eine prächtige Reise, besonders die letzten Monate.

Bitte,[2] erzählen Sie mir davon; im künftigen Sommer gehe ich vielleicht selbst[3] nach Europa.

Aber das ist eine lange Geschichte. Was wünschen Sie eigentlich[4] zu wissen?

Nun denn, wann verließen Sie die Vereinigten Staaten?

Am 1. Juli des vorigen Jahres.

Der Juli ist eine gute Jahreszeit[5] für die lange Seereise, nicht wahr?

Ja, aber heutzutage[6] macht die Jahreszeit keinen großen Unterschied.

II.

So[7] you are back again[8] in the New World?

Yes, I am now a good American once more.[9]

How do you find[10] yourself after[11] your long journey?

Very well,[12] upon the whole[13]; but I find[14] the old quiet life somewhat dull.

That is nothing strange.[15]—Did you have[16] good weather on[17] the voyage?

Very good except on[18] the last two days.

EXERCISE XIXa.

1. Ich kenne die ganze Geschichte. 2. Die deutschen Universitäten sind berühmt in ganz Europa, ja in der ganzen Welt. 3. Unter den deutschen Studenten sieht man auch manche jungen Amerikaner. 4. Bitte, schreiben Sie mir von Ihrem neuen Freunde. Wer ist denn dieser neue Freund? 5. Ich kenne jeden Menschen im Zimmer außer jenem jungen Manne am Fenster. 6. Was denken Sie von den deutschen Zeitungen? Ich finde sie meistens langweilig. 7. Die Menschen reden immer von der

guten alten Zeit, aber heute ist eigentlich immer die gute Zeit. 8. Ich wünsche ein gutes Werk über die Musik der Alten. 9. Außer dem alten Theater giebt es in der Stadt auch ein neues. 10. Der Friede ist immer im wahren Interesse der Vereinigten Staaten. 11. Es ist doch sonderbar; jedes kleine Kind auf der Straße redet hier in gutem Deutsch. 12. Der Gedanke an[19] ein künftiges Leben ist etwas ganz Natürliches.

EXERCISE XIX b.

1. I find nothing true in the whole story. 2. A year is a long time. 3. There is a great difference between the Old World and the New. 4. I wish a good history of the United States. 5. The old fellow has very strange ideas. 6. The last two days of the long journey were somewhat tedious. 7. Let us take[20] a short walk. 8. Here you see the good side of German life.[21] 9. His last book has to do with German philosophy.[21] 10. He is a poet of[22] great power and great knowledge of life.[21] 11. The city lies in a broad valley between high mountains. 12. You find us in (a) happy mood on account of good news from mother.[21]

VOCABULARY.

Ame'rika'ner, *m. s. 1, American.*
außer, *prep. (dat.)*, except, out-side of.
befinden (sich), *v.*, find (one's self), 'do.'
bitten, *v.*, ask; (ich) bitte, please, [bid].
davo'n, *adv.*, of it, about it.
Euro'pa, *n. Europe.*
finden, *v.*, find.
Geschichte, *f. w.*, story, history.
Ihr, *poss.*, your.
Ju'li, *m. (no. pl.)*, *July.*
künftig, *adj.*, coming, next.
lang(e), *adv.* (§ 373, 3), long.
la'ngwei'lig, *adj.*, dull, tedious, [long-while-y]
letzt, *adj.*, last.
ruhig, *adj.*, quiet.
See, *f. w. (pl.* Seen or Seeen), sea, ocean.
selbst, *pron.*, self, myself, etc.
sonderbar, *adj.*, strange.
verei'nigt, *pple.*, united, [-one].
verlassen, *v.*, leave, [-let]; *pret.*, verließ.
wann, *adv. (inter.)*, when.
wieder, *adv.*, again, [with].
zurü'ck, *adv.*, back, [-ridge].

NOTES.—[1] **waren,** *were.*—[2] **Bitte** ; note that bitte, *please*, is a 1. pers. sing. with ich understood, meaning literally *I pray.*—[3] **ſelbſt** is the so-called intensive pronoun. It goes here with ich, giving the meaning *I myself.*—[4] **eigentlich,** *properly, exactly* ; was wünſchen Sie eigentlich, *just what do you wish.*—[5] **Jahreszeit,** *time of the year*, i. e., *season.*—[6] **heutzutage,** *nowadays.* [7] **So,** alſo.—[8] **back again,** wieder zurück.—[9] **once more,** wieder, right after jetzt.—[10] **How do you find yourself,** wie befinden Sie ſich (§ 4, 2) ; the usual phrase for *how do you do?*—[11] **after your,** nach Ihrer ; see § 106, 2.—[12] **Very well,** ſehr wohl.—[13] **upon the whole,** Im Ganzen, preceding ſehr wohl.—[14] **I find,** ich finde, not ich befinde. –[15] **strange** ; § 104, 2, *a.*—[16] **Did you have,** hatten Sie. [17] **on,** auf, with dat.—[18] **except on,** außer an, with dat.—[19] **der Gedanke an,** *the thought of.*—[20] **let us take,** machen wir.—[21] Use the definite article.—[22] **of, from,** von.

COMPARISON.

111. Comparison by means of er and (e)ſt. Adjectives are compared ordinarily by means of the endings er and (e)ſt, and these endings usually (but with some exceptions) cause umlaut of a preceding a, o or u. The comparative and superlative are inflected like the positive.

1. Before the er of the comparative a final e of the stem is dropped ; as weiſe, *wise* ; weiſer, *wiser.*

2. The superlative regularly ends in ſt, but in eſt if the stem ends in an *s*-sound or in d or t ; but participial stems in end take the ending ſt.

3. The e of the unaccented endings el, en, er is usually dropped in the comparative, but retained in the superlative.

4. The following examples will illustrate the above rules :

lang, *long,*	länger	(längſt) der längſte
reich, *rich,*	reicher	(reichſt) der reichſte
kurz, *short,*	kürzer	(kürzeſt) der kürzeſte
mild, *mild,*	milder	(mildeſt) der mildeſte
reizend, *charming,*	reizender	(reizendſt) der reizendſte
dunkel, *dark,*	dunkler	(dunkelſt) der dunkelſte

a. The uninflected superlative ſchönſt, längſt, etc., can only be used adverbially. Used adjectively the superlative is regularly preceded by der, and hence of the weak declension.

112. The Superlative with am. For the English predicate superlative without an article German employs a phrase consisting of am followed by the inflected superlative in the dative singular neuter; e. g., das wäre am beſten (never das wäre beſt), *that would be best;* die Gegend iſt am ſchönſten im Juni, *the region is loveliest in June.*

1. The phrase with am sometimes takes the place of a predicate nominative with der; e. g., unter den drei Knaben iſt Karl am älteſten (instead of the more correct der älteſte), *of the three boys Karl is the oldest.*

2. The superlative of an adverb is regularly formed by means of the phrase with am, or else a phrase with aufs; e. g., ſie ſingt am beſten, *she sings best;* ſie ſang aufs beſte, *she sang her best.*

113. Comparison by Means of Adverbs. Adjectives are sometimes compared by means of the adverbs mehr, *more*, and am meiſten, *most.*

1. An absolute superlative, i. e., one which does not imply comparison with other objects, is formed by means of the adverbs höchſt, *most highly*, or äußerſt, *exceedingly;* e. g., das iſt ein höchſt intereſſantes Buch, *that is a most interesting book.*

2. Degrees below the positive are denoted by the adverbs weniger or minder, *less*, and am wenigſten, am mindeſten, *least.*

114. Irregular and Defective Comparison. A few adjectives are compared irregularly and certain others lack one or more degrees. Thus:

1. Gut, *good*, and viel, *much*, have change of stem: gut, beſſer, beſt; viel, mehr, meiſt.

2. Hoch, *high*, and nah, *near*, are compared: hoch, höher, höchſt; nah, näher, nächſt.

3. Groß, *great*, has größt, rarely größeſt, in the superlative.

4. Some adjectives, mostly from adverbs and prepositions, lack the positive; e. g., hinter, *hinder*, from the preposition hinter, *behind;* ober, *upper*, from the adverb oben, *above*.

5. Erſt, *first*, and letzt, *last*, are isolated superlatives. They are, however, sometimes compared with er as if they were positives, der erſtere and der letztere being quite common in the sense of *the former* and *the latter*.

6. As in English, some adjectives are, from their meaning, incapable of comparison; e. g., ganz, *all;* täglich, *daily*.

EXERCISE XX.

READING LESSON: COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Liebſter Freund! Die Ferien ſind zu Ende und ich bin ſchon längere[1] Zeit wieder zu Hauſe in Göttingen. Die Reiſe war mir im höchſten Grade zuträglich. Ich bin viel ſtärker und heiterer als vor einem Monat; auch habe ich jetzt einen beſſeren Begriff vom mittleren Deutſchland. Von Leipzig ging[2] ich zunächſt nach Dresden[3] und blieb dort mehrere Tage. Dresden iſt nicht viel größer als Leipzig, aber es hat eine ſchönere Lage. Es liegt nämlich in einem prächtigen Thale zu beiden Seiten der Elbe, der ältere und größere Teil auf dem linken Ufer. Unter den Sehenswürdigkeiten der Stadt iſt die große Bildergallerie am berühmteſten. Dieſe[4] war für mich, wie für die meiſten Fremden, der intereſſanteſte Punkt in Dresden. Weiteres[5] über meine Wanderungen ſchreibe ich vielleicht in meinem nächſten[6] Briefe.

EXERCISE XXa.

1. Es iſt kalt heute, viel kälter als geſtern. 2. Wir haben jetzt gewiß das kälteſte Wetter des Jahres. 3. Herr Wirt, ich wünſche ein beſſeres Zimmer, mit höheren Fenſtern und ſtärkerem Lichte. 4. Wir haben keine größeren Zimmer; dies iſt das größte im Hauſe. 5. Wohnen Sie in dem älteren oder in dem neueren Teile der Stadt? 6. Es giebt kürzere Wege von hier nach Hauſe, aber dies[7] iſt der beſte. 7. Zu dieſer Jahreszeit ſind die Tage am längſten und am ſchönſten. 8. Er iſt ein beſſerer Arzt, aber weniger berühmt als ſein jüngerer Bruder. 9. Als älteſter Sohn der Familie hat er ein größeres Vermögen als ſeine jüngeren Brüder. 10. Das Leben in Deutſchland iſt jetzt teurer[8] als in früheren Zeiten. 11. Goethe war ein größerer Dichter als Schiller, aber kein beſſerer Menſch. 12. Ich kenne ſeine ſpäteren Werke am beſten.

EXERCISE XXb.

1. He is two years older than I. 2. She is my dearest friend.[9] 3. The days are becoming shorter. 4. I know[10] a shorter way. 5. You are evidently in a more cheerful mood. 6. Where do you find stronger men or more beautiful women? 7. This is the beginning of better days. 8. Among Schiller's later plays[11] *Wilhelm Tell* is the best. 9. As poet Schiller is strongest in the drama. 10. That is the highest tower in the world. 11. Fräulein Bertha is more pretty[12] than beautiful. 12. This is surely the coldest day of the year. 13. Death[13] is the beginning of a better life.

VOCABULARY.

als, *conj.*, than, when, as.
Begriff, *m. s. 2*, idea, conception.
beide, *pron. adj.*, both, two.
bleiben, *v.*, remain; *pret.* blieb, [-leave].
Brief, *m. s. 2*, letter.
Ferien, *f. (pl. only)*, vacation.
fremd, *adj.*, strange, foreign.
Gallerie', *f. w.*, *gallery*.
Grad, *m. s. 2*, degree, *grade*.
heiter, *adj.*, cheerful.
Lage, *f. w.*, situation, [lay].
link, *adj.*, left.

mehrere, *adj.*, several.
mich, *pron. (acc.)*, **me.**
nämlich, *adv.*, **namely,** that is to say.
Se'henswü'rdigkei't, *f. w.*, sight.
ſtark, *adj.*, strong, [**stark**].
Teil, *m. s. 2*, part, [**deal**].
Ufer, *n. s. 1*, bank, shore.
Wanderung, *f. w.*, **wandering,** travel.
zunä'chſt, *adv.*, first.
zu'trä'glich, *adj.*, beneficial.

NOTES.—[1] **längere Zeit,** *some time, a considerable length of time.* The comparative sometimes denotes simply a moderate degree, and cannot then be translated literally; e. g., eine ältere Dame, *an elderly lady.*—[2] **ging,** *went;* pret. 1. and 3. sing. of gehen.—[3] **Dresden;** pronounce with long e in the penult.—[4] **Dieſe,** *this;* fem. of dies referring to Bildergallerie.—[5] **Weiteres,** *further (details).*—[6] **nächſten;** pronounce with long ä; so also höchſt with long ö.—[7] **dies** instead of dieſer (agreeing in gender with Weg) which would also be correct. See § 130, 2.—[8] **teurer** instead of teuerer; see § 111, 3.—[9] **friend,** Freundin.—[10] **know,** kennen.—[11] **plays,** Dramen.—[12] **more pretty,** mehr hübſch, rather than hübſcher; see § 295.—[13] **death;** use the def. art.

EXERCISE XXI.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Sie waren wohl den größten Teil des Sommers in England?

Ja, aber nur in den kleineren Städten; erſt im Herbſte ging ich nach London.

Waren Sie längere Zeit in London, oder nur ein paar Tage?

Im ganzen etwa drei Wochen; ich blieb etwas länger[1] in Paris[2], am längſten[1] aber in Berlin.[3]

Was denken Sie denn[4] jetzt von den drei größten Städten Europas?

Für mich war Paris am intereſſanteſten.

Das iſt höchſt ſonderbar; die meiſten Amerikaner haben[5] doch London am liebſten.

Das iſt möglich, aber meine Sympathien ſind mehr franzöſiſch als engliſch.

II.

Why did you not go[6] to London at once? That is the most interesting place in England, is it not?

Yes, to be sure, but not the pleasantest in the hot season.

For my part[7] I always like[8] the large cities best.

That is not my taste. People[9] live too fast in the large cities. I love a more quiet life.

No doubt one needs[10] a pretty long time[11] for[12] the sights of London.

Yes, indeed; it is a most interesting[13] city.

What do you think of the London weather[14]? It is the worst[15] in the world, is it not?

Oh no; the weather is no[16] worse in London than here at home.

EXERCISE XXIa.

1. Sie ſchreibt höchſt intereſſante Briefe. 2. Unter den neueren Dichtern leſe[17] ich Schiller am liebſten. 3. Die Geſellſchaft war langweilig im höchſten Grade; es waren nur ältere Leute da. 4. Ich weiß nichts Beſſeres zu thun. 5. Die Dresdener Bildergallerie iſt die berühmteſte in ganz Deutſchland. 6. In der letzten Zeit[18] hatten[19] wir äußerſt unangenehmes Wetter. 7. Dieſes Buch iſt zu groß; ich wünſche ein kleineres. 8. Der erſte Teil des Werkes iſt von größtem Intereſſe. 9. Die beſten Theater finden ſich[20] meiſtens nur in den größeren Städten. 10. Ich finde das Gebirge am ſchönſten im Herbſte. 11. Die berühmteſten Schriftſteller ſind nicht immer die größten. 12. Der Herr Profeſſor redete aufs freundlichſte über ſein neueſtes Werk.

EXERCISE XXIb.

1. He is a teacher of the modern[21] languages. 2. That is the most interesting part of the whole story. 3. The father is an elderly[22] gentleman with a white beard. 4. I am reading a most interesting story. 5. The hills and valleys are at their loveliest[23] in the autumn. 6. That is an exceedingly rare book. 7. No better man lives. 8. (The) *Faust* is Goethe's greatest work. 9. A poet has to do with the higher interests of life. 10. One finds his best thoughts in his last work. 11. I have nothing better.

12. His strongest point is his rare knowledge of modern [21] philosophy. 13. The last part of the work is the least [24] interesting.

VOCABULARY.

a'ngenehm, *adj.*, pleasant.
brauchen, *v.*, need, [**brook**].
drei, *num.*, **three.**
engliſch, *adj.*, **English.**
franzöſiſch, *adj.*, French.
Geſchmack, *m. s. 2*, **taste,** [**-smack**].
heiß, *adj.*, **hot.**
lieben, *v.*, **love.**
lieb haben, *v.*, **like,** [**have lief**].
möglich, *adj.*, possible.
Ort, *m. s. 2–3*, place.
raſch, *adj.*, fast, [**rash**].
ſofo'rt, *adv.*, at once.
Sympathie', *f. w.*, *sympathy.*
waru'm, *adv. (inter.)*, why.

NOTES.—[1] **länger, am längſten**; comparative and superlative of the adverb lange.—[2] **Paris**; pronounce to rhyme with *police.*—[3] **Berlin**; pronounce to rhyme with *tureen*; see also § 16, 1.—[4] **denn**; see Ex. XV, n. 3.—[5] **haben . . . am liebſten,** *like . . . best*; lit., *have*, i. e., *hold dearest.*—[6] **Why did you not go to L. at once?** Warum gingen Sie nicht ſofort nach L.?—[7] **For my part,** für mein (not meinen) Teil; Teil in the sense of *share*, being neuter.—[8] **I always like . . . best,** habe ich immer . . . am liebſten.—[9] **People,** die Leute.—[10] **No doubt one needs,** man braucht wohl.—[11] **a pretty long time,** längere Zeit, or eine ziemlich lange Zeit.—[12] **for,** für.—[13] **a most interesting,** eine höchſt intereſſante; one could not say eine intereſſanteſte.—[14] **of the London weather,** von dem Londoner Wetter.—[15] **the worst,** das ſchlechteſte.—[16] **no,** nicht.—[17] **leſe . . . am liebſten,** *like best to read.* As adv. am liebſten is the superlative of gern.—[18] **in . . . Zeit,** *of late.*—[19] **hatten wir**; translate here *we have had.*—[20] **finden ſich,** *are found*, lit., *find themselves.*—[21] **modern**; = newer.—[22] **elderly**; = older.—[23] **at their loveliest,** am ſchönſten.—[24] **the least,** am wenigſten or am mindeſten.

THE NUMERALS.

115. The Cardinals. The fundamental numbers and the mode of forming the others appear from the following table:

1 ein	4 vier	7 ſieben	10 zehn
2 zwei	5 fünf	8 acht	11 elf
3 drei	6 ſechs	9 neun	12 zwölf

13 dreizehn	21 einundzwanzig	90 neunzig
14 vierzehn	22 zweiundzwanzig	100 hundert
15 fünfzehn	30 dreißig	120 hundert und zwanzig
16 sech(s)zehn	40 vierzig	121 hundert einundzwanzig
17 sieb(en)zehn	50 fünfzig	150 hundert und fünfzig
18 achtzehn	60 sech(s)zig	200 zweihundert
19 neunzehn	70 sieb(en)zig	1,000 tausend
20 zwanzig	80 achtzig	

1,121 tausend einhundert einundzwanzig 1,000,000 eine Million
1,000,000,000 eine Milliarde 1,000,000,000,000 eine Billion

1. For A *hundred*, A *thousand*, German has simply hundert, tausend, ein being used only where English would have ONE *hundred*, ONE *thousand*.

116. Inflection and Use of ein. When it agrees with a noun expressed, and is not preceded by der, the numeral ein is inflected like the article ein; e. g., wir sind ein Volk, *we are one people;* wir sind eines Bluts, *we are of one blood.*

1. But if it is used without a noun it takes the ending er in the nominative singular masculine, and es in the nominative and accusative singular neuter; e. g., einer von uns hat unrecht, *one of us is wrong;* einer der Knaben, *one of the boys;* eines der Mädchen, *one of the girls.*

2. Preceded by der (dies or jen-), ein has the inflection of a weak adjective and forms a plural die einen, with the sense of *some;* e. g., der eine oder der andere hat unrecht, *the one or the other is wrong.*

3. Ein, *one*, is distinguished from ein, *a*, when necessary, by spaced type, or by a capital initial; less often by an accent.

117. The Numbers above ein. The numbers above ein are usually uninflected.

1. But zwei and drei sometimes form a nominative and accusative in e, a genitive in er and a dative in en. Some of the numbers above drei may also take the ending e, especially when no noun follows.

118. The Ordinals. From one to twenty the ordinal stems are formed by suffixing t to the cardinal; e. g., viert, *fourth;* dreizehnt, *thirteenth.* From twenty on they are formed by suffixing ſt to the tens; e. g., zwanzigſt, *twentieth;* fünfunddreißigſt, *thirty-fifth.*

1. But *first* is erſt, *third* is dritt (not dreit), and *eighth* is acht (not achtt).

2. Such forms as zweit, zwanzigſt, have only a theoretical existence. Like the superlatives ſchönſt, beſt, etc., the ordinals are only used after der or a pronominal modifier, and have then the inflection of an adjective; e. g., ſein dritter Sohn, *his third son;* am 21ſten (= einundzwanzigſten) April, *on the 21st of April.*

3. The partitive ordinals are formed by suffixing tel, an abbreviation of Teil, *part,* to the ordinal stem, the preceding t being dropped; e. g., ein Drittel, *a third;* ein Sechstel, *a sixth.* The words are neuter substantives.

a. Half is halb, as adjective, or die Hälfte, as noun; e. g., der halbe Weg, *half the way;* ein halbes Dutzend, *half a dozen;* die Hälfte des Apfels, *half of the apple.* Halb is also used substantively, without inflection, in fractional numbers: e. g., drei und einhalb Jahre, *three and a half years.*

b. A peculiar formation is the so-called dimidiative, made by suffixing halb to the ordinal stem with connecting vowel e, the number thus denoted being less by one-half than the ordinal; e. g., drittehalb, *two and a half,* i. e. *(two complete and the) third (only) half.* Instead of zweitehalb, anderthalb is used for *one and a half.*

EXERCISE XXII.

Reading Lesson: Numerals.

Ein deutſches Gymnaſium[1] hat einen Kurſus von neun Jahren. In der unterſten Klaſſe, der ſogenannten Sexta,[2] ſind die Schüler im Durchſchnitt neun bis zehn Jahre alt. Der Schüler vollendet den Kurſus alſo im neunzehnten oder zwanzigſten Jahre ſeines Lebens. Ein Schüler im achten oder neunten Jahre des Kurſus heißt ein Primaner,[3] im ſechſten und ſiebenten Jahre, ein Sekundaner, u. ſ. w.[4] In den höheren Klaſſen hat der Schüler meiſtens dreißig Stunden die Woche, alſo im Durchſchnitt fünf Stunden täglich. Die Schule beginnt um 7 Uhr vormittags im Sommer, um 8 Uhr im Winter. Das Schuljahr beginnt im Frühling acht Tage nach Oſtern und zerfällt in vier Termine. Das erſte Vierteljahr dauert bis zum 24. Juni, das zweite bis Ende September, das dritte bis Weihnachten. Die Ferien betragen im ganzen zehn bis zwölf Wochen, alſo etwa 21 Prozent[5] des Jahres. Außerdem giebt es mehrere beſondere[6] Feiertage, jetzt unter anderen den 2. September, den Jahrestag[7] der großen Schlacht bei Sedan am 2. Sept. 1870.

EXERCISE XXII a.

1. A week consists of seven days. 2. The year has twelve months, the month thirty days and the day twenty-four hours. 3. With us[8] the most important holidays are Christmas, New Year's,[9] the 22d of February[10] and the 4th of July. 4. Schiller's *Wallenstein* is divided into three parts. 5. The first part contains eleven scenes and one thousand one hundred and five lines. 6. The second part contains two thousand six hundred and fifty-one lines. 7. The entire work contains seven thousand six hundred and twenty-two lines. 8. The 23d of April,[11] 1897, was the two hundred and eighty-first anniversary of the death of Shakespeare. 9. Eight and seven is fifteen. 10. Three times[12] nine is twenty-seven. 11. Five-sixths of thirty is twenty-five.

Vocabulary.

ander, *pron. adj.*, other.
außerdem, *adv.*, besides.
beginnen, *v.*, begin.
betragen, *v.*, amount to.
dauern, *v.*, last, continue.
Durchſchnitt, *m. s. 2*, average.
Feiertag, *m. s. 2*, holiday.
Frühling, *m. s. 2, spring.*
Gymnaſium, *n. mx., gymnasium.*
heißen, *v.*, be called, [**hight**].
Klaſſe, *f. w., class.*
Kurſus, *m. (pl.* Kurſus *or* Kurſe), *course.*
Oſtern, *pl.*, **Easter.**
Schlacht, *f. w.*, battle.
Schule, *f. w., school.*
Schüler, *m. s. 1, scholar*, pupil
ſogena'nnt, *adj.*, so-called.
Termi'n, *m. s. 2, term.*
Uhr, *f. w.*, clock, [**hour**].
um, *prep. (acc.)*, at, about.
unter, *adj.*, lower, [**under**].
volle'nden, *v.*, complete, finish.
vo'rmi'ttags, *adv.*, forenoons.
Wei'hnachten, *pl.*, Christmas.
Winter, *m. s. 1*, **winter.**
zerfa'llen (in, *acc.*), *v.*, be divided (into); *3. sing.*, zerfällt.

Notes.—[1] **Gymnaſium**; the name given in Germany to a particular kind of preparatory school.—[2] **Sexta**, *sexta*; i. e., 'sixth class' or 'form,' from Latin *sexta classis*. After Sexta come Quinta and Quarta, each one year; then Tertia, Sekunda and Prima, each two years.—[3] **Prima'ner**, i. e., a *prima*-boy. There is no corresponding English word.—[4] **u. ſ. w.** = und ſo weiter, *and so forth.*—[5] **Prozent**; the German says *pro cent.* instead of *per cent.*—[6] **beſondere**, *special.*—[7] **Jahrestag**, *year-day*, i. e., *anniversary.* [8] **With us**, bei uns.—[9] **New Year's**, Neujahr.—[10] **February**, Februa'r.—[11] **April**, Apri'l.—[12] **Three times**, dreimal; so einmal, *once*, zweimal, *twice*, etc. (see Ex. V, n. 2., and § 299, 1).

EXERCISE XXIII.

Colloquy.

I.

Wie viel Uhr[1] iſt es? Ungefähr halb 9[2]?

Nein, es iſt nur 20 Minuten nach 8. Aber weshalb fragen Sie?

Um drei Viertel[3] 10 gehe ich nach dem Bahnhofe.

Erwarten Sie denn jemand?

Ja, ich erwarte meine beiden Schweſtern mit dem[4] nächſten Zuge.

Sie haben alſo zwei Schweſtern? Ich wußte nur von der einen, der kleinen Bertha.

Ja, ich habe noch eine.[5] Sie heißt Marie, und iſt etwa anderthalb Jahre jünger als ich.

Und wie alt ſind Sie denn?

Ich bin beinahe zwanzig. Mein Geburtstag iſt heute über acht[6] Tage, am 29. Februar.

Sie haben alſo nur alle vier Jahre[7] Geburtstag. Das iſt doch ſonderbar.

II.

How late is it, I wonder? About a quarter to 10?

No, it is only half past 9. But why do you ask?

At[8] 10 I am going to the station. My sister Marie is coming home to-day.

Is it possible? Why to-day is only the 20th.[9] There are four[10] days yet before Christmas.

Yes, but my birthday is on[11] the 22nd.

Oh that's it[12]—a family festival.[13] How old are you, pray?

I am in my[14] twenty-first year.

Is your sister older or younger than you?

Marie is about two years and a half[15] younger than I.

VOCABULARY.

ach, *interj.*, oh, ah.
all, *pron. adj.*, all, every.
Bahnhof, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ö), station, depot.
erwarten, *v.*, expect.
Feſt, *n. s. 2*, festival, *feast.*
fragen, *v.*, ask.
Geburt, *f. w.*, **birth.**
jemand, *pron.*, some one.
jung, *adj.* (*comp.* ü), **young.**
Minu'te, *f. w.*, *minute.*
Schweſter, *f. w.*, **sister.**
u'ngefähr, *adv.*, about.
weshalb, *pron.*, why.
wußte, *v.*, knew; *pret. of* wiſſen.
Zug, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ü), train, [tug].

NOTES.—[1] **Wie viel Uhr,** *what o'clock;* i. e., *how much (time according to the) clock.*—[2] **halb 9,** *half past 8;* so also halb eins, *half past 12*, etc. —[3] **Um drei Viertel 10,** *at a quarter to 10.* The preposition auf = *to* (i. e., *on the way toward*, beginning at 9) is understood before 10. Ein Viertel (auf) 10 = *a quarter past 9.*—[4] **mit,** *by.* In German one is said

to travel mit der Eiſenbahn, BY *rail.*—[5] **noch eine,** *another; another* in the sense of *an additional one* is always noch ein. —[6] **heute über acht Tage,** the German way of saying *a week from to-day.*—[7] **alle vier Jahre,** *every four years.*—[8] **At,** um.—[9] **Why to-day is only,** heute iſt doch erſt; doch = *why.*—[10] **There are . . . . before,** es ſind noch . . . . bis.—[11] **on,** an.—[12] **Oh that's it,** ach ſo!—[13] **family festival,** Fami'lienfeſt.—[14] **in my,** im.—[15] **two years and a half;** either zwei und einhalb Jahre, or drittehalb Jahre.

THE PRONOUN.

119. Classification of Pronouns. The pronouns are of six kinds: personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative and indefinite.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

120. The Forms. The personal pronouns are ich, *I*, of the first person; du, *thou*, of the second, and er, ſie, es, *he, she, it*, of the third. With these are classed the reflexive ſich, and the intensive ſelbſt, which are indeclinable. The others are inflected as follows:

Singular.

	Common Gender.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ich	du	er	ſie	es
G.	meiner	deiner	ſeiner	ihrer	ſeiner
	(mein)	(dein)	(ſein)		(ſein) (es)
D.	mir	dir	ihm	ihr	ihm
A.	mich	dich	ihn	ſie	es

Plural.

	Common Gender.		Common Gender.
N.	wir	ihr	ſie
G.	unſer	euer	ihrer
	(unſrer)	(eurer)	
D.	uns	euch	ihnen
A.	uns	euch	ſie

1. The forms in parenthesis are rare or poetical.

121. The Pronouns of Address. The pronouns of address now employed in the language of every-day life are du and Sie, both of them ordinarily to be translated by *you*. Du is used in speaking to a member of one's own family, to an intimate friend, a young child, one of the lower animals, or any inanimate object. It is also used in addressing God. Sie is used in addressing strangers, acquaintances and less intimate friends.

1. The form Sie is simply the pronoun ſie = *they*, used in polite address, and distinguished, in that use, by a capital; for which reason it takes its verb in the third person plural.

2. The above statements do not describe the usage of the past, nor of poetry (see § 301).

122. Non-personal Uses in the Third Person. Although called 'personal' pronouns, er and ſie do not always refer, and es seldom refers, to a person.

1. Any masculine noun is regularly referred to by er, a feminine by ſie and a neuter by es; e. g., der Rock paßt nicht; er iſt zu eng, *the coat does not fit; it is too tight;* ich kenne die Stelle; ſie findet ſich bei Schiller, *I know the passage; it is found in Schiller.*

a. But such neuter nouns as Weib, *woman*, Fräulein, *young lady*, Mädchen, *girl*, are usually referred to, in accordance with the natural gender, by ſie instead of es.

2. If a personal pronoun does not refer to a living object, and would stand in the genitive, or be governed by a preposition, it is usual to substitute for it either a demonstrative pronoun, or else a compound of the preposition with the adverb da (before vowels dar), *there;* e. g., das iſt meine Sache; Sie haben nichts damit (not mit ihr) zu thun, *that is my affair; you have nothing to do with it;* das Buch iſt lehrreich, aber der Stil deſſelben (not der Stil von ihm,

nor der Stil jener) ist schlecht, *the book is instructive, but the style of it is bad.* In the last example it would also be correct to say sein Stil, or dessen Stil, *its style.*

a. The substitution of a demonstrative for a personal pronoun is quite common, even when the pronoun refers to persons or is not governed by a preposition.

3. The neuter es is often used (somewhat like English *there*, but more freely) to anticipate a logical subject which for any reason it is desired to have come after the verb; e. g., es sind ihrer drei, *there are three of them;* es irrt der Mensch, *man errs.*

a. **For other special uses of es see § 303.**

123. The Reflexive. A reflexive pronoun denotes the subject in an objective relation.

1. In the third person, dative and accusative of all genders and both numbers, the reflexive is sich. It is to be translated by *himself, herself, itself, themselves;* as reflexive of Sie (see § 4, 2) by *yourself;* e. g., er haßt sich (acc.), *he hates himself;* er schmeichelt sich (dat.), *he flatters himself;* sie machen sich (Sie machen sich) große Mühe, *they give themselves* (*you give yourself*) *great pains.*

2. In the first and second persons, and in the genitive of the third, there is no separate reflexive, the proper form of the personal pronoun being used instead; as ich hasse mich, *I hate myself;* ihr schmeichelt euch, *you flatter yourselves.*

3. In the plural sich is sometimes used with reciprocal force, and is then equivalent to *each other, one another;* e. g., sie waren ehemals Freunde, aber jetzt hassen sie sich, *they were once friends, but now they hate each other* (or *one another*). Uns and euch may be used in the same way.

124. The Intensive. The pronoun selbst or selber, both indeclinable, may be used after any form of a personal pronoun, or after sich, for the sake of emphasis; e. g., er ist selbst Dichter, *he is a poet himself;* er betrügt sich selbst, *he deceives* HIMSELF

EXERCISE XXIV.

Reading Lesson: Personal Pronouns.

Teure Mutter! Dein[1] lieber Brief vom 23. letzten[2] Monats kam mir[3] erſt geſtern[4] in die Hände. Du biſt in Unruhe wegen meiner Geſundheit, aber Du[5] brauchſt Dich[5] nicht darüber zu ängſtigen. Mir geht es gut, aber wie es ſcheint, iſt das nicht der Fall bei Euch[6] zu Hauſe. Der kleine Unfall der Schweſter macht mir immer noch bange. War er denn wirklich ſo unbedeutend? Wie befindet ſie ſich jetzt? Bitte, ſchreibe[7] mir Weiteres darüber.

Ich hatte ſelbſt vor ein paar Tagen ein kleines Abenteuer. Am letzten Sonnabend nämlich ſaß[8] ich ruhig in meinem Zimmer und las[9] in einer Zeitung; es war um halb 10 vormittags. Auf einmal[10] klopfte[11] es an die Thüre; ich öffnete, und da ſtanden zwei Poliziſten vor mir. „Mein Herr," ſagte[12] der eine derſelben,[13] „haben Sie Ihren Geldbeutel bei ſich?" „Gewiß," antwortete ich erſtaunt und ſteckte die Hand in die Taſche. Aber der Beutel war nicht da.

EXERCISE XXIVa.

1. I find myself again at home. 2. The book belongs to me. 3. We are Americans. 4. She means us. 5. He has nothing to do with us. 6. She thinks only of[14] herself. 7. She is only[15] playing with him. 8. She finds herself among friends. 9. I expect her by[16] the next train. 10. They are coming with her. 11. She is going with them. 12. Here is the letter; I had it in my pocket. 13. There is the evening paper; but there is[17] nothing in it. 14. The book is tedious, especially the last part of it. 15. We know each other already. 16. They do not know each other.

Vocabulary.

A'benteuer, *n. s. 1, adventure.*
ängſtigen (ſich), *v.*, torment one's self, be anxious.
a'ntworten, *v.*, answer · *pret.* antwortete.
bang(e), *adv.*, anxiously; bange machen, *with dat.*, to trouble.
Beutel, *m. s. 1*, purse.
ei'nmal, *adv.*, once; einma'l, just, pray.

erſtau'nt, *pple.*, astonished.
Fall, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä*)*, case, [fall].
Geld, *n. s. 3*, money, [yield].
Geſundheit, *f. w.*, health, [-sound-].
Hand, *f. s. 2 (pl.* ä*)*, hand.
klopfen, *v.*, knock; *pret.* klopfte.
öffnen, *v.*, open; *pret.* öffnete.
Polizi'ſt, *m. w.*, *policeman.*
ſcheinen, *v.*, seem, shine.
ſitzen, *v.*, sit; *pret.* ſaß.
Sonnabend, *m. s. 2*, Saturday, [eve of Sun-day].
ſtecken, *v.*, put, stick; *pret.* ſteckte.
ſtehen, *v.*, stand; *pret.* ſtand.
Taſche, *f. w.*, pocket.
Thür(e), *f. w.*, door.
u'nbedeutend, *adj.*, insignificant.
U'nfall, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä*)*, accident.
U'nruhe, *f. w.*, unrest, concern.

Notes.—[1] **Dein,** *your*, the possessive corresponding to Du, which the writer uses in addressing his mother.—[2] **letzten Monats,** *of last month.* Notice the weak adjective, § 104, 1, *a*; but one might also say des letzten Monats.—[3] **kam mir . . . . zu Händen,** *came into my hands, came to hand*; mir takes the place of a possessive agreeing with Händen. Kam is pret. of kommen.—[4] **erſt geſtern,** *only yesterday.*—[5] **Du, Dich**; all pronouns of address are written with a capital in letters (see § 4, 2). Dich is object of ängſtigen; Du brauchſt Dich nicht zu ängſtigen = *you do not need to trouble yourself.*—[6] **bei Euch,** *with you*, i. e., the family.—[7] **ſchreibe,** *write*; imperative, 2. pers. sing.—[8] **ſaß ich,** *I was sitting* (see Ex. V, n. 5).—[9] **las,** *was reading*; pret. of leſen.—[10] **auf ei'nmal,** *all at once.*—[11] **klopfte es,** *there was a knock.*—[12] **ſagte,** *said*; pret. of ſagen.—[13] **derſelben,** *of them* (§ 134, 1).—[14] **of,** an, with acc.—[15] **only**; see § 96.—[16] **by,** mit.—[17] **there is,** es iſt.

THE POSSESSIVES.

125. Strong Forms. The possessives which correspond to the various personal pronouns are as follows:

ich	: mein, *my.*	es	: ſein, *its.*
du	: dein, *thy.*	wir	: unſer, *our.*
er	: ſein, *his.*	ihr	: euer, *your.*
ſie	: ihr, *her.*	ſie	: ihr, *their.*
		Sie	: Ihr, *your.*

Sein also stands for the indefinite possessive *one's.*

1. The possessives, when they agree with a noun, are declined in the singular like the article ein, in the plural like any strong adjective ; thus :

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	mein	meine	mein	meine
G.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
D.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
A.	meinen	meine	mein	meine
N.	euer	eure	euer	eure
G.	eures	eurer	eures	eurer
D.	eurem	eurer	eurem	euren
A.	euren	eure	euer	eure

2. But when no noun follows (except sometimes in the predicate), the possessives, like kein and the numeral ein, take the ending er in the nominative singular masculine, and the ending es in the nominative and accusative singular neuter ; e. g., ſein Vater iſt Kaufmann, meiner iſt Arzt, *his father is a merchant, mine is a physician.*

126. Weak Forms. Any of the above mentioned possessives may be preceded by der, and take, then, the regular inflection of a weak adjective ; e. g., ſeine Eltern ſind reich, die meinen ſind arm, *his parents are rich, mine are poor.*

1. Each of the possessives forms, further, a derivative stem in ig (unſer and euer losing their e before the suffix), which is used only after der and has also the inflection of a weak adjective ; thus instead of meiner and die meinen, in the last two examples, one might say der meinige and die meinigen. Neither of the weak forms of the possessive can be used with accompanying noun.

a. Observe that the forms described in the last three paragraphs correspond to the English *mine, thine, hers*, etc.,

which take the place of a noun limited by a possessive adjective. But *mine, thine*, etc., may be represented in the predicate by the uninflected mein, dein, etc.

2. Das Meine, das Meinige, etc. (as substantives) refer to property; die Meinen, die Meinigen, etc., to friends, relatives, partisans, or the like; e. g., er hat das Seine (das Seinige) verſchwendet, *he has squandered his property;* ich grüße dich und die Deinigen, *I greet you and yours.*

127. Possessive Compounds. Each of the possessive stems, amplified by the syllable et, enters into composition with the three prepositions halb (halber, halben), *on behalf of*, wegen, *on account of*, and um .... willen, *for the sake of*, giving the forms meinetwegen, *on my account, for aught I care, so far as I am concerned*, meinethalb, *on my account*, um meinetwillen, *for my sake*, etc.

1. Meinetwegen, *on my account*, deinethalben, *on your behalf*, etc., take the place of wegen meiner, *on account of me*, deiner halben, *on behalf of you*, etc. On the origin of these forms see § 306.

2. Each of the possessives, in the genitive singular masculine, strong form (meines, ihres, etc.), enters into composition with gleichen, from the adjective gleich, *like*, giving the forms meinesgleichen, *the like of me*, Ihresgleichen, *the like of you*, etc. These forms are invariable.

128. Congruence of the Possessive. The possessive ſein corresponds, in the singular number, to masculine and neuter nouns, ihr to feminines; e. g., der Baum hat ſeine Blätter verloren, *the tree has lost its leaves;* ſelbſt die Freiheit hat ihre Nachteile, *even freedom has its disadvantages.*

1. But with neuter nouns whose natural gender is feminine the possessive is apt to be ihr; e. g., das Mädchen hat ihre Mutter verloren, *the girl has lost her mother.*

2. With a neuter collective noun the possessive is regularly ſein, though English may require *their*; e. g., das Volk beſtand auf ſeine Rechte, *the people insisted upon their rights.*

EXERCISE XXV.

READING LESSON: PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

„Iſt dies Ihr Eigentum?" fragte er nun, und damit legte er einen Beutel vor mir[1] auf den Tiſch. „Der Beutel iſt allerdings mein," antwortete ich, „aber wie in aller Welt kommt er in Ihre Hände?" „Das iſt unſre Sache," antwortete er. „Aber iſt es[2] denn wirklich der Ihrige? Beſehen Sie ihn genau." Darauf nahm ich den Beutel in die Hand; es war doch[3] nicht meiner, nur dem meinigen ſehr ähnlich. Jetzt erklärte ich ihnen meinen Irrtum. Sie ſahen[4] ſich verſchmitzt in die Augen und redeten leiſe ein paar Worte mit einander. Darauf ſagte der ältere der beiden Männer zu mir: „Wo waren Sie denn geſtern Abend, und wie viel Geld hatten Sie bei ſich?" Ich nannte ihm den Ort, einen gewiſſen Konzertgarten, und die Summe von 75 Mark.[5] „Das ſtimmt genau," ſagte jetzt der jüngere zu ſeinem Kameraden. „Nun," ſagte der andere zu mir: „Iſt dies vielleicht der Ihrige?" Damit zog er einen anderen Beutel aus der Taſche. Diesmal war es wirklich der meinige; auch ſtimmte der Inhalt. Die Geſchichte[6] mit dem falſchen Beutel war nur eine Prüfung meiner Redlichkeit.

EXERCISE XXVa.

REMARK.—Translate 'you' by du, Sie or ihr, as you please, but take care that pronoun and possessive be congruous; that is, do not, in the same sentence, associate dein with Sie, Ihr with du, or the like.

1. I do it for your sake. 2. How goes it with you and yours? 3. Your German is much better than mine. 4. Our prices are much lower than his. 5. My house is not far from hers. 6. That is my affair, not yours. 7. His last work is his best. 8. Your new friend is an old acquaintance of mine. 9. We find our highest happiness in quiet daily work. 10. The girl is the picture of her

mother. 11. My little garden is now my greatest delight. 12. I think your old room was better than your new (one). 13. They were friends their whole life long. 14. Here are tickets for you and your family.

Vocabulary.

ähnlich, *adj. (dat.)*, similar.
allerdings, *adv.*, to be sure.
beſehen, *v.*, look at, [be-see].
damit, *adv.*, therewith.
darauf, *adv.*, there-upon.
Eigentum, *n. s. 3*, property. [own-dom].
einander, *pron. (indecl.)*, each other, one another.
erklären, *v.*, explain; *pret.* erklärte.
falſch, *adj.*, *false*, wrong.
genau', *adj.*, exact, careful.
Inhalt, *m. s. 2*, contents, [in-hold].
Kamerad, *m. w.*, *comrade.*
legen, *v.*, lay; *pret.* legte.
leiſe, *adv.*, softly, in low tone.
Mark, *f. w.*, *mark.*
nennen, *v.*, name; *pret.* nannte.
Prüfung, *f. w.*, trial, *proving.*
Redlichkeit, *f. w.*, honesty.
ſtimmen, *v.*, tally, coincide.
Summe, *f. w.*, *sum.*
verſchmitzt, *adv.*, shrewdly.
Wort, *n. s. 2–3*,[7] word.
ziehen, *v.*, draw; *pret.* zog, [tow]

Notes.—[1] **vor mir auf den Tiſch**; after legen, ſetzen and other verbs of placing, auf takes the acc. on account of the motion implied. Vor mir, dat., as answering the question *whereabouts* upon the table. —[2] **es**; notice the gender; Beutel is masc., but es is used without regard to the gender of the predicate der Ihrige, to denote identity. —[3] **es war doch nicht meiner**, *it was not mine after all.* The predicate possessive is apt to be declined when the noun to which it refers is not expressed in the same sentence.— [4] **ſahen ſich . . . . in die Augen**, *looked in each other's eyes;* ſahen, pret. of ſehen; ſich, dat. in reciprocal sense, § 123, 3.— [5] **Mark**, *marks;* the singular form is always used after a numeral. The mark is the German unit of currency = $0.25. —[6] **Geſchichte** mit, *affair of.*— [7] **Worte** means *words* in connected discourse; **Wörter**, *words* without connection.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Reading Lesson: Congruence of Personal, Possessive and Reflexive Pronouns.

Note.—The same matter is given below in three different forms: (*a*) as it would appear if written, say, by a teacher to *one or more* pupils who had just left school; (*b*) as it would be written by a father to his son; (*c*) as it would be written by a father to his two sons.

(a)

Ich ſage Ihnen aufrichtig, Sie haben eine Zeit ſchwerer Prüfung vor ſich; darum hüten Sie ſich vor[1] falſchen Schritten. Ihre Eltern, Ihre Lehrer, erwarten viel von Ihnen; auf Ihnen und auf Ihrem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Sie kennen Ihre Pflicht; ich brauche ſie Ihnen nicht zu erklären. Vergeuden Sie nicht Ihre Zeit; verlaſſen Sie ſich ſo viel als möglich[2] auf Ihre eigne Kraft, auf Ihren eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen ſeien Sie[3] ſich ſelber treu.

(b)

Ich ſage Dir aufrichtig, Du haſt eine Zeit ſchwerer Prüfung vor Dir; darum hüte[4] Dich vor falſchen Schritten. Deine Eltern, Deine Lehrer, erwarten viel von Dir; auf Dir und auf Deinem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Du kennſt Deine Pflicht; ich brauche ſie Dir nicht zu erklären. Vergeude[4] nicht Deine Zeit; verlaſſe[4] Dich ſo viel als möglich auf Deine eigne Kraft, auf Deinen eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen ſei[4] Dir ſelber treu.

(c)

Ich ſage Euch aufrichtig, Ihr habt eine Zeit ſchwerer Prüfung vor Euch; darum hütet[5] Euch vor falſchen Schritten. Eure Eltern, Eure Lehrer, erwarten viel von Euch; auf Euch und auf Eurem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Ihr kennt Eure Pflicht; ich brauche ſie Euch nicht zu erklären. Vergeudet[5] nicht Eure Zeit; verlaßt[5] Euch ſo viel als möglich auf Eure eigne Kraft, auf Euren eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen ſeid[5] Euch ſelber treu.

EXERCISE XXVIa.

Remark.—Write this exercise three times for the three cases that 'you' means (*a*) a near relative or an intimate friend; (*b*) two intimate friends, and (*c*) one or more acquaintances.

1. Where are you? 2. How do you do[6]? 3. What have you in your hand? 4. How goes it with you? 5. I bring you[7] good news. 6. I know you and I rely upon you. 7. I need you and you need me. 8. Have you any[8] money by you? 9. Luckily for you he does not see you. 10. You are still young; you have still the best part of life before you.

Vocabulary.

aufrichtig, *adj.*, sincere, frank, [up-right].
darum, *adv.*, therefore.
Fleiß, *m. s. (no pl.)*, industry.
Hoffnung, *f. w.*, hope.
hüten (ſich), *v.*, be on one's guard, [heed].
Pflicht, *f. w.*, duty, [plight].
ruhen, *v.*, rest.
Schritt, *m. s. 2*, step.
ſchwer, *adj.*, heavy, hard.
treu, *adj.*, true, faithful.
vergeuden, *v.*, waste.
verlaſſen (ſich), *v.*, rely (upon = auf, *with acc.*).

Notes.—[1] **hüten Sie ſich vor**, *be on your guard against* (see Ex. VIII, n. 14).—[2] **ſo viel als möglich** = möglichſt viel, *as much as possible*.—[3] **ſeien Sie**, *be;* imv. 3. (= 2.) pl. of ſein.—[4] **hüte, vergeude, verlaſſe, ſei**; all imv. 2. pers. sing.—[5] **hütet, vergeudet, verlaßt, ſeid**; all imv. 2. pers. pl.—[6] **do**; the requisite forms of ſich befinden are: du befindeſt dich, ihr befindet euch, Sie befinden ſich.—[7] **you**, i. e., to you, dat.—[8] **any**, etwas.

EXERCISE XXVII.

Colloquy.

I.

Guten Abend, Herr Müller. Wie befinden Sie ſich heute abend?

Ich ſelbſt bin geſund, aber es geht nicht gut bei mir zu Hauſe.

Das thut mir leid. Es iſt doch keines der Kinder wieder krank?

Ja, leider[1]; die Kleine hat wieder Kopfweh — dazu ein wenig Fieber.

Das ist sonderbar. Geben Sie ihr regelmäßig die Arznei?

Gewiß, aber es hilft nichts mehr. Ich bitte Sie, sofort zu uns zu kommen.

Gleich diesen Augenblick meinetwegen. Bitte, setzen Sie sich. In zwei Minuten bin ich bereit.

Ich danke Ihnen sehr. Sie machen sich viel Mühe um unsertwillen.

Bitte, sprechen Sie nicht davon. Ich thue nur meine Pflicht. Wozu bin ich denn Arzt?

II.

Good evening, doctor. How do you do this evening?

Very well, thank you. How goes it at your house?

Unfortunately the little girl is sick again.[2]

Is it possible? What is the matter with her this time?

Oh, she has the old headache again,[3] and withal a little fever.

I must see[5] her again. Wait a moment. I shall be[4] ready directly.

I thank you very much, but you do not need[6] to hurry on my account.

VOCABULARY.

Arznei', *f. w.*, medicine.
beeilen (sich), *v.*, hurry.
bereit, *adj.*, ready, [-ready].
danken, *v. (dat.)*, thank.
dazu', *adv.*, besides, withal.
fehlen, *v.*, fail; was fehlt, *with dat.*, what is the matter?
Fieber, *n. s. 1*, fever.
genug, *adj.*, enough.
gesund, *adj.*, well, healthy, [-sound].
gleich, *adv.*, directly; *as adj.*, like, [-like].
helfen, *v.*, help; hilft, helps.
Kopfweh, *n. s. 2*, headache, [-woe].
krank, *adj.*, sick, ill.

leid, *adj.*, disagreeable; es thut mir leid, I am sorry, [loath].
Mühe, *f. w.*, pains, trouble.
müssen, *v.*, must; ich muß, I must.
regelmäßig, *adj.*, regular.
sprechen, *v.*, speak.
warten, *v.*, wait.
wozu', *adv.*, to what end, what for.

NOTES.—[1] **leider,** *unfortunately, alas;* shortened from was noch leider ist, *what is still more disagreeable.*—[2] **again,** wieder, preceding krank.—[3] **see her again,** sie wieder sehen.—[4] **I shall be .... directly,** ich bin gleich ....—[5] **you do not need to hurry,** Sie brauchen sich nicht .... zu beeilen.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES.

129. The Forms. The common demonstrative pronouns are dies, *this*, jen, *that*, and der, *that*. To these are to be added the so-called determinatives, derjenige, *that*, derselbe, *the same*, and solch, *such*. The first three are declined as follows:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	dieser	diese	dieses, dies,	diese
G.	dieses	dieser	dieses	dieser
D.	diesem	dieser	diesem	diesen
A.	diesen	diese	dieses, dies,	diese
N.	jener	jene	jenes	jene
G.	jenes	jener	jenes	jener
D.	jenem	jener	jenem	jenen
A.	jenen	jene	jenes	jene
N.	der	die	das	die
G.	dessen (des)	deren (der)	dessen (des)	deren, derer, (der)
D.	dem	der	dem	denen (den)
A.	den	die	das	die

1. All the demonstratives can be used either substantively or adjectively. When der is used adjectively it is inflected precisely like the article der, which is nothing

but a demonstrative pronoun weakened in force by loss of its accent. Hence the short forms in parenthesis.

130. Use of dies and jen-. Dies, cognate with *this*, denotes proximity, while jen-, cognate with *yon*, denotes remoteness; e. g., jener Berg (dort) iſt viel höher als dieſer (hier), *that mountain (yonder) is much higher than this one (here)*; in dieſem Leben, *in this life* (i. e., the life that now is); in jener Welt, *in that world* (i. e., the world to come).

1. Referring to two objects lately mentioned dies means *the latter* and jen- *the former*.

2. The short form dies is especially common as absolute subject, being used without reference to the gender or number of a predicate noun; e. g., dies iſt meine Schweſter, *this is my sister*; dies ſind Freunde von mir, *these are friends of mine*.

131. Use of der. Der denotes neither proximity nor remoteness, but simple emphasis. It is distinguished in speech by its accent, and in print, if necessary, by spaced type; e. g., der Menſch iſt ſterblich; in der Hinſicht gleicht er dem Tiere, *man is mortal; in that respect he is like the brute*.

1. The form das, like dies, is often used without reference to the gender or number of a predicate noun; e. g., das iſt meine Schweſter, *that is my sister*; das ſind Freunde von mir, *those are friends of mine*. Note that the verb agrees in number with the predicate noun.

2. Der often takes the place of an emphatic personal pronoun; e. g., der iſt kein Dichter, HE *is no poet*.

132. Demonstrative Compounds. For a case-form of das, used alone in the dative or accusative after a preposition, and not referring to a living object, it is usual to substitute a compound of da; e. g., davon weiß ich nichts, *of that I know nothing*.

a. In like manner a compound of hier may be substituted for a case-form of dies under similar circumstances; e. g., hierin liegt der Unterſchied, *in this lies the difference.*

1. The three prepositions wegen, halb and um . . . . willen enter into composition with des, not with da, giving the forms deshalb, deswegen, rarely deswillen, all meaning *on that account.*

2. Desgleichen and dergleichen are indeclinable pronominal adjectives meaning *such like, the like of that.*

133. De'rjenige. The determinative pronoun derjenige inflects both parts throughout, the der being declined like the article der, the stem jenig like a weak adjective; thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen
G.	desjenigen	derjenigen, etc.		derjenigen, etc.

1. Derjenige is generally followed by a relative pronoun, in connection with which it means *he (who), the one (who), that (which).*

134. Derſe'lbe. The inflection of derſelbe is similar to that of derjenige; thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	derſelbe	dieſelbe	dasſelbe	dieſelben
G.	desſelben	derſelben, etc.		derſelben, etc.

1. Derſelbe means *the same,* but it is very often used where English employs a personal pronoun (cf. § 122, 2).

135. Solch. Solch, *such,* has regular adjective inflection, but may also stand uninflected, especially before an adjective; e. g., ſolch ſchönes Wetter, or ſolches ſchöne Wetter, *such fine weather.*

1. Solch may precede or follow ein; if it precedes, it is uninflected; if it follows, inflected; thus *such a man* is either solch ein Mann or ein solcher Mann.

a. Instead of solch ein, so ein is common.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

COLLOQUY: DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

I.

Bitte, setzen Sie sich. Nehmen Sie diesen Stuhl am Ofen.

Behalten Sie den für sich. Ich hole[1] mir jenen am Fenster.

Nun, wie geht's Ihnen seit jenem Abend im Theater?

Im ganzen recht gut; aber dieses ewige Studieren[2] macht mir bisweilen Kopfweh.

Das ist schade; aber Sie lernen dabei[3] doch dies und das?

O, natürlich. Nur ist es immer dieselbe Geschichte. Ich denke oft an jene Zeit vor drei Monaten.

Ja, das waren schöne Tage. — Was hören Sie denn von jenem alten Herrn, dem[4] mit der hübschen Tochter?

Der wohnt nicht mehr in jener Gegend; sein Sohn und dessen[5] Frau machten ihm das Leben zu sauer.

Ja, die[6] waren auch mir unerträglich. Mit solchen Leuten ist ein freundliches Verhältnis unmöglich.

II.

Please take a seat.[7] That[8] chair is not comfortable—take this one.

That one[9] by the window is better still.[10] I will get that.[11]

Well, how do you find yourself since that week in the country?[12]

Oh, don't speak of that. The contrast between that time and this gives me the headache.

Poor fellow! For my part,[13] I find this life here very pleasant.

Of course,[14]—these tedious books. They are your best friends.

To be sure; a good book is always the same, not this[15] to-day and that to-morrow, like human beings.[16]

Very fine; where did you get[17] *that* saying?

EXERCISE XXVIII a.

1. This is the shortest way. 2. Do you see that high tower? 3. Death[18] is the end of this life; in that life there is no[19] death. 4. These hot summer-days are very unpleasant. 5. Homer and Vergil, those great poets of antiquity,[18] are still the delight of mankind.[18] 6. Perhaps he is a friend of yours; in that case I have nothing to say. 7. Those are the towers of the royal castle. 8. The girl is her mother's own child; she has the same head, the same eyes, the same voice. 9. This building is the museum; that one yonder the new theater. 10. Such autumn-days as these are extremely rare in this part of the world. 11. From 10 to 11 a.m.[20] I have a language-lesson; after that I take a walk. 12. He is a good man, but not on that account a good poet.

Vocabulary.

behalten, *v.*, keep, [behold].
bequem, *adj.*, comfortable
bisweilen, *adv.*, at times.
ewig, *adv.*, everlasting, [aye-].
Gegend, *f. w.*, region.
Gegenſatz, *m. s. 2, (pl. ä)*, contrast.
holen, *v.*, fetch; *pret.* holte.
hören, *v.*, hear.
lernen, *v.*, learn.
oft, *adv.*, often, oft.
recht, *adv.*, right, very.
ſauer, *adj.*, bitter, sour.
Schade, *m. mx. (pl.* Schäden*)*, injury, loss; das iſt ſchade, *that is a pity*, [scathe].
ſeit, *prep. (dat.)*, since.
Spruch, *m. s. 2*, saying.
ſtudie'ren, *v.*, *study*.
unerträ'glich, *adj.*, intolerable.
unmö'glich, *adj*, impossible.
Verhältnis, *n. s. 2*, relation.
woher', *adv.*, whence.

Notes.—[1] **ich hole**, *I will get*; the present tense denoting an immediate purpose.—[2] **Studieren**, a verbal noun, or infinitive used as a

noun; all such are n. s. 1.—[3] **dabei,** *incidentally, in so doing, in connection with that.* Never translate dabei by *thereby,* which is dadurch.—[4] **dem,** *the one.*—[5] **deſſen Frau,** *the latter's wife, the son's wife;* ſeine Frau would mean *his own wife.*—[6] **die,** *they, those people.*—[7] **take a seat,** nehmen Sie Platz.—[8] **that,** der.—[9] **that one,** jener.—[10] **better still,** noch beſſer.—[11] **that,** den.—[12] **in the country;** see Ex. IX, n. 5.—[13] **for my part;** see Ex. XXI, n. 7.—[14] **of course,** natürlich.—[15] **this to-day,** heute dies.—[16] **like human beings,** wie die Menſchen.—[17] **where did you get,** woher haben Sie.—[18] Use the def. **art.**—[19] **there is no,** giebt es keinen.—[20] **a. m.,** vormittags.

THE RELATIVES.

136. The Forms. The ordinary relative pronouns are der and welch, both meaning *who, which, that.* They are declined as follows:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	der	die	das	die
G.	deſſen	deren	deſſen	deren
D.	dem	der	dem	denen
A.	den	die	das	die
N.	welcher	welche	welches	welche
G.	welches	welcher	welches	welcher
D.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen
A.	welchen	welche	welches	welche

1. The interrogative pronouns wer, *who,* and was, *what* (for their inflection see § 143), are also used as relatives, but only as compound or indefinite relatives = *he who, whoever, that which, whatever.* (For an important exception with regard to was see § 141, 2.)

137. The Relative Clause. In a relative clause the inflected verb comes last. The relative pronoun itself comes first (except when it is governed by a preposition) and agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; e. g., wehe der Mutter, deren Kind undankbar iſt,

alas for the mother whose child is ungrateful; er iſt ein Knabe, von dem ich nur Gutes gehört habe, *he is a boy of whom I have heard only good reports.*

1. The relative cannot be omitted, as it so often is in English; e. g., *the man I mean* is der Mann, den ich meine; *the house I live in*, das Haus, in welchem (or worin) ich wohne.

138. **Use of der and welch.** Either relative may refer to a person or to a thing. Welch, but not der, may be used as an adjective in agreement with a noun; e. g., er iſt ein Mann, der (or welcher) ſtets die Wahrheit ſpricht, welcher (never der) Eigenſchaft er ſein Glück verdankt, *he is a man who always speaks the truth, to which trait he owes his success.*

1. In the genitive the forms of der are required, except in the adjectival use of welch just explained; elsewhere there is a free choice between der and welch, subject only to considerations of style and euphony.

139. **Substitutes for the Relative.** For the dative or accusative of der or welch, depending upon a preposition and not referring to a living object, it is usual to substitute a compound of the preposition with the adverb wo. *where* (before vowels wor), e. g., das iſt der Punkt, worauf ich beſtehe, *that is the point I insist upon (the point whereupon I insist).*

1. For the genitive of a relative depending on one of the prepositions halb or wegen, and not referring to persons, is substituted one of the compounds weshalb, or weswegen; e. g., ich war krank, weshalb ich zu Hauſe bleiben mußte, *I was sick, for which reason I had to remain at home.*

2. A simple adverb may take the place of a relative; e. g. der Ort, wo ich wohne, *the place where (= in which) I live;* die Art, wie er lebt, *the way (in which) he lives.*

140. Use of wer as Relative. Wer as relative can have no antecedent, being itself both antecedent and relative; e. g., wer geſund iſt (never der, wer geſund iſt) braucht keinen Arzt, *he who is well does not need a physician.*

1. But when wer has gone before, its implied antecedent may be expressed, in the form of a demonstrative, for emphasis; e. g., wer geſund iſt, der braucht keinen Arzt.

2. Followed by auch, nur or immer (other words may or may not intervene) wer acquires the force of an indefinite relative = *whoever;* e. g., ſie iſt jedenfalls hübſch, wer ſie auch ſein mag, *she is pretty at any rate, whoever she may be.*

141. Use of was as Relative. The use of the neuter was as compound and indefinite relative = *what, whatever, that which, the thing which,* etc., runs nearly parallel to that of the masculine-feminine wer; e. g., was ich ſehe, (das) weiß ich, *what I see, (that) I know;* es iſt falſch, was man auch ſagen mag, *it is false, whatever they may say.*

a. So also when the antecedent is a sentence; e. g., es gelang mir nicht, was mich ſehr ärgerte, *I did not succeed, which vexed me greatly.*

1. This was is often best translated by *so far as;* e. g., was mich betrifft, *so far as concerns me.*

2. After any neuter pronoun, or adjective (especially a superlative) taken in a general sense, the regular relative is was, not das; e. g., nicht alles, was glänzt, iſt Gold, *not all that glitters is gold;* das iſt es, was mich ärgert, *it is that that vexes me;* das iſt das beſte, was ich thun kann, *that is the best that I can do;* das Große, was ich an ihm bewundre, *the great qualities that I admire in him.*

EXERCISE XXIX.

READING LESSON: RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

142. Rule of Order III: The Dependent Order. In a dependent sentence the verb comes at the end; e. g., wiſſen Sie, ob der Doktor zu Hauſe iſt? *do you know whether the doctor is at home?* erinnern Sie ſich, wo Sie geſtern zu dieſer Zeit waren? *do you remember where you were yesterday at this time?*

a. The case in which 'the verb' is in a compound tense, and so consists of more than one word, will be provided for further on.

1. This rule covers all sentences introduced by a subordinating conjunction, a relative pronoun or particle, or an indirect interrogative.

2. Subordinate sentences of every kind are usually set off by a comma.

Göttingen, den 5. Juni, 1893.

Lieber Herr Müller! Ihr freundlicher Brief, in dem Sie mir ſo viel Intereſſantes über die Schule erzählen, und der nun leider ſchon zwei Wochen unbeantwortet liegt,[1] war mir höchſt willkommen. Es freut mich ſehr, daß die guten Freunde, mit denen ich lange Zeit ſo glücklich lebte, noch immer an mich denken. Es giebt ein Sprichwort, welches lautet: „Aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn"; aber, was mich betrifft, ſo finde ich hier unter lauter Fremden, daß ich jetzt erſt[3] meine alten Freunde richtig ſchätze.

Was Sie von dem jungen Fritz Moſer ſchreiben, deſſen Streiche Ihnen ſo viel Mühe machen, iſt mir ganz begreiflich. Der Junge war von Kind auf[4] ein Taugenichts, der nur an dumme Streiche[5] dachte.[6] Ich weiß, daß er nicht redlich iſt, und wer keinen Charakter hat, dem[7] iſt nun nicht zu helfen. Alles, was der Lehrer für einen ſolchen Schüler thut, iſt verlorene Mühe. Für den Rat, den Sie mir in Bezug auf meine Studien geben, danke ich Ihnen ſehr. Da Sie mich ſo lange kennen, wiſſen Sie am beſten, wozu[8] ich fähig bin, und welche[8] Fehler ich zu vermeiden habe.

EXERCISE XXIXa.

1. He is a man who knows[9] everything. 2. The building that you see is a museum. 3. That is the lady who has the pretty daughters. 4. I do not know[10] the book of which you speak. 5. There are[11] authors who write too much and think too little. 6. That part of Dresden which lies on the left bank of the river is called the Old-Town. 7. That is not the man I mean. 8. Here one finds all that makes life interesting. 9. That is all I know[9] of the affair. 10. There is[11] no poet whose life is more interesting. 11. Whoever has money has friends. 12. I give you the best I have. 13. The work of which you speak is very expensive. 14. Do you know[10] the book in which the saying is found[12]?

VOCABULARY.

begreiflich, *adj.*, comprehensible.
betreffen, *v.*, concern ; betrifft, concerns.
Bezug, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ü*)*, reference, regard.
Chara'kter, *m. s. 2 (pl.* -te're*)*, *character.*
da, *sub. conj.*, as, since.
daß, *sub. conj.*, that.
dumm, *adj.*, stupid, [dumb].
fähig, *adj.*, capable, fit, suited.
Fehler, *m. s. 1*, mistake.
freuen, *v.*, rejoice ; es freut mich, I am glad.
glücklich, *adj.*, happy.
lauten, *v.*, purport, run.
Mühe, *f. w.*, trouble, pains.
Rat, *m. s. (no pl.)*, advice.
redlich, *adj.*, honest, candid.
ſchätzen, *v.*, value, esteem.
Sinn, *m. s. 2*, sense, mind.
Sprichwort, *n. s. 3*, proverb.
Streich, *m. s. 2*, prank, trick, stroke.
Tau'genichts, *m. (indecl.)*, good-for-nothing.
unbea'ntwortet, *pple.*, unanswered.
verloren, *pple.*, lost, [forlorn].
vermeiden, *v.*, avoid.
willko'mmen, *adj.*, welcome.

NOTES.— [1] **Liegt**, *has lain, has been lying* (Ex. VII, n. 1).— [2] **ſo finde ich**, *I find.* When a subordinate sentence has gone before, the principal sentence must stand in the inverted order, and ſo is often put before the principal verb to make the inversion easier. Such a ſo

should not be translated. — [3] **jetzt erſt**, lit. *now first;* but *I value now first = I just begin to value.* — [4] **von Kind auf**, *from a child up;* i. e., *from childhood.* — [5] **dumme Streiche**, *mischief.* — [6] **dachte**, *thought, was thinking;* pret. of denken. — [7] **dem iſt nicht zu helfen**, HE (i. e., *such a person) is not to be helped.* It is necessary to use dem here because helfen governs the dat. One could not say wer nicht redlich iſt, iſt nicht zu helfen. — [8] **wozu, welche;** these are indirect interrogatives, and as such require the dependent order. The direct form would be: Wozu bin ich fähig? Welche Fehler habe ich zu vermeiden. — [9] **knows**, wiſſen. — [10] **know**, kennen. — [11] **there are, there is**, es giebt. — [12] **is found**, ſich findet.

THE INTERROGATIVES.

143. The Forms. The interrogative pronouns are wer, *who,* was, *what,* welch, *which, what,* and was für (ein), *what sort of (a), what.*

1. The inflection of wer and was, which do not vary for number, is as follows:

N.	wer	was
G.	weſſen, wes	weſſen, wes
D.	wem	——
A.	wen	was

a. The short form wes is little used except in the compounds weshalb and weswegen, *why.* The missing dative of was is supplied by the compounds of wo (§ 144, 1).

2. Welch is inflected like the relative welch, but is often uninflected before ein or an adjective, especially in exclamatory phrases; e. g., welch (ein) ſchönes Bild, *what a pretty picture.*

3. In was für ein the was does not vary, but ein is inflected (in the singular) like the article ein.

144. Use of wer and welch. Wer is used of persons only, was of things only, and welch of either persons or

things. Wer and was are used without a noun, welch either with or without; e. g., wer iſt jener Mann? *who is that man?* welches Buch meinen Sie? *what (which) book do you mean?*

1. For the dative and accusative of was, dependent on a preposition, it is usual to substitute a compound of wo; e. g., wozu der Lärm? *why the fuss?* woran arbeiten Sie? *what are you working at?*

145. Use of was für (ein). In this pronoun the für is without prepositional force, and ein takes the case required by the syntax of the sentence. Was may be separated by one or more words from für ein; e. g., was für ein Baum iſt das, or was iſt das für ein Baum? *what kind of a tree is that?* was für einen Lehrer haben Sie? *what kind of a teacher have you?*

1. In exclamatory phrases was für (ein) is often best translated by *what;* e. g., was für Unſinn! *what nonsense!*

EXERCISE XXX.

Colloquy: Interrogative Pronouns.

I.

Wer iſt das auf dem Bilde an der Wand?

Das iſt Bismarck. Wozu haben Sie denn Ihre Augen?

Ja, die große Photographie; wer wüßte[1] das nicht! Ich meine nicht die.

Nun, welches Bild meinen Sie denn?

Ich meine das kleine Ding, welches unter der Photographie hängt.

Ach ſo! Nun, wofür halten Sie das? Beſehen Sie es genau.

Ich ſehe, es iſt eine Federzeichnung. Von wem haben Sie ſie?

Von meinem Freunde Ludwig. Raten Sie nun einmal, wer die beiden Perſonen darauf ſind.

Dies iſt offenbar Ludwig; aber ich weiß nicht, wer der andere iſt.

Was Sie doch ſagen[2]! Nun, der andere bin[3] ich ſelbſt.

Sie? Wer das glauben könnte[4]! Woher haben Sie denn den sonderbaren Ausdruck? Und was für einen Hut tragen Sie?

Das ist nur ein Spaß Ludwigs; wer ihn kennt, versteht das ohne Weiteres.

II.

What sort of a picture is that?

What picture are you talking about[5]? The large photograph[6]?

As if any one would not know[7] a photograph of Bismarck. I mean the little picture below.[8]

Oh, that's it. That is a pen-drawing. Guess from whom I have it.

I do not know—perhaps from your friend Ludwig.

Right; now guess whom the drawing represents.

This here is certainly Ludwig himself, but who in all the world[9] is the other?

So[10] you do not know[11] him. Well, the other is I myself.

But what an expression! And what sort of a thing is that[12] you have on your head?

EXERCISE XXXa.

1. Who goes there? 2. Who is she? 3. Who are they? 4. What have you in your hand? 5. Of whom are you speaking? 6. Of what are you speaking? 7. Whom do you mean? 8. What new building is that that I see yonder? 9. Do you know[13] at what time[14] the performance begins? 10. In what does the difference consist? 11. I do not know[13] in what the difference consists. 12. What sort of a teacher have you? 13. Every one knows[13] what sort of a man he is. 14. Which drama of Schiller do you like best?

Vocabulary.

ander, *adj.*, **other.**
Ausdruck, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ü), expression.
da'rſtellen, *v.*, represent.
Feder, *f. w.*, pen, **feather.**
glauben, *v.*, be-lieve.
halten, *v.*, **hold,** consider.
hangen, *v.*, **hang**; hängt, hangs.
Hut, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ü), **hat.**
können, *v.*, **can.**
Kopf, *m. s. 2 (pl* ö), **head.**
ohne, *prep. (acc.)*, **without.**
Perſo'n, *f. w.*, *person.*
Photographie', *f. w.*, *photograph.*
raten, *v.*, guess.
Spaß, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä), **jest.**
tragen, *v.*, wear, [**drag, draw**].
verſtehen, *v.*, **understand.**
Wand, *f. s. 2 (pl.* ä), **wall.**
Zeichnung, *f. w.*, drawing.

Notes.— [1] **wer wüßte,** *who would know?* pret. subj. of wiſſen.— [2] **was Sie doch ſagen!** *you don't say so!* quite different from was ſagen Sie? *what do you say?*— [3] **der andere bin ich ſelbſt,** *the other is I myself;* for *it is I* Ger. says ich bin es, etc.— [4] **wer das glauben könnte!** *as if any one could believe that!* different from wer könnte das glauben? *who could believe that?* The former wer is really an indirect interrogative, with something like *I'd like to know* understood.— [5] **about,** von, at the beginning of the sentence.— [6] **the large photograph;** repeat the von. — [7] **As if . . . . know,** wer . . . . kennte, the verb in dependent order (see n. 4 above). Kennte is pret. subj. of kennen, as könnte is of können. — [8] **below,** darunter. — [9] **who in all the world,** wer in aller Welt.— [10] **so,** alſo.— [11] **know,** kennen.— [12] **that (that) you have,** das, was Sie . . . . haben. But here one might say das, das, since the pronoun refers to a particular thing, i. e., is not, or need not be, taken in a 'general sense'; see § 141, 2.— [13] **know, knows,** wiſſen.— [14] **at what time,** um welche Zeit.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

146. All. All, *all*, has regular adjective inflection, but is sometimes left uninflected, especially before der or a possessive; e. g., alle guten Dinge, *all good things;* alles friſche Waſſer, *all fresh water;* all mein Glück, *all my happiness.*

1. The form alle occurs after certain prepositions; e. g., trotz alle dem, *in spite of all that.*

2. The neuter alles, used alone, means *everything.*

147. Ander. Ander, *other*, has regular adjective inflection.

1. The English *another*, = *one more*, is expressed not by ander, but by noch ein ; e. g., ich wünſche noch ein Billet, *I want another ticket* (ein anderes would mean *a different one*).

148. Beide. Beide, *both*, has regular adjective inflection, and is apt to take the place of zwei after a declined word ; e. g., die beiden Parteien, *the two parties ;* meine beiden Schweſtern, *my two sisters.*

1. In general beide is used only in the plural, but the neuter singular beides occurs. *Both and* is usually expressed by ſowohl als ; e. g., *both the king and the people*, ſowohl der König als das Volk.

149. Ein-. The use of ein, *one*, as pronoun has already been referred to (§ 116, 1).

1. In the oblique cases ein takes the place of man, which is indeclinable ; e. g., es gefällt einem nicht, *it does not please one.*

150. Einig-, etlich. These words both mean *some* and have regular adjective inflection. The singular is little used, being replaced by etwas. Of the two words einig- is the one more commonly used.

151. Etwas. Etwas, *something, somewhat, some*, is indeclinable and is used either with or without a noun. It is the ordinary equivalent of English *some, any*, before a singular noun of any gender and in any case ; e. g., nehmen Sie etwas Brod, *take some bread ;* mit etwas Furcht = mit einiger Furcht, *with some fear.*

1. So etwas is equivalent to *some (any) such thing*

152. Irgend. This is an indeclinable word which is rarely used alone, but is placed before numerous words to give the sense of English *some, any ;* e. g., irgend einer or

irgend jemand, *some one, any one;* irgend etwas, *anything, something;* irgendwo, *anywhere,* etc.

153. Jed-, jeglich-, jedermann. Jed- and jeglich mean *each, every,* and have full adjective inflection. Either may be preceded by ein. Jedermann, *every one,* cannot be used with a noun and has no inflection except a genitive in s; e. g., jeder (ein jeder, jeder Menſch, jedermann) hat ſeine guten Eigenſchaften, *every one has his good qualities.*

154. Jemand. Jemand, *some one,* is never used with a noun and has no inflection except a genitive in s, rarely a dative in em or an accusative in en.

155. Kein. Kein is the negative of ein and is inflected in the same way, except that it has a plural. It takes the place of English *no, none, not a, not any;* e. g., du bitteſt um Geld, aber ich habe keines, *you ask for money, but I haven't any;* das iſt kein Apfelbaum, *that is not an apple-tree.*

156. Man. Man is a wholly indefinite and indeclinable pronoun meaning *one, they, people.* Often it is best rendered by the passive voice or by a phrase with *there;* e. g., man ſagt, *it is said;* man klopft, *there is a knock.*

1. The oblique cases of man are replaced by ein-.

157. Manch. Manch, *many,* in the singular *many a,* may be inflected regularly (which is the rule if no adjective follows), or it may be uninflected; e. g., mancher Mann, *many a man;* manch guter Mann or mancher gute Mann, *many a good man.*

158. Mehr, mehrer-. Mehr, *more,* is indeclinable; thus mehr Licht, *more light;* nichts mehr davon, *no more of that.* The comparative mehrer- is used with full inflection in the sense of *several;* e. g., mit mehreren Freunden, *with several friends.*

159. Nichts. Nichts, *nothing,* is the negative to etwas and is indeclinable.

160. Niemand. Niemand, *no one*, is the negative to jemand and has the same inflection. It cannot be used with a noun.

161. Viel. Viel, *much*, in the plural *many*, is capable of full inflection, but is often left uninflected, especially in the singular when it is not preceded by der or a possessive; e. g., er hat viel Verſtand, *he has much sense;* das iſt zu viel, *that is too much;* das Glück vieler Menſchen, *the happiness of many men;* er hat vieles erlebt; *he has experienced much.*

162. Was, welch, wer. Any of the interrogatives may be used as indefinites, having the meaning of *some, something, some one, anything, any one*, etc. In this sense they are apt to be accompanied by irgend; e. g., ich weiß was Neues, *I know something new;* nehmen Sie noch etwas Brod (einige Kirſchen), *take some more bread (some cherries);* ich danke, ich habe noch welches (welche), *thank you, I have some still.*

163. Wenig. Wenig, *little*, in the plural *few*, is capable of full inflection, but is often uninflected, especially in the singular; e. g., ich habe wenig Hoffnung, *I have little hope;* mit wenig Verſtand, *with little sense;* er leiſtet mit wenigem viel, *he does much with little.*

EXERCISE XXXI.

Colloquy: Indefinite Pronouns.

I.

Wünſchen Sie etwas, mein Herr?

Ja, ich wünſche ein gutes Buch als Weihnachtsgeſchenk für eine junge Freundin. Haben Sie ſo etwas?

Gewiß; da ſind, zum Beiſpiel, einige neuen[1] Romane. Jedes Mädchen lieſt gern einen guten Roman.

Hier iſt nun jedenfalls[2] was Hübſches; aber es iſt wohl ein wenig teuer, nicht wahr?

Nicht so sehr; es kostet acht Mark. Das Buch ist gerade jetzt in der Mode; jedermann liest es und lobt es.

Ja, aber mancher schlechte Roman findet heutzutage Leser, die ihn loben. Wer ist denn der Verfasser?

Das weiß man nicht. Es ist das Werk irgend eines jungen Schriftstellers, welcher unter falschem Namen schreibt.

Was sagt man von der sittlichen Tendenz des Buches?

Nach allem, was ich höre, ist es gesund in jeder Hinsicht. Niemand sagt etwas dagegen.

Ich habe noch eine Frage. Ist es bei alle dem[3] auch interessant? Viele gesunden Bücher sind langweilig.

Nun, dieses ist jedenfalls nichts weniger als[4] langweilig. Sie finden nichts Interessanteres in unsrem Laden.

II.

Good morning, sir. Do you wish something in the way of[5] books?

Yes, if[6] you have something right good.[7] What is there that is new?

Do you wish something light — some[8] novel, for example?

Perhaps, only it must be[9] interesting. Please show me some new novels.

There you have several right before you.[10] And there are more over yonder.

Here now is something nice, but I presume it costs too much.

That book is a little dear, to be sure,—on account of the many pictures in it. It costs ten marks.

The price *is*[11] pretty high, isn't it? Is it known who the author is?

No, but he writes well,[12] whoever he may be.[13] Every one praises the book.

Well, in view of all that[14] you say, perhaps the price is[15] not too high, after all.[16]

Certainly not; just ask[17] any one who understands such things.

EXERCISE XXXI a.

1. **All my** money is lost. 2. All good friends are welcome. 3. One of the two brothers is a physician; the other is an author. 4. Some parts of the book are very interesting, others are intolerable. 5. I need some money; I have none by me. 6. In a few days I am going to Leipzig. 7. Every one has his own taste in these matters. 8. No one is a better friend of the poor. 9. Does any one know how much the thing costs? 10. I need some old newspapers; have you any? 11. It costs little money, but much trouble. 12. Many a poor man is happier than his rich neighbor. 13. One finds in the book little (that is) new, yet much (that is) interesting. 14. Every day[18] I visit some[19] museum or picture-gallery.

VOCABULARY.

Beiſpiel, *n. s. 2*, **example.**
drüben, *adv.*, over yonder.
Frage, *f. w.*, question.
gegen, *prep. (acc.)*, against.
gerade, *adv.*, exactly, just.
Geſchenk, *n. s. 2*, present.
Hinſicht, *f. w.*, respect.
koſten, *v.*, *cost.*
Laden, *m. s. 1 (pl. ä)*, store.
leicht, *adj.*, light, easy.
Leſer, *m. s. 1*, reader.
loben, *v.*, praise, [love].
Mode, *f. w.*, fashion, *mode.*
Roma'n, *m. s. 2*, novel, *romance.*
ſittlich, *adj.*, moral.
Tende'nz, *f. w.*, *tendency.*
Verfaſſer, *m. s. 1*, author.
wenn, *sub. conj.*, if, when.
zeigen, *v.*, show, [teach].

NOTES.—[1] **neuen**; one might say neue instead (§ 106, 2, *a*).—[2] **jedenfalls**, *at any rate*; an adv. formed out of auf jeden Fall, *in any case.*—[3] **bei alle dem**, *with all that, withal.*—[4] **nichts weniger als**, *anything but.*—[5] **in the way of**, in with dat.—[6] **if**, wenn, which requires the dependent order.—[7] **something right good**, etwas recht Gutes.—[8] **some**, irgend einen.—[9] **only it must be**, nur muß er . . . . ſein.—[10] **right before you**, gerade vor ſich.—[11] **is**, iſt doch, the doch serving to emphasize the verb.—[12] **well**, gut, not wohl.—[13] **whoever he may be**, wer er auch ſein mag.—[14] **in view of all that**, nach allem, was.—[15] **perhaps the price is**, iſt der Preis vielleicht.—[16] **after all**, am Ende, following vielleicht.—[17] **just ask any one**, fragen Sie nur irgend jemand.—[18] **every day**, *acc.*—[19] **some**, **irgend ein**, to be repeated as the nouns differ in gender.

THE VERB.

164. Voice. The active voice represents the subject as acting, the passive as acted upon; i. e., the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive.

1. Only 'transitive' verbs, i. e., those which govern the accusative, can be used in the passive with a definite subject, but intransitive verbs admit of an impersonal passive.

165. Mode. Of the four modes the indicative and imperative correspond closely to the English indicative and imperative. The subjunctive is used to express doubt or uncertainty (especially in indirect questions and statements), or with an imperative sense translatable by *let*, or with a potential sense translatable by *would* or *should*. The conditional is always translatable by *would* or *should*.

166. The Infinitive. The infinitive is not a mode of the verb, but rather a verbal noun. It is used both with and without ȝu, and corresponds partly to the English infinitive with and without *to*, and partly to the verbal in *ing*.

167. The Participle. The present participle ends in end and corresponds to the English present participle in *ing*. The perfect participle ends always in t or in n, and is further characterized by the prefix ge.

1. But the prefix ge is omitted with verbs in ieren, with inseparable compounds, and in some other cases to be noted further on.

168. Tense. The present and preterite, as consisting of one word, are called 'simple tenses'; the perfect, pluperfect, future and future perfect are formed by means of auxiliaries, and are called 'compound tenses.'

1. The auxiliary of the perfect and pluperfect, which is combined with the perfect participle, is either haben, *have*, or ſein, *be*. All transitive verbs, and many that are intransitive, are conjugated with haben. Intransitive verbs denoting motion, and a few that do not denote motion, are conjugated with ſein. See § 323.

2. The auxiliary of the future and future perfect, which combines with the infinitive, is werden, *become*.

3. The conditional mode has but two tenses, a present and a perfect, the auxiliary being the preterite subjunctive of werden, used in combination with the infinitive.

4. The imperative has but one tense, the present.

169. Person and Number. Person and number are distinguished by endings which are applied to the 'stem' of the verb, sometimes with and sometimes without a 'connecting vowel' e; e. g., du mach=ſt, *thou makest*, but du find=e=ſt, *thou findest*.

1. The stem of a verb is obtained by dropping the final en (or simply the final n if the verb does not end in en) of the present infinitive. In some verbs the stem undergoes an internal vowel change in the preterite and perfect participle.

170. Principal Parts. The 'principal parts' of a verb, so called because when they are known all the other forms can be determined from them, are (1) the present infinitive, (2) the preterite indicative first person singular, (3) the perfect participle; thus machen, machte, gemacht; finden, fand, gefunden.

CONJUGATION.

171. The Auxiliaries of Tense. Since the three verbs haben, ſein and werden are needed in the conjugation of all other verbs whatsoever, their inflection is given first. Their principal parts are haben, hatte, gehabt; ſein, war,

geweſen; werden, ward or wurde, geworden. The inflection of the simple tenses is as follows*:

Present.

Ich habe, *I have*, etc.; ich bin, *I am* (as aux., *I have*), etc.; ich werde, *I become* (as aux. of tense, *I shall*), etc. For the meaning of the subjunctive forms see § 172.

	Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
S.	ich habe	habe	bin	ſei	werde	werde
	du haſt	habeſt	biſt	ſeieſt	wirſt	werdeſt
	er hat	habe	iſt	ſei	wird	werde
P.	wir haben	haben	ſind	ſeien	werden	werden
	ihr habt	habet	ſeid	ſeiet	werdet	werdet
	ſie haben	haben	ſind	ſeien	werden	werden

Preterite.

Ich hatte, *I had*, etc.; ich war, *I was* (as aux., *I had*), etc.; ich wurde, *I became*, etc.; ich würde, *I should become* (as aux. of the conditional, *I should*), etc.

	Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
S.	ich hatte	hätte	war	wäre	wurde or ward	würde
	du hatteſt	hätteſt	warſt	wäreſt	wurdeſt or wardſt	würdeſt
	er hatte	hätte	war	wäre	wurde or ward	würde
P.	wir hatten	hätten	waren	wären	wurden	würden
	ihr hattet	hättet	war(e)t	wäret	wurdet	würdet
	ſie hatten	hätten	waren	wären	wurden	würden

1. Aside from their employment as auxiliaries the verbs haben ſein and werden are used in all the moods and tenses as independent verbs. For convenience of reference the remaining forms that may occur are appended below. Haben is conjugated with haben, ſein and werden with ſein.

Perfect.

Ich habe gehabt, *I have had*, etc.; ich bin geweſen, *I have been*, etc.; ich bin geworden, *I have become*, etc.

* The pronoun at the left is to be read with each of the forms in the horizontal line at the right.

Indic.

S.	ich habe gehabt	bin geweſen	bin geworden
	du haſt „	biſt „	biſt „
	er hat „	iſt „	iſt „
P.	wir haben „	ſind „	ſind „
	ihr habt „	ſeid „	ſeid „
	ſie haben „	ſind „	ſind „

Subj.

S.	ich habe gehabt	ſei geweſen	ſei geworden
	du habeſt „	ſeieſt „	ſeieſt „
	er habe „	ſei „	ſei „
P.	wir haben „	ſeien „	ſeien „
	ihr habet „	ſeiet „	ſeiet „
	ſie haben „	ſeien „	ſeien „

PLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte gehabt, *I had had*, etc.; ich war geweſen, *I had been*, etc.; ich war geworden, *I had become*, etc.

Indic.

S.	ich hatte gehabt	war geweſen	war geworden
	du hatteſt „	warſt „	warſt „
	er hatte „	war „	war „
P.	wir hatten „	waren „	waren „
	ihr hattet „	war(e)t „	war(e)t „
	ſie hatten „	waren „	waren „

Subj.

S.	ich hätte gehabt	wäre geweſen	wäre geworden
	du hätteſt „	wäreſt „	wäreſt „
	er hätte „	wäre „	wäre „
P.	wir hätten „	wären „	wären „
	ihr hättet „	wäret „	wäret „
	ſie hätten „	wären „	wären „

FUTURE.

Ich werde haben, *I shall have*, etc.; ich werde ſein, *I shall be*, etc.; ich werde werden, *I shall become*, etc.

Indic.

S.	ich werde haben	werde sein	werde werden
	du wirst „	wirst „	wirst „
	er wird „	wird „	wird „
P.	wir werden „	werden „	werden „
	ihr werdet „	werdet „	werdet „
	sie werden „	werden „	werden „

Subj.

S.	ich werde haben	werde sein	werde werden
	du werdest „	werdest „	werdest „
	er werde „	werde „	werde „
P.	wir werden „	werden „	werden „
	ihr werdet „	werdet „	werdet „
	sie werden „	werden „	werden „

Future Perfect.

Ich werde gehabt haben, *I shall have had*, etc.; ich werde gewesen sein, *I shall have been*, etc.; ich werde geworden sein, *I shall have become*, etc.

Indic.

S.	ich werde gehabt haben	werde gewesen sein	werde geworden sein
	du wirst „ „	wirst „ „	wirst „ „
	er wird „ „	wird „ „	wird „ „
P.	wir werden „ „	werden „ „	werden „ „
	ihr werdet „ „	werdet „ „	werdet „ „
	sie werden „ „	werden „ „	werden „ „

Subj.

S.	ich werde gehabt haben	werde gewesen sein	werde geworden sein
	du werdest „ „	werdest „ „	werdest „ „
	er werde „ „	werde „ „	werde „ „
P.	wir werden „ „	werden „ „	werden „ „
	ihr werdet „ „	werdet „ „	werdet „ „
	sie werden „ „	werden „ „	werden „ „

Conditional.

Present: Ich würde haben, *I should have*, du würdest haben, *thou wouldst have*, etc.; ich würde sein, *I should be*, etc.; ich würde werden, *I should become*, etc.

S.	ich würde haben	würde ſein	würde werden
	du würdeſt „	würdeſt „	würdeſt „
	er würde „	würde „	würde „
P.	wir würden „	würden „	würden „
	ihr würdet „	würdet „	würdet „
	ſie würden „	würden „	würden „

Perfect: Ich würde gehabt haben, *I should have had*, etc.; ich würde geweſen ſein, *I should have been*, etc.; ich würde geworden ſein, *I should have become*, etc.

S.	ich würde gehabt haben	würde geweſen ſein	würde geworden ſein
	du würdeſt „ „	würdeſt „ „	würdeſt „ „
	er würde „ „	würde „ „	würde „ „
P.	wir würden „ „	würden „ „	würden „ „
	ihr würdet „ „	würdet „ „	würdet „ „
	ſie würden „ „	würden „ „	würden „ „

Imperative.

Singular.

habe (du), *have (thou).* ſei (du), *be (thou).*
habe er, *let him have.* ſei er, *let him be.*
werde (du), *become (thou).*
werde er, *let him become.*

Plural.

haben wir, *let us have.* ſeien wir, *let us be.*
habt (ihr), *have (ye).* ſeid (ihr), *be (ye).*
haben ſie, *let them have.* ſeien ſie, *let them be.*
werden wir, *let us become.*
werdet (ihr), *become (ye).*
werden ſie, *let them become.*

Infinitive.

Present: (zu) haben, *(to) have;* (zu) ſein, *(to) be;* (zu) werden, *(to) become.*

Perfect: gehabt zu haben, *to have had;* geweſen zu ſein, *to have been;* geworden zu ſein, *to have become.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present: habend, *having;* ſeiend, *being;* werdend, *becoming.*

Perfect: gehabt, *had;* geweſen, *been;* geworden, *become.*

172. Remarks on the above Paradigms. Notice particularly the difference between corresponding indicative and subjunctive forms, such as haſt–habeſt, hat–habe, iſt–ſei, wird–werde. The translation of the subjunctive depends on the character of the sentence; e. g., er habe Geduld, *let him have patience;* edel ſei der Menſch, *let man be noble;* es ſei wahr oder falſch, *be it true or false;* ich fragte ihn, ob er krank ſei, *I asked him if he was (were) sick.*

1. The third person plural, with ſie written Sie, is used as a second person in polite address.

2. The preterite subjunctive is equivalent in meaning to the present conditional, and the pluperfect subjunctive to the perfect conditional; thus es wäre ſonderbar, *it would be strange,* is the same as es würde ſonderbar ſein, and es wäre ſonderbar geweſen, *it would have been strange,* = es würde ſonderbar geweſen ſein.

3. The third person singular and first person plural of the imperative are supplied from the subjunctive; they require the subject to be expressed, wir always after the verb, er either before or after. The subjects du and ihr are usually omitted. The third person plural of the imperative (also supplied from the subjunctive) is little used, except as a second person, in polite address. Sie is always expressed and always follows the verb; e. g., haben Sie Geduld, *have patience!*

4. These remarks apply, in principle, to all verbs whatsoever.

EXERCISE XXXII.

READING LESSON: FORMS OF haben, ſein AND werden.

173. Rule of Order IV: Compound Tenses. In an independent sentence the uninflected part of a compound tense, i. e., the infinitive or participle, comes

last; in a dependent sentence the inflected auxiliary comes last and is immediately preceded by the uninflected part. Thus we have:

a. In the normal order: ich habe ihn seit gestern nicht gesehen, *I have not seen him since yesterday;* Sie werden mich heute abend zu Hause finden, *you will find me at home this evening;* es würde mir große Freude gemacht haben, *it would have given me great pleasure.*

b. In the inverted order: seit gestern habe ich ihn nicht gesehen; heute abend werden Sie mich zu Hause finden; mir würde es große Freude gemacht haben.

c. In the dependent order: ich weiß gewiß, daß ich ihn seit gestern nicht gesehen habe, *I know for certain that I have not seen him since yesterday;* es ist wahrscheinlich, daß Sie mich heute abend zu Hause finden werden, *it is probable that you will find me at home this evening;* ich versichere Sie, daß es mir große Freude gemacht haben würde, *I assure you that it would have given me great pleasure.*

Meine liebe Schwester! Wo bist Du denn eigentlich?[1] Es werden morgen vierzehn Tage sein, daß ich keine Zeile von Dir oder von der Mutter gehabt habe.[2] Vielleicht seid Ihr auf der Ausstellung in Chicago gewesen, aber in dem Falle würdet Ihr doch Zeit gehabt haben, ein paar Worte an mich zu schreiben. Wenn Du nur nicht krank gewesen bist! Ich sage mir zwar öfters[3]: Sei ruhig, habe Geduld; aber die Zeit wird mir am Ende doch gar zu lang.[4] Ich würde allerdings gefaßter sein, hättest Du den Unfall nicht gehabt,[5] denn ich kann die Besorgnis[6] nicht los werden, daß derselbe[7] vielleicht schlimmer gewesen ist, als Ihr anfangs[8] zu glauben geneigt wart.[9]

Seit einem Monat bin ich nicht so fleißig gewesen, wie früher, weshalb meine Gesundheit bedeutend besser geworden ist. Ich bitte Dich, dem Vater zu sagen, daß es mir lieb[10] wäre, wenn ich für nächsten Monat einen kleinen Zuschuß an Taschengeld hätte. Es wird nämlich bald die Zeit der großen Messe sein, und es wäre doch[11] unangenehm, wenn ich mich dabei zu sehr einzuschränken[12] hätte. Erwarte diesmal keinen langen Brief von mir. Ich habe schon mehrere Stunden die Feder in der Hand gehabt und bin des Schreibens[13] müde geworden.

EXERCISE XXXII a.

1. I have been very sick. 2. It would be a pity if he were[14] not at home. 3. On the 11th of February I shall be seventeen years old. 4. Many think they would be[15] happy if they only had[16] money. 5. He had always been my friend. 6. I had always had a friend in[17] him. 7. It was late, the air had become very cold, and we still had a long way before us. 8. Let him only have patience and everything will turn out[18] well in the[19] end. 9. My German would be better perhaps if I had had a better teacher. 10. He would have become famous if he had only been more industrious. 11. It would be possible if I had more time. 12. Next week[20] I shall be at home every evening.[20] 13. How much money have I had? 14. Do you know[21] how much money I have had this month[20]?

VOCABULARY.

Ausſtellung, *f. w.*, exposition.
bedeutend, *pple. adj.*, significant; *as adv.*, notably.
Beſorgnis, *f. s. 2*, fear, solicitude.
ei'nſchrä'nken, *v.*, limit.
fleißig, *adj.*, industrious.
gar, *adv.*, quite, altogether.
Geduld, *f. w.*, patience.
gefaßt, *pple. adj.*, composed, calm.
geneigt, *pple. adj.*, inclined.
los, *adj.*, rid of, free from, loose.
Meſſe, *f. w.*, fair, *mass.*
müde, *adj.*, tired.
öfters, *adv.*, often, oft.
ſchlimm, *adj.*, bad, [slim].
Zuſchuß, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ü*)*, addition, increase.
zwar, *adv.*, to be sure, forsooth.

NOTES.—[1] **eigentlich**; about = *pray tell*, or *I'd like to know.*—[2] **daß ich . . . . gehabt habe**, *that I have not had*, i. e., *since I have had.*—[3] **öfters**; from öfter, comparative of oft, but without comparative meaning (see Ex. XX, n. 1).—[4] **wird . . . zu lang**, *is really* (doch) *becoming at last quite too long.*—[5] **hätteſt Du . . . . nicht gehabt**, *if you had not had*; the pret. and plup. subj. are used, with or without wenn, to denote a condition which is contrary to fact. When wenn is omitted the conditional idea is expressed, as in English, by the inverted order; hätteſt Du nicht gehabt being = wenn Du nicht gehabt hätteſt.—[6] **Beſorgnis**, acc. depending upon los; kann nicht los werden = *cannot get rid of*; kann

being pres. ind. 1. pers. sing. of können.—[7] **derſelbe,** *it,* **i. e., the accident** (§ 134, 1).—[8] **anfangs,** *at first;* see § 4, 1, *a.*—[9] **wart;** dependent order after **als** = *than.*—[10] **lieb,** *agreeable.*—[11] **doch,** *surely.*—[12] **einzuſchränken,** *to limit.* Observe that the zu of the infinitive comes between the parts of the verb. Such verbs, called separable compounds, will be explained further on.—[13] **des Schreibens müde,** *tired of writing.* Notice that the gen. precedes the adj. on which it depends.—[14] **were,** wäre; see n. 5 above.—[15] **think they would be,** denken, ſie würden . . . ſein, or, denken, daß ſie . . . . ſein würden; daß can be omitted, just as 'that' may be in Eng., and in that case the order of the dependent clause is normal.—[16] **had,** hätten; see n. 5 above.—[17] **in,** an with dat.—[18] **turn out well,** gut werden.—[19] **in the,** am.—[20] acc. of time.—[21] **know,** wiſſen.

174. Weak and Strong Verbs. Verbs are divided into two great classes, called Weak and Strong. A weak verb forms its preterite first person singular by adding te or ete to the stem, as mach=en, mach=te; red=en, red=ete. A strong verb forms its preterite by means of an internal vowel-change, called 'ablaut,' as kommen, kam.

1. The perfect participle of a weak verb always ends in t or et, as gemacht, geredet; that of a strong verb ends in en, as gekommen.

a. Verbs in ie'ren, which are always weak, do not take the prefix ge in the perfect participle; thus from ſtudie'ren, ſtudie'rt, not geſtudiert.

THE WEAK CONJUGATION.

175. Examples: loben, *to praise;* folgen, *to follow.*

PRESENT.

I praise, etc.; *I follow,* etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich lobe	lobe	folge	folge
du lobſt	lobeſt	folgſt	folgeſt
er lobt	lobe	folgt	folge
wir loben	loben	folgen	folgen
ihr lobt	lobet	folgt	folget
ſie loben	loben	folgen	folgen

Preterite.

I praised, etc.; *I followed,* etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich lobte	lobte	folgte	folgte
du lobteſt	lobteſt	folgteſt	folgteſt
er lobte	lobte	folgte	folgte
wir lobten	lobten	folgten	folgten
ihr lobtet	lobtet	folgtet	folgtet
ſie lobten	lobten	folgten	folgten

Perfect.

I have praised, etc.; *I have followed,* etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich habe gelobt	habe gelobt	bin gefolgt	ſei gefolgt
du haſt „	habeſt „	biſt „	ſeieſt „
er hat „	habe „	iſt „	ſei „
wir haben „	haben „	ſind „	ſeien „
ihr habt „	habet „	ſeid „	ſeiet „
ſie haben „	haben „	ſind „	ſeien „

Pluperfect.

I had praised, etc.; *I had followed,* etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich hatte gelobt	hätte gelobt	war gefolgt	wäre gefolgt
du hatteſt „	hätteſt „	warſt „	wäreſt „
er hatte „	hätte „	war „	wäre „
wir hatten „	hätten „	waren „	wären „
ihr hattet „	hättet „	war(e)t „	wäret „
ſie hatten „	hätten „	waren „	wären „

Future.

I shall praise, etc.; *I shall follow,* etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich werde loben	werde loben	werde folgen	werde folgen
du wirſt „	werdeſt „	wirſt „	werdeſt „
er wird „	werde „	wird „	werde „
wir werden „	werden „	werden „	werden „
ihr werdet „	werdet „	werdet „	werdet „
ſie werden „	werden „	werden „	werden „

Future Perfect.

I shall have praised, etc.; *I shall have followed*, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich werde gelobt haben	werde gelobt haben	werde gefolgt ſein	werde gefolgt ſein.
du wirſt " "	werdeſt " "	wirſt " "	werdeſt " "
er wird " "	werde " "	wird " "	werde " "
wir werden " "	werden " "	werden " "	werden " "
ihr werdet " "	werdet " "	werdet " "	werdet " "
ſie werden " "	werden " "	werden " "	werden " "

Conditional.

Present.

I should praise, etc.; *I should follow*, etc.

ich würde loben	würde folgen
du würdeſt "	würdeſt "
er würde "	würde "
wir würden "	würden "
ihr würdet "	würdet "
ſie würden "	würden "

Perfect.

I should have praised, etc.; *I should have followed*, etc. *followed*, etc.

ich würde gelobt haben	würde gefolgt ſein
du würdeſt " "	würdeſt " "
er würde " "	würde " "
wir würden " "	würden " "
ihr würdet " "	würdet " "
ſie würden " "	würden " "

Imperative.

lobe (du), *praise (thou).*	folge (du), *follow (thou).*
lobe er, *let him praise.*	folge er, *let him follow.*
loben wir, *let us praise.*	folgen wir, *let us follow.*
lobt (ihr), *praise (ye).*	folgt (ihr), *follow (ye).*
loben ſie, *let them praise.*	folgen ſie, *let them follow.*

INFINITIVE.

Present: (zu) loben, *(to) praise;* (zu) folgen, *(to) follow.*

Perfect: gelobt zu haben, *to have praised;* gefolgt zu ſein, *to have followed.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present: lobend, *praising;* folgend, *following.*
Perfect: gelobt, *praised;* gefolgt, *followed.*

176. Use of the Connecting Vowel e. While most weak verbs, like the examples given above, apply the endings ſt, t and te directly to the stem (except in the present subjunctive), there are others that insert the vowel e before these endings in order to facilitate pronunciation. Such are:

1. Verbs whose stems end in d or t; e. g., from reden, *to talk,* du redeſt, er redet, ich redete, geredet.

2. Verbs whose stem ends in m or n preceded by a consonant; e. g., from rechnen, *to reckon,* du rechneſt, er rechnet, ich rechnete, gerechnet.

3. Verbs whose stem ends in an s-sound (but only before ſt, not before t or te); e. g., from raſen, *to rage,* du raſeſt, but er raſt, er raſte, geraſt.

177. Verbs in eln and ern. Verbs in eln and ern usually drop the e of these suffixes before the e of the first person singular, but retain it elsewhere; thus from handeln, *to act,* ich handle, du handelſt, er handelt, wir handeln, ich handelte, gehandelt, etc.

178. Irregular Weak Verbs. A few weak verbs have internal vowel change in the preterite and perfect participle; e. g., kennen, *to know,* preterite kannte, participle gekannt. For a list of these verbs see § 330.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

Colloquy: Weak Verbs.

I.

Vater, der Lehrer ſagte uns heute, daß wir bald zwei neue Bücher brauchen würden.

Alſo mache dich fort[1] zur Buchhandlung und kaufe ſie. Glücklicherweiſe[2] haſt du das Geld dazu.

Du meinſt doch nicht das Geld, das du mir geſtern geſchenkt haſt?[3]

Gewiß meine ich das. Was haſt du damit gemacht?[4]

Dafür habe ich mir ein Paar Schlittſchuhe gekauft.

Du junger Schelm! Du wirſt mich noch zum Bettler machen.[5] —Was für Bücher verlangſt du denn?

Ein engliſches Leſebuch und Wörterbuch. Ich hoffe, daß du jedenfalls dieſen Kauf billigen wirſt.

Da haſt du recht,[6] mein Sohn; deinen engliſchen Studien bin ich ſtets mit Intereſſe gefolgt. Seid ihr denn mit der Grammatik ſchon fertig?

Nein, noch nicht; aber der Lehrer meint, daß es jetzt an der Zeit wäre,[7] neben der Grammatik eine leichte Lektüre zu verſuchen.

Da hat der Lehrer gewiß recht. Eine Sprache wird man immer am beſten aus der Sprache ſelbſt lernen.

Wie meinſt du das — doch nicht, daß es beſſer geweſen wäre, wenn wir überhaupt keine Grammatik ſtudiert hätten?

Nein; das würde ich nur dann ſagen, wenn du noch ein Kind wäreſt.

II.

Father, have you any money by you? The teacher says that I shall soon need some more new books.

Well, I gave[8] you some money yesterday. That will suffice, will it not?

Yes, but that was, as you say, a present. You surely did not suppose[9] that I would buy books with that?

You young rogue! You talk as if you still had[10] the money in your pocket.

And so I have[11]; but I am going[12] to buy me a pair of skates with it.

Oh, that's it.—Well, what books do you want, then?

In the first place,[13] a German reader. You will surely be glad to hear that.[14]

Yes, I want you to learn[15] German thoroughly. But are you through with the grammar already?

No, we have only had twenty exercises; there are[16] forty in the book.

I hope that you will do the remaining ones too.[17]

Oh, of course; we shall still have grammar every other day.[18]

EXERCISE XXXIII a.

1. I fetched a chair, seated myself, and waited. 2. Some one knocked; I opened the door and asked who was[19] there, but no one answered. 3. We talked of[20] books; he showed great knowledge, and I learned much. 4. I told him[21] what I thought, but it made no difference; he did not believe me.[21] 5. I have heard nothing of[20] the affair. 6. I shall always esteem her. 7. You will soon hear from me. 8. He will show you[21] the way. 9. Let some one open a window. 10. He has studied two years at[22] a German university. 11. Who would have believed it! 12. You have learned much; soon you will no longer[23] need a teacher. 13. I have bought me[21] a new house. 14. I have always followed your advice.[21]

VOCABULARY.

REMARK.—The weak verbs, not counting compounds, which have already been introduced in the preceding exercises, are as follows: ängſtigen, antworten, brauchen, danken, dauern, deuten, fehlen, fragen, freuen, glauben, holen, hören, hüten, klopfen, koſten, lauten, leben, legen, lernen, lieben, loben, machen, meinen, öffnen, reden, ruhen, ſagen, ſchätzen, ſetzen, ſpielen, ſtecken, ſtimmen, ſtudieren, warten, wohnen, wünſchen, zeigen. For the irregular weak verbs bringen, denken, kennen, nennen, see § 330.

Aufgabe, *f. w.*, exercise.
Bettler, *m. s. 1*, beggar.
billigen, *v. w.*, approve.
dann, *adv.*, then.
fertig, *adj.*, ready; fertig mit, through with.
genügen, *v. w.*, be enough, suffice.
glücklicherweiſe, *adv.*, fortunately, [lucky-wise].
Gramma'tik, *f. w.*, *grammar.*
gründlich, *adj.*, thorough.

Handlung, *f. w.*, shop, store.
hoffen, *v. w.*, hope.
jedenfalls, *adv.*, at any rate.
Kauf, *m. s. 2 (pl. äu)*, purchase.
kaufen, *v. w.*, buy.
Lektü're, *f. w.*, text for reading, [*lecture*].
Lesebuch, *n. s. 3*, reading-book, reader.
neben, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, beside, along with.
ob, *sub. conj.*, whether; als ob, as if.
Schelm, *m. s. 2*, rogue, scamp.
schenken, *v. w.*, present, give.
Schlittschuh, *m. s. 2*, skate, [slide-shoe].
stets, *adv.*, always, [stead-ily].
übrig, *adj.*, remaining, [over-].
verlangen, *v. w.*, demand, want, [-long].
versuchen, *v. w.*, try, [-seek].
Wörterbuch, *n. s. 3*, dictionary, [word-book].

NOTES.—[1] **mache dich fort**, *be off, get you gone.*—[2] **Glücklicherweise**; formed from the gen. glücklicher Weise (Weise = *manner*) used adverbially.—[3] **geschenkt hast**, *gave*, not *have given*; Ger. often uses the perf. where Eng. prefers a pret.—[4] **gemacht**, *done.*—[5] **mich zum Bettler machen**, *make me a beggar*; see § 265, 2, *a.*—[6] **du hast du recht**, *there you are right; to* BE *right* = recht haben, not recht sein.—[7] **daß . . . . wäre**, *that it would be in order.*—[8] **I gave**; use the perf.—[9] **you surely did not suppose**, du meintest doch wohl nicht.—[10] **had**, hättest, in dependent order (see Ex. XXXII, n. 5).—[11] **And so I have**, und ich habe es auch wirklich.—[12] **I am going**, ich werde.—[13] **In the first place**, erstens.—[14] **You will . . . . that**, das wirst du doch wohl gern hören.—[15] **I want you to learn**, ich wünsche daß du . . . . lernest (subj.).—[16] **there are**, es sind.—[17] **too**, auch, before die übrigen.—[18] **every other day**, alle zwei Tage, following noch and preceding Grammatik.—[19] **was**, sei or wäre.—[20] **of, von.**—[21] Use the dat.—[22] **at**, auf, with dat.—[23] **no longer**, nicht mehr.

THE STRONG CONJUGATION.

179. Characteristics. The distinguishing characteristics of all strong verbs are, as we have seen, (1) vowel-change in the preterite and (2) the ending en in the perfect participle. To these may be added two others which are found only in certain verbs, viz.: (3) vowel-change in the present indicative and imperative, and (4) umlaut in the preterite subjunctive.

180. Formation of the Preterite. The vowel of the preterite indicative is always different from that of the infinitive. The first and third persons singular have no ending; elsewhere the endings are as in the present.

1. The final consonant of the stem usually remains the same in all the principal parts, as in geben, gab, gegeben. But a consonant is everywhere liable to be doubled to indicate that the preceding vowel is short; e. g., bitten, bat, gebeten; reiten, ritt, geritten. In a few verbs the consonant changes; e. g., ziehen, zog, gezogen.

2. The preterite subjunctive, first person singular, is regularly formed by adding e to the corresponding indicative form, with umlaut of the root-vowel if possible; e. g., hielt–hielte (from halten); gab–gäbe (from geben).

181. Formation of the Perfect Participle. The ending is always en. The root-vowel may be like that of the infinitive, as in geben, gab, gegeben; or like that of the preterite, as in reiten, ritt, geritten; or unlike either, as in ſingen, ſang, geſungen.

1. The prefix ge is required. For the omission of it in certain rare cases see § 188, 3, *a*.

182. Vowel-Change in the Present. This affects three forms only, viz.: the second and third person singular of the present indicative, and in some verbs the second person singular of the imperative. The changes that take place are as follows:

1. Radical a becomes ä in the indicative, but remains unchanged in the imperative; thus from tragen, *to bear*, ich trage, du trägſt, er trägt, wir tragen, imperative trage.

2. Radical e if short becomes i, and if long becomes ie, both in the indicative and imperative; thus from helfen, *to help*, ich helfe, du hilfſt, er hilft, wir helfen, imperative hilf;

from ſehen, *to see*, ich ſehe, du ſiehſt, er ſieht, wir ſehen, imperative ſieh.

3. Other vowels and the diphthongs remain unchanged.

a. To each of the above rules there are some exceptions, for which consult the list of strong verbs in § 331. In learning the forms of a strong verb attention must be given to its vowel-changes no less than to its principal parts.

183. The Dropping of the Connecting Vowel. Strong verbs usually reject the connecting vowel in those forms of the present that have undergone vowel-change. If then the stem ends in t, so that two t's would be brought together in the third person singular, the two contract to one; thus es gilt, for gilt't, from gelten, *to be worth*. Otherwise the rules for the use of the connecting vowel are the same as in the case of weak verbs.

1. The following examples will show the difference in the present inflection of like-sounding strong and weak verbs.

Strong.		*Weak.*
ich halte, du hältſt,	er hält	ich walte, du walteſt, er waltet
ich lade, du lädſt,	er lädt	ich bade, du badeſt, er badet
ich eſſe, du ißt (or iſſeſt),	er ißt	ich preſſe, du preſſeſt, er preßt

2. The imperative second person singular omits the final e in those verbs that have i or ie changed from e; thus lies, from leſen; hilf, from helfen; but trage, from tragen.

184. Examples of Strong Conjugation: ſehen, *to see;* fallen, *to fall.*

Present.

I see, etc.; *I fall*, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich ſehe	ſehe	falle	falle
du ſiehſt	ſeheſt	fällſt	falleſt
er ſieht	ſehe	fällt	falle
wir ſehen	ſehen	fallen	fallen
ihr ſeht	ſehet	fallt	fallet
ſie ſehen	ſehen	fallen	fallen

Preterite.

I saw, etc.; *I fell*, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich ſah	ſähe	fiel	fiele
du ſahſt	ſäheſt	fielſt	fieleſt
er ſah	ſähe	fiel	fiele
wir ſahen	ſähen	fielen	fielen
ihr ſaht	ſähet	fielt	fielet
ſie ſahen	ſähen	fielen	fielen

Perfect.

I have seen, etc.; *I have fallen*, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich habe geſehen	habe geſehen	bin gefallen	ſei gefallen
du haſt „	habeſt „	biſt „	ſeieſt „
er hat „	habe „	iſt „	ſei „
wir haben „	haben „	ſind „	ſeien „
ihr habt „	habet „	ſeid „	ſeiet „
ſie haben „	haben „	ſind „	ſeien „

Pluperfect.

I had seen, etc.; *I had fallen*, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich hatte geſehen	hätte geſehen	war gefallen	wäre gefallen
du hatteſt „	hätteſt „	warſt „	wäreſt „
er hatte „	hätte „	war „	wäre „
wir hatten „	hätten „	waren „	wären „
ihr hattet „	hättet „	war(e)t „	wäret „
ſie hatten „	hätten „	waren „	wären „

Future.

I shall see, etc.; *I shall fall*, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich werde ſehen	werde ſehen	werde fallen	werde fallen
du wirſt „	werdeſt „	wirſt „	werdeſt „
er wird „	werde „	wird „	werde „
wir werden „	werden „	werden „	werden „
ihr werdet „	werdet „	werdet „	werdet „
ſie werden „	werden „	werden „	werden „

Future Perfect.

I shall have seen, etc.; *I shall have fallen*, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich werde geſehen haben	werde geſehen haben	werde gefallen ſein	werde gefallen ſein
du wirſt „ „	werdeſt „ „	wirſt „ „	werdeſt „ „
er wird „ „	werde „ „	wird „ „	werde „ „
wir werden „ „	werden „ „	werden „ „	werden „ „
ihr werdet „ „	werdet „ „	werdet „ „	werdet „ „
ſie werden „ „	werden „ „	werden „ „	werden „ „

Conditional.

Present.

I should see, etc.; *I should fall*, etc.

ich würde ſehen	würde fallen
du würdeſt „	würdeſt „
er würde „	würde „
wir würden „	würden „
ihr würdet „	würdet „
ſie würden „	würden „

Perfect.

I should have seen, etc.; *I should have fallen*, etc.

ich würde geſehen haben	würde gefallen ſein
du würdeſt „ „	würdeſt „ „
er würde „ „	würde „ „
wir würden „ „	würden „ „
ihr würdet „ „	würdet „ „
ſie würden „ „	würden „ „

IMPERATIVE.

ſieh (du), *see (thou).*	falle (du), *fall (thou).*
ſehe er, *let him see.*	falle er, *let him fall.*
ſehen wir, *let us see.*	fallen wir, *let us fall.*
ſeht (ihr), *see (ye).*	fallt (ihr), *fall (ye).*
ſehen ſie, *let them see.*	fallen ſie, *let them fall.*

INFINITIVE.

Present: (zu) ſehen, *(to) see;* (zu) fallen, *(to) fall.*

Perfect: geſehen zu haben, *to have seen;* gefallen zu ſein, *to have fallen.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present: ſehend, *seeing;* fallend, *falling.*

Perfect: geſehen, *seen;* gefallen, *fallen.*

185. Irregular Strong Verbs. The three verbs gehen, *go*, ſtehen, *stand*, and thun, *do*, are irregular in that they form their preterite and perfect participle from a stem different from that of the present. They are also without vowel-change in the present. The principal parts are gehen, ging, gegangen; ſtehen, ſtand, geſtanden; thun, that, gethan. The simple tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

Present.			*Preterite.*		
ich gehe	ſtehe	thue	ging	ſtand	that
du gehſt	ſtehſt	thuſt	gingſt	ſtandſt	thatſt
er geht	ſteht	thut	ging	ſtand	that
wir gehen	ſtehen	thun	gingen	ſtanden	thaten
ihr geht	ſteht	thut	gingt	ſtandet	thatet
ſie gehen	ſtehen	thun	gingen	ſtanden	thaten

1. The other forms are regular, gehen being conjugated with ſein, ſtehen and thun with haben.

186. Verbs of Mixed Inflection. A number of verbs

which were once strong have passed over, wholly or in part, to the weak conjugation; e. g., rächen, roch, gerochen, *to avenge*, is now usually conjugated rächen, rächte, gerächt.

1. Thus strong and weak forms from the same verb may exist side by side. When this is the case they are sometimes associated with difference of meaning; e. g., ſcheiden, *to separate*, makes ſchied, geſchieden, when intransitive, but ſcheidete, geſcheidet, when transitive.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Reading Lesson: Strong Verbs.

187. Rule of Order V: Dependent Infinitives. A dependent infinitive, with or without zu, comes last if the verb is in a simple tense, otherwise next to the last; e.g., ich habe nichts mit der Sache zu thun, *I have nothing to do with the affair;* but ich habe nichts mit der Sache zu thun gehabt, *I have had nothing to do with the affair.*

1. An infinitive dependent upon a verb which itself stands in the dependent order generally comes just before the verb if unmodified, but after if modified by an object or an adverb; e. g., obwohl ich ihn zu antworten gebeten hatte, *though I had asked him to answer;* but obwohl ich ihn gebeten hatte, meine Frage zu beantworten, *though I had asked him to answer my question.*

Mein lieber Freund! Endlich haſt Du Dein langes Schweigen gebrochen; Dein Brief vom 12. dieſes Monats iſt mir ſoeben zu Händen[1] gekommen. Für die Nachrichten, die Du mir aus der Heimat giebſt[2], danke ich Dir herzlich, obwohl andere Freunde mir zum Teil[3] ſchon über dieſelben Dinge geſchrieben hatten. Ich ſchließe[4] aus Deinem Briefe, daß es Dir gut geht, und daß Du keine Gefahr läufſt,[5] an[6] der Schwindſucht zu ſterben. Die Beſchreibung Deiner Reiſe nach Chicago war mir höchſt intereſſant. Was Du nicht alles geſehen haſt! Und in wie kurzer Zeit! Denn es ſcheint, daß Du nur drei oder vier Tage dort geblieben biſt.

Nun, ich habe auch kürzlich eine kleine Reiſe gemacht, — eine Fußwanderung[7] im Harzgebirge. Vielleicht wirſt Du gern davon hören. Ich hatte viel von den Schönheiten dieſer Gegend gehört und geleſen, und war natürlich recht neugierig darauf[8] geworden. Vor etwa zwei Wochen ſprach ich eines Tages[9] darüber mit einem Bekannten, der meine Neugierde zu teilen ſchien, und wir trafen die Verabredung, den berühmten Brocken[10] zuſammen in Augenſchein zu nehmen.[11]

EXERCISE XXXIV a.

1. She speaks, reads, and writes German very well. 2. The picture hangs too high. 3. He does not keep[12] his word. 4. My physician advises a long walk every day,[13] but that[14] takes too much time. 5. What would you give for it? 6. I asked[15] him to remain. 7. How long did you remain? 8. I found him as[16] he was lying by the way, helped him[17] upon[18] his feet and gave him[17] some money. 9. I came home late,[19] sat a while by the stove, wrote a few letters, and then went[20] to bed. 10. You have done much for me. 11. I have written three letters, but he has not answered. 12. We have remained too long already. 13. If you had come a little earlier, I should have found[21] you. 14. I now saw that we had gone too far.

NOTE.—The strong verbs, not counting compounds, which have been introduced in the preceding exercises are as follows (for their vowel-changes see, if in doubt, § 331):

bitten	bat	gebeten	raten	riet	geraten
*bleiben	blieb	geblieben	ſcheinen	ſchien	geſchienen
finden	fand	gefunden	ſchreiben	ſchrieb	geſchrieben
geben	gab	gegeben	ſehen	ſah	geſehen
*gehen	ging	gegangen	*ſein	war	geweſen
halten	hielt	gehalten	ſitzen	ſaß	geſeſſen
heißen	hieß	geheißen	ſprechen	ſprach	geſprochen
helfen	half	geholfen	ſtehen	ſtand	geſtanden
*kommen	kam	gekommen	thun	that	gethan
leſen	las	geleſen	tragen	trug	getragen
liegen	lag	gelegen	*werden	ward wurde	geworden
nehmen	nahm	genommen	ziehen	zog	gezogen

* *Aux.* ſein.

Vocabulary.

Augenſchein, *m. s. 2*, view, [**eye-shine**].
bekannt, *adj.*, known; *as subst.*, acquaintance.
Beſchreibung, *f. w.*, description.
brechen, *v. s.* (brach, gebrochen), **break.**
endlich, *adv.*, finally, [**end-**].
Fuß, *m. s. 2 (pl. ¨üße)*, **foot.**
Gefahr, *f. w.*, danger.
Heimat, *f. w.*, home, [**home-**].
herzlich, *adj.*, **heart-y**, cordial.
kürzlich, *adv.*, lately.
laufen, *v. s.* (lief, gelaufen, *aux.* ſein), run, [**leap**].
Neugierde, *f. w.*, curiosity.
neugierig, *adj.*, curious.
obwohl, *sub. conj.*, **although.**
ſchließen, *v. s.* (ſchloß, geſchloſſen), **infer, conclude.**
ſchweigen, *v. s.* (ſchwieg, geſchwiegen), **to be silent.**
Schwindſucht, *f. w.*, consumption.
ſoeben, *adv.*, **just now**, [**so-even**].
ſterben, *v. s.* (ſtarb, geſtorben, *aux.* ſein), die, [**starve**].
teilen, *v. w.*, share, [**deal**].
treffen, *v. s.* (traf, getroffen), hit, hit upon.
Vera'bredung, *f. w.*, agreement, arrangement.
zuſammen, *adv.*, together.

Notes.—[1] **zu Händen kommen**; see Ex. XXIV, n. 3.—[2] **giebſt**; the e being long, giebſt, gieb, imv. gieb are the regular forms; but gibſt, gibt, gib also occur.—[3] **zum Teil**, *in part.*—[4] **ſchließe**; notice that ſchließen has geſchloſſen (not geſchloßen), in the perf. pple. This means that the o is short.—[5] **läufſt**; contrary to § 182, 3, laufen makes du läufſt, er läuft (imv. lauf); Gefahr laufen = *to run a risk.*—[6] **an**, *of*; the name of the malady *from* which one suffers, or *of* which one dies, is put in the dat. with an.—[7] **Fußwanderung**, *pedestrian tour.*—[8] **darauf**, *with regard to it.*—[9] **eines Tages**, *one day*; for the gen. of time see § 251, 2.—[10] **Brocken**, *Brocken*; the highest summit of the Harz Mts.—[11] **nehmen**; by way of exception to § 182, 2, nehmen makes du nimmſt, er nimmt, imv. nimm. Zu Augenſchein nehmen = *to inspect, take a view of.*—[12] **keep**, halten.—[13] **every day**, acc.—[14] **that**; das, rather than der.—[15] **ask**, bitten.—[16] **as**, wie (*sub. conj.*).—[17] Use the dat.—[18] **upon**, auf with acc.—[19] **home late**; see § 96, 1.—[20] **then went**, ging dann.—[21] **I should have found**, hätte ich gefunden or würde ich . . . . gefunden haben. **The reason for the inverted order is explained further on in § 200.**

EXERCISE XXXV.

Reading Lesson: The Same Continued.

Am nächsten Tage fuhren wir mit der Eisenbahn[1] bis nach Wernigerode,[2] und von da gingen wir zu Fuß nach Ilsenburg, einem kleinen Dorfe, welches ungefähr vier Stunden[3] vom Brockengipfel entfernt[4] liegt. Hier fanden wir bald ein gutes Gasthaus, wo wir uns ziemlich früh zu Bett legten. Am folgenden Morgen hingen leichte Wolken am Himmel, und man riet[5] uns, auf gutes Wetter zu warten. Es wäre besser gewesen, wenn wir diesem Rate gefolgt wären, aber dazu waren wir zu ungeduldig. Wir hielten[6] die leichten Wolken nicht für gefährlich.

Also machten wir uns früh auf den Weg,[7] und am Anfang ging es auch wirklich sehr schön. Die Morgenluft war höchst angenehm, die Vögel sangen in den Bäumen, und eine prächtige Natur bot, während wir höher und höher stiegen, immer neue Reize. Nachdem wir etwa eine Stunde gegangen waren, kamen wir an einen 300 Fuß[8] hohen Felsen, welcher den Namen „Ilsenstein" trägt. Derselbe liegt dicht am Wege und ist nicht schwer zu besteigen.[9] Wir klommen also auf den Gipfel und saßen wohl eine halbe Stunde droben.

EXERCISE XXXV a.

1. The river runs through beautiful valleys. 2. He carries his head very high. 3. Let him be silent and go his way.[10] 4. Please shut the door—I have already asked[11] you twice. 5. I have offered you[12] too much already. 6. It seemed impossible to mount higher. 7. At last we came to[13] a little village, which was called Hochstein. 8. I met[14] her at[15] the station and we drove home together. 9. On the summit we found a little girl who offered us[12] the flowers that she had picked.[16] 10. I would be silent if only he had not broken his word. 11. I ran quickly to[17] the river, gave the child[12] my hand and drew it to[17] the land. 12. The child would have died if I had not come. 13. You would have fallen had I not taken you by the hand. 14. Who knows what Byron would have done if he had not died so young?

Vocabulary.

beſteigen, *v. s.* (beſtieg, beſtiegen), climb.
bieten, *v. s.* (bot, geboten), offer, bid.
dicht, *adj.*, close, dense, [tight].
Dorf, *n. s. 3*, village, [thorp].
droben, *adv.*, up there.
Eiſenbahn, *f. w.*, railway.
entfernt, *adv.*, distant.
fahren, *v. s.* (fuhr, gefahren, *aux.* ſein), travel, drive, [fare].
Felſen, *m. s. 1*, rock.
Gaſthaus, *n. s. 3*, inn, [guest-house].
gefährlich, *adj.*, dangerous.
Gipfel, *m. s. 1*, peak, summit.
Himmel, *m. s. 1*, heaven, sky.
klimmen, *v. s.* (klomm, geklommen, *aux.* ſein), climb.
nachde'm, *sub. conj.*, after.
Natu'r, *f. w.*, *nature.*
Reiz, *m. s. 2*, charm.
ſingen, *v. s.* (ſang, geſungen), sing.
ſteigen, *v. s.* (ſtieg, geſtiegen, *aux.* ſein), climb.
u'ngeduldig, *adj.*, impatient.
Vogel, *m. s. 1 (pl. ö)*, bird, [fowl].
während, *sub. conj.*, while; *also prep. (gen.)*, during.
Wolke, *f. w.*, cloud, [welkin].

Notes.—[1] **mit der Eiſenbahn**; Ex. XXIII, n. 4.—[2] **Wernigero'de**, name of a little city in the Harz Mts.—[3] **Stunden**, *hours' walk, leagues*; acc. of measure.—[4] **entfernt**, *distant, away*; the acc. of measure is often accompanied by an adv. of measure.—[5] **riet**, *advised.* The verb also means *to guess* (Ex. XXX).—[6] **hielten**; halten für = *regard as, consider.*—[7] **ſich auf den Weg machen**, *to start, get under way.*—[8] **Fuß**; used in the sing., as a measure of height, after a numeral.—[9] **beſteigen** is transitive, while ſteigen is intransitive. The construction here requires a transitive verb.—[10] **way**, acc., though gehen is intrans.; see § 266, 1.—[11] **ask**, bitten; the order: dich ſchon zweimal.—[12] Use the dat.; the order: dir ſchon zu viel.—[13] **to**, zu.—[14] **meet**, treffen.—[15] **at**, auf with dat.—[16] **pick**, brechen.—[17] **to**, an with acc.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Reading Lesson: The Same Continued.

Die Ausſicht von dieſem Punkte werde ich ſo bald nicht vergeſſen. Während wir hier ſaßen und plauderten, deutete mein Reiſekamerad mehrmals[1] auf die Wolken, welche immer noch am Himmel hingen und gerade jetzt höher zu ſteigen und dichter zu werden ſchienen. Wir ſahen, daß es ein Gewitter geben würde, und

dachten[3] sofort an die Worte der Leute im Gasthause. Aber an[3] eine Rückkehr war jetzt nicht mehr zu denken; dazu glaubten[4] wir zu weit gegangen zu sein. Also gingen wir weiter, da kein Obdach zu sehen[5] war, nach dem Gipfel des Berges zu.[6] Jetzt schritten wir natürlich schneller, indem[7] wir alle paar Minuten[8] Blicke nach dem Himmel warfen. Von Zeit zu Zeit liefen wir sogar eine kleine Strecke, aber das wurde bald ermüdend. Endlich brach das Gewitter los, und was für ein Wetter! Der Regen fiel in Strömen, der Wind blies und heulte wie toll[9] und bog die Bäume, daß sie brachen. Blendende Blitze schossen überall durch die Luft und schlugen bisweilen in die Bäume.

EXERCISE XXXVI a.

1. He stands now where I stood ten years ago. 2. The letter has been lying on my table a whole week. 3. We had mounted higher and higher and stood now upon the summit. 4. William Tell shot an apple from the head of his child. 5. His heart beats warm for the poor. 6. We have met and beaten them twice. 7. The thing bends, but it does not break. 8. The wind is blowing cold from the mountains; there will be a storm. 9. Prices have risen; everything has become dearer. 10. He cast one glance at[10] the crowd and strode quietly into the building. 11. Poets have always sung of love and beauty. 12. How long have you been standing already? 13. Did you drive or come on foot? 14. Why are you silent? Do you not see what you have done? 15. That throws a strong light upon[10] the whole affair.

VOCABULARY.

Aussicht, *f. w.*, view, [out-sight].
biegen, *v. s.* (bog, gebogen), bend, [bow].
blasen, *v. s.* (blies, geblasen), blow.
blenden, *v. w.*, blind, dazzle.
Blick, *m. s. 2*, glance.
Blitz, *m. s. 2*, flash, lightning.
ermüden, *v. w.*, tire, fatigue.
Gewitter, *n. s. 1*, thunder-storm.
heulen, *v. w.*, howl.
inde'm, *sub. conj.*, while, since.
Obdach, *n. s. 3*, shelter, [-thatch].

plaudern, *v. w.*, chat.
Regen, *m. s. 1*, rain.
Rückkehr, *f. w.*, return.
ſchießen, *v. s.* (ſchoß, geſchoſſen), shoot.
ſchlagen, *v. s.* (ſchlug, geſchlagen), strike, [slay].
ſchreiten, *v. s.* (ſchritt, geſchritten, *aux.* ſein), step.
ſogar, *adv.*, actually, even.
Strecke, *f. w.*, stretch, distance.
Strom, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ö), stream.
toll, *adj.*, mad.
überall, *adv.*, everywhere.
vergeſſen, *v. s.* (vergaß, vergeſſen), forget.
werfen, *v. s.* (warf, geworfen), throw, cast, [warp].
Wind, *m. s. 2*, wind.

NOTES.—[1] **mehrmals**, *several times.* Notice the inversion (Ex. XXIX, n. 2).—[2] **dachten**; from denken, dachte, gedacht; one of the irregular weak verbs.—[3] **an .... denken**, *a return was now no longer to be thought of, there was no thinking of a return any more.*—[4] **glaubten .... ſein**, *believed that we had gone.*—[5] **zu ſehen**, *to be seen.*—[6] **nach .... zu**, *toward.*—[7] **indem .... warfen**, *while we cast*, or better simply *casting.* A clause with indem is often best translated by the Eng. pple. in *ing.*—[8] **alle paar Minuten**, *every few minutes.*—[9] **wie toll**, *like mad.*—[10] **at, upon**, auf with acc.

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES AND wiſſen.

188. Characteristics. The verbs dürfen, *to be permitted*, können, *can*, mögen, *may*, müſſen, *must*, ſollen, *shall*, wollen, *will*, and wiſſen, *to know*, constitute a class by themselves. The first six are called 'modal auxiliaries.' They and wiſſen were originally strong verbs, but developed weak preterites after the old preterite had acquired present meaning. As a class they have the following peculiarities:

1. In the present indicative the vowel of the singular (except in ſollen) is different from that of the plural, and the third person singular lacks the ending t.

2. Where the infinitive has umlaut, this umlaut disappears in the preterite indicative, but is found in the preterite subjunctive.

3. Each verb (except wiſſen) has two perfect participles, one weak, with prefix ge, and without umlaut, the other

strong, without ge, and identical in form with the infinitive; thus from können, gekonnt and können. The strong participle is used only and always in connection with an infinitive; thus ich habe es nicht gekonnt, *I have not been able (to do) it;* but ich habe es nicht thun können, *I have not been able to do it.*

a. There are a few other verbs that show this last peculiarity of the modal auxiliaries; i. e., employ what seems to be the infinitive, and really is so if the verb is weak, in connection with an infinitive. The most common of them are heißen, helfen, laſſen, ſehen and hören. Thus one says ich habe ſagen hören, *I have heard say.*

189. Inflection of the Modal Auxiliaries.

PRESENT.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich darf	dürfe	kann	könne	mag	möge
du darfſt	dürfeſt	kannſt	könneſt	magſt	mögeſt
er darf	dürfe	kann	könne	mag	möge
wir dürfen	dürfen	können	können	mögen	mögen
ihr dürft	dürfet	könnt	könnet	mögt	möget
ſie dürfen	dürfen	können	können	mögen	mögen
ich muß	müſſe	ſoll	ſolle	will	wolle
du mußt	müſſeſt	ſollſt	ſolleſt	willſt	wolleſt
er muß	müſſe	ſoll	ſolle	will	wolle
wir müſſen	müſſen	ſollen	ſollen	wollen	wollen
ihr müßt	müſſet	ſollt	ſollet	wollt	wollet
ſie müſſen	müſſen	ſollen	ſollen	wollen	wollen

PRETERITE.

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich durfte	dürfte	konnte	könnte	mochte	möchte
du durfteſt	dürfteſt	konnteſt	könnteſt	mochteſt	möchteſt
er durfte	dürfte	konnte	könnte	mochte	möchte
wir durften	dürften	konnten	könnten	mochten	möchten
ihr durftet	dürftet	konntet	könntet	mochtet	möchtet
ſie durften	dürften	konnten	könnten	mochten	möchten

Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich mußte	müßte	ſollte	ſollte	wollte	wollte
du mußteſt	müßteſt	ſollteſt	ſollteſt	wollteſt	wollteſt
er mußte	müßte	ſollte	ſollte	wollte	wollte
wir mußten	müßten	ſollten	ſollten	wollten	wollten
ihr mußtet	müßtet	ſolltet	ſolltet	wolltet	wolltet
ſie mußten	müßten	ſollten	ſollten	wollten	wollten

Perfect.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich habe gedurft, gekonnt, etc.	habe gedurft, gekonnt, etc.
du haſt gedurft, gekonnt, etc.	habeſt gedurft, gekonnt, etc.
etc.	etc.

or, with an infinitive,

ich habe dürfen, können, etc.	habe dürfen, können, etc.
du haſt dürfen, können, etc.	habeſt dürfen, können, etc.
etc.	etc.

Pluperfect.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich hatte gedurft, gekonnt, etc.	hätte gedurft, gekonnt, etc.
du hatteſt gedurft, gekonnt, etc.	hätteſt gedurft, gekonnt, etc.
etc.	etc.

or, with an infinitive,

ich hatte dürfen, können, etc.	hätte dürfen, können, etc.
du hatteſt dürfen, können, etc.	hätteſt dürfen, können, etc.
etc.	etc.

Future.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich werde dürfen, können, etc.	werde dürfen, können, etc.
du wirſt dürfen, können, etc.	werdeſt dürfen, können, etc.
etc.	etc.

Future Perfect.

ich werde gedurft haben, gekonnt haben, etc.
du wirſt (*subj.* werdeſt) gedurft haben, gekonnt haben, etc.
etc.

or, with an infinitive,

Indic.

ich werde haben dürfen, haben können, etc.
du wirſt (*subj.* werdeſt) haben dürfen, haben können, etc.
etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present.

ich würde dürfen, können, mögen, müſſen, etc.
du würdeſt dürfen, können, mögen müſſen, etc.
etc.

Perfect.

ich würde gedurft haben, gekonnt haben, gemocht haben, etc.
du würdeſt gedurft haben, gekonnt haben, gemocht haben, etc.
etc.

or, with an infinitive,

ich würde haben dürfen, haben können, haben mögen, etc.
du würdeſt haben dürfen, haben können, haben mögen, etc.
etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Wanting, except for wollen, which has wolle (du), wolle er, wollen wir, wollt (ihr), wollen ſie.

INFINITIVE.

Present: dürfen, können, mögen, müſſen, ſollen, wollen.

Perfect: gedurft (zu) haben, gekonnt (zu) haben, etc.

PARTICIPLES.

Present: dürfend, könnend, mögend, müſſend, ſollend, wollend.

Perfect: gedurft and dürfen, gekonnt and können, etc.

190. Inflection of wiſſen. The simple tenses of wiſſen are inflected as follows:

Present.		Preterite.	
Indic.	*Subj.*	*Indic.*	*Subj.*
ich weiß	wiſſe	wußte	wüßte
du weißt	wiſſeſt	wußteſt	wüßteſt
er weiß	wiſſe	wußte	wüßte
wir wiſſen	wiſſen	wußten	wüßten
ihr wißt	wiſſet	wußtet	wüßtet
ſie wiſſen	wiſſen	wußten	wüßten

1. The compound tenses are regular; ich habe gewußt, ich hatte gewußt, ich werde wiſſen, ich werde gewußt haben, etc.

2. The imperative is wiſſe (du), wiſſe er, wiſſen wir, wißt (ihr), wiſſen ſie.

191. Use of the Modal Auxiliaries. The use of the modal auxiliaries is highly idiomatic. All of them except dürfen have familiar English cognates, but the English verbs *may*, *can*, *shall* and *will* have but two tenses each, while *must* has but one. This necessitates the use in English of various circumlocutions, particularly in translating the compound tenses; e. g., ich muß, *I must*, but ich mußte, *I had (to), was obliged;* ich kann, *I can*, but ich werde können, *I shall be able.* The following are the most important uses (for further details see § 333 ff.):

1. **Dürfen** usually means *to be permitted, to have the right*, but is often best translated by *may*, or with a negative by *must not;* e. g., darf ich ums Brot bitten? *may I ask for the bread?* das dürfen Sie nicht thun, *that you must not do.* The preterite subjunctive may denote probability; e. g., das dürfte der Fall ſein, *that may be the case.* Sometimes dürfen approaches the meaning of *dare*, as in ich darf behaupten, *I dare assert.* But it is not cognate with *dare* and is very rarely to be so translated.

2. **Können** in the present is usually equivalent to *can*, but often to *may;* e. g., das kann ſein, *that may be.* Ich konnte means *I was able*, ich könnte, *I should be able*, both of

which uses are covered by English *could;* e. g., ich konnte es (geſtern) nicht finden, *I could not find it (yesterday);* ich könnte es finden (wenn ich ein Licht hätte), *I could find it (if I had a light).*

3. **Mögen** is sometimes equivalent to *may,* as in er mag es behalten, *he may keep it;* more often it is to be rendered by *wish, want, like, care;* e. g., ich mag ihn nicht ſehen, *I do not want to see him.* This use is especially common in the preterite subjunctive, ich möchte (gern) being = *I should like.*

4. **Müſſen** is equivalent to *must* only in the present; elsewhere it is to be translated by *be compelled, be obliged,* or the like; e. g., ich mußte lachen, *I had to laugh, I could not help laughing;* er hat den ganzen Tag arbeiten müſſen, *he has had to work all day.* Er müßte means *he would have (to), he would need.*

5. **Sollen** is sometimes equivalent to *shall,* in the preterite, to *should, ought;* e. g., du ſollſt nicht töten, *thou shalt not kill;* du ſollteſt gehen, *you should (ought to) go.* More often it is best rendered by a form of *be* followed by *to;* e. g., er ſollte bald ſterben, *he was soon to die.* Very frequently it is used to report what *is said, claimed* or *thought* by some one else than the speaker; e. g., er ſoll ſehr reich ſein, *he is said to be very rich.*

6. **Wollen** generally denotes an act of *willing* or *wishing* on the part of the subject; e. g., er will Soldat werden, *he wishes to become a soldier.* It is often to be translated by *to be on the point of;* e. g., er will gehen, *he is on the point of going.* Sometimes it can be rendered by *claim, pretend;* e. g., er will gehört haben, *he claims to have heard.* In the compound tenses translate by *wish* or *want;* e. g., ich habe dich längſt beſuchen wollen, *I have long been wishing to visit you.*

192. The Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Modal Auxiliaries. The pluperfect subjunctive of a modal auxiliary, with accompanying infinitive, is the usual equivalent of

English *might, could* or *should,* followed by *have* and a participle. Thus *he could (*or *might) have come* is not er könnte gekommen sein, but er hätte kommen können; *you should have done it yourself,* not du solltest es selbst gethan haben, but du hättest es selbst thun sollen.

1. This construction may take the place of a perfect conditional with *would have* where the latter is connected with an infinitive; thus for *he would have been able to do it* one may say er würde es haben thun können, or er hätte es thun können; for *he would have wished to greet you,* er würde dich haben grüßen wollen, or er hätte dich grüßen wollen (or mögen).

193. Omission of Infinitive with Modal Auxiliary. After any of the modal auxiliaries, the dependent infinitive is often omitted, if it can readily be supplied; as ich muß fort, *I must (go) away;* antworte du, ich kann es nicht, *you answer, I cannot.*

2. Through this ellipsis of a verb some of the modal auxiliaries have acquired apparently the force of transitive verbs; e. g., ich mag das Buch nicht, *I do not like the book* (do not care to read or to have it); können Sie Deutsch? *can you speak German?*

EXERCISE XXXVII.

194. Rule of Order VI: Special Case of Dependent Order. In a dependent sentence containing a compound tense of a modal auxiliary in connection with an infinitive, the participle of the modal auxiliary comes last, next to that the infinitive, and just before that the inflected auxiliary; e. g., ich weiß gewiß, daß ich so etwas nie hätte thun können, *I know for certain that I could never have done such a thing;* das ist ein Rätsel, welches niemand bis jetzt hat lösen können, *that is a riddle which no one has hitherto been able to solve.*

Reading Lesson: Modal Auxiliaries.

Wir konnten weder gehen noch ſtehen und mußten alle Augenblicke nach irgend einem Bäumchen greifen, um[1] überhaupt[2] auf den Füßen bleiben zu können. Du weißt, daß ich nicht furchtſam bin, aber ich kann Dich[3] verſichern, daß es kein Spaß war. Während Du jetzt ruhig meine Beſchreibung lieſt,[4] magſt Du vielleicht darüber lachen. Du wirſt ſagen: Es iſt Dir recht geſchehen;[5] Du hätteſt im Gaſthauſe bleiben ſollen. Nun, ich will geſtehen, daß gerade dieſer Gedanke auch mir ein paarmal durch den Kopf fuhr,[6] aber es half nichts.[7] In ſolchem Falle kann man mit dem Narren in Shakespeare nur ſagen: Der Reiſende[8] muß eben zufrieden ſein.

Wir waren natürlich in ſehr kurzer Zeit durch und durch naß geworden, und das Weitere konnte uns dann wenig kümmern. Es dauerte noch zwei volle Stunden, bis[9] wir auf den Gipfel kamen und das Brockenhaus[10] vor uns ſahen. Du kannſt mir glauben, wenn ich Dir ſage, daß der Anblick ein ſehr willkommener war, denn jetzt durften wir wieder in eine menſchliche Wohnung treten. Wir ſetzten uns an den Ofen und trockneten unſere Kleider, ſo gut[11] wir konnten. Endlich waren wir alſo auf dem Brocken, aber was[12] Naturſchönheiten betraf, ſo hätten[13] wir eben ſo gut auf dem Grunde des Meeres ſitzen können. Ein dichter Nebel lag über dem ganzen Berge, und man konnte keine hundert Schritte weit[14] ſehen.

EXERCISE XXXVII a.

1. I know nothing of the affair and will hear nothing of it. 2. Can you speak German? I can't. 3. Shall I tell you what I think? 4. I saw him yesterday; he could not walk and had to lie in bed. 5. Will you not come as soon as[15] possible? I should like to talk with you. 6. What time is it, if I may ask[16]? 7. I do not want to see him again. 8. Travel as you will, you will certainly need more money. 9. If we had time, I could[17] tell you much that[18] you would probably like to know. 10. She will not be able to go this evening. 11. You will have to take us as you find us. 12. I ought to have written, but I haven't been able to find the time. 13. As[19] children we

were not allowed to go to the theater. 14. He wished to go along, but we did not want his company. 15. You ought to see it once; it is said[20] to have cost a thousand marks.

Vocabulary.

Anblick, *m. s. 2*, view, sight.
eben, *adv.*, even, just.
furchtſam, *adj.*, timid, [**fright-some**].
geſchehen, *v. s.* (geſchah, geſchehen, *aux.* ſein), happen.
geſtehen, *v. s.* (geſtand, geſtanden), confess.
greifen, *v. s.*, (griff, gegriffen), grasp, grip(e).
Kleid, *n. s. 3*, garment, [**cloth**].
kümmern, *v. w.*, trouble.
lachen, *v. w.*, **laugh.**
Meer, *n. s. 2*, **sea**, [**mere**].
menſchlich, *adj.*, **human.**
Narr, *m. w.*, **fool.**
naß, *adj.*, wet, [**nas-ty**].
Nebel, *m. s. 1*, fog, mist.
reiſen, *w.* travel.
treten, *v. s.* (trat, getreten, *aux.* ſein), step, **tread.**
trocknen, *v. w.*, dry.
verſichern, *v. w.*, **assure.**
voll, *adj.*, **full.**
weder, *conj.*, neither; **weder . . . noch**, neither . . . nor.
zufrieden, *adj.*, **content.**

Notes.—[1] **um** with an **inf.** means *in order;* here with können, *in order to be able.*—[2] **überhaupt**, *at all.*—[3] **Dich**; some prefer the dat. with verſichern.—[4] **lieſt**; for lieſ'ſt; see § 183.—[5] **Es iſt . . . . geſchehen**, *it served you right.*—[6] **mir . . . . fuhr**, *passed through my head;* on mir see Ex. XXIV, n. 3.—[7] **es half nichts**, *it did no good.*—[8] **der Reiſende**, *the traveler;* a present pple. used substantively. The quotation from Shakespeare is found in *As You Like It*, Act II, Scene 4: "When I was at home I was in a better place, but travelers must be content."—[9] **bis**; here a subordinating conjunction = *until.*—[10] **Brockenhaus**; name of an inn on the summit of the Brocken.—[11] **ſo gut**, *as well as;* als being omitted. In such a phrase ſo with following adv. acquires the force of a subordinating conjunction.—[12] **was**; § 141, 1.—[13] **hätten . . . . ſitzen können**, *might have been sitting.*—[14] **weit**; lit., *far*, but it does not need to be translated; see Ex. XXXV, n. 4.—[15] **as soon as possible**, ſo bald als möglich, or möglichſt bald.—[16] **ask**, fragen.—[17] **I could**; inverted order.—[18] **that**; see § 141, 2.—[19] **as**, als.—[20] **it is said**, es ſoll.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Colloquy.

I.

Weißt du, wie spät es ist? Ich muß sofort nach Hause.

Es ist ziemlich finster draußen; glaubst du, du wirst den Weg nach deiner Wohnung finden können?

Daran hatte ich nicht gedacht, aber es dürfte[1] nicht schwer sein. Ich könnte im Notfall einen Polizisten fragen.

Auf die Polizei darfst[2] du nicht rechnen. Soll ich nicht mit dir gehen? Ich kenne die Straßen besser als du.

Ich möchte sehr gern Gesellschaft haben. Wie weit mag es denn sein? Weißt du es?

Ich kann es nicht genau sagen. Es mag etwa eine Viertelstunde sein.

Aber du wirst den Rückweg allein machen müssen. Das thut mir leid. Ich hätte früher gehen sollen.

Nicht doch. Da hätten wir nicht so lange plaudern können. Sei[3] meinetwegen ohne Sorge. Die frische Luft wird mir wohl thun.

Du bist sehr freundlich. — Ich möchte wissen, wie es unsrem kranken Freunde geht. Er soll[4] endlich etwas besser sein.

Ich war heute früh in seinem Hause, aber ich durfte ihn[5] nicht sprechen. Der arme Kerl! Ich hätte so gern etwas sagen mögen,[6] um ihn zu trösten.

II.

May I ask[7] what time it is? Perhaps I ought[8] to be going home.

Oh, it cannot be so very late. I haven't a watch,[9] but if you step[10] to the[11] window you can[12] see the city clock.

Just think![13] It is on the point of striking[14] twelve. I ought to have gone an hour ago.[15]

You must not feel concerned[16] on my account. I could not have used[17] the time more pleasantly.

It is pretty dark outside. I wonder if[18] I can find the way home.

I hadn't thought of that.[19] If you wish, I will[12] go with you.

I should like company, if it doesn't make you too much trouble.

Oh, it is no trouble. We will[20] take the short way through the park.

But they say that is[21] dangerous in the night. They claim[22] to have seen footpads there.

Nonsense! That is probably[23] an invention of the newspapers. At the most one might[24] meet a beggar there.

VOCABULARY.

allein, *adj.*, *adv.*, **alone.**
draußen, *adv.*, outside.
Erfindung, *f. w.*, invention.
finſter, *adj.*, dark.
friſch, *adj.*, **fresh.**
gebrauchen, *v. w.*, use.
höchſtens, *adv.*, at the most.
Notfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case of **need.**
Polizei', *f. w.*, *police.*
Räuber, *m. s. 1*, **robber**; Straßenräuber, footpad.
rechnen, *v. w.*, **reckon**, count.
Rückweg, *m. s. 2*, return.
Sorge, *f. w.*, care, [**sorrow**].
tröſten, *v. w.*, comfort, [**trust**].
Unſinn, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), nonsense.

NOTES.—[1] **dürfte . . . . ſein,** *cannot be;* denoting less confidence than kann nicht ſein.—[2] **darfſt . . . . nicht,** *must not.*—[3] **Sei . . . . ohne Sorge,** *be without concern, do not feel concerned.*—[4] **Er ſoll . . . . ſein,** *he is said to be.*—[5] **ihn;** object of ſprechen, used here in the sense of *speak to.*—[6] **hätte . . . . ſagen mögen,** *should have liked to say.*—[7] **ask,** fragen.—[8] **Perhaps I ought,** ich ſollte wohl.—[9] **watch,** Taſchenuhr.—[10] **if you step,** wenn du . . . . trittſt—[11] **to the,** ans.—[12] **you can,** inverted order.—[13] **Just think,** denke nur.—[14] **It is on the point of striking,** es will eben . . . . ſchlagen.—[15] **an hour ago,** vor einer Stunde.—[16] **you must not feel concerned,** du mußt . . . . ſein.—[17] **could not have used,** hätte nicht . . . . gebrauchen können.—[18] **I wonder if,** ich möchte wiſſen, ob.—[19] **of that,** daran.—[20] **We will,** wir wollen.—[21] **they say that is,** der ſoll . . . . ſein.—[22] **They claim to have seen,** man will . . . . geſehen haben.—[23] **That is probably,** das mag wohl . . . . ſein.—[24] **one might meet,** könnte man . . . . treffen.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

195. Formation and Meaning of the Passive.—The passive is formed by combining the auxiliary **werden**

with the perfect participle. Werden is inflected regularly throughout, its participle appearing as worden; thus ich werde gelobt, *I am praised;* er iſt gelobt worden, *he has been praised.*

1. It is important to distinguish between the true passive with werden, and the quasi-passive with ſein, between das Buch wird gedruckt, and das Buch iſt gedruckt. To do this it is only necessary to remember that werden means *to become, to pass into the state of;* hence das Buch wird gedruckt means *the book is becoming printed, is passing into the state of being printed,* i. e., *is printing,* or *being printed* (the work of printing is going on). On the other hand, das Buch iſt gedruckt means *the book* is *printed,* i. e., that the work of printing is finished.

2. The forms with werden, then, denote an action going on at the time indicated by the tense of the verb; those with ſein a state or condition that has resulted from a previous action. Further examples: die Thür iſt geſchloſſen, *the door is closed;* die Thür wird um 8 Uhr geſchloſſen, *the door is closed* (i. e., *they close the door*) *at 8 o'clock;* ich kam beinahe zu ſpät; der Brief wurde (eben) geſchrieben; *I came almost too late; the letter was (just) being written;* ich kam zu ſpät; der Brief war (ſchon) geſchrieben; *I came too late; the letter was (already) written.*

196. Conjugation of the Passive: gelobt werden, *to be praised.*

PRESENT.

I am praised, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich werde gelobt	werde gelobt
du wirſt gelobt	werdeſt gelobt
etc.	etc.

Preterite.

I was praised, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich wurde or ward gelobt	würde gelobt
du wurdeſt or wardſt gelobt	würdeſt gelobt
etc.	etc.

Perfect.

I have been praised, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich bin gelobt worden	ſei gelobt worden
du biſt gelobt worden	ſeieſt gelobt worden
etc.	etc.

Pluperfect.

I had been praised, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich war gelobt worden	wäre gelobt worden
du warſt gelobt worden	wäreſt gelobt worden
etc.	etc.

Future.

I shall be praised, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich werde gelobt werden	werde gelobt werden
du wirſt gelobt werden	werdeſt gelobt werden
etc.	etc.

Future Perfect.

I shall have been praised, etc.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich werde gelobt worden ſein	werde gelobt worden ſein
du wirſt gelobt worden ſein	werdeſt gelobt worden ſein
etc.	etc.

Conditional.

Present.	*Perfect.*
I should be praised,	*I should have been praised,*
etc.	etc.
ich würde gelobt werden	würde gelobt worden ſein
du würdeſt gelobt werden	würdeſt gelobt worden ſein
etc.	etc.

IMPERATIVE.

ſei (du) gelobt, *be (thou) praised.*
er ſei gelobt, *let him be praised.*
etc.

(Forms with werden, as werde gelobt, **er werde** gelobt, are very rare. See § 344, 1).

INFINITIVE.

Present: gelobt (zu) werden, *to be praised.*
Perfect: gelobt worden (zu) ſein, *to have been praised.*

GERUNDIVE.

zu lobend, *to be praised, praiseworthy* (see § 370).

197. The Active and the Passive Construction. In going from the active to the passive construction the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, while the subject of the active, if a personal agent, goes into the dative with **von**; e. g., wir ſchlugen den Feind, *we beat the enemy*, becomes der Feind wurde von uns geſchlagen.

1. A non-personal instrument or means is denoted usually by the accusative with durch; e. g., der Feind wurde durch Liſt geſchlagen, *the enemy was beaten by strategy.*

198. The Impersonal Passive of Intransitive Verbs. Intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive, but this use is very common. The impersonal passive can seldom be translated literally; e. g., es wurde getanzt und geſungen, *there was singing and dancing.*

1. Such expressions, therefore, as *I was told, my advice was not followed*, and all others in which the corresponding German verb is intransitive, have to be rendered by impersonal constructions, thus: mir wurde geſagt; meinem Rate wurde nicht gefolgt.

a. Very often, however, one can substitute for such an

intransitive verb a transitive compound which can be used personally in the passive; thus for *my advice was not followed* one can say mein Rat wurde nicht befolgt.

199. Substitutes for the Passive. On the whole the passive is much less used in German than in English. The English passive can be replaced in German (1) by man with the active, as in man ſagt, *it is said;* (2) by a reflexive form (§ 201), as in es verſteht ſich, *it is understood;* (3) by a reflexive with laſſen, *let*, as in es läßt ſich hoffen, *it may be hoped;* es ließ ſich erwarten, *it was to be expected.*

EXERCISE XXXIX.

200. Rule of Order VII: Inversion after Subordinate Clause. Any subordinate clause preceding the principal verb of a complex sentence causes inversion; e. g., wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre, (ſo) würde ich zu Hauſe bleiben, *if I were in your place, I should remain at home;* obwohl er Geld hat, (ſo) hat er doch wenig Verſtand, *though he has money, he has little sense;* damit er Ruhe haben könnte, zog er ſich aufs Land zurück, *that he might have peace, he retired into the country.*

1. Observe that this is only a special case under the general rule of inversion (§ 87). The subordinate clause always has the force either of an adverb, an adjective or a substantive; and such an element preceding the verb causes inversion.

a. But the clause may be itself the subject, in which case there is no room for inversion; e. g., daß er recht hat, iſt klar, *that he is right is clear.*

2. The adverbial force of a preceding clause is often resumed by means of an adverb, usually ſo, placed just before the main verb (see the first two examples above). This ſo should not be translated.

READING LESSON: THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Im Brockenhause waren[1] aber eine Menge Gäste versammelt, unter denen ein lebhaftes Gespräch geführt wurde. Viele Späße wurden auf unsre Kosten gemacht, was[2] von uns natürlich nicht übel genommen werden konnte. Bald fühlten wir uns wie zu Hause und wurden eben so lustig wie die anderen. Obwohl wir sehr ermüdet waren, gingen wir erst um 10 Uhr zu Bett. Am folgenden Tage öffneten wir die Augen auf eine neue Welt; die Wolken waren verschwunden, und man konnte meilenweit[3] nach jeder Richtung sehen.

Es wird behauptet, daß über zweihundert Städte und Dörfer vom Brockengipfel gezählt werden können. Wie es nun auch[4] damit sein mag (denn ich habe sie nicht gezählt), war die Aussicht jedenfalls eine herrliche; sie ließ uns fühlen, daß wir aufs schönste[5] für unsre Mühe belohnt waren. Du weißt wohl, daß viele Sagen vom Brocken erzählt werden. Es ist dies nämlich der Ort, wo nach altem Volksglauben das große Jahresfest[6] der Teufel und Hexen gehalten wurde. Sogar heute noch werden ein Hexentanzplatz und dergleichen[7] andere Dinge dem Reisenden gezeigt, aber die Geister sind längst verschwunden. Wenigstens sind keine Teufel oder Hexen von uns gesehen worden.

EXERCISE XXXIX a.

1. Only German is spoken here. 2. The doors are opened at 7 o'clock. 3. The thing is made of wood. 4. Good paper is now made of wood. 5. The child has been found. 6. The missing[8] book is found. 7. The picture was given me[9] by a friend. 8. That[9] can not be helped. 9. I told my story, but I[9] was not believed. 10. The doors will be closed at 11 o'clock. 11. The letter was so badly written that it could not be read. 12. He is esteemed by all who know him. 13. Until now everything that he had written had[10] always been praised. 14. The window can not be opened. 15. The letter is written and is lying on my table. 16. He was seen yesterday evening, but to-day he can not be found.

Vocabulary.

behaupten, *v. w.*, assert,
belohnen, *v. w.*, reward.
fühlen, *v. w.*, feel.
führen, *v. w.*, lead, carry on.
Gaſt, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, guest.
Geſpräch, *n. s. 2*, conversation.
Glaube, *m. mx. (gen. -ns)*, faith, belief, [be-lief].
herrlich, *adj.*, glorious, splendid.
Hexe, *f. w.*, witch.
Koſten, *f. (pl. only)*, *cost.*
laſſen, *v. s.* (ließ, gelaſſen), let, cause.
luſtig, *adj.*, jolly, [lusty]
Meile, *f. w.*, *mile.*
Papier, *n. s. 2*, paper.
Richtung, *f. w.*, direction.
Sage, *f. w.*, tradition, story, [say].
Tanz, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, dance.
Teufel, *m. s. 1*, *devil.*
übel, *adj.*, *adv.*, evil, amiss.
verſammeln, *v. w.*, gather, assemble.
verſchwinden, *v. s.* (verſchwand, verſchwunden, *aux.* ſein), vanish, disappear.
Volk, *n. s. 3*, folk, people.
wenigſtens, *adv.*, at least.
zählen, *v. w.*, count, [tell].

Notes.—[1] **waren . . . . verſammelt**; not the passive. The verb refers not to an action, but to a state, the meaning being *were (already) gathered.*—[2] **was**, *a thing which*, the antecedent being a sentence; see § 141, *a.*—[3] **meilenweit**; *for miles.*—[4] **Wie . . . . auch**, *however*; § 140, 2.—[5] **aufs ſchönſte**, *most beautifully*; § 112, 2.—[6] **Jahresfeſt**, *annual festival*; in allusion to the so-called Walpurgis-Night, supposed to be held annually on the 1st of May.—[7] **dergleichen**; § 132, 2.—[8] **missing**, fehlend.—[9] Use the dative.—[10] **had**, war, directly after **jetzt.**

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

201. Characteristics. A 'reflexive' is a verb that requires a pronominal object referring to the subject. In the third person this object is ſich; in the first and second it is that form of the personal pronoun which corresponds to the subject and is required by the governing power of the verb; e. g., er ſchämt ſich (acc.), *he is ashamed;* er ſchmeichelt ſich (dat.), *he flatters himself;* ich ſchäme mich, *I am ashamed;* ihr ſchmeichelt euch, *ye flatter yourselves.*

1. Reflexive verbs are conjugated with haben and have no passive. The pronoun stands just after the inflected element.

202. **Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb**: ſich freuen, *to enjoy (glad one's self).*

PRESENT.

Indic.	*Subj.*
ich freue mich	freue mich
du freuſt dich	freueſt dich
er freut ſich	freue ſich
wir freuen uns	freuen uns
ihr freut euch	freuet euch
ſie freuen ſich	freuen ſich

PRETERITE.

Indic.: ich freute mich, du freuteſt dich, **etc.**
Subj.: ich freute mich, du freuteſt dich, **etc.**

PERFECT.

Indic.: ich habe mich gefreut, du haſt dich gefreut, **etc.**
Subj.: ich habe mich gefreut, du habeſt dich gefreut, **etc.**

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: ich hatte mich gefreut, du hatteſt dich gefreut, **etc.**
Subj.: ich hätte mich gefreut, du hätteſt dich gefreut, **etc.**)

FUTURE.

Indic.: ich werde mich freuen, du wirſt dich freuen, **etc.**
Subj.: ich werde mich freuen, du werdeſt dich freuen, **etc.**

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: ich werde mich gefreut haben, du wirſt dich gefreut haben, etc.
Subj.: ich werde mich gefreut haben, du werdeſt dich, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present: ich würde mich freuen, du würdeſt dich freuen, etc.
Perfect: ich würde mich gefreut haben, du würdeſt dich, **etc.**

IMPERATIVE.

	freuen wir uns
freue (du) dich	freut (ihr) euch
er freue ſich	freuen ſie ſich

INFINITIVE.

ſich (zu) freuen	ſich gefreut (zu) haben

PARTICIPLE.

ſich freuend	(ſich) gefreut

1. In giving the principal parts of a reflexive verb the pronoun should precede the infinitive, but follow the preterite. With the participle it is best omitted altogether, thus: ſich freuen, freute ſich, gefreut.

203. Reflexive Constructions. Reflexive verbs are regularly intransitive; that is, take no accusative object other than the reflexive pronoun itself; but many of them take a secondary or complementary object in the genitive; e. g., er freut ſich des Lebens, *he enjoys life;* erbarme dich meiner, *have mercy on me.*

1. With other verbs the complementary object is replaced by a prepositional phrase; e. g., er ſehnt ſich nach Ruhe, *he longs for rest;* er fürchtet ſich vor Verrat, *he is afraid of treachery.*

2. Intransitive verbs are often construed with a reflexive object and a factitive predicate; e. g., ſich tot lachen, *to laugh one's self dead;* ſich ſatt eſſen, *to eat one's self full.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

204. Characteristics. An impersonal verb is a verb used in the third person singular to express the verbal idea in a general way without reference to a definite subject. If expressed the subject is es, but es is often omitted.

1. The verbs always used impersonally are not very

numerous. They denote for the most part either operations of nature, as es regnet, *it rains*, or mental and bodily states, as mich dünft, *methinks*. Besides these, however, there is a large number of verbs not ordinarily impersonal which admit freely of impersonal use, as in es geht nicht, *it won't do;* es giebt Leute, *there are people*.

2. Es is apt to be omitted when, under the rules for inversion, it would come after its verb; thus mir ſchwindelt, *I am dizzy*, takes the place of es ſchwindelt mir; so also in the impersonal passive; e. g., am Abend wurde getanzt, *in the evening there was dancing*, instead of es wurde am Abend getanzt.

a. But the omission does not take place with verbs denoting natural phenomena, nor with active verbs not usually impersonal; thus one does not say am Abend regnete, but regnete es, nor mir geht gut, but mir geht es gut.

3. The inflection of an impersonal verb, as such, presents no peculiarities that call for a special paradigm; thus we have from regnen, quite regularly: es regnet, es regnete, es hat geregnet, es wird regnen, etc.

205. Impersonal Constructions. Verbs denoting mental and bodily states are often accompanied by a dative of the person concerned; e. g., dem Vater grauſet, *the father shudders*.

1. Others of these verbs take an accusative object which looks like the subject; as mich ſchläfert, *I am drowsy;* mich dünft, *methinks*.

2. Some transitive verbs are used impersonally with a direct object, giving rise to idioms that cannot be rendered literally; e. g., es hat Gefahr, *there is danger;* es giebt Leute, *there are people;* es gilt das Leben, *it is a matter of life and death*.

3. Intransitive verbs are often used impersonally with a reflexive object, giving rise to idiomatic expressions; as es fragt ſich, *the question arises;* es lohnt ſich der (gen.) Mühe, *it is worth the trouble;* es handelt ſich ums Leben, *it is a question of life*.

4. Such an intransitive reflexive associated with lassen expresses the idea of possibility, e. g., hier läßt sich ruhig [illegible], es läßt sich hoffen, *it may be hoped.*

EXERCISE XL.

DIALOGUE. REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

I.

Wem wo hast du dich amüsiert? Es war äußerst warm im Theater, nicht wahr?

Ja, [illegible]. Ich konnte an nichts denken, — nur mich nach frischer Luft sehnen.

Wir ging es eben so, und doch schienen die meisten der Zuschauer sich in dem Stück zu ergötzen.[1] Es wundert mich, wie es ihnen nur möglich war.

Weißt du, hast du bemerkt, wie die Leute sich über den Zweikampf im dritten Akte freuten[2]?

Ja, aber ich habe die Geschichte überhaupt[3] nicht verstehen können. Worum hat es sich in dem Streite eigentlich gehandelt?

Das weiß ich [illegible] eben. So viel ich sehen konnte, ärgerte sich der Held über gar nichts.

Und der andere Held auch über nichts. Ich glaube, keiner von beiden wußte, warum sie sich schlugen.[4]

Da hast recht [illegible]. — Aber bemerkst du, wie kalt es geworden ist? Ich glaube, es wird regnen.

Es wäre doch schade, wenn wir uns wegen eines solchen Stückes erkälten sollten.

Wir sind gleich bei meiner Wohnung. Warte einen Augenblick, ich werde dir einen Regenschirm holen.

Nein, das lohnt sich nicht der Mühe. Ich habe nicht weit zu gehen und kann mich beeilen.

Also, auf Wiedersehen! Wir haben jedenfalls das Stück gesehen, wovon so viel geredet wird.

II.

How good the fresh air feels, doesn't it?

Yes, indeed. Wasn't it warm in there, though?

I was really ashamed of myself. I could hardly keep[10] awake.

Nor I either,[11] though the others seemed to be enjoying themselves very well.

Oh, to be sure; there are[12] such salamanders, who do not care[13] anything about bad air.

So that is[14] the play that there is so much talk about. Well, I am glad that we have seen it.

I cannot say that. I believe it is going to rain, and I should not like to take cold for such a play.

That would be a pity, to be sure.[15] But the piece is the fashion just now; and when it's a question[16] of fashion, one must put up with things.[17]

Of course,—let one's self be bored[18] in order[19] to be in the fashion. Man[20] is a strange animal.

Vocabulary.

Akt, *m. s. 2, act.*
amüſieren (ſich), *v. w.*, enjoy *(amuse)* one's self.
ärgern (ſich), *v. w.*, be vexed.
bemerken, *v.w.*, notice, re-mark.
drinnen, *adv.*, in there, inside.
ergötzen (ſich), *v.*, delight.
erkälten (ſich), *v. w.*, take cold.
gefallen, *v. s. (gefiel, gefallen, dat.)*, please.
handeln, *v. w.;* es handelt ſich, um, it is a question of.
Held, *m. w.*, hero.
lohnen (ſich), *v. w.*, to be worth while.
quälen (ſich), *v. w.*, be tormented, be bored.
Regenſchirm, *m. s. 2*, umbrella.
regnen, *v. w.*, rain.
Salama'nder, *m. s. 1, salamander.*
ſehnen (ſich), *v. w.*, long.
ſchrecklich, *adj.*, terrible.
Streit, *m. s. 2*, strife, conflict.
Stück, *n. s. 2*, piece, play, [stick].
Tier, *n. s. 2*, animal, [deer].
wach, *adj.*, a-wake.
wie'derſehen, *v. s.*, see again; auf Wiederſehen, good-bye.
wundern, *v. w.*, cause to wonder; mich wundert's, I wonder.
Zuſchauer, *m. s. 1*, spectator.
Zweikampf, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, duel.

Notes.—[1] **ſich ergötzen an** (dat.), *to take pleasure in.*—[2] **ſich freuen über** (acc.), *to be delighted over.* [3] **überhaupt**, *at all, anyway.* [4] **Worum hat es .... gehandelt;** worum = um was. The meaning is: *What*

was the question at issue?—[5] **das fragt ſich eben,** *that is just the question.*—[6] **ſich ſchlagen,** *to fight.*—[7] **gleich,** *directly, in a moment.* The meaning is: *We are close by.*—[8] **How . . . . feels,** wie die friſche Luft einem (§ 14ᶜ. 1) wohl thut.—[9] **Wasn't it . . . . though,** war es doch.—[10] **keep,** bleiben.—[11] **Nor I either,** ich auch nicht.—[12] **there are,** es giebt.—[13] **who do not care anything about,** die ſich gar nicht um . . . . kümmern.—[14] **So that is,** das iſt alſo—[15] **to be sure,** allerdings.—[16] **when it's a question of,** wenn es ſich um . . . . handelt.—[17] **one must up with things,** muß man ſich ſchon etwas gefallen laſſen.—[18] **let one's self be bored,** ſich quälen laſſen; inf. without zu.—[19] **in order to be,** um . . . . zu ſein.—[20] **man, der Menſch.**

COMPOUND VERBS.

206. Separable and Inseparable Compounds. There are two kinds of compound verbs, separable and inseparable. In the latter the particle always precedes the verb and forms one word with it, as verſtehen, *understand;* er verſteht, *he understands.* In the former the particle is liable to be separated from the verb, as auf-zuſtehen, *to rise;* er ſteht früh auf, *he rises early.*

1. In English we have only inseparable composition, as in *beget, forgive, outrun,* none of which can be broken up without changing the meaning; cf. *outrun* with *run out,* etc.

207. Differences in Conjugation. The conjugation of a separable compound differs from that of an inseparable in the following particulars:

1. In the simple tenses of a separable verb, except in the dependent order, the prefix comes at the end of the sentence; e. g., from aufſetzen, *to put on,* er ſetzt den Hut auf, *he puts on his hat.* An inseparable compound, as stated above, is never broken up.

2. The zu of the infinitive comes between the parts of a separable compound, the three being written as one word, as aufzuſtehen; with an inseparable compound zu precedes and is written separately, as zu verſtehen.

3. The ge of the past participle comes between the pre-

fix and the verb in a separable compound, the three elements being here also written as one word; e. g., aufgeſtanden, *risen*. In an inseparable compound ge is omitted entirely; e. g., verſtanden, *understood*.

4. Separable compounds invariably accent the prefix; inseparable compounds the verb; as verſte'hen, verſta'nd, verſta'nden; au'fſtehen, ſtand au'f, au'fgeſtanden.

208. The Inseparable Prefixes. The prefixes which always form inseparable verbs are be, ent (emp), er, ge, ver and zer. These six prefixes are never accented in any part of speech, and are not in use as separate words.

1. Each of these prefixes had originally a definite meaning, and this original meaning is sometimes distinctly discernible in modern German; e. g., er meant *out* and erdenken is *to think out*. In other cases the force of the prefix has blended so closely with that of the verb that it can now be discovered only by the help of historical study (just as in English we have lost all sense of a connection between *have* and *behave*). Sometimes a compound exists with no simple verb corresponding to it; e. g., beginnen, *to begin*. In general the meaning of a compound cannot be told from a knowledge of its parts, but must be learned from the dictionary. The most common and easily discernible meanings of the inseparable prefixes are as follows:

a. **Be**, cognate with *be* in *behave, beget*, etc., forms transitive verbs from intransitives or from nouns and adjectives; e. g., bedenken, *think about, consider*, from denken, *think;* befreien, *set free, liberate*, from frei, *free;* bekümmern, *trouble*, from Kummer, *sorrow*.

b. **Ent**, which sometimes takes the form emp, implies *separation*, sometimes *origin*, e. g., entgehen, *escape, get away from;* entlaſſen, *dismiss, let go away;* entſtehen, *stand forth, arise;* entflammen, *flame out, burst into flames*.

c. **Er** means *forth, out*, often forming transitive verbs of

completed action; thus erſtehen, *stand forth, arise;* erſcheinen, *shine forth, appear;* erdenken, *think out, excogitate;* erfinden, *find out, invent;* erjagen, *hunt down, capture by chasing;* erfragen, *find out by asking.*

d. **Ge** forms numerous compounds in which the meaning of the prefix is not now obvious, and can only be understood by historical study.

e. **Ver**, cognate with *for* in *forgive, forget*, etc., means *out, away, to an end;* e. g., vergehen, *pass away;* verſinken, *sink away;* verbluten, *bleed to death.* Sometimes it means *amiss*, as in verführen, *lead astray;* verkennen, *misjudge.*

f. **Zer** means *asunder, in pieces;* e. g., zerſpringen, *burst asunder;* zerbrechen, *break in pieces.*

209. Conjugation of Inseparable Compounds. This does not differ in principle from the conjugation of a simple verb. The following synopsis of the inflection of bekommen, *to get*, conjugated with haben, and verreiſen, *to depart*, conjugated with ſein, will suffice for illustration.

PRESENT.

Indic.: ich bekomme, du bekommſt, etc.; ich verreiſe, du verreiſeſt, etc.

Subj.: ich bekomme, du bekommeſt, etc.; ich verreiſe, du verreiſeſt, etc.

PRETERITE.

Indic.: ich bekam, du bekamſt, etc.; ich verreiſte, du verreiſteſt, etc.

Subj.: ich bekäme, du bekämeſt, etc.; ich verreiſte, du verreiſteſt, etc.

PERFECT.

Indic.: ich habe bekommen, du haſt bekommen, etc.; ich bin verreiſt, du biſt verreiſt, etc.

Subj.: ich habe bekommen, du habeſt bekommen, etc.; ich ſei verreiſt, du ſeieſt verreiſt, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: ich hatte bekommen, du hatteſt bekommen, etc.; ich war verreiſt, du warſt verreiſt, etc.

Subj.: ich hätte bekommen, du hätteſt bekommen, etc.; ich wäre verreiſt, du wäreſt verreiſt, etc.

FUTURE.

Indic.: ich werde bekommen, du wirſt bekommen, etc.; ich werde verreiſen, du wirſt verreiſen, etc.

Subj.: ich werde bekommen, du werdeſt bekommen, etc.; ich werde verreiſen, du werdeſt verreiſen, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: ich werde bekommen haben, du wirſt bekommen haben, etc.; ich werde verreiſt ſein, du wirſt verreiſt ſein, etc.

Subj.: ich werde bekommen haben, du werdeſt bekommen haben, etc.; ich werde verreiſt ſein, du werdeſt verreiſt ſein, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Pres.: ich würde bekommen, ich würde verreiſen, etc.

Perf.: ich würde bekommen haben, etc.; ich würde verreiſt ſein, etc.

(And so on. The remaining forms can easily be supplied.)

1. Observe that the perfect participle of a ge-compound may be like that of the simple verb. It can only be told from the connection whether such a form as gehört comes from hören, *to hear*, or from gehören, *to belong to*. There are many such cases.

210. The Separable Prefixes. These are much more numerous than the inseparable. The list embraces (1) a dozen or more common prepositions, as aus, mit, über; (2) a like number of adverbs of position and direction, such as ab, *off*, empor, *up*, zuſammen, *together;* (3) the particles her, *toward*, and hin, *away from*, together with their very numerous compounds.

1. The separable prefixes are simply adverbs which in

certain forms are written with the verb they modify as one word. The German says *come in*, kommen Sie herein, or *he went away*, er ging fort, just as English does; the difference is that English recognizes no such verbs as *into-come*, *awaytogo*, corresponding to hereinzukommen and fortzugehen.

2. The particles her and hin require special attention. Her means *toward* the speaker, or the speaker's point of view; hin is its opposite. Thus kommen Sie her, *come here;* wo gehen Sie hin? *where are you going?* kommen Sie herauf, *come up* (the speaker is above); gehen Sie hinauf, *go up* (the speaker is below); er ſchwamm zu mir herüber, *he swam across to me;* er ſchwamm hinüber, *he swam across* (to the other side). But the speaker may take the actor's point of view without reference to his own; thus er blickte hinauf, *he looked up* (from where he stood); er zog das Kind zu ſich herauf, *he drew the child up to him.*

211. Conjugation of Separable Compounds: a'nfangen, *to begin;* a'breiſen, *to depart.* Principal parts: a'nfangen, fing an, a'ngefangen; a'breiſen, reiſte ab, a'bgereiſt.

PRESENT.

Indic.: ich fange an, du fängſt an, etc.; ich reiſe ab, du reiſeſt ab, etc.

Subj.: ich fange an, du fangeſt an, etc.; ich reiſe ab, du reiſeſt ab, etc.

PRETERITE.

Indic.: ich fing an, du fingſt an, etc.; ich reiſte ab, du reiſteſt ab, etc.

Subj.: ich finge an, du fingeſt an, etc.; ich reiſte ab, du reiſteſt ab, etc.

PERFECT.

Indic.: ich habe angefangen, du haſt angefangen, etc.; ich bin abgereiſt, du biſt abgereiſt, etc.

Subj.: ich habe angefangen, du habeſt angefangen, etc.; ich ſei abgereiſt, du ſeieſt abgereiſt, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: ich hatte angefangen, du hatteſt angefangen, etc.; ich war abgereiſt, du warſt abgereiſt, etc.

Subj.: ich hätte angefangen, du hätteſt angefangen, etc.; ich wäre abgereiſt, du wäreſt abgereiſt, etc.

FUTURE.

Indic.: ich werde anfangen, du wirſt anfangen, etc.; ich werde abreiſen, du wirſt abreiſen, etc.

Subj.: ich werde anfangen, du werdeſt anfangen, etc.; ich werde abreiſen, du werdeſt abreiſen, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: ich werde angefangen haben, du wirſt angefangen haben, etc.; ich werde abgereiſt ſein, du wirſt abgereiſt ſein, etc.

Subj.: ich werde angefangen haben, du werdeſt angefangen haben, etc.; ich werde abgereiſt ſein, du werdeſt abgereiſt ſein, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present: ich würde anfangen, du würdeſt anfangen, etc.; ich würde abreiſen, du würdeſt abreiſen, etc.

Perfect: ich würde angefangen haben, du würdeſt angefangen haben, etc.; ich würde abgereiſt ſein, du würdeſt abgereiſt ſein, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

fange (du) an, etc.; reiſe (du) ab, etc.

INFINITIVE.

Present: an(zu)fangen, ab(zu)reiſen.

Perfect: angefangen (zu) haben, abgereiſt (zu) ſein.

PARTICIPLE.

Present: anfangend, abreiſend.

Perfect: angefangen, abgereiſt.

212. Doubtful Prefixes. The four prepositions durch, über, um, unter and the adverb wieder enter into composition sometimes as separable, sometimes as inseparable prefixes; thus we have du'rchleſen (las durch, du'rchgeleſen), *to read through (thoroughly)*, and durchle'ſen

(durchla'ſs, durchle'ſen), *to peruse;* ü'berſetzen (ſetzte über, ü'bergeſetzt), *to cross*, and überſe'tzen (überſe'tzte, überſe'tzt), *to translate.*

1. To this list are sometimes added the prepositions hinter, *behind*, and wider, *against*, but the compounds of these are in reality always inseparable. The reason for not giving them under § 208 is that they belong to the class of prepositions and in noun-compounds can bear the accent; e. g., Hi'nterhalt, *ambuscade;* Wi'derſpruch, *contradiction* (but hinterha'lten, *hold back*, and widerſpre'chen, *contradict).*

2. The prefixes miß, *amiss, wrongly*, and voll, *fully*, are regularly inseparable; e. g., mißha'ndeln, *to maltreat*, miß-ha'ndelte, mißha'ndelt; vollfü'hren, *to complete*, vollfü'hrte, vollfü'hrt. But miß is sometimes treated as separable in the infinitive and participle (mi'ßzuhandeln, mi'ßgehandelt). Formations like gemi'ßhandelt, as if the verb were not compounded at all, also occur. Voll is separable only when used as an adjective in the literal sense; e. g., er goß das Glas voll, *he poured the glass full.*

213. Composition with Nouns and Adjectives. There are not a few cases in which a noun or adjective or adverbial phrase, from constant association with a verb, has come to form a compound with it; e. g., tei'lnehmen, *to take part;* wa'hrſagen, *to prophesy;* aus-eina'nderſetzen, *to explain.*

1. Compounds of this kind are treated in one of two ways, viz.: either the first element is regarded as a separable prefix (a noun losing its initial capital), or else it forms with the verb a new verb-stem which has regular weak inflection. Thus from teilnehmen we have nahm teil, teilgenommen, but from wahrſagen, wahrſagte, gewahrſagt.

214. Verbs Doubly Compounded. An inseparable compound may be still further compounded with a separ-

able prefix; e. g., bei'behalten (behielt bei, beibehalten), *to retain.* Such formations omit ge in the participle, since two unaccented prefixes are never permitted to come together.

1. The only prefix that ever precedes a verb already separably compounded is wieder, as in wiederhe'rſtellen, *to restore.* The preterite is written ſtellte wieder her, the participle wiederhe'rgeſtellt.

EXERCISE XLI

READING LESSON: COMPOUND VERBS.

215. Rule of Order VIII: Separable Compounds. In the simple tenses of a separable compound the prefix comes last if the order is normal or inverted, but next to the last (being then written with the verb as one word) if the order is dependent; e. g., das Konzert fängt um 8 Uhr an, *the concert begins at 8 o'clock;* wenn das Konzert um 8 Uhr anfängt, *if the concert begins at 8 o'clock;* da die Geſellſchaft ihm nicht mehr zuſagte, kehrte er nach der Stadt zurück, *as the company no longer suited him he returned to the city.*

Lieber Herr Müller! Ihr freundlicher Brief vom 15. dieſes Monats iſt kürzlich hier angekommen, und ich ſpreche Ihnen dafür meinen herzlichſten Dank aus.

Sie fragen, wo ich mich in der nächſten Zeit[1] aufhalten werde, und ob ich meine Studien in Deutſchland noch weiter fortzuſetzen gedenke. Nun, beide Fragen ſind ſchwer zu beantworten,[2] denn alles kommt[3] auf die Wünſche meiner Eltern an. Ich habe das deutſche Leben liebgewonnen und würde ſehr gern noch einige Monate hier verweilen; aber mein Vater iſt, wie Sie wiſſen, kein reicher Mann, und es ſollen[4] jetzt ſchwere Zeiten über Amerika hereingebrochen ſein. Mit jeder Poſt erwarte ich einen Brief von ihm, worin er mir, wie ich hoffe, ſeine Lage genau auseinanderſetzen wird, und ich werde mich dann natürlich ſeinen Wünſchen unterwerfen.

Da ich vielleicht bald werde abreiſen müſſen, habe ich indeſſen die Rolle des Reiſenden wieder aufgenommen. Gerade jetzt halte ich mich auf einige Zeit in Köln auf. Das Intereſſanteſte, was dieſe Stadt darbietet, iſt natürlich der große Dom, deſſen Bau ſchon im 13. Jahrhundert angefangen, dann wieder mehrmals unterbrochen und erſt 1880 vollendet wurde. Der Dom macht auf mich bei wiederholtem Beſuche[5] einen ſtets gewaltigeren Eindruck; aber ich werde mich auf keine Beſchreibung deſſelben einlaſſen, da ich Ihnen gewiß nichts Neues mitteilen könnte.

EXERCISE XLI a.

1. The train arrives at 5 o'clock p.m. 2. The performance began at 7 o'clock. 3. The performance has already begun. 4. The train has not yet arrived. 5. We stayed two days in the little village and then continued[6] our journey. 6. I explained the situation to him[7] and told him[7] the latest[8] news. 7. The conversation was interrupted, but we resumed it the following day. 8. I subjected the idea to a thorough test.[7] 9. Where do you intend to stay during the summer? 10. I have just answered the letter and expressed my thanks. 11. The picture represents a young man who is just departing for the Old World. 12. How long shall you stay in the city? 13. We arrived toward[9] evening, but our friends had already departed. 14. He repeated his thanks. 15. We had tarried too long on the way; the performance had already begun and the doors were closed.

Vocabulary.

Note.—Separable composition will be indicated by an accent; inseparable only where it might be doubtful. For principal parts see § 331.

a'breiſen (ſein), *v. w.*, depart.
a'nkommen (ſein), *v. s.*, arrive.
au'fhalten (ſich), *v. s.*, stay.
au'seina'nderſe'tzen, *v. w.*, explain.
au's'ſprechen, *v. s.*, express.
Bau, *m. s. 2*, building.
beantworten, *v. w.*, answer.
Beſuch, *m. s. 2*, visit.
Dank, *m. s. (no pl.)*, thanks.

da'rbieten, *v. s.*, offer.
Dom, *m. s. 2*, cathedral, *dome*.
Eindruck, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, impression.
ei'nlaſſen, *v. s.*, with ſich, enter upon, go into.
fo'rtſetzen, *v. w.*, continue.
gedenken, *v. w.*, intend.
gewaltig, *adj.*, powerful.
herei'nbrechen, *v. s.*, set in.
inde'ſſen, *adv.*, meanwhile.
Jahrhu'ndert, *n. s. 2*, century.
lie'bgewinnen, *v. s.*, grow, fond of.
mi'tteilen, *v. w.*, impart, tell.
Poſt, *f. w.*, mail, *post*.
unterbre'chen, *v. s.*, interrupt.
unterwe'rfen, *v. s.*, subject.
verweilen, *v. w.*, tarry.
wiederaufnehmen, *v. s.*, resume.
wiederho'len, *v. w.*, repeat.
Wunſch, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, wish.

NOTES.—[1] **in der nächſten Zeit**, *in the near future*.—[2] **beantworten**; the construction requires a transitive verb, whence antworten, which is not transitive, could not be used.—[3] **kommt . . . . auf . . . . an**; ankommen auf (with acc.) = *to depend upon*.—[4] **es ſollen**, *are said, it is said that* (191, 5).—[5] **bei wiederholtem Beſuche**, *with (each) repeated visit*.—[6] **and then continued**, und ſetzten dann, not dann ſetzten.—[7] Use the dat.—[8] **the latest**, die neueſten.—[9] **toward**, gegen.

THE PARTICLES.*

216. The Adverb. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives and other adverbs. As in English, an adverb may also be connected directly with a noun, or may stand alone in the predicate; e. g., der Mann dort, *the man yonder;* die Zeit iſt um, *the time is up*.

1. Some adverbs, e. g. wohl, bald, are primitive words used only as adverbs; others, e. g., auf, um, are primitive words used also as prepositions; still others are formed by means of a suffix; e. g., freilich, *to be sure*, from frei; blindlings, *blindly*, from blind. Others, again, are case-

* Only a brief and general account of the uninflected parts of speech is given here, all details being reserved for Part II. Since particles of every kind have been freely introduced in the preceding reading lessons and colloquies, it is to be presumed that the essential facts relating to them are already pretty well understood.

forms of nouns, with or without a modifier; e. g., teils, *partly*, from Teil; großenteils, *in great part;* i. e., großen Teils.

a. But the great mass of adverbs are simply adjectives used in the stem-form; e. g., gut, *well;* frei, *freely.* There is thus no need of a suffix, like *ly* in English, having the special function of forming adverbs from adjectives.

2. An adjective used as an adverb is usually capable of comparison, the comparative ending in er, the superlative being the phrase with am or with aufs (§ 112); thus the adverb gut compares gut, beſſer, am beſten.

a. Adverbs which are not used as adjectives are, in general, not subject to comparison; but there are a few exceptions.

217. The Preposition. Prepositions govern cases, thus forming phrases that have adverbial or adjectival force. There are eight prepositions that always govern the accusative, sixteen that always govern the dative, and nine that govern the accusative or dative with difference of meaning. There are then some thirty or more that regularly govern the genitive, though some of them may take the dative without difference of meaning. For lists see § 376-7.

1. The prepositions that govern the dative and accusative take the latter case when motion is implied and the phrase answers the question 'whither'? If no motion is implied, and the phrase answers the question 'where'? they take the dative; e. g., er geht ans Fenſter, *he goes to the window;* but er ſteht am Fenſter, *he stands by the window.*

a. There are, however, some cases not provided for by this rule; e. g., über in the sense of *concerning* (neither

rest nor motion being implied) always takes the accusative. For fuller information consult the list in Part II.

2. A preposition, as its name implies, regularly comes before the noun it governs, but there are a few that may come after; e. g., one may say meiner Anſicht nach, or nach meiner Anſicht, *in my opinion.*

3. The three prepositions um, in the sense of *in order* (to denote purpose), ohne, *without,* and ſtatt (or anſtatt), *instead,* may govern the infinitive.

218. The Conjunction. Conjunctions connect sentences. They are divided into three classes, as follows, the classification being of great importance on account of its bearing upon the subject of word-order:

1. The general connectives, which do not subordinate the sentence nor modify adverbially the following verb. They are und, *and;* aber (also allein and ſondern, all meaning *but);* denn, *for,* and oder, *or.* These words do not affect the order.

2. The adverbial conjunctions, which, coming first in a clause, combine the functions of a connective (conjunction) and adverbial modifier. They are very numerous. Examples are alſo, *so, accordingly;* nun, *now;* doch, *but, still;* darauf, *thereupon.* These words cause inversion; e. g., er iſt reich, doch hat er wenig Verſtand, *he is rich, but he has little sense.*

a. The words of this class are strictly adverbs and not conjunctions at all, but they partake of the nature of conjunctions in that they show the logical connection of sentences. They do not always come first in the clause, and when they do not they cause no inversion.

3. The subordinating conjunctions, which subordinate the sentence they introduce and require the dependent order. These are also quite numerous, examples being daß, *that;* ob, *whether;* da, *since;* wenn, *if;* obgleich, *although.* For a list see § 381

219. The Interjection. Interjections do not enter into the syntactical structure of the sentence, but are independent expressions of feeling. They are usually classified according to the emotions they express, as joy, pain, surprise or the like.

1. But certain interjections are sometimes accompanied by a case-form of a noun; e. g., o des Elends! *oh, the misery!*

EXERCISE XLII.

Reading Lesson: An Anecdote.

Es trug sich einmal zu, daß die Frau eines armen Schusters gefährlich erkrankte. Der Mann hatte nichts, womit er einen Arzt bezahlen konnte, und befand sich daher in großer Not. Er kannte zwar einen geschickten Arzt, der in einem schönen Hause ihm gegenüber[1] wohnte, aber er wußte, daß dieser ein großes Honorar verlangen würde. Lang und traurig überlegte er die Sache bei sich und kam endlich auf folgenden Gedanken.

Er ging nämlich zu dem Arzte hinüber, setzte ihm den Fall auseinander und bat ihn, seine Frau zu besuchen. „Haben Sie denn etwas, um mich zu bezahlen?" fragte der Arzt. „Leider nicht viel," antwortete der Schuster; „ich habe nur zwanzig Thaler,[2] die ich gerade auf einen solchen Krankheitsfall wie diesen[3] aufgespart habe." (Das war nun erlogen, aber, wie der arme Mann dachte, galt es das Leben seiner Frau.) „Es ist alles, was ich in der Welt besitze, und diese Summe biete ich Ihnen an, wenn Sie meine Frau kurieren." „Und wenn ich sie nicht kuriere?" versetzte der Doktor. „Nun, wenn Sie sich ihrer annehmen wollen," erwiderte der Schuster, „so gebe ich Ihnen das Geld, gleichviel ob Sie sie kurieren oder umbringen."

Der Doktor war jetzt zufrieden und unternahm die Behandlung der Kranken, die aber endlich dem Tode verfiel. Bald darauf verlangte er die zwanzig Thaler. „Haben Sie meine Frau kuriert?" fragte der Schuster. „Leider nicht," antwortete der Doktor. „Und haben Sie sie denn umgebracht?" fuhr jener fort.

Der Doktor mußte natürlich behaupten, daß er sie auch nicht umgebracht habe.[4] „Also bin ich Ihnen doch wohl nichts schuldig," sagte der Schuster, und damit war das Geschäft abgeschlossen.

Vocabulary.

a'bschließen, *v. s.*, close up.
a'nbieten, *v. s.*, offer.
a'nnehmen (sich, *gen.*), *v. s.*, interest one's self in, take charge of.
au'fsparen, *v. w.*, save up, [spare].
Behandlung, *f. w.*, treatment.
besitzen, *v. s.*, possess.
bezahlen, *v. w.*, pay.
dahe'r, *adv.*, therefore.
erkranken, *v. w.*, sicken, be taken sick.
erlügen, *v. s.*, invent falsely, [-lie].
erwidern, *v. w.*, reply.
fo'rtfahren, *v. s.*, continue.
gegenü'ber, *prep. (dat.)*, opposite.
gelten, *v. s.*, have at stake, involve.
geschickt, *adj.*, skillful.
gleichvie'l, *adv.*, no matter, just the same.
hinü'bergehen, *v. s.*, go over.
Honora'r, *n. s. 2*, fee.
kurieren, *v. w.*, *cure*.
Not, *f. s. 2*, need, distress.
schuldig, *adj.*, indebted.
Schuster, *m. s. 1*, cobbler.
Thaler, *m. s. 1*, thaler, dollar.
traurig, *adj.*, sad, sorrowful.
überle'gen, *v. w.*, ponder, consider.
u'mbringen, *v. w.*, kill.
unterne'hmen, *v. s.*, undertake.
verfallen, *v. s.*, fall a prey.
versetzen, *v. w.*, answer.
zu'tragen (sich), *v. s.*, happen,

Notes.—[1] **ihm gegenüber**; see § 217, 2.—[2] **Thaler**; Eng. *dollar* is not cognate with Ger. Thaler, but derived from it. The Thaler has had very different values, but may be thought of here as about = $0.75.—[3] **wie diesen**; in apposition with Krankheitsfall. But dieser, *i. e.*, wie dieser es ist, would also be correct.—[4] **umgebracht habe**; subjunctive of indirect discourse. An indirect statement generally keeps in German the *tense* that would be used in the direct form, but employs the subjunctive *mode*. The doctor would say in the direct form: ich habe sie auch nicht umgebracht. The pret. of bringen is brachte (§ 178).

PART SECOND.

PRELIMINARY.

220. Historical Development of German. Although this grammar deals only with modern literary German, it will be necessary to refer now and then to older and to dialectic usages ; for which reason the following brief statements are made at this point :

1. The earliest stage of the German language, as seen in those literary records that antedate the 12th century, is known as 'Old' German *(Altdeutsch)*. The Old German of South Germany is further known as 'High' *(Althochdeutsch)*, that of North Germany as 'Low' *(Altniederdeutsch)*.

2. The second stage, as seen in those writings that date from the period 1100–1500, is known as 'Middle' German, the qualifications 'High' and 'Low' *(Mittelhochdeutsch, Mittelniederdeutsch)* having the same meaning as before.

3. 'Modern' German *(Neuhochdeutsch)* is usually dated from the time of Martin Luther (1483–1546). Through the momentum of the Reformation and the force of Luther's genius the language in which he wrote gradually developed into the standard literary language of all Germany. In the 18th century this language entered upon a new stage through the influence of the great classical writers. Their language is that of to-day, except in some minor details, while that of Luther is highly archaic.

a. This book deals, then, with late modern German—say the language of the last one hundred and fifty years. For the earlier period; consult Grimm's *Deutsche Grammatik*, 1822 40, 4 vols.; of later and smaller works, Braune's *Althochdeutsche Grammatik*, Paul's *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, Kluge's *Von Luther bis Lessing*, Blatz's *Neuhochdeutsche Grammatik* mit Berücksichtigung, etc., and Brandt's *German Grammar*.

221. The Literary Language and the Dialects. From the time of Luther the literary language *(Schriftsprache)* has developed side by side with the dialects, influencing them and influenced by them. It is now the language of books and journals, of schools and courts, and of social intercourse among the educated. But the dialects, often referred to, both individually and collectively, as the *Volkssprache*, are still used by a large portion of the population.

1. Owing to the fact that the *Schriftsprache* was not originally and has never since become identical with the dialect of any one locality, but has been developed and enriched by writers from all parts of Germany, who have drawn more or less upon the resources of their provincial vernacular, it is not now possible to distinguish sharply in all cases between that which is standard German and that which is dialect.

2. The rules of grammar as presented in the following pages must be understood as referring primarily to literary prose. Poetry, subject as it is to the constraints of rhythm, presents frequent deviations from normal linguistic usage. Again, prose itself may be, like poetry, either stately and dignified, or quaint and archaic, or it may reflect the free-and-easy language of common life. The most of the deviations from normal usage, so far as they are not simply improprieties, are either poetic, dialectic, archaic or colloquial.

a. An excellent historical treatise upon the relation of literary German to the dialects is Socin's *Schriftsprache und Dialekte*.

222. Usage and Correctness. Good German is that which is used by good writers and speakers. There is no court of appeal higher than firmly established usage. The chief function of the grammarian, therefore, is to describe and explain the facts as they are.

1. At the same time every language has its laws, its principles, its historical tendencies ; and that which is contrary to any of these may properly be put under the ban by the grammarian and pronounced 'incorrect' or 'bad'—at least until the bad has prevailed and thereby become good. Thus grammar may furnish a criterion by which to judge conflicting usages or new inventions that have not yet been generally adopted. It is well to remember, however, that the most of the usages condemned as bad can be found in good literature. The classics teem with 'mistakes' that defy the grammarians.

a. On the relation between the facts of usage and the dogmas of grammar consult Andresen's *Sprachgebrauch und Sprachrichtigkeit im Deutschen,* Keller's *Deutscher Antibarbarus,* Wustmann's *Allerhand Sprachdummheiten.*

THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

223. The Contractions of der with a preceding word grow out of its lack of stress. The forms that suffer apheresis and unite with a preceding preposition are (de)m, (da)s and (de)r, before which an, in and von lose their n.

1. The usual contractions are am, beim, im, vom, zum, zur (the only one with der), ans, aufs, durchs, fürs, ins and ums. Less common are the dissyllabic forms außerm, hinterm, überm, unterm, hinters, übers, unters. All are best written without an apostrophe.

2. In familiar language the contractions are preferred to the full forms, except when der has determinative or particularizing force ; e. g., im Glauben feſt, *firm in (the)*

faith ; but feſt in dem Glauben, daß der Menſch unſterblich ſei, *in the faith that man is immortal ;* am Ufer des Rheins, *on the banks of the Rhine ;* but an dem Ufer, wo der Wein wächſt, *on the bank where the wine grows.* Even in such cases contraction may occur ; e. g., vom Rechte, das mit uns geboren iſt, *of the right that is born with us* (G.).

3. Contractions with a dissyllabic preposition, also with den (both acc. and dat.) and others not mentioned above, are common in talk ; e. g., untern Bäumen ; wider's Recht ; aufm Berg ; mitm Vater ; durchn Wald ; durchs (= durch des) Feindes Lager.

4. The written forms an, in, sometimes stand for an'n, in'n, i. e., an den, in den ; e. g., ſetz' dich in Seſſel, *seat yourself in the settle* (G.) ; ihr warft ſie dem Feind an Kopf, *at the head of the trooper* (G.). In such cases there is no omission of the article, the n being pronounced long.

5. The shortened article may attach itself to other parts of speech than prepositions ; e. g., hab' ich ihm 's (= das) Bad geſegnet, *blessed the bath for him* (S.) ; ich will gleich's Eſſen zurecht machen, *I will get breakfast at once* (G.) ; er ſoll'n Vater rufen, *he is to call father* (Gr.).

224. Omission of der. As is noted in § 129, 1, the definite article is a weakened demonstrative. Its usual function is to mark a noun as definite or known. When the noun is not definite, or when its definiteness is shown in some other way, e. g., by its meaning (as in the case of proper names), or by some modifier, or by the general connection, der is not ordinarily used, the noun having either ein or no article at all.

1. To a great extent, therefore, the use and the omission of der coincide closely with the use and omission of *the* in English. Thus der is regularly omitted with a noun limited by a preceding genitive or possessive ; e. g., des Landes Wohl, *the land's welfare,* but das Wohl des Landes, *the welfare of the land ;* der Güter höchſtes, *the highest of blessings.*

a. In such case the limiting genitive itself must have the article, but exceptions occur in poetry ; e. g., um Grabes Nacht, *about the night of the grave* (G.) ; wandelt an Ufers Grün, *on the green of the shore* (S.).

2. Again, both languages often omit the definite article in set phrases consisting of two nouns connected by *and*, or where there is an enumeration of objects belonging to the same category ; e. g., über Stock und Stein, *over stock and stone ;* durch Gebirg und Thal, *through mountain and dale ;* vergeht mir Hören, Sehn und Denken, *hearing, seeing and thinking forsake me* (G.).

3. In other cases, however, the idiom of the two languages does not correspond, der being omitted where English employs *the*. Thus :

a. In certain prepositional phrases ; e. g., gen Osten, *toward the east ;* nach Süden, *toward the south ;* nach alter Weise, *in the old way.* For the converse of these cases see § 229.

b. Before certain words of formal or technical reference ; e. g., folgender Bericht, *the following report ;* gedachter Umstand, *the above-mentioned circumstance.* So also Überbringer, *the bearer ;* Inhaber, *the holder ;* Unterzeichnet, *the undersigned ;* erst, *the former ;* letzt, *the latter ;* obig, *the above ;* besagt, erwähnt, obgemeldet, *the aforesaid,* and others.

c. In the predicate sometimes before Sache, *affair,* Grund, *ground,* Veranlassung, *occasion,* and some others ; e. g., Geben ist Sache des Reichen, *giving is the affair of the rich* (G.) ; (der) Grund dieser Annahme ist folgender, *the ground of this assumption is the following.*

225. Der with Proper Names. The rule is, as in English : No article unless the name is preceded by an adjective ; e. g., im Jahre 1770 ging Goethe nach Straßburg, wo er Herder kennen lernte, *in the year 1770 Goethe went to Strassburg, where he became acquainted with Herder.* But one would say der junge Goethe, nach dem damals französischen Straßburg, etc.

a. Such phrases as *little Karl, old Fritz, young Germany, Brown Bess,* need the article in German ; thus, der kleine Karl ; der alte Fritz ; das junge Deutschland ; die braune Liesel. But jung Siegfried, klein Roland, and the like (with uninflected adjective), occur in songs.

1. But a 'familiar' der often stands before the names of friends, neighbors, acquaintances, etc.; e. g., da iſt der Tell, *there is Tell* (S.); wer iſt der Weislingen? *who is Weislingen* (G.)? The usage is common in the classics where the speakers belong to the common people.

a. The use of der before Christian names (except where it is needed to show case) is South-German; e. g., der Wilhelm (die Bertha) iſt nicht zu Hauſe, *Wilhelm (Bertha) is not at home.* Here the North-German prefers to omit the article, though he may use it to show case, as in ich gab es dem Wilhelm (der Bertha).

2. So also der is used before the names of well-known historical and fictitious characters, especially with the oblique cases of names that are not inflected; e. g., kennſt du den Fauſt? *knowest thou Faust* (G.)? die Gedichte des Horaz, *the poems of Horace;* er ſpielt gern den Hamlet, *likes to play Hamlet;* ich ziehe Wagner dem Beethoven vor, *I prefer Wagner to Beethoven.*

a. The converse of this process (treating a well-known proper name as a common noun) is seen when a common noun, losing its article, becomes, as it were, a proper noun; e. g., Knabe ſprach: ich breche dich; Röslein ſprach: ich ſteche dich; *boy said: I'll pluck thee; little rose said: I'll prick thee* (G.); Morgenſtund hat Gold im Mund, *morning hour has gold in its mouth.* So also in stage directions; e. g., Fiſcherknabe fährt in einem Kahn, *(the) fisherboy is rowing a boat* (S.).

b. Proper names used appellatively take an article, as in English; e. g., die Venus von Milo, *the Venus of Milo;* die Shakespeare und die Goethe erſcheinen nicht oft, *the Shakespeares and the Goethes do not appear often.*

3. Names of countries that are feminine, and a few that are not, take the article. Such are:

das (or der) Elſaß, *Alsatia.*
die Krim, *the Crimea.*
die Lauſitz, *Lusatia.*
die Levante, *the Levant.*
die Moldau, *Moldavia.*
die Pfalz, *the Palatinate.*
die Schweiz, *Switzerland.*
die Tartarei, *Tartary.*
die Türkei, *Turkey.*
die Walachei, *Walachia.*

and others in ei. So also der Breisgau, *the Breisgau,* and others in gau; die Neumark, *the Neumark,* and others in mark; die Wetterau,

the Wetterau, and others in au ; das Vogtland, *the Vogtland*, die Niederlande, *the Netherlands*, and others in land, lande. For das Tirol, (*the*) *Tirol*, heard among the people, the simple Tirol is better.

a. Of names of cities only der Haag, *the Hague*, has the article.

b. Names of mountains take the article, even those that are without it in English ; e. g., der Sinai, *Mt. Sinai ;* der Vesuv, *Mt. Vesuvius*.

4. Names of seasons, months, days of the week and streets take the article ; e. g., der Sommer ist hin, *summer is past* (S.) ; in des Maies holden Tagen, *in the lovely days of May* (U.) ; am Mittwoch, *on Wednesday ;* in der Friedrichstraße, *on Friedrich Street.*

a. But the names of the months omit der in phrases giving the time of the month ; e. g., Anfang März, *at the beginning of March ;* Ende April, *at the end of April ;* am 6ten Juni, *on the 6th of June.*

226. The Generic Article. With abstract nouns, nouns of material and of class, verbals in en and some others, der is used whenever the word is taken in a general and not in any specific or concrete sense ; e. g., es lebe die Freiheit ! es lebe der Wein ! *long live freedom ! long live wine* (G.) ! die Kunst ist lang, das Leben kurz, *art is long, life short* (G.) ; der Mensch ist aufs nächste mit den Tieren verwandt, *man is most closely related to animals* (G.) ; hoch über der Zeit und dem Raume, *high above time and space* (S.) ; das Schaudern ist der Menschheit bestes Teil, *feeling the thrill of awe is the best part of human nature* (G.).

1. But real and apparent exceptions to this rule are common, especially in poetry. When the article is omitted it will usually be found that the noun is not used in a perfectly general way, but perhaps partitively, to denote *some of* the quality or substance. Or it may characterize an individual or a situation, and so lose its generic quality. Or the omission may be in the interest of conciseness ; e. g., das Tier hat auch Vernunft, *the brute has reason too* (S.) ; was hilft euch Schönheit? *of what use to you is beauty* (G.) ? Dasein ist Pflicht, *existence is duty* (G.).

227. Der for a Possessive. Der may take the place of a possessive when the connection shows clearly who the possessor is. The usage occurs mostly in referring to a part of the body or clothing; e. g., er ſetzt die Schale an den Mund, *he puts the cup to his mouth* (G.); hatte Bänder auf dem Kleide, *had ribbons on his coat* (G.).

a. Where the possessor is denoted by a dat. of interest (§ 259), the dat. together with the article is equivalent to the English possessive; e. g., der Kerl ſprengt mir die Ohren, *is splitting my ears* (G.); wenn ſie dir in die Augen ſehn, *when they look into your eyes* (G.); er zerbricht ſich den Kopf, *he cudgels his brain.*

1. Very often, however, the possessive will be found in such cases, just as in English; e. g., mein armer Kopf iſt mir verrückt, *my poor head is crazed* (G.). Sometimes the meter will govern the choice; e. g., in jeden Quark begräbt er ſeine Naſe, *buries his nose in every pile of filth* (G.).

2. The use of der before Vater, Mutter, Schweſter, Vetter, etc., is South-German, but very common in the classics; e. g., das muß Sie nicht der Mutter ſagen, *you must not tell your mother that* (G.). The North-German prefers a possessive, as in English. A possessive should always be used when it would not otherwise be clear whose father, sister, lover, etc., is meant.

228. The Distributive der occurs (chiefly in expressions of price) with the sense of *a, an, per;* e. g., es koſtet zwei Mark das Pfund, *it costs two marks a pound.* So also one may say dreimal die Woche (or in der Woche, or wöchentlich), *three times a week.*

229. Prepositional Phrases—a highly idiomatic element of every language—present numerous peculiarities in the use of the article which must be learned by observation. The following examples will illustrate: in die Kirche gehen, *to go to church;* in die Schule gehen, *to go to school;* auf der Schule, *at school;* in der Schule, *in school;* zum Beiſpiel, *for example;* zum Teil, *in part;* eine zur Frau nehmen, *to take one to wife, for a wife;* einen zum Präſidenten wählen, *to elect one president;* im Himmel, *in heaven* (but *in*

the sky); in der Hölle, *in hell;* zur Hölle, *to hell;* im Paradiese, *in paradise;* zur Gesundheit! *here's to your health!* zur glücklichen Reise! *here's to a pleasant journey!*

230. The Use of ein. The indefinite article is the numeral ein weakened by loss of stress. It precedes all other modifiers of its noun except welch, was für and solch, and it *may* precede solch (§ 135, 1)

1. In talk the forms of ein often suffer apheresis of ei or even of the entire syllable ein; e. g., die stellen klug 'ne (= eine) Vorhut aus, *put out a picket* (S.); du bist 'n (= ein) braver Knabe, *a good boy:* es war mal (= einmal) ein Kaiser, *there was once an emperor.*

2. The use of ein corresponds in the main very closely to that of *a, an* (but see §§ 228, 229, 231). Thus, just as in English, it may go with an abstract noun or a noun of material to denote a particular case or a concrete object; e. g., eine Freude, *a joy;* eine Schönheit, *a beauty;* ein Glas, *a glass.* So, too, it may go with a proper name, having then the sense of *one such as;* e. g., das wäre einem Schiller unmöglich, *that would be impossible for a Schiller.*

a. With verbal nouns ein often serves to emphasize the vehemence, the frequent repetition, or the long continuance of an action; e. g., das ist ein Stürmen, *that is a storming,* i. e., *how we go storming* (G.); das war ein Spazieren, *that was a walking,* i. e., *they were always walking together* (G.); nun soll es an ein Schädelspalten, *now we'll proceed to a cracking of skulls* (G.).

231. The Omission of ein. In the predicate, and also after als, ein is apt to be omitted before an unmodified noun denoting vocation, rank, character, station in life, less often before one denoting nationality; e. g., mein Bruder ist Soldat, *my brother is a soldier* (G.); er starb als Christ, *he died a Christian* (G.).

1. If the noun is modified by an adjective or a genitive, ein is generally used unless noun and modifier form a set phrase; e. g., er ist ein großer Dichter, *a great poet;* but er ist preußischer Soldat, königlicher Rat, Mitglied des Reichstags, *he is a Prussian soldier, (a) royal councillor, (a) member of parliament.*

a. Exceptions to both of the above rules are numerous; so much so that the Grimm Dictionary merely says the article *may* drop out in such cases.

232. Repetition of the Article. If the article is used before the first of two or more nouns connected in the same construction, it must be repeated with each following noun if there is change of gender; e. g., der König und die Kaiſerin, *the king and the empress;* der Strom, das Meer, das Salz gehört dem König, *the river, the sea, the salt belong to the king* (S.).

1. If there is no change of gender the repetition *may* be dispensed with, and *must* be if the two nouns refer to the same person or thing; e. g., der Kaiſer und König, *the emperor and king* (one person), but der Kaiſer und der König, two persons; eine grün' und weiße Fahne, *a green-and-white banner,* but eine grüne und eine weiße Fahne, *a green and a white banner.*

2. The rule of repetition applies also to adjectives and possessives; e. g., guter Wein und gutes Bier, *good wine and (good) beer;* die Zeitſchrift für deutſches Altertum und deutſche Litteraturgeſchichte, *Journal for German Antiquity and (German) Literary History;* ſein hoher Gang, ſein' edle Geſtalt, *his lofty stride, his noble form* (G.). But an uninflected adjective need not be repeated; e. g., hat Sie gut Bier und Wein? *have you good beer and wine* (U.)?

a. Exceptions to the rule of repetition are common in poetry and in talk; e. g., was ſoll all der Schmerz und Luſt? *what means all the pain and pleasure* (G.)?

THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

233. Gender as Determined by Meaning. The brief statement in § 75 may be expanded as follows:

1. Masculine are names of male animals, points of the compass, stones, winds, seasons, months and days of the

week ; e. g., Mann, *man ;* Stier, *bull ;* Hengſt, *stallion ;* Eber, *boar ;* Bär, *bear ;* Hahn, *cock ;* Nord, *north* or *north wind ;* Kieſel, *flint ;* Granit, *granite ;* Winter, *winter ;* Juli, *July ;* Mittwoch, *Wednesday.*

2. Feminine are the names of female animals, most trees and flowers (especially those ending in e), most German rivers, and nearly all abstract terms ; e. g., Kuh, *cow ;* Stute, *mare ;* Sau, *sow ;* Henne, *hen ;* Buche, *beech ;* Eiche, *oak ;* Nelke, *pink ;* Donau, *Danube ;* Tugend, *virtue ;* Macht, *power.*

a. Conspicuous exceptions are the neuters Weib and Frauenzimmer, *woman,* Mädchen, *girl,* and Fräulein, *young lady.* The female of the larger animals usually has, where sex is to be distinguished, a separate name ; see examples above. But many names of small animals are fem. without thought of sex ; e. g., Maus, *mouse ;* Ratte, *rat ;* Katze, *cat ;* Schlange, *snake ;* Nachtigall, *nightingale.*

b. Notable exceptions to the rule for German rivers are der Rhein, der Main, der Neckar. Non-German rivers are mostly mas., but many are fem. ; e. g., der Nil, Indus, Ganges, Orinoko, Hudſon, Miſſiſſippi, Tiber ; but die Lena, Wolga, Seine, Loire, Themſe (*Thames*).

3. Neuter are names of animals which designate the species or the young without reference to sex ; also names of cities and countries (but see § 225, 3), most names of materials, letters of the alphabet, and all words not properly nouns which are used as nouns ; e. g., Kind, *child ;* Rind, one of the genus *bos ;* Schwein, *hog, swine ;* Ferkel, *pig ;* Pferd, *horse ;* Füllen, *colt ;* Huhn, *fowl ;* das ſchöne Paris, *beautiful Paris ;* das neue Italien, *new Italy ;* Holz, *wood ;* Tuch, *cloth ;* das runde s, *the round s ;* das Spekulieren, *speculation ;* ihr ewiges Weh und Ach, *their eternal woe and alas ;* das Stelldichein, *the rendezvous.*

234. Gender as Determined by Form. The few simple rules given in Part I. (§§ 79, 83, 88, 93) may be recapitulated and amplified as follows :

1. Masculine are most monosyllabic nouns formed without suffix from a verbal root, nouns in **e** denoting

persons or animals, and nouns of agency or station in er, ler, ner; also those in el denoting instrument, those in en that are not infinitives, and those in ich, ig, ling and rich; e. g., Bund (binden), *league;* Schuß (ſchießen), *shot;* Bote, *messenger;* Löwe, *lion;* Seher, *seer;* Bürger, *citizen;* Kellner, *waiter;* Hebel, *lever;* Wedel, *brush;* Garten, *garden;* Buſen, *bosom;* Fittich, *pinion;* Käfig, *cage;* Wüſtling, *profligate;* Wüterich, *tyrant.*

a. Only a few monosyllabic derivatives from verbal roots are fem. or neu., and those mostly have a mas. counterpart from the same root; cf., das Schloß, *castle,* but der Schluß, *end;* das Band, *bond,* and der Bund, *league;* die Zahl, *number,* and der Zoll, *toll.*

b. Nouns in er that do not denote agency or station are of all genders; e. g., der Hader, *quarrel;* die Ader, *vein;* das Ruder, *oar.*

2. Feminine are a multitude of nouns in e, many in t, and a few in nis and ſal (see below under 3); also all in ei, erei, heit, keit, in, ſchaft, ung and the foreign suffixes age, ie, (t)ion, ik; e. g., Sprache, *speech;* Güte, *goodness;* Kraft, *force;* Wildnis, *desert;* Drangſal, *oppression;* Abtei, *abbey;* Malerei, *painting;* Freiheit, *freedom;* Seligkeit, *blessedness;* Löwin, *lioness;* Freundſchaft, *friendship;* Warnung, *warning;* Paſſage, *passage;* Partie, *match;* Nation, *nation;* Muſik, *music.*

3. Neuter are diminutives in chen and lein, most nouns in ſal, ſel, nis and tum, and most of those with prefix ge; e. g., Mädchen, *girl;* Fräulein, *young lady;* Labſal, *refreshment;* Rätſel, *riddle;* Wachstum, *growth;* Gebirge, *mountain-range;* Gelübde, *vow;* Geſchick, *fate.*

a. Of nouns in ſal, Drangſal, *oppression,* Mühſal, *trouble,* and Trübſal, *affliction,* are now usually fem.; of those in ſel, Stöpſel, *stopper,* is mas.; of those in tum, Irrtum, *error,* and Reichtum, *riches,* are mas. On nouns in nis see below, § 237, 2.

b. While the bulk of nouns with the prefix ge are neu., especially if they have the suffix e, there are some, both with and without the suffix, that are mas. or fem.; e. g., der Geſang, *song;* der Geſpiele, *playmate;* die Gefahr, *danger;* die Gemeinde, *community.*

235. Gender of Compounds. The most important exceptions to the principle that compounds have the gender of their final element are as follows:

1. Several words which seem to be compounded with Mut, m., *mind*, are feminine, owing to the fact that the modern mut represents two words of the older language, viz.: *muot*, m., and *muoti*, f. Hence usually in modern German die Anmut, *agreeableness;* die Demut, *humility;* die (but also der) Großmut, *magnanimity;* die Sanftmut, *gentleness;* die Wehmut, *sadness;* but der Edelmut, *nobility;* der Heldenmut, *heroism*, and others.

a. Armut, f., *poverty*, is not a compound of Mut, but an abstract from arm, *poor* (hence Arm-ut, not Ar-mut).

2. Die Antwort, *answer*, but das Wort, *word;* der Abscheu, *horror*, but die Scheu, *timidity;* der Mittwoch, *Wednesday*, but die Woche, *week*.

3. Compounds of Teil, m. n., *part*, vary somewhat fixedly in gender. Thus Erbteil, *inheritance*, Gegenteil, *counterpart*, and Hinterteil, *back part*, are generally neuter, while Anteil, *share*, Bestandteil, *element*, Vorteil, *advantage*, and most others are prevailingly masculine.

a. Urteil, n., *judgment*, is not a compound of Teil, but from erteilen, *adjudge*. Cf. *ordeal*.

4. Compound names of places are neuter regardless of the final element; thus der Berg, *mountain*, and die Burg, *castle*, but Freiberg and Freiburg (names of cities) are both neuter. The statement does not apply to appellative nouns like die Wartburg, *the (castle of) Wartburg*.

236. Gender of Borrowed Words. The general rule is that words borrowed from other languages retain the gender they had at home; thus der Priester, *priest*, from Gk.-Lat. *presbyter;* der Titel, *title*, from Lat. *titulus;* die Rose, from *rosa;* das Kloster, *convent*, from *claustrum;* das Fest, *festival*, from *festum*.

1. Very often, however, a foreign word has changed its gender to accord with that of other German words of similar form or meaning; thus der Eſſig, *vinegar*, from Lat. *acetum*, n., because other words in ig are mas.; der Körper, *body*, from *corpus*, n., on account of der Leib; die Lilie, *lily*, from *lilium*, n., because it comes from the plu. *lilia*, and other names of flowers are fem.; die Nummer, *number*, from *numerus*, m., on account of die Zahl; das Kame'l, *camel*, from *camélus*, m., because other specific names of large animals are neu.

a. In other cases the change of gender is less easy to account for; e. g., das Kreuz, *cross*, from *crux*, f.; die Mauer, *wall*, from *murus*, m.; das Echo, *echo*, from *echo*, f.; der Punkt, *point*, from *punctum*, n.; das Genie, *genius*, from Fr. *le génie*.

b. Words borrowed from the English, which has no grammatical gender left, are given a gender from real or fancied analogies; e. g., das Beefſteak, following das Rindfleiſch; der Strike or Streik, following Streich; die Bill; die or das Farm; der or das Sport.

237. Variable Gender. The cases may be grouped under four heads, as follows:

1. Without variation of meaning or form. The variation of gender is mostly dialectic, or due, in the case of borrowed words, to the following of uncertain analogies. A few examples among scores (the usual gender being given first) are:

Angel, f. m., *fish-hook*.
Barome'ter, m. n., *barometer*.
Bereich, m. n., *realm*.
Butter, f. m., *butter*.
Cöliba't, n. m., *celibacy*.
Floß, n. m., *raft*.
Kamin, m. n., *chimney*.
Karneval, m. n., *carnival*.
Karzer, m. n., *prison*.
Kathe'der, m. n. f., *rostrum*.
Meter, m. n., *metre*.
Otter, m. f., *otter*.
Pult, m. n., *desk*.
Sofa, m. n., *sofa*.
Teller, m. n., *plate*.
Ungeſtüm, m. f. n., *violence*.
Wamms, n. m., *jacket*.
Zierat, m. f., *ornament*.

a. The South-German puts den Butter upon das Teller, instead of die Butter upon den Teller. Rhenish Prussians say das Regenſchirm, *umbrella*, and die Paſtorat, *parsonage*, instead of the usual der Regenſchirm and das Paſtorat; and so on. Cf. Andresen, p. 37 ff.

2. With variation of meaning. Here two sub-groups are to be distinguished:

a. One and the same word has become differentiated in meaning and associated different meanings with different genders. The most important cases are :

Band, n., *band, bond;* m., *volume.*	Pate, m., *godfather;* f., *godmother.*
Buckel, m., *humpback;* f., *knob.*	Schild, m. n., *shield;* n. m., *sign.*
Bund, m., *league;* n., *bundle.*	Schwulſt, m., *bombast;* f., *swelling.*
Chor, m., *chorus;* n. m., *choir.*	See, m., *lake;* f., *sea.*
Flur, m., *area;* f., *field.*	Steuer, f., *tax;* n., *rudder.*
Gift, n. m., *poison;* f., *dowry.*	Teil, m., *part;* n., *share.*
Gehalt, m., *contents;* n. m., *salary.*	Verdienſt, m., *merit;* n., *pay.*
Lohn, m., *reward;* n. m., *wages.*	Wehr, f., *defense;* n., *weir.*
Ort, m., *place;* m. n., *village.*	

(1). Here belong nouns in nis, which are apt to be neu. if they denote something concrete, but fem. if they denote a state or an action. Thus a number of them are pretty uniformly fem., as Beſorgnis, *anxiety;* Erlaubnis, *permission;* Verdammnis, *damnation.* Others are both neu. and fem., as das Erkenntnis, *the thing cognized,* die Erkenntnis, *the act of cognizing;* das Erſparnis, *that which is saved,* die Erſparnis, *the act of saving.* So also das and die Ärgernis, *vexation;* Befugnis, *authority;* Bekümmernis, *solicitude;* Wagnis, *venture,* and others.

b. Two different words with different meanings and different genders have come to have the same form. The important cases are :

Alp, m., *nightmare;* f., *alp.*	Marſch, m., *march;* f., *marsh.*
Bauer, m., *peasant;* n. m., *birdcage.*	Maſt, *m., mast;* f., *fodder.*
Erbe, m., *heir;* n., *inheritance.*	Meſſer, m., *measurer;* n., *knife.*
Heide, m., *heathen;* f., *heath.*	Moment, m., *moment;* n., *factor.*
Hut, m., *hat;* f., *guard.*	Ohm, m., *uncle;* n. m. f., *awm.*
Kiefer, m., *jaw;* f., *pine.*	Reis, m., *rice;* n., *twig.*
Koller, m., *staggers;* n., *jacket.*	Schauer, m., *shower;* m. n., *shed.*
Kunde, m., *customer;* f., *knowledge.*	Stift, m., *peg;* n., *foundation*
Leiter, m., *conductor;* f., *ladder.*	Tau, m., *dew;* n., *rope.*
Mark, f., *mark, march;* n., *marrow.*	Thor, m., *fool;* n., *gate.*
	Weihe, m. f., *hawk;* f., *consecration.*

3. With variation of form but not of meaning, save as one form may be rare, stately or poetical. Here belong a number of pairs, such as :

Backen, m., and Backe, f., *cheek.*	Leiſten, m., and Leiſte, f., *last.*
Eck, n., and Ecke, f., *corner.*	Pfoſten, m., and Pfoſte, f., *post.*

Quaſt, m., and Quaſte, f., *tassel.*
Quell, m., and Quelle, f., *spring.*
Ritz, m., and Ritze, f., *crack.*
Rohr, n., and Röhre, f., *reed.*
Scherben, m., and Scherbe, f., *potsherd.*
Schlaf, m., and Schläfe, f., *temple.*
Schurz, m., and Schürze, f., *apron.*
Spalt, m., and Spalte, f., *cleft.*
Sparren, m., and Sparre, f., *spar.*
Trupp, m., and Truppe, f., *troop.*
Zeh, m., and Zehe, f., *toe.*

THE NUMBER OF NOUNS.

238. Defective Number. In German, as in English, some nouns are used only in the singular, as Glück, *luck;* and others only in the plural, as Leute, *people.*

1. The nouns that lack a plural are mainly abstracts and nouns of material, as Güte, *goodness;* Blei, *lead;* Stroh, *straw.* But many such words form a plural with concrete meaning, just as in English; e. g., Schönheiten, *beauties;* Gläſer, *glasses.*

a. In the older language abstracts formed a plu. much more freely than now—a state of affairs from which several stereotyped phrases have survived to the present time. These old plurals, being no longer felt as regular case-forms, are often written with small initial, but the government rules are not altogether consistent. Examples are: zu Gunſten (gunſten), *in favor of;* von Gottes Gnaden, *by God's grace;* in Ehren halten, *hold in honor;* zu Ehren, *in honor of;* zu Schulden (ſchulden) kommen laſſen, *incur blame;* von ſtatten gehen, *go off;* zu ſtatten kommen, *be of use;* von Nöten (nöten), *of necessity.* So also several titles; as Euer Gnaden, *Your Grace;* Hochwürden, *Worship;* Herrſchaften, *master, mistress, people of the house* (said by servants).

b. Certain nouns that lack a plu. of regular formation substitute therefor a compound; e. g., Tod, *death,* pl. Todesfälle, lit. *cases of death;* Leben, *life* = *biography,* pl. Lebensgeſchichten; Dank, *thanks,* pl. Dankſagungen; Feuer, *fire,* pl. Feuersbrünſte; Rat, *counsel,* pl. Ratſchläge.

2. The nouns that lack the singular are fewer. Further examples are: Eltern, *parents;* Gebrüder, *brothers* (mostly in names of firms); Geſchwiſter, *brother(s)* and *sister(s);* also several names of diseases, as Blattern, *smallpox;* Maſern, *measles;* Röteln, *German measles;* and of festivals, as Ferien, *vacation;* Oſtern, *Easter;* Pfingſten,

Whitsuntide ; Weihnachten, *Christmas.* Some nouns have a singular, but are used chiefly in the plural, as Zinsen, *interest ;* Einkünfte, *income.*

a. Leute takes the place of Männer in the plu. of several compounds of Mann, if sex is not thought of ; e. g., Kaufmann, *merchant,* Kaufleute, *tradespeople,* but Kaufmänner if men are meant. So Edelleute, *gentry,* but Edelmänner, *noblemen.* Others, as Staatsmann, *statesman,* Biedermann, *honest man,* admit only the plu. in Männer.

b. Several English nouns that are only plu. correspond to German nouns that are sing. ; e. g., die Schere, *the shears ;* die Zange, *the tongs ;* die Asche, *the ashes ;* der Grünkohl, *the greens ;* die Gelbsucht, *the yellows.*

239. Redundant Plural. Several nouns have two forms for the plural. The cases are of three kinds, viz. :

1. Alternative forms without difference of gender or meaning ; e. g., Faden, *thread,* pl. Faden or Fäden ; Bett, *bed,* pl. Betten or Bette. See §§ 274, 1, and 278, 1, *a.*

2. Different forms for different genders. Thus, of words that fall under § 237, 1, if the gender varies between mas. and neu., the plu. will remain the same, but if it varies between mas. and fem., or between neu. and fem., there will be a separate form for the fem. ; e. g., die Angel, *fish-hook,* has pl. die Angeln, but der Angel has die Angel. Again, from the words under § 237, 3, the pl. of der Quell is die Quelle (rare), that of die Quelle, die Quellen ; der Quast, pl. die Quaste, but die Quaste, pl. die Quasten.

3. Different forms associated with different meanings ; e. g., from das Band, *ribbon, bond,* pl. Bande, *bonds,* but Bänder, *ribbons.* See § 276.

240. The Singular for the Plural. A masculine or neuter noun of measure (denoting weight, height, extent, amount, etc.,) usually stands in the singular, or what appears to be the singular, after a numeral ; e. g., zwei Pfund Thee, *two pounds of tea ;* sechs Fuß hoch, *six feet high ;* dreimal, i. e., drei Mal, *three times ;* ein Heer von 20,000 Mann, *an army of 20,000 men.*

a. With the measures of time, Jahr, *year,* Jahrhundert, *century,* Monat, *month,* the pl. is more common, but the sing. not rare. So

also with Schritt, *pace*, and Pfennig, *penny;* thus drei Jahre, sechs Monate, hundert Schritte, fünf Pfennige, are better than drei Jahr, sechs Monat, etc.

1. Feminine nouns of this kind stand in the plural; thus drei Meilen entfernt, *three miles distant;* zwei Ellen Tuch, *two yards of cloth.* Except, however, Mark, *mark*, and sometimes Hand, *hand.* Thus one says es kostet drei Mark; das Pferd ist 16 Hand (or Hände) hoch, *the horse is 16 hands high.*

a. Formerly monosyllabic neuters such as Pfund, Mal, Jahr, Buch, Faß, Maß, and also the mas. Mann, formed a pl. just like the sing.; so that fünf Pfund, zehn Jahr, hundert Mann, are really pl., though not now felt as such. Other masculines have followed the analogy of these; e. g., Fuß, Schritt, Zoll, Kopf (zwei Kopf Kohl, *two heads of cabbage*), Schuß, Stock.

2. In speaking of the joint activity or concern of several subjects German often uses the singular where English prefers the plural; e. g., alle erhoben die Hand, *all raised their hands;* viele verloren das Leben, *many lost their lives.*

3. English plurals such as *the second and third days*, the *fourth and fifth verses*, should be given in German by the singular: der zweite und der dritte Tag; der vierte und der fünfte Vers.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES.

THE NOMINATIVE.

241. The Nominative as Subject. The grammatical subject of a sentence is put in the nominative; e. g., der Mann hat recht, *the man is right.*

a. For the omission of the subject see § 302; for the subject anticipated by es, § 303, 3; for the nom. and other cases in apposition, § 270.

242. The Predicate Nominative. The nominative is used in the predicate after certain intransitive and passive verbs; e. g., das ist der rechte Mann, *that is the right man;* es werde Licht, *let there be light;* ich heiße Doktor, *I am called doctor;* das Kind wurde Karl getauft, *the child was christened Karl.*

1. The verbs that take a predicate nominative (without als) are ſein, bleiben, heißen, werden, and passive verbs of calling, such as nennen, rufen, ſchelten, ſchimpfen, taufen.

a. A few others, as dünken, glänzen, erſcheinen, ſcheinen, sometimes take this construction; e. g., ihr Hut, der ihm eine Krone ſchien, *her hat which seemed to him a crown* (Richter); nicht ein Kind bin ich erſchienen, *not (as) a child have I come forth* (G.); glänze (sc. die Poeſie) der ſchönſte Stern, *let it shine (as) the fairest star* (G.). But in these cases one would ordinarily say: wie eine Krone, als Kind, als ſchönſter Stern.

b. After werden, in the sense of *be changed into*, one often meets a dat. with zu instead of a predicate nom.; e. g., da werden Weiber zu Hyänen, *then women become hyenas* (S.); Glück und Unglück wird zur Grille, *become a whim* (G.).

c. For the exceptional predicate nom. after an infinitive depending on laſſen, as in laß mich dein Freund ſein, *let me be thy friend*, see § 366, 1, *c.*

2. A much greater number of verbs may be followed by a predicate nominative with als denoting the character, capacity, form, or with wie denoting the manner, in which the subject acts, appears, or is acted upon; e. g., er ſtarb als Chriſt, *he died a Christian* (G.); er ſtarb wie ein Chriſt = *he died like a Christian.*

a. This construction with als or wie may be classed under the head of appositional predicate. See § 271.

243. The Nominative in Address and Exclamations. The nominative is the case of direct address, and usually of exclamations; e. g., ihr ſchwebt, ihr Geiſter, neben mir, *ye are hovering near me, ye spirits* (G.); welch Schauſpiel! aber ach! ein Schauſpiel nur! *what a spectacle! but, alas! only a spectacle* (G.)!

244. The Nominative Absolute, so common in English, is in German a rare construction, occurring only with one or two participles; e. g., wir alle freuen uns, ausgenommen du, *we are all glad, you excepted* (Gr.); es ſind unſer fünf,

unberechnet der Vorsitzende, *there are five of us, the chairman not counted.*

1. The usual case absolute is the acc. (§ 267). Thus, in the last two examples the more idiomatic construction is: wir alle freuen uns, dich ausgenommen; es sind unser fünf, den Vorsitzenden unberechnet.

THE GENITIVE.

245. The genitive limits or complements the meaning of, and so is said to depend upon, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs and prepositions. It is also used with an interjection in exclamations.

246. The Adnominal Genitive, translatable usually by the possessive or the objective with *of*, denotes a great variety of relations, of which the more important are indicated below. We have:

1. The partitive genitive, denoting a whole of which the noun limited forms a part; e. g., ein Teil des Chors, *a part of the chorus* (G.); meine Hälfte deines Grams, *my half of thy sorrow* (S.); Tonnen Goldes, *tons of gold* (S.); dies Glas des echten Weines, *this glass of the genuine wine* (G.).

a. But after nouns of number, weight, measure, kind, the older partitive genitive has for the most part given way to simple apposition; thus one no longer says drei Pfund Goldes, *three pounds of gold*, but drei Pfund Gold; not ein Glas Weines, for *a glass of wine*, but ein Glas Wein; not, with Lessing, eine neue Art Zanks, *a new kind of quarrel*, but eine neue Art Zank. If the word limited has an inflected modifier, either the genitive or the appositional construction is proper; e. g., eine Menge fröhlicher (or fröhliche) Kinder, *a crowd of happy children;* ein Glas kalten Wassers, or kaltes Wasser, *a glass of cold water.*

b. For the partitive gen. with adjectives and pronouns see § 253; with verbs, § 250.

2. The objective genitive, with verbal nouns, denoting the object of the action; e. g., die Teilung der Erde, *the*

partition of the earth; die Erhebung des Menſchengeſchlechts, *the elevation of the human race.*

a. A genitive limiting a verbal noun and denoting the subject of the action is called, by way of contrast, 'subjective'; e. g., das Wehen des Windes, *the blowing of the wind;* die Erhebung Europas gegen Napoleon, *the rise of Europe against Napoleon.* Both a subjective and an objective gen. may depend on the same noun; e. g., Bismarcks Löſung des Problems, *Bismarck's solution of the problem.*

b. As in English, the objective gen. follows its noun; thus Gottes Liebe can only mean *God's love*, while die Liebe Gottes may mean either (man's) *love of God* or *God's love* (of man). For the objective gen. one can often substitute a preposition with its case; e. g., die Furcht vor dem Tode, *the fear of death;* die Liebe zu Gott. This substitution should always be made when necessary to avoid ambiguity.

3. The genitive of characteristic; e. g., der Jüngling edlen Gefühles, *the youth of noble feeling* (G.); dies Haus des Glanzes, *this house of splendor.*

a. In the predicate this gen. often stands alone, the noun upon which it would depend being omitted; e. g., er iſt niedriger Abkunft, *he is of low origin;* ich bin guter Dinge, *I am in good spirits;* das Wort iſt ſächlichen Geſchlechts, *the word is of the neuter gender.*

4. The genitive of specification, telling wherein the noun consists, or limiting its generality by means of a more definite term; e. g., das Recht der freien Forſchung, *the right of free investigation;* der Schnee des Alters, *the snows of old age;* des Haſſes Kraft, die Macht der Liebe, *the force of hate, the power of love* (G.). So also with substantive adjectives: der Beiname des Großen, *the sobriquet (of) the great;* das Prädikat des Schönen, *the predicate (of) the beautiful.*

a. This genitive is also called 'appositional.' Proper names do not take this construction, but stand in apposition; e. g., die Stadt Paris, *the city of Paris;* das Königreich Sachſen, *the kingdom of Saxony;* der Monat März, *the month of March.*

5. The possessive genitive, denoting the owner, author, proprietor; e. g., das Haus meines Vaters, *my father's house;* Schillers Tell, *Schiller's Tell;* des Landvogts Reiter, *the governor's troopers.*

a. The noun limited is sometimes to be supplied from the context; e. g., doch beſſer iſt's, ihr fallt in Gottes Hand als in des Menſchen, *but it is better that you fall into the hand of God than into (that) of man* (S.). Or it may be represented by a demonstrative; e. g., ſeine Ideale ſind immer noch die unſeres Volkes, *his ideals are still those of our people.*

b. By the omission of a noun meaning *property*, or the like, the possessive genitive often comes to stand alone in the predicate; e. g., gebt dem Kaiſer, was des Kaiſers iſt, *give to the emperor what is the emperor's;* der Bube war des Vogts, *the boy was the governor's* (S.); du biſt des Todes, *you are a dead man;* biſt du des Teufels? *are you crazy?*

c. In familiar language this gen. is often replaced by a possessive in agreement with the governing noun; e. g., in dem Wolf ſeinem Leib, *in the wolf's body* (Gr.); auf der Fortuna (dat.) ihrem Schiff, *on Fortune's ship* (S.). So also a possessive may stand pleonastically after the gen.; e. g., nimm meinen Ring und gieb mir des Majors ſeinen dafür, *take my ring and give me the Major's for it* (L.).

d. Note also the colloquial ellipsis in ich war heute bei Müllers, *I was at (the) Müllers' to-day*, i. e., *at his (their) house.*

6. The genitive of connection—a general term which, as here used, is meant to include the ideas of cause, origin, relationship, appurtenance, and any others that do not fall clearly under one of the preceding heads; e. g., das Licht der Sonne, *the light of the sun;* der Ruhm der Deutſchen, *the glory of the Germans;* der Gipfel des Berges, *the top of the mountain;* der Sohn des Königs, *the son of the king.*

247. The Dative with von as a Substitute for the Genitive. For the genitive in most of the uses described in the last section it is possible to substitute von with the dative. The construction with von belongs more to familiar language and is gaining upon the more elegant genitive. Thus in the following cases, all from good writers, the genitive would be better: Die Urſachen von dieſem Mangel, *the causes of this lack* (Herder); Herr von ſeinen Handlungen, *master of his actions* (G.); die Macht von Rom, *the power of Rome* (Ranke); die eine Seite vom Haus, *one side of the house* (Gr.). But in some cases the construction with von is to be preferred, viz.:

1. In certain expressions of rank and title; e. g., der König von Sachſen, *the King of Saxony;* die Jungfrau von

Orleans, *the Maidt of Orleans;* buc Doktor der Philoſophie, *doctor of philosophy.*

2. When the case, if it were genitive, would not be clear; e. g., die Bevölkerung von Paris, *the population of Paris;* die Anſprüche von Menſchen, die nichts beſitzen, *the claims of people who own nothing.*

3. To avoid a genitive depending upon a genitive; e. g., der Erbe von ſeines Vaters mutigem Geiſte, *the inheritor of his father's courageous spirit* (instead of der Erbe des mutigen Geiſtes ſeines Vaters); der Sohn von einem Vetter des großen Dichters, *the son of a cousin of the great poet;* einer von des Prinzen Räten, *one of the prince's counsellors* (L.).

4. When the limiting genitive, if it were used, would be separated from its noun; e. g., von unſrer Partei war kein Freund gegenwärtig, *there was no friend of our party present.*

5. To denote material or characteristic; e. g., das Mäntelchen von ſtarrer Seide, *the cape of stiff silk* (G.); ein Mann von feſtem Charakter, *a man of solid character.*

248. The Genitive as Sole Object of Verbs. A number of verbs take, or may take, a genitive as sole object; e. g., gedenke des Sabbattages, *remember the sabbath day;* ſchone meiner, *spare me;* ich bedarf Ihres Beiſtands, *I need your assistance.*

1. This construction is on the wane. It is found in the classics, and may still occur, in stately writing, after a pretty large number of verbs. But the most of them admit, or even prefer, besides the genitive, some other construction. Such are (the alternative being put in brackets):

achten, *heed* [auf, acc.].
bedürfen, *need* [acc.].
begehren, *desire* [acc.].
brauchen, *need* [acc.].
danken, *thank* [für, acc.].
denken, *think* [an, acc.].
entbehren, *lack* [acc.].
entraten, *lack* [acc.].
ermangeln, *lack* [acc.].
erwähnen, *mention* [acc.].
frohlocken, *exult* [über, acc.].
gebrauchen, *use* [acc.].

gedenken, *think.*
geneſen, *give birth to.*
genießen, *enjoy* [acc.].
gewahren, *perceive* [acc.].
harren, *wait* [auf, acc.].
hüten, *guard* [acc.].
lachen, *laugh* [über, acc.].
mangeln, *lack* [acc.].
pflegen, *attend* [acc.].
ſchonen, *spare* [acc.].
ſpotten, *mock* [über, acc.].
ſterben, *die* [an, dat.].
(ver)fehlen, *miss* [acc.].
vergeſſen, *forget* [acc.].
verlangen, *desire* [nach, dat.].
wahren, *guard* [acc.].
wahrnehmen, *perceive* [acc].
walten, *rule* [über, acc.].
warten, *wait* [auf, acc.].

a. Sometimes difference of meaning is associated with difference of construction. Thus lachen and ſpotten are apt to take the gen. when used figuratively in the sense *make light of;* e. g., ich lachte über den Spaß, *laughed at the joke,* but lachte ſeiner Drohungen, *made light of his threats.* Cf., further, ſeines Amtes warten, *attend to one's business,* but auf den Zug warten, *wait for the train;* der Ruhe pflegen, *take rest,* but einen Kranken pflegen, *nurse a sick person.*

b. The gen. as sole object is for the most part a gen. of cause, denoting that which occasions the activity or state denoted by the verb; hence Hungers ſterben, *die of hunger,* and eines böſen Todes ſterben, *die an evil death.* Some cases which might seem to come under this head are partitive genitives; e. g., ſich Rats erholen, *get advice* (§ 250); others are adverbial; e. g., des Glaubens leben, *live in the faith* (§ 251). Difficult to classify is Verſteckens ſpielen, *play hide and seek.*

249. The Genitive as Secondary Object occurs with numerous verbs in connection with an accusative; e. g., ich freue mich deines Heils, *I rejoice in thy salvation;* welch andrer Sünde klagt das Herz dich an? *of what other sin does thy heart accuse thee?* The verbs are:

1. Verbs of 'judicial action' and their kind, the genitive denoting that of which some one is accused, convicted, admonished, deemed worthy, etc. Such are:

anklagen, *accuse.*
belehren, *inform.*
beſcheiden, *inform.*
beſchuldigen, *accuse.*
bezichtigen, *accuse.*
freiſprechen, *acquit.*
losſprechen, *acquit.*
mahnen, *admonish.*
überführen, *convict.*
überheben, *exempt.*
überweiſen, *convict.*
überzeugen, *convince.*
verklagen, *accuse.*
(ver)lohnen, *reward.*
verſichern, *assure.*
vergewiſſern, *assure.*
würdigen, *deem worthy.*
zeihen, *accuse.*

a. Belehren occurs in such locutions as man hat mich eines andern belehrt, *I am otherwise advised.* Beſcheiden in the same sense is now

quaint. Überzeugen, verſichern and verbs of acquitting may take the dat. with von instead of the gen. Verſichern admits also a dat. of the person and an acc. of the thing: ich verſichre dir meine Teilnahme, *I assure you of my sympathy*, instead of ich verſichre dich meiner Teilnahme. Mahnen usually takes an with acc.

2. Several verbs of separation or deprivation, the genitive denoting that of which some one is deprived. Such are :

berauben, *rob.*	entladen, *relieve.*	entſetzen, *dispossess.*
entbinden, *release.*	entlaſſen, *dismiss.*	entwöhnen, *wean.*
entblößen, *deprive.*	entlaſten, *relieve.*	verjagen, *drive out.*
entheben, *relieve.*	entledigen, *exempt.*	verweiſen, *banish.*
entkleiden, *divest.*		

a. Entbinden, -blößen, -heben, -laſſen, may take a dat. with von. Entlaſſen admits three constructions : thus *to dismiss one from service* is einen ſeiner Dienſte, or vom Dienſte, or aus dem Dienſte entlaſſen. Other compounds of ent take a dat. of the person, and an acc. of the thing. See § 258, 2.

3. A multitude of reflexive verbs with meanings too various to classify. Such are :

ſich abthun, *renounce.*	ſich erfrechen, *dare to do.*
anmaßen, *claim.*	(er)freuen, *enjoy.*
annehmen, *take charge.*	erinnern, *remember.*
bedienen, *make use.*	erkühnen, *dare to do.*
befleiß(ig)en, *attend to.*	erwehren, *keep from.*
begeben, *renounce.*	getröſten, *expect.*
bemächtigen, *get possession.*	rühmen, *boast.*
bemeiſtern, *get control.*	ſchämen, *be ashamed.*
beſcheiden, *acquiesce in.*	überheben, *boast.*
beſinnen, *bethink one's self.*	unterfangen, } *dare to undertake.*
entäußern, *renounce.*	unterwinden, }
enthalten, *refrain from.*	vermeſſen, *dare to do.*
entledigen, *acquit one's self.*	vermuten, *expect.*
entſchlagen, *get rid.*	verſehen, *expect.*
entſinnen, *recollect.*	(ver)tröſten, *acquiesce in.*
erbarmen, *pity.*	verwegen, *dare to do.*
erdreiſten, *dare to do.*	weigern, *refuse.*

a. Some of these verbs admit other constructions ; e. g., ſich (er)freuen, rühmen, ſchämen, the acc. with über ; ſich anmaßen, the dat. of the reflexive and the acc. of the thing. Erinnern, with acc., for ſich erinnern, with gen., is a North-German provincialism.

4. Certain impersonal verbs of feeling, the genitive giving the cause of the emotion; e. g., mich jammert ſeiner Not, *I pity his distress.* Such are, letting mich represent the variable personal object:

es dauert mich, *I pity.*
es ekelt mich, *I am disgusted.*
es erbarmt mich, *I pity.*
es gelüſtet mich, *I desire.*
es jammert mich, *I pity.*
es reut mich, *I regret.*
es verdrießt mich, *I am annoyed.*

a. With the most of these verbs the gen. is becoming quaint, and über with the acc. or wegen with the gen. (with gelüſtet, nach and the dat.) is preferred. Note finally es (ver)lohnt ſich der Mühe, *it is worth the trouble.*

250. The Partitive Genitive with Verbs. At an earlier period several verbs might take a genitive to denote that the object was affected only in part; e. g., des Brotes, or Brots, eſſen, *to eat bread, manger du pain,* where one would now say Brot or vom Brote or etwas Brot eſſen; er giebt ſeines Brots den Armen, *he giveth of his bread to the poor* (Lu.).

1. But this construction is now obsolete or quaint, except perhaps after genießen (cf. § 248). Where it occurs in the classics it is usually held to be a Grecism or Gallicism; e. g., brachte die Mutter des herrlichen Weines, *brought (some) of the noble wine* (G.); es ſchenkte der Böhme des perlenden Weins, *poured out (some) of the sparkling wine* (S.).

a. But a few isolated phrases survive in common use; e. g., ſich Rats erholen, *get advice.*

251. The Adverbial Genitive. The genitive is used with verbs to denote various adverbial relations, viz.:

1. Place; e. g., jetzt gehe jeder ſeines Weges, *now let each go his way* (S.); das preiſen die Schüler allerorten (aller Orten), *the students praise that everywhere* (G.).

a. The adverbial gen. of place is no longer common, except in the phrase allerorten (allerorts). Where it occurs in the classics after gehen, kommen, ziehen, and other verbs of motion, present usage prefers the acc. (§ 266). Goethe sometimes forces German idiom a little in his use of this construction; e. g., das iſt des Landes nicht der Brauch, *that is not the custom in these parts* (*Faust*, l. 2949, des Landes being = hier zu Lande); glänzen droben klarer (= in der klaren) Nacht, *shine up there in the clear night* (*ibid.*, l. 4647).

2. Time; e. g., die Räte verſammelten ſich des Mittags, *the councillors assembled at noon* (S.); Tages Arbeit, Abends Gäſte, *work by day, guests at night* (G.).

a. This use of the gen. is very common in certain set phrases; e. g., eines Tages, *one day;* eines Abends, *one evening;* vormittags, *forenoons;* abends, *evenings;* nachts, *at night;* neuerdings (i. e., neuer Dinge, with adverbial s), *recently;* von alters her, *from of old;* vor alters, *anciently.* On the acc. of time, as compared with the gen., see § 266, 2, *a.*

3. Manner and degree; e. g., nach Uri fahr' ich ſtehenden Fußes, *I will go to Uri without delay* (S.); meines Wiſſens iſt es das erſte Mal, *so far as I know, it is the first time.*

a. Here the phrases are still more numerous; e. g., keineswegs, *by no means;* glücklicherweiſe, *happily,* and others in =weiſe; gewiſſermaßen, *in a certain sense,* and others in =maßen (gen. of Maß); allerdings, *to be sure;* unverrichteter Sache, *in vain, with errand unaccomplished;* meinerſeits, *on my part;* meines Erachtens, *in my opinion;* dergeſtalt, *in such way;* des weiteren, *in detail.*

252. The Complementary Genitive with Adjectives. Certain adjectives may take a genitive to complement their meaning; e. g., des Gefühls nicht mächtig ſtand ich da, *I stood there not able to control my feeling* (S.); daß ſie des Dranges müd' ſind, *that they are tired of oppression* (S.).

1. The adjectives that take the genitive express for the most part the ideas of power, possession, knowledge, capacity, abundance and their opposites. Such are (including their compounds with un):

anſichtig, *in sight.*
bar, *bare.*
bedürftig, *in need.*
benötigt, *in need.*
bewußt, *conscious.*
bloß, *bare.*
einig, *agreed.*
eingedenk, *mindful.*
erfahren, *experienced.*
fähig, *capable.*
frei, *free.*
froh, *glad.*
gedenk, *mindful.*
gewahr, *aware.*
gewärtig, *expectant.*
gewiß, *certain.*
gewohnt, *used.*
habhaft, *in possession.*
inne, *percipient.*
kundig, *acquainted.*
ledig, *free.*
leer, *empty.*
los, *free.*
mächtig, *able to control.*
müde, *tired.*
quitt, *done.*
ſatt, *sated.*
ſchuldig, *guilty.*
ſicher, *certain.*
teilhaft, *partaking.*
überdrüſſig, *weary.*
verdächtig, *suspicious.*
verluſtig, *lacking.*
vermutend, *expectant.*
verſichert, *assured.*
voll, *full.*
wert, *worth.*
würdig, *worthy.*

a. Several of the above adjectives, when used predicatively, may take an acc. instead of a gen.; namely, anſichtig, gewahr, gewohnt, habhaft, inne, los, ſatt, vermutend, wert; e. g., als mich die Fee anſichtig wurde, *when the fairy noticed (became observant of) me* (Platen); den Böſen ſind ſie los, *they are rid of the Evil One* (G.); das war die Mühe nicht wert, *not worth the trouble* (G.).—This construction originated thus: The old gen. es in ich bin es los, *I am rid of it*, and similar locutions, came to be felt as an acc., and this led to the use of a real acc. in place of es; i. e., the misunderstood ich bin es los drew after it ich bin das Ding los.

b. Frei, leer, and los may be followed by von, and fähig by zu. Würdig and unwürdig occur sometimes with a dat.; e. g., nichts iſt einem Manne unwürdiger, *more unworthy of a man* (L.).

c. Adverbs that govern the gen. will be treated as prepositions (§ 376).

253. The Partitive Genitive with Adjectives, Pronouns and Adverbs. A genitive of the whole may occur after numerals, after certain pronouns and pronominal adjectives, and after adjectives in the comparative and superlative; e. g., fünf unſres Ordens, *five of our order;* aller guten Dinge ſind drei, *of all good things there are three;* unſer einer, *one of us;* der wackern Männer viele, *many brave men* (S.); der ſchrecklichſte der Schrecken, *the most terrible of terrors* (S.).

1. After a numeral the partitive genitive is no longer common except when the numeral agrees with a noun understood. Thus for neun ganzer Jahre, *nine whole years* (L.), one would now say neun ganze Jahre. But neun unſrer Geſellſchaft, *nine of our company*, or zwanzig der beſten, *twenty of the best*, is good usage, though the dative with von or unter also occurs.

2. The pronouns and pronominals which admit a partitive genitive are wer, welch, was, all, ander-, beid-, ein, einig-, etlich-, etwas, genug, jed-, kein, manch, mehrer-, nichts, viel and wenig. But the most of these admit also von or unter with

the dative, and this is the preferred construction with jemand and niemand.

a. The old partitive genitive of an adjective after nichts (cf. § 320, 2), etwas, and other indeclinables, ceased long ago to be felt as a genitive, and is now treated as an appositive; e. g., zu was Beſſerm ſind wir geboren, *we are born for something better* (S.). Goethe's zu was Neuen (for Neuem, *Faust*, l. 3254) is for the rhyme's sake.

b. So also in such expressions as was Wunders, *what (of) wonder*, was Teufels, *what the deuce*, etc., the genitive, ceasing to be felt as such, dropped its case-ending and became an appositive; hence was Wunder, was Teufel, was Henker, was Raub (*Faust*, l. 6549).

c. The form anders, *else*, remains unchanged after wer, jemand, niemand; e. g., wer anders, *who else;* mit niemand anders (not anderm).

3. A partitive genitive may occur after certain adverbs of place; e. g., wohin des Weges, *whither away;* woher des Landes, *from what part of the country;* wo anders or anderswo, *elsewhere;* nirgend anders, *nowhere else.*

4. Quite anomalous is Goethe's use of a partitive gen. with häufig in *Faust*, l. 3098: Ihr habt der Freunde häufig, *you have friends in abundance.*

254. The Genitive with Prepositions. A large number of prepositions and prepositional adverbs govern the genitive. For a list, with illustrations, see §§ 376–7.

255. The Genitive in Exclamations. After an interjection the genitive is sometimes used to denote the occasion of the feeling; e. g., o der unglückſeligen Stunde! *oh, the unhappy hour!* pfui des Böſewichts! *out upon the villain!*

1. This construction is distinctly literary, and is becoming rare even in poetry. Common language prefers the nom., or else a prepositional phrase; e. g., mit eurem Golde, *out upon your gold* (S.)! pfui über dich! *fie upon you!*

THE DATIVE.

256. The dative depends upon verbs, adjectives and prepositions, rarely upon nouns and interjections. Its name, from the Latin *casus dativus*, implies that it is the case of *giving*, i. e., of the indirect object. But it has other functions also.

257. The Dative with Verbs: Sole Object. A large number of intransitive verbs take a single object, or complement of their meaning, in the dative; e. g., ich danke dir, *I thank thee;* den Göttern gleich' ich nicht, *I am not like the gods* (G.); mir wird nachgeſetzt, *I am followed* (S.).

1. The verbs that take the dative as sole object express such ideas as motion or effort toward and away from; disappearance, lack; appurtenance, fitness, suitability; pleasure and displeasure; friendly, gracious, or submissive action, and the reverse; resemblance and correspondence. Some have English equivalents that need no preposition and may seem to be transitive; others require in English a preposition, usually *to*. Such are:

ähneln, *resemble.*
antworten, *answer.*
begegnen, *meet.*
behagen, *please.*
bekommen, *befit.*
danken, *thank.*
dienen, *serve.*
drohen, *threaten.*
dünken, *seem.*
erliegen, *succumb.*
(er)ſcheinen, *appear.*
fehlen, *fail.*
fluchen, *curse.*
folgen, *follow.*
frommen, *benefit.*
gebühren, *befit.*
gefallen, *please.*
gehören, *belong.*
gehorchen, *obey.*
genügen, *suffice.*
geſchehen, *happen.*
(ge)ziemen, *become.*
glauben, *believe.*
gleichen, *resemble.*
grollen, *be angry.*
helfen, *help.*
huldigen, *pay homage.*
mangeln, *be lacking.*
nahen, *approach.*
nützen, *benefit.*
paſſen, *fit.*
ſchaden, *injure.*
ſchmeicheln, *flatter.*
trotzen, *defy.*
(ver)trauen, *trust.*
weichen, *yield.*
wehren, *defend.*
zürnen, *be angry.*

a. Antworten takes a dat. of the person only: what one answers stands in the acc., that to which one answers in the acc. with auf; e. g., antworte mir, *answer me;* antworte auf meine Frage,

answer my question; er antwortete mir keine Silbe, *he answered me not a syllable.* Begegnen occurs in the classics with the acc.— Danken = verdanken may have an acc. of the thing; e. g., ich (ver)danke ihm mein Glück, *I owe to him my happiness.*—Glauben takes the dat. of the person in the sense of *believe*, the acc. with an in that of *believe in* (but in *Faust*, l. 3434, ich glaube ihn = *I believe in him*).— Mangeln now usually has a dat. of the person, the thing needed being in the nom. or dat. with an; e. g., mir mangelt Geld, or es mangelt mir an Geld, instead of ich mangle des Geldes (§ 248, 1).

2. A still larger number of verbs, with meanings similar to those mentioned above, take the dative in virtue of their composition with one of the prefixes an, auf, aus, bei, ein, ent, entgegen, miß, nach, unter, ver, vor, voran, voraus, wider, zu, zuvor. Examples are: abgehen, *be lacking;* angehören, *belong;* auffallen, *surprise;* ausweichen, *evade;* beipflichten, *support;* einfallen, *occur;* entgehen, *escape;* entgegeneilen, *hasten toward;* mißfallen, *displease;* nachstehen, *be inferior;* unterliegen, *succumb;* verschwinden, *vanish;* vorbeugen, *prevent;* voran- and vorausgehen, *precede;* widerstehen, *repel;* zueilen, *hasten to;* zuvorkommen, *anticipate.*

a. Verbal phrases with similar meanings may also take the dat.; e. g., einem zu Hilfe kommen, *come to the aid of one;* einem zur Ehre gereichen, *redound to one's credit.* Cf. § 259, 2.

258. The Dative with Verbs: Secondary Object. Many transitive verbs take a secondary object in the dative, the primary object being usually a noun or pronoun in the accusative, but often an infinitive or a clause; e. g., gebt mir den Helm, *give me the helmet* (S.); ich werde jetzt dich keinem Nachbar reichen, *I shall hand thee now to no neighbor* (G.); Furcht gebietet ihm zu schweigen, *fear bids him be silent;* nun sag' mir eins, man soll kein Wunder glauben, *now let some one tell me that we are not to believe in miracles* (G.). What is here called the secondary object may be:

1. A true indirect object, translatable by the objective with *to*, and occurring chiefly with verbs of giving,

communicating, showing, proving, and the like (see examples above).

a. Sagen, *say*, is apt to take the dat. with zu when followed by a literal quotation in the direct form; e. g., er ſagte mir, ich ſei verrückt, *told me I was crazy;* but er ſagte zu mir: du biſt verrückt.—Schreiben, *write*, takes the dat. or the acc. with an.—Some verbs of this class, e. g., beweiſen, *show*, and erwähnen, *mention*, admit the acc. with gegen instead of the dat.

b. Some of the verbs given in § 257, 1, may take a direct object in the form of an acc. or a clause; e. g., ich danke dir, daß —, *I thank thee that —;* antworte mir das, *answer me that;* das glaube ich dir nicht, *I do not believe you (when you say) that.*

2. A privative object, denoting that *from* which something is separated, and translatable by the objective with *from;* e. g., der Ring, den er dem Zwerg genommen, *the ring which he had taken from the dwarf* (W.); dieſen Troſt ſoll mir niemand rauben, *no one shall rob me of this comfort.*

a. This dat. occurs after verbs of taking, stealing, withholding, alienating, etc. (many being compounds of ent or weg), some of which, however, may take von instead. It represents an extinct ablative.

3. The beneficiary object, denoting that *for* which something is done; e. g., was kaufſt du deiner Frau zu Weihnachten? *what shall you buy your wife for Christmas* (Gr.)*?*

a. This construction is comparatively rare with transitive verbs, the acc. with für being preferred. Still it is closely akin to the dat. of interest, which is very common.

4. An object due to the composition of the verb with one of the prefixes mentioned in § 257, 2. It has to be translated in various ways; e. g., ich ſehe dem Dinge kein Ende ab, *I see no end to (of) the thing;* man ſieht dir's an den Augen an, *one can see it by your eyes* (G.); der Wind trieb uns den Staub entgegen, *drove the dust in our faces;* etwas einem Briefe beilegen, *to enclose something in a letter.*

a. With several of these compounds the dat. object is a reflexive pronoun; e. g., ich maße mir das Recht an, *I claim (arrogate to myself) the right;* ich bitte mir das aus, *I make that a condition;* ſich etwas einbilden, *imagine something;* ſich etwas zutrauen, *trust one's self for something.*

259. The Dative of Interest. The dative is freely used to denote the person (less often the thing) concerned in a statement.

a. The translation has to vary greatly ; e. g., wie geht es Ihnen? *how goes it with you?* mir iſt es einerlei, *it is all the same to me ;* dem Vater grauſet's, *the father shudders* (G.). In connection with a noun that has the definite article it often has the force of a possessive ; e. g., es geht mir ans Herz, *it goes to my heart ;* das gereicht ihm zur Ehre, *that redounds to his credit.* It occurs :

1. With transitive verbs as the case of the beneficiary object (see above, § 258, 3). Here belong numerous verbal phrases containing a transitive verb ; e. g., das that er mir zuliebe, *he did that for my sake ;* ſchreib' es dir hinters Ohr, *make a note of it ;* dieſen muß ich was zum beſten geben, *I must do something for these fellows* (G.) ; ich mache es mir zur Aufgabe, *I make it my task.*

a. Where a personal object is accompanied by a phrase specifying a part of the object there is sometimes a choice between the dat. and the acc.; e. g., er trat mir (or mich) auf den Fuß, *he stepped upon my foot.*

2. With intransitive verbs ; e. g., ſein Herz ſchlug der ganzen Menſchheit, *his heart beat for all mankind* (S.) ; wie nur dem Kopf nicht alle Hoffnung ſchwindet, *how only for that head does all hope not vanish* (G.).

a. Here belong a multitude of impersonal phrases with ſein, werden, bleiben, geſchehen, gehen, and others ; e. g., es iſt mir recht, *it suits me ;* mir wird ſo licht, *it grows so clear to me* (G.) ; es geſchieht dir recht, *it serves you right ;* es ſchmeckt mir gut, *it tastes good to me ;* es thut mir leid, *I am sorry ;* es liegt mir viel daran, *it is of great concern to me.*

b. Add to these the strictly impersonal verbs : es ahnt mir, *I forbode ;* es beliebt mir, *I choose ;* es ekelt mir, *I am disgusted ;* es gebricht mir, *I lack ;* es graut mir, *I abhor ;* es grauſet mir, *I shudder ;* es ſchaudert mir, *I shudder ;* es ſchwindelt mir, *I am giddy ;* es träumt mir, *I dream.*

3. With passive verbs (including geſchehen), and sometimes after werden in the sense of zu teil werden ; e. g., da

wird der Geiſt euch wohl dreſſiert, *there your mind will be well trained* (G.); da ward der Tapferkeit ihr Lohn, *then bravery got its reward* (G.); ein Unrecht iſt mir geſchehen, *a wrong has been done me.*

4. As 'ethical' dative—a personal pronoun interjected loosely in the sentence to indicate indirect interest or sympathetic concern on the part of the speaker or listener; e. g., 'nen Apfel ſchießt der Vater dir vom Baum, *father can shoot an apple from the tree for you* (S.); er hat euch herzlich dran gedacht, *he thought of it earnestly, you'll be glad to hear* (G.); geht mir, nichts weiter davon! *go, I say, no more of that* (S.)!

260. The Dative with Adjectives. A large number of adjectives govern the dative, the most of them occurring chiefly in the predicate; e. g., ich bin ſonſt allen Menſchen gut, *I am kindly disposed to all other men* (G.); die Höflichkeit iſt euch geläufig, *politeness is natural to you* (G.); er iſt dir neidiſch, *he is envious of you* (S.).

1. The adjectives that govern the dat. have meanings similar to those given for verbs in § 257, 1. The list includes, first, participial adjectives from verbs that govern the dat., as entſprechend, *corresponding;* paſſend, *fitting;* angemeſſen, *adapted;* secondly, a large number of words in bar, lich and ig. These suffixes either form passive verbals (the dat. denoting the object for which the action is feasible), as denkbar, *thinkable,* or else they mean *replete with, having the character of,* and the dat. denotes the object toward which the quality is manifested; e. g., dankbar, *grateful;* freundlich, *friendly;* günſtig, *favorable.*

2. Of adjectives not included under the foregoing heads the following are the most common:

abhold, *unfriendly.*
ähnlich, *similar.*
(an)gehörig, *belonging.*
angenehm, *pleasant.*
bekannt, *known.*
benachbart, *neighboring.*
bequem, *comfortable.*
eigen(tümlich), *peculiar.*
feind(lich), *hostile.*
fremd, *strange.*
folgſam, *obedient.*
gehorſam, *obedient.*
gelegen, *opportune.*
gemein(ſam), *common.*
gleich, *like.*
gut, *kindly disposed.*
heilſam, *wholesome.*
hold, *gracious.*
leicht, *easy.*
lieb, *dear.*
nahe, *near.*
neidiſch, *envious.*
ſchwer, *difficult.*
teuer, *dear.*
treu, *true.*
vorteilhaft, *helpful.*
wert, *dear.*
willkommen, *welcome.*
wünſchenswert, *desirable.*

a. Add to these negative compounds with un, as unangenehm, untreu; also a number of specialized perfect participles, from verbs which may not elsewhere govern the dative; as angeboren, *innate;* beſchieden, *destined;* ergeben, *devoted;* erwünſcht, *wished for;* gelegen, *opportune;* geneigt, *inclined;* gewachſen, *equal;* gewogen, *well disposed;* überlegen, *superior;* unverhofft, *unhoped for;* verbunden, *obliged;* verhaßt, *hateful;* verwandt, *akin.* Besides abhold there are also several other compounds of ab, in which the prefix denotes *aloofness;* e. g., abbrüchig, abtrünnig, *recreant.*

b. A few other adjectives take the dat. when used in the predicate or adverbially in impersonal phrases; e. g., es iſt mir angſt, *I am anxious;* es macht mir bange, *it makes me anxious;* es iſt mir recht, *it suits me;* es thut mir leid, *I am sorry.*

c. With many of the above named adjectives a prepositional construction is admissible; thus für with the acc. after the passive verbals (es iſt für mich denkbar, instead of es iſt mir denkbar), and also after angenehm, heilſam, gut, paſſend, vorteilhaft, and others; gegen with acc. after freundlich, feindlich, gehorſam, treu, and von with dat. after compounds of ab and ent.

261. The Dative with Nouns is rare, but occurs now and then in the classics; e. g., ein Muſter Bürgern und Bauern, *a model for citizens and farmers* (G.); Gewißheit einem neuen Bunde, *certainty to a new covenant* (G.).

1. When it seems to occur in expressions of wishing it is really dependent on a suppressed verb; e. g., Gott ſei Dank, *thanks be (given) to God;* Heil der Jungfrau! *hail to the Maid* (S.)! weh dir! *woe to thee!*

a. Closely akin to this is the dat. with interjections, which is common after wohl; e. g., wohl dir! *well for thee.* After other interjections it is rare; but Schiller has pfui den Elenden! *out upon the wretches!* and Goethe, o den trefflichen Menſchen! *O, the excellent people!*

262. The Dative with Prepositions. There are sixteen prepositions that now regularly take the dative, nine that take the dative or accusative according to the nature of the construction, and several more that *may* take the dative instead of some other more usual construction. For lists and illustrations see §§ 376–7.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

263. The Accusative as Direct Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; e. g., ich lieb' dich, mich reizt deine ſchöne Geſtalt, *I love thee, thy beautiful form charms me* (G.).

a. The object may denote the result of the verbal action and is then called a 'factitive' object; e. g., einen Brief ſchreiben, *to write a letter.*

1. Certain verbs vary between the transitive and the intransitive construction; thus:

a. Ankommen, in the sense of *come over*, and verſichern, *assure*, which usually take the acc., occur also with the dat.

b. A few others which usually take the dat. occur in the classics with the acc. Such are begegnen, *meet;* helfen, *help;* ſchmeicheln, *flatter*, and the impersonals dünken, *seem;* ekeln, *disgust;* grauen and grauſen, *horrify.* After koſten, *cost*, the personal object may be either dat. or acc.; es koſtet dir (or dich) zehn Mark, *it costs you ten marks.*

c. With others the case depends upon the meaning, or the nature of the construction. Thus bezahlen, *pay*, takes a dat. of the person, an acc. of the thing (er bezahlte mir das Geld); but if there is only a personal object it may stand in the acc. (er bezahlte mich).—Nachahmen, *imitate*, may also take a dat. of the person, and an acc. of the thing. If there is but one object, it may stand in either case, but dem Lehrer nachahmen means *to take the teacher as a model*, while den Lehrer nachahmen means *to ape him maliciously.*—Rufen, *call*, with acc. = *summon*, with dat., *call to.* Cf. further §§ 249, 3, *a*, and 257, 1, *a*.

2. Observe that many verbs which are intransitive in the simple form have transitive compounds of kindred meaning; e. g., dem Rate folgen, but den Rat befolgen, *to follow the advice;* auf eine Frage antworten, but eine Frage beantworten, *to answer a question;* einem ſein Geld rauben, but einen ſeines Geldes berauben, *to rob one of one's money.*

3. After certain impersonal verbs the accusative object, denoting the person concerned, looks as if it were the subject of an intransitive verb; e. g., ihn ſchläfert, *he is drowsy;* mich dünkt, *methinks* (but also mir dünkt, see above under **1**, *b*); mich hungert, *I am hungry.* Here belong, further, es

dürſtet, ekelt, friert, ſchaudert mich, *I am thirsty, disgusted, cold, horrified.* All are really transitive, es dünkt mich, meaning *it causes me to think*, ihn ſchläfert, *it makes him drowsy*, etc.

a. A much larger number of transitive verbs, not regularly impersonal, can be used impersonally with an object which may or may not be literally translatable; e. g., es freut mich, *I am glad;* mich überläuft's, *I am all of a tremble;* es faßt mich kalt beim Schopfe, *it is as if a cold hand seized me by the forelock* (G.). Es giebt, *there is, there are*, with acc. object, is equivalent (but see § 340) to a form of ſein, with predicate nom. Notice further the use of the acc. in es ſetzt Hiebe, *they are coming to blows, there is a fight on*, and in es hat Gefahr, *there is danger.* On the es in these idioms see § 303, 1, *a.*

264. The Cognate Accusative. Some intransitive verbs may take, in the accusative, an object which simply repeats, in the form of a noun, the idea of the verb; e. g., ſie ſtirbt einen edlen Tod, *she will die a noble death* (G.); ich möchte bittre Thränen weinen, *I could weep bitter tears* (G.); gar ſchöne Spiele ſpiel' ich mit dir, *very beautiful games I will play with thee* (G.).

1. In like manner an intransitive verb may take a factitive object; e. g., der Lenz lächelt ſeinen Gruß, *Spring smiles its greeting;* was grinſeſt du mir her? *what art thou grinning at me* (G.)?

265. The Accusative as Secondary Object. There are several verbs which may take two objects in the accusative; e. g., die Muſe hatte den Äſopus ſeine Fabeln gelehrt, *the Muse had taught Æsop his fables* (L.); die Hoffnung nenn' ich meine Göttin noch, *I still call Hope my goddess* (S.). The construction may be considered under three heads, as follows:

1. The two objects are the person acted upon and the thing done. Here belong lehren, *teach*, and sometimes also, but only when the thing-object is a neuter pronoun, bitten and fragen, *ask*, bereden and überreden, *persuade;* e. g., lehre mich die wahre Weisheit, *teach me true wisdom;* ich will dich etwas fragen, *I want to ask you something;* ich bitte dich

nur dies, *I ask you only this;* ihr werdet mich das nicht überreden, *you will not persuade me (of) that.* See under *d* below.

a. But after lehren one meets also with a dat. of the person; e.g., nur das Leben lehret jedem, was er sei, *only life teaches every one what he is* (G.). The German of to-day tends to avoid the double acc. with lehren as pedantic; instead of er lehrt mich (die) Musik, *he teaches me music*, say er unterrichtet mich in der Musik. After fragen, nach with dat. is used; after bitten, um with acc.; e. g., ich fragte ihn nach dem Wege, *I asked him the way;* ich bat ihn um Hilfe, *I asked him for help.*

b. With wissen lassen, *tell*, sehen lassen, *show*, and the like, when an infinitive takes the place of the thing-object, the acc. is the rule, but the dat. a not infrequent exception; e. g., laß mich deine Schätze sehen, *let me see your treasures;* but laß es mir durch Eintracht sehen, *prove it to me by harmony* (G.). So, too, the dat. may follow heißen, *bid*, when there is no infinitive; e. g., wer hieß ihm das? *who bade him that* (L.)? —instead of wer hieß ihn das thun?

c. By a confusion, familiar also in English, lernen, *learn*, is sometimes used with the sense and the construction of lehren; e. g., ich lerne sie allerlei lustige Lieder, *I am 'learning' her all sorts of jolly songs* (G.). But this is not good German.

d. In the phrase es nimmt mich Wunder, *I wonder at it*, es is really an old gen. of cause (*wonder seizes me because of it*) which came to be felt as a nom. So also the pronominal acc. after bitten, fragen, bereden and überreden, seems to have resulted from mistaking the es or eines for an acc. in such phrases as ich bitte dich's, ich bitte dich nur eines, and then extending the analogy. In the phrase jemand Lügen strafen, *accuse one of lying*, which looks like an instance of two accusatives, Lügen is probably an old gen. of cause (*chide one for lying*).

2. The two objects are the person or thing named and the name, the verbs those meaning *to call* (nennen, heißen, schelten, schimpfen, taufen); e. g., du nennst dich einen Teil, *you call yourself a part* (G.); ich darf mich nicht des Glückes Liebling schelten, *I cannot call myself a favorite of Fortune* (S.).

a. After verbs of making, choosing, appointing—machen, wählen, erwählen, ernennen — what would be in English the second or factitive object is usually put in the dat. with zu; e. g., die Verzweiflung macht mich zur Furie, zum Tier, *makes me a fury, a beast* (S.); der Reichstag erwählte Rudolf zum Kaiser, *elected Rudolf emperor.*

3. The second object is an appositive with als or wie. The verbs are especially those of regarding, representing, knowing, finding, but many others admit the construction; e. g., ihr habt mich ſtets als eine Feindin nur betrachtet, *you have always regarded me only as an enemy* (S.); das Alter findet uns nur noch als wahre Kinder, *old age finds us still real children* (G.); du behandelſt mich wie jene Katze, *you treat me like the cat in the fable* (G.).

a. Als denotes the character or capacity, wie the manner, in which the first object is concerned; e. g., man betrachtete ihn als Spion und behandelte ihn wie einen Hund, *they regarded him as a spy and treated him like a dog.*

b. For the nom. instead of the second object after a reflexive verb see § 271, 3.

c. Certain verbs of regarding and representing, as achten, halten, ausgeben, erklären, are most often followed by für with acc.; e. g., acht' es nicht für Raub, *do not esteem it a derogation* (G.); für was hältſt du das Tier? *for what do you take the beast* (G.)?

266. The Adverbial Accusative. The accusative may be used to denote various adverbial relations, as follows:

1. The way; e. g., wandle deine fürchterliche Straße, *go thy fearful way* (S.); doch ziehen ſie ihren Weg dahin, er geht den ſeinen, *but they go on their way, he goes his* (G.).

a. As used with intransitive verbs the acc. of the way might be regarded as a cognate acc., only we cannot separate er ging den kürzeſten Weg from er ſandte mich den kürzeſten Weg, both of which are good German. This acc. is often accompanied by an adverb of direction; e. g., er ging die Treppe hinauf, *he went up the steps;* der Landvogt führt ihn den See herauf, *is bringing him up the lake* (S.).

2. Time; e. g., wir müſſen fort noch dieſe Nacht, *we must go this very night;* und träte ſie den Augenblick herein, *and were she to enter this moment* (G.); er leert' ihn jeden Schmaus, *he drained it at every feast* (G.).

a. As we have seen above, time is also denoted by the gen. In general the gen. is less definite, or is used in phrases implying repetition

or custom ; e. g., eines Abends, *one evening ;* eines ſchönen Tages (indefinite time) ; des Abends, nachts, vormittags (custom). In the phrase jeden Abend, *every evening*, the idea of repetition is contained in jeden. Distinguish the acc. of time in gleich dieſen Augenblick, *this very moment*, from the acc. of measure, in warte einen Augenblick, *wait a moment.*

b. Note the use of Ende, *end*, Mitte, *middle*, Anfang, *beginning*, without article before the name of a month ; e. g., er kehrte Ende März nach Hauſe, *he returned home the last of March.*

3. Measure of time, space, weight and cost ; e. g., er iſt ſchon einen Monat hier, *has been here a month ;* wir gingen eine Strecke weiter, *we went a piece further ;* es wiegt einen Centner, *it weighs a hundred ;* es koſtet ſechs Mark, *it costs six marks.*

a. Measure of difference after an adjective was formerly expressed by a gen. and traces of the construction are found in the classics ; e.g., eines Hauptes länger als die Ritter alle, *a head taller than all the knights* (W.). One would now say länger um ein Haupt.

b. The acc. of measure is very often accompanied by an adjective or adverb ; e. g., drei Jahre alt ; ſechs Fuß hoch ; eine Elle breit ; drei Meilen entfernt.

267. The Accusative Absolute. The accusative is often used absolutely, as if dependent upon habend understood; e. g., das Schwert im Herzen blickſt du hinauf, *the sword in thy heart, thou lookest up* (G.) ; ich eile fort, vor mir den Tag und hinter mir die Nacht, *I hasten on, the day before me and the night behind* (G.). So also in set phrases ; e. g., ſie ruhten atmend Arm in Arm, *they rested, panting, arm in arm* (G.).

1. This accusative is often connected with a perfect participle used absolutely ; e. g., wenn ich ſo ſaß, den Ellenbogen aufgeſtemmt, *when I would sit thus, with my elbow propped up* (G.) ; ſchon den Hals entblößt, kniet' ich auf dem Mantel, *my neck already bared, I was kneeling on my mantle* (L.).

2. Different is the acc. dependent upon a verb of wishing or offering; e. g., guten Morgen! *good morning!* dieſen Kuß der ganzen Welt! *this kiss to the whole world* (S.) !

3. Note finally, in this connection, the occasional use of the acc. with an interjection ; e. g., pfui dich ! *fie upon you!* o mich vergeßlichen! *oh me, forgetful!* i. e., *how forgetful I am* (L.).

268. The Accusative with Prepositions. The accusative is always used after eight prepositions and sometimes after nine others. For lists see §§ 376–7.

269. The Accusative with Adjectives. A few adjectives that regularly take the genitive admit the accusative instead. See § 252, 1, *a*.

APPOSITION.

270. Immediate Apposition. An appositive agrees in case with its antecedent; e. g., was können wir, ein Volk der Hirten? *what can we do, a race of shepherds* (S.)? das Hauptaugenmerk mein, des Geognosten, *the chief concern of me, the geologist* (G.); trink ihn aus, den Trank der Labe, *drink it up, the draught of solace* (G.).

1. A noun in apposition with a sentence is put in the nominative; e. g., Pappenheim starb gleich am folgenden Tag, ein unersetzlicher Verlust für das kaiserliche Heer, *Pappenheim died the very next day, an irremediable loss for the imperial army* (S.).

2. For titles in apposition with proper names see § 285.

271. Mediate Apposition. Apposition may be mediated by als or wie (cf. § 242, 2); e. g., komm' ich als Gattin? *do I come as wife* (G.)? wie einen Kreisel trieb's mich um, *like a top it sent me around* (S.).

1. An appositive with als may denote cause, real or supposed; e. g., mir, als dem ältesten, fiel es zu, *it fell to me as the oldest;* am 24sten als am Tage, wo —, *on the 24th, that being the day on which*— (G.). Such an appositive may be used to explain an adverb; e. g., doch morgen, als am ersten Ostertage, *but to-morrow, that being the first Easter holiday* (G.).

a. After als = *in the capacity of*, an appositive may stand in the nominative without regard to the case of its antecedent, and may even explain a possessive; e. g., die Anſprüche dieſes Menſchen als Dichter, *the claims of this man as poet;* ſeine Stellung als Haupt einer großen Partei, *his position as head of a great party.*

b. The rule of congruence in case holds also after als = *than;* e. g., das weiß niemand als ich, *no one but me knows that;* das ſag' ich keinem andern als ihm, *I will tell no one but him* (Gr.).

2. After wie in comparisons the nominative sometimes occurs without regard to the preceding case; e. g., einem Manne wie Sie kann es nicht an Gelde fehlen, *money cannot be lacking to a man like you* (L.).

3. After a reflexive pronoun one sometimes meets with the nominative instead of an appositional object; e. g., er bewährte ſich als treuer Freund, *proved himself a true friend;* ich unterzeichne mich als der Ihrige, *I sign myself 'yours';* er fühlt ſich bald ein Mann, *feels himself a man* (G.). But this construction is hardly to be approved except with true reflexives; for zeigt ſich als frecher Lügner, *shows himself a bold liar*, say rather frechen Lügner (Blatz). Still, Lessing wrote: Sie ſehen mich ein Raub der Wellen, *you see me a prey to the waves.*

272. Spurious Apposition. As we have seen (§ 246, 1, *a*, § 253, 2, *a*), an appositional construction has taken the place of an older partitive genitive after indeclinables and also after nouns of weight, measure and number; e. g., etwas Gutes; mit etwas Gutem; ein Glas Wein; eine Menge Kinder.

1. After nouns of weight and measure the appositive generally denotes material and is uninflected; e. g., mit einem Glas Wein, *with a glass of wine;* gegen drei Pfund Silber, *about three pounds of silver.* After a noun of number the rule of apposition holds when the dat. plu. is concerned; e. g., mit drei Dutzend Eiern, *with three dozen eggs;* aus einer Menge Beiſpielen, *from a multitude of examples.*

THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

273. Strong and Weak Declension.

The terms 'strong' and 'weak,' as applied to the declension of nouns, were introduced by Grimm (*Deutsche Grammatik* II, 597, *Geschichte der deutschen Sprache*, p. 652). Nouns with stem ending in a vowel he called 'strong' because they apply the case-ending directly, thus seeming to rely upon their own resources; whereas the 'weak' nouns need the support of an *n*-suffix. The names are fanciful, but convenient and in universal use. It is therefore best to keep them, though they have little force as applied to modern German, in which the old vowel-stems no longer appear as such and the original conditions are in other respects very much obscured.

THE STRONG DECLENSION.

274. The First Class. Besides the nouns specified in § 79, the First Class contains one masculine in e, viz., Käſe, *cheese*. Here belong also verbal nouns (infinitives) in (e)n, including Sein and Thun, which are the only monosyllables. But infinitives form no plural.

1. The nouns of Class 1 which have umlaut as plural-sign are as follows, the * marking those in which it is optional:

Acker, *field.*	*Hammel *wether.*	Nagel, *nail.*
Apfel, *apple.*	Hammer, *hammer.*	Ofen, *stove.*
Boden, *ground.*	Handel, *trade.*	Sattel, *saddle.*
*Bogen, *bow.*	Kloſter, *convent.*	*Schaden, *injury.*
Bruder, *brother.*	*Laden, *store.*	Schnabel, *beak.*
*Faden, *thread.*	Mangel, *defect.*	Schwager, *brother-in-law.*
Garten, *garden.*	Mantel, *mantle.*	Tochter, *daughter.*
Graben, *trench.*	Mutter, *mother*	Vater, *father.*
Hafen, *haven.*	Nabel, *navel.*	Vogel, *bird.*

a. Of the above all are mas. except Kloſter, n., Mutter, f., and Tochter, f. —Not good, though sometimes seen and more often heard, are the plurals Käſten, *boxes;* Krägen, *collars;* Läger, *camps;* Mägen, *stomachs;* Wägen, *wagons;* Wäſſer, *waters.* Some also condemn Bögen as bad.—It is usual to distinguish between Fenſterladen, *shutters*, and Kaufläden, *stores.*

b. The nouns mentioned in § 279, 2, may be regarded as of this class if we posit as nom. the form in en.

275. The Second Class. For the genitive and dative of monosyllables the long forms, e. g. Tages, Tage, are to be looked upon as the normal literary usage ; but the short forms Tags, Tag, are common in all styles. In poetry and studied prose rhythm is often a deciding factor in the choice ; in the case of compounds, the accent ; thus Vo'rſtands, but Verſta'ndes.

a. Some authorities, e. g. Blatz, state that the dropping of *e* is more apt to occur after a long stem-vowel ; i. e., that Baums, Baum, Tags, Tag, are more common than Falls, Fall, Sinns, Sinn. But no great importance can be attached to this principle. For the dat. after a preposition numerous set phrases prefer the short form ; e. g., zu Fuß, *on foot;* mit Fleiß, *purposely;* mit Recht, *rightly;* zum Teil, *in part;* mit Weib und Kind, *with wife and child.* But others have the long form ; as zu Hauſe, *at home;* bei Tiſche, *at table.*

1. The monosyllabic feminines of Class 2 are as follows (all with umlaut in the plural, if possible):

Angſt, *distress.*	Hand, *hand.*	Maus, *mouse.*
Art, *axe.*	Haut, *skin.*	Nacht, *night.*
Bank, *bench.*	Kluft, *gorge.*	Naht, *seam.*
Braut, *bride.*	Kraft, *force.*	Not, *need.*
Brunſt, *heat.*	Kuh, *cow.*	Nuß, *nut.*
Bruſt, *breast.*	-kunft, *coming.*	Schnur, *string.*
Fauſt, *fist.*	Kunſt, *art.*	Schwulſt, *swelling.*
Flucht, *flight.*	Laus, *louse.*	Stadt, *city.*
Frucht, *fruit.*	Luft, *air.*	Wand, *wall.*
Gans, *goose.*	Luſt, *delight.*	Wurſt, *sausage.*
Gruft, *grave.*	Macht, *might.*	Zucht, *breeding.*
Gunſt, *favor.*	Magd, *maid.*	Zunft, *guild.*

a. Bank = *bank,* is weak.—The phrase zu Gunſten, *in favor of,* also written zu gunſten, preserves an old dat. plu. without umlaut (cf. § 238, 1, *a.*) Of like character is Handen in the phrases zu Handen, *at hand,* abhanden, *missing,* vorhanden, *existent.* Note, further, nachten, instead of Nächte, in Weihnachten, *Christmas.* The adverb nachts, *at night,* as if from a mas. stem, descends from an old *nahtes,* formed after the analogy of *tages.*—The verbal -kunft is not used as a separate word, but occurs in numerous compounds, as Ankunft, *arrival,* plu. Ankünfte.—Schwulſt is sometimes weak.

2. As a rule masculine monosyllables of Class 2 have umlaut in the plural. The following, however, are

without it in the normal usage of to-day, though many of them also occur with it, especially in early writers:

Aal, *eel.*	Herzog, *duke.*	Schall, *sound.*
Aar, *eagle.*	Huf, *hoof.*	Schluck, *swallow.*
Amboß, *anvil.*	Hund, *dog.*	Schmuck, *ornament.*
Arm, *arm.*	Kran, *crane.*	Schuft, *wretch.*
Bau, *building.*	Lachs, *salmon.*	Schuh, *shoe.*
Dachs, *badger.*	Laut, *sound.*	Spalt, *cleft.*
Docht, *wick.*	Luchs, *lynx.*	Star, *starling.*
Dolch, *dagger.*	Lump, *rascal.*	Stoff, *stuff.*
Dom, *cathedral.*	Molch, *salamander.*	Strolch, *lubber.*
Druck, *print.*	Mord, *murder.*	Strauß, *ostrich.*
Erlaß, *edict.*	Ort, *place.*	-ſuch, *seeking.*
Forſt, *forest.*	Park, *park.*	Takt, *tempo.*
Gau, *district.*	Pfad, *path.*	Tag, *day.*
Gemahl, *consort.*	Plan, *plan.*	Thron, *throne.*
Grad, *degree.*	Puls, *pulse.*	Tod, *death.*
Hall, *sound.*	Punkt, *point.*	Trupp, *troop.*
Halm, *stalk.*	Quaſt, *tassel.*	Tuſch, *flourish.*
Hauch, *breath.*	Roſt, *gridiron.*	Verluſt, *loss.*

a. The plu. Baue is rare, its place being taken by Bauten.—Notice Drucke, *prints*, and Abdrucke, *deprints*, but Ausdrücke, *expressions*, and Eindrücke, *impressions*.—The plu. Orte prevails in the collective use; e. g., an allen Orten (cf. the adverb allerorten), *in all places*, but zwei Örter, einzelne Örter.—The usual plu. of Park is not Parke, but Parks. —The plurals Morde, Schmucke, Tode are rare, their place being taken by Mordthaten, Schmuckſachen and Todesfälle.—Under -ſuch are included Beſuch, *visit*, Verſuch, *attempt*, and others.—Forſt, Gau, Halm, Lump, Strauß, Thron occur also with weak forms, especially in the plu.; but the strong are to be preferred.

3. Monosyllabic neuters of Class 2 are regularly without umlaut, but there are two or three exceptions. Das Chor, *choir of a church* (der Chor = *chorus*), makes die Chöre.—Das Floß, *raft*, usually has die Floße, but sometimes Flöße, also Flößer.—Das Boot, *boat*, has Boote, rarely Böte.—Die Röhre, as plural of das Rohr, *reed*, no longer occurs.

4. To Class 2 belong a large number of borrowed words (both masculine and neuter), with accent on the ultima; e. g., der Admira'l, *admiral;* der Deka'n, *deacon;* der Kapitä'n, *captain;* der Offizie'r, *officer;* der Plura'l, *plural;* das Tale'nt, *talent;* das Manda't, *mandate;* das Telegra'mm, *telegram;* das Adjekti'v, *adjective.*

a. As a rule such foreign words are without umlaut in the plu., but there are a few well-established exceptions, viz.: Altäre, *altars;* Biſchöfe, *bishops;* Choräle, *chorals;* Kanäle, *canals;* Kapläne, *chaplains;* Kardinäle, *cardinals;* Moräſte, *marshes;* Paläſte, *palaces.* On the other hand, the form without umlaut is still preferred in Admirale, *admirals;* Generale, *generals;* Korporale, *corporals.* Teno'r, *tenor,* has both Tenore and Tenöre.

b. Foreign words in s with preceding short vowel double the s in inflection; e. g., Brama'rbas, *boaster,* plu. -aſſe; I'ltis, *polecat,* plu. -iſſe; O'mnibus, *omnibus,* plu. -uſſe. But Topa's, *topaz,* with long a, plu. Topaſe.

276. The Third Class. The monosyllabic neuters, all with umlaut in the plural if possible, are as follows (the * calling attention to a remark under *a* below):

*Aas, *carcass.*	*Gewand, *garment.*	Loch, *hole.*
Amt, *office.*	Glas, *glass.*	*Mal, *mark.*
Bad, *bath.*	Glied, *limb.*	Mahl, *meal.*
*Band, *ribbon.*	Grab, *grave.*	Maul, *mouth.*
Bild, *picture.*	Gras, *grass.*	Neſt, *nest.*
Blatt, *leaf.*	Gut, *estate.*	Pfand, *pledge.*
*Brett, *board.*	*Haupt, *head.*	Rad, *wheel.*
Buch, *book.*	Haus, *house.*	Reis, *twig.*
Dach, *roof.*	Holz, *wood.*	Rind, *cow, ox.*
*Ding, *thing.*	Horn, *horn.*	*Scheit, *billet.*
Dorf, *village.*	Huhn, *fowl.*	*Schild, *shield.*
Ei, *egg.*	*Joch, *yoke.*	Schloß, *castle.*
Fach, *specialty.*	Kalb, *calf.*	Schwert, *sword.*
Faß, *cask.*	Kind, *child.*	Stift, *peg.*
Feld, *field.*	Kleid, *dress.*	Thal, *valley.*
*Gehalt, *salary.*	Korn, *grain.*	*Trumm, *fragment.*
Geld, *money.*	Kraut, *weed.*	*Tuch, *cloth.*
Gemach, *room.*	Lamm, *lamb.*	Volk, *folk.*
*Gemüt, *spirit.*	*Land, *land.*	Wamms, *jacket.*
Geſchlecht, *race*	*Licht, *light.*	Weib, *woman.*
*Geſicht, *face.*	Lied, *song.*	*Wort, *word.*
Geſpenſt, *ghost.*		

a. Aas; plu. (rare) Äſer, also Aaſe.—Band; plu. Bänder, *ribbons,* but Bande, *bonds;* Bände, from der Band, = *volumes.*—Brett; plu. usually Bretter, but often -brette in compounds.—Ding; regular plu. Dinge, but sometimes Dinger, especially as applied to girls, as in *Faust,* l. 3693, ihr armen, armen Dinger.—Gehalt; der Gehalt, die Gehalte, are better than das Gehalt, die Gehälter.—Gemüt; plu. Gemüter,

rarely Gemüte.—Geſicht; plu. Geſichter, *faces*, but Geſichte, *sights, visions.*—Gewand; plu. Gewänder, rarely Gewande.—Haupt; plu. Häupter, but note the phrase zu Häupten, *at the head.*—Joch, plu. Joche, but sometimes Jöcher in a technical sense.—Land; plu. Länder; Lande is poetic and is also met with in compounds, as die Rheinlande.—Licht; plu. Lichter, *lights*, but Lichte, *candles.*—Mal; plu. Mäler, *marks*, but Male, *times.* Denkmal, *monument*, has =mäler or =male.—Scheit; plu. Scheiter and Scheite.—Schild; usually der Schild, die Schilde, but also das Schild, die Schilder, especially in the sense of *signs.*—Trumm; used only in plu., die Trümmer; and even this has been replaced in part by the weak Trümmern.—Tuch; plu. Tücher, *pieces of cloth, shawls;* also in compounds, as Handtücher, *towels;* but Tuche, *kinds of cloth.*—Wort; plu. Wörter, *disconnected vocables;* but Worte, *words*, in connected discourse.

b. The foreign neuters that have come into Class 3 are Hoſpita'l or Spita'l, *hospital*, plu. =ale or =äler; Regime'nt, *regiment*, plu. =er for military regiments, but =e in other senses; Kamiſo'l, *waistcoat*, plu. =ole or =öler; Kapitä'l, *capital of a column*, plu. =äle or =äler.

c. For the uninflected plu. of monosyllabic neuters see § 283, 1.

1. The masculines of Class 3 are:

Böſewicht, *villain.*	Mann, *man.*	Strauß, *nosegay.*
Geiſt, *spirit.*	Ort, *place*	Vormund, *guardian.*
Gott, *God.*	Rand, *rim.*	Wald, *forest.*
Irrtum, *error.*	Reichtum, *riches.*	Wurm, *worm.*
Leib, *body.*	Strauch, *bush.*	

a. These words are interlopers in Class 3, and the most of them have, or have had, secondary plurals in e. Böſewichte is less common than Böſewichter—Geiſte is archaic or technical, = *essences.*—Leibe is archaic.—Mann forms Mannen in the sense of *vassals.*—For Ort see § 275, 2, *a.*—The plu. Rande is rare.—Sträuche is better than Sträucher, and Sträuße than Sträußer.—Wälde and Würme are archaic.

b. Note the anomalous Wiking, *viking*, plu. Wikinger.

THE WEAK DECLENSION.

277. Feminines. The monosyllabic nouns referred to in § 92 number about sixty, some of the most common being Bahn, *track;* Form, *form;* Frau, *wife;* Pflicht, *duty;* See, *sea;* That, *deed;* Welt, *world;* Zahl, *number;* Zeit, *time.* A complete list need not be given, since all monosyllabic feminines not included under § 275, 1, are weak. The polysyllabic feminines are countless (cf. § 93, 1).

1. In Old German weak feminines took the ending (e)n in the gen. dat. and acc. sing. The inflection is now obsolete except in auf Erden, *on earth*, but is common in the classics as a poetic license; e. g., im Glanz der Sonnen, *in the light of the sun* (S.).

278. Masculines. Here are included:

1. Nouns in e and a number of others that have lost an e, thus becoming (as a rule) monosyllabic. These last are:

Bär, *bear.*	Hageſtolz, *bachelor.*	Ochſ(e), *ox.*
Burſch(e), *lad.*	Held, *hero.*	Prinz, *prince.*
Chriſt, *Christian.*	Herr, *sir.*	Pfau, *peacock.*
Fink(e), *finch.*	Hirt, *shepherd.*	Schenk, *cup-bearer.*
Fürſt, *prince.*	Lump, *vagabond.*	Spatz, *sparrow.*
Geck, *fop.*	Menſch, *man.*	Sproß, *scion.*
Genoß, *companion.*	Mohr, *Moor.*	Steinmetz, *mason.*
Geſell(e), *companion.*	Narr, *fool.*	Thor, *fool.*
Graf, *count.*		

a. Some of the above, as Burſche (in the plu.), Fink (in the sing.), Geck, Hageſtolz, Lump, Pfau, admit of strong inflection. Note also the phrase Narrs genug, *fool enough* (W.).

b. The titles Fürſt, Graf, Prinz (but not Herr) are regularly uninflected when used without the article before a proper name; e. g., Fürſt Bismarcks Reden, *Prince Bismarck's speeches;* ein Brief an Graf von Moltke, *a letter to Count Von Moltke;* mit Prinz Karl, *with Prince Karl;* but Herrn Schmidts Haus, ein Brief an Herrn Schmidt, etc. Note also the undeclined title in mich hat er erwählt zum Fürſt der Liebe, *he has chosen me Prince of Love* (S.); willſt du der Liebe Fürſt dich würdig nennen (S.).

2. The bulk of foreign words in t, ant, ent, denoting persons; also words ending in the Greek suffixes arch, graph, iſt, krat, log(e), nom, ſoph, and some others not easily classifiable; e. g., Poe't, *poet;* Bandi't, *bandit;* Proteſta'nt, *protestant;* Refere'nt, *reviewer;* Mona'rch, *monarch;* Geogra'ph, *geographer;* Soziali'ſt, *socialist;* Demokra't, *democrat;* Philolo'g, *philologist;* Aſtrono'm, *astronomer;* Philoſo'ph, *philosopher;* Satra'p, *satrap;* Katholi'k, *catholic;* Rebe'll, *rebel;* Vetera'n, *veteran.*

a. Foreign words in t and nt that do not denote persons are mostly strong, second class, as Sala't, *salad;* Grani't, *granite;* Mome'nt,

moment; Horizo'nt, *horizon.* But a few have come into the weak declension; e. g., Brilla'nt, *brilliant;* Elefa'nt, *elephant;* Plane't, *planet;* Kome't, *comet.*

3. Ethnic names in ar, as Barba'r, *barbarian;* Bulga'r, *Bulgarian;* Janitſcha'r, *Janizary;* Magya'r, *Magyar;* Tata'r, *Tartar;* Ungar, *Hungarian.* Also Baier, *Bavarian,* and Pommer, *Pomeranian.*

THE MIXED DECLENSION.

279. Masculines. These may be grouped under three heads, to wit:

1. The following words, which are normally strong in the singular, but weak in the plural:

Bauer, *peasant.*	Nachbar, *neighbor.*	Stachel, *goad.*
Dorn, *thorn.*	Nerv, *nerve.*	Strahl, *ray.*
Gaum, *palate.*	Pſalm, *psalm.*	Unterthan, *subject.*
Gevatter, *gossip.*	See, *lake.*	Vetter, *cousin.*
Konſul, *consul.*	Sporn, *spur.*	Vorfahr, *ancestor.*
Maſt, *mast.*	Staat, *state.*	Zins, *interest.*
Muskel, *muscle.*		

a. The most of these occur also with weak forms in the sing. and strong in the plu. — Dorn has plu. Dornen = *thorns,* Dörner = *drills;* but one meets also with Dorne and Dörne. — Gaum is rare in the sing., its place being taken by Gaumen. — Muskel and Nerv are often fem., whence the weak plurals. — Sporn has plu. Sporen, less often Sporne and Sporen. — Stachel was once fem., whence the plu. Stachelu.

b. Several foreign words are of unsettled inflection; as Faſa'n, *pheasant;* gen. -s, plu. -en or -e; Magne't, *magnet;* gen. -s or -en, plu. -e or -en; Tribu'n, *tribune;* gen. -s or -en, plu. -e(n); Pede'll, *beadle;* gen. -s or -en, plu. -e(n).

c. In talk one often hears an n-plural where it does not belong; e. g., Pantoffeln, *slippers;* Stiefeln, *boots.* So also with neuters, as Möbeln, *furniture,* and even Fenſtern, *windows.*

2. Several nouns in e(n) with genitive in ens. These are for the most part weak nouns in e that developed a secondary nominative in en, which gave rise to the genitive in ens, the rest of the inflection remaining weak. In some cases the secondary nominative in en has become the

usual form. If we start with that, the entire group may be regarded as of Class 1, strong declension. The words, in the form now usual for the nominative, are:

Frieden, *peace.*	Glaube, *faith.*	Same, *seed.*
Funke, *spark.*	Haufen, *heap.*	Schaden, *injury.*
Gedanke, *thought.*	Name, *name.*	Wille, *will.*
Gefallen, *favor.*		

a. Buchſtabe, *letter*, and Schmerz, *pain*, sometimes form a gen. in ens, though they have no nom. in en (cf. the neuter Herz, § 97, 2, *a*). Fels, *rock*, originally strong, developed a secondary form, Felſen, under the influence of which Fels became weak; we have now nom. Fels and Felſen, gen. Felſes (rare), Felſen and Felſens, dat. Felſen and Fels, acc. Felſen and Fels, plu. Felſen (Felſe archaic).

3. Latin masculines in or, plu. o'ren, together with a few of Greek origin in on, plural o'nen; e. g., Do'ktor, plural Dokto'ren; Dä'mon, *demon*, plural Dämo'nen; Ä'on, *æon*, plural Äo'nen.

a. Paſtöre, for Paſtoren, is provincial. Tenore, or Tenöre, *tenors*, is of Italian, not Latin, origin.

280. Neuters. The neuters of the mixed declension are:

1. The following words:

Auge, *eye.*	Hemd(e), *shirt.*	Juwe'l, *jewel.*
Bett, *bed.*	Herz, *heart.*	Ohr, *ear.*
Ende, *end.*	Intereſſe, *interest.*	Weh, *pain.*

a. The older plurals Bette, Hemde, Hember are now practically obsolete. For the inflection of Herz see § 97, 2, *a.*— Juwel, sometimes mas., has also plu. Juwe'le.— Weh forms plu. Wehen only in the sense of *birth-pains.*

2. Latin words in um (together with a few that have dropped um), several in al and il, and most Greek words in ma; words in ium, al and il have the plural in ien if the Latin plural ended in *ia*. Examples with plural in en: Individuum, *individual*, Individuen; Verb(um), *verb*, Verben (but see § 281, 1); Inſe'kt, *insect*, Inſe'kten; Statu't, *statute*, Statu'ten; Drama, *drama*, Dramen; Thema, *theme*, Themen. With plural in ien: Minera'l, *mineral*, Minera'lien; Kapita'l, *capital*, Kapita'lien; Foſſi'l, *fossil*,

Foſſi'lien. Here belong also several plurals without singular; as Mobi'lien, *movables;* Natura'lien, *'specimens';* Rea'lien, *exact sciences.*

a. Greek words in ma that have lost their final vowel in German form the plu. in me; e. g., Axio'm, *axiom*, plu. Axio'me; Proble'm, *problem*, plu. Proble'me. Cf. § 281.

FOREIGN AND ANOMALOUS INFLECTIONS.

281. Latin and Greek Words that have become so far naturalized as to admit of German inflections are provided for in the preceding sections. It remains to consider those which, because of an intractable form, retain more or less the character of foreign words.

1. In the case of Latin and Greek words that have not become naturalized the nom. sing. is now generally used for the entire sing. (but a gen. in s is always permissible unless the word ends in a sibilant), the nom. plu. for the entire plu.; thus das Verbum, *the verb*, des Verbum(s), dem Verbum, die Verba, der Verba, etc. The practice of using Latin inflections in German discourse, though once very common, is now on the wane, and is hardly to be approved, though still often met with. For Goethe's Blätter des Codicis, *leaves of the codex*, one would now prefer Blätter des Codex. So also in allen dieſen Caſus (not Caſibus), *in all these cases;* die Bildung ſolcher Compoſita (not Compoſitorum), *the formation of such compounds.*

a. A few words in s that are thus indeclinable in the sing. form German plurals in en; e. g., Globus, *globe*, plu. Globen; Rhythmus, *rhythm*, plu. Rhythmen. So also words in ismus, *ism*, as Solöcismus, *solecism*, plu. Solöcismen. The plu. of Atlas, *atlas*, is Atla'nten; of Primas, *primate*, Prima'ten; of Klima, *climate*, Kli'mata or Kli'mate.

b. Words that admit a German plu. are sometimes given a foreign plu. instead; e. g., Adjekti'v, *adjective*, plu. Adjektive, or -a; Faktum, *fact*, plu. Fakten or Fakta.

282. The Plural in s. Words borrowed from languages that have a plural in *s* often retain such plural in German; e. g., Clowns, Klubs, Lords, Strikes, Parks, Beefſteaks, Checks, Babies, Bills, from the English, and Chefs, Genies, Abbés, Adieus, Arrangements, Bicycles, from the French.

1. A plu. in s is also sometimes given to words, both German and foreign, which are not nouns, but are used as such; e. g., die Facits,

the amounts (Lat. *facit, it makes*); die Amens, *the amens;* die Wenns und die Abers, *the ifs and the buts.*

2. Through Low-German influence a plu. in s is sometimes given (in familiar language or for humorous effect) to genuine German words instead of the regular form; e. g., Fräuleins, *misses;* Mädels, *girls;* Jungens, *lads;* Kerls, *fellows.*

283. Defective Inflection.

1. The poets, especially Goethe, sometimes drop the case-ending from the first of two nouns connected in the same construction; e. g., an Tier und Vögeln fehlt es nicht, *there is no lack of beasts and birds* (*Faust*, l. 238); von Sonn- und Welten, *of suns and worlds* (*ibid.*, l. 279).

2. Monosyllabic neuters, and also Mann, once formed an uninflected plu. identical in form with the nom. sing. Such plurals are common in early modern German, and even later in poetry; e. g., drei arme Kind, *three poor children* (G.); über vierzehn Jahr, *over fourteen years* (G.) There is no elision in such cases.

INFLECTION OF PROPER NAMES.

284. Personal Names. The brief statements in §§ 99–100 need to be supplemented as follows:

1. Down to about the beginning of this century names of persons were more fully inflected than at present, forming a gen. in ens as well as s, and a dat. and acc. in (e)n; e. g., Goethens, Goethen, Gertrudens, Gertruden. So, too, the gen. in s was used after the article; e. g., das Ansehn des Homers, *the prestige of Homer* (L.); die Leiden des jungen Werthers, *the sufferings of young Werther* (G.). With names in e or a sibilant the gen. in ens is still admissible, but is becoming quaint, though some authorities still advocate it; for Helenens, Marens, say rather Helenes, Mar'. (Colloquially, Fritz seine Bücher may take the place of Fritz' or Fritzens Bücher.) The dat. and acc. in en are still used to a certain extent, especially in baptismal names.

a. But when a proper name with preceding adjective and article is followed by the noun on which the gen. depends, the gen. in s is still the rule; thus one would say des jungen Werthers Leiden.

b. To mark the gen. an apostrophe is needed only after a sibilant; e. g., Voß' Schriften, *Voss writings;* but Schillers, Ciceros Briefe, *Schiller's, Cicero's letters.*

2. More restricted than formerly, again, is the use of Greek and Latin inflections; for Musäi Schriften *write* Musäus' Schriften or die Schriften des Musäus. Well-known classical names are apt to take

the article, after which, of course, there is no inflection; e. g., die Gedichte des Horaz, *the poems of Horace.* Biblical names still retain to a greater degree their Latin inflections; e. g., die Bücher Moſis, *the books of Moses;* die Briefe Pauli, *the letters of Paul.*

a. The name Jeſus Chriſtus forms gen. Jeſu Chriſti, dat. Jeſu Chriſto, acc. Jeſum Chriſtum.

3. A plu. of modern surnames is often formed in s; as die Grimms, die Brentanos, *the Grimms, the Brentanos.*

a. In phrases like bei Müllers, *at (the) Müllers'*, or Engels ſind verreiſt, *the Engels have gone away*, we have a gen. sing. (cf. § 246, 5, *d*) which has come to be felt as a plu.

b. Christian names form a plu., when one is needed, in e, en or s; as die Heinriche, die Maxen, die Ottos, die Berthas.

c. Latin names in o, gen. onis, make a plu. in nen or nen; as die Scipionen, die Catone.

d. Note finally die Judaſſe, *the Judases.* But classical names should not be treated thus; say die Plautus, not die Plautuſſe.

285. Names in Connection with Titles. The rule of apposition in § 270 does not fully cover the inflection of names used with titles. Thus:

1. When a name is preceded by a title (other than Herr) that is without the article, only the name is inflected; e. g., Kaiſer Wilhelms Regierung, or die Regierung Kaiſer Wilhelms, *the reign of Emperor William;* mit König Friedrichs Macht; Fürſt Bismarcks Reden; das Lied von Prinz Eugen; Doktor Schmidts Patienten; but Herrn Schmidts Haus; ein Brief an Herrn Schmidt.

a. If a preceding title has the article, then only the title is inflected, and even that may drop an s, not an en; e. g., die Regierung des Kaiſer(s) Wilhelm; die Reden des Fürſten Bismarck; die Wohnung des Doktor(s) Wagner.

b. For *the conduct of Fräulein Müller* one may say das Betragen des Fräuleins Müller, or, treating the title as fem., der Fräulein Müller. The last might be plu., an ambiguity which can be avoided by saying von Fräulein M. Des Fräulein M. is not to be approved, though often heard. Quite proper is Ihre Fräulein Tochter, nom. and acc., or Ihrer Fräulein Tochter, gen. and dat.

c. The practice of adding in to a title to denote the wife of a man bearing the title is obsolescent; for *Mrs. Dr.* say Frau Doktor; Frau

Doktorin means that the lady herself is a doctor. Still more obsolete is the addition of in to surnames to denote female members of the family, as Luiſe Millerin for Luiſe Miller (S.); die Karſchin, *Frau Karsch.*

2. A descriptive appositive must be declined whether the name is itself declined or not; e. g., die Wohnung des Doktor Wagner, des berühmten Naturforſchers, *of Dr. Wagner, the famous naturalist.*

3. When two or more names occur together only the last is subject to inflection; e. g., Ernſt Moritz Arndts Gedichte, *E. M. Arndt's poems.*

a. With names containing von the gen. inflection should go with the preceding name if the phrase denotes place or descent, but with the second if it denotes only nobility; e. g., die Anſprüche Rudolfs von Habsburg, *the claims of Rudolf of Hapsburg;* die Gedichte Heinrich von Kleiſts, *the poems of H. von Kleist.*

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

286. The Uninflected Attributive. The following statements are supplementary to § 101:

1. In poetry an adjective is often uninflected before a neuter noun (less often before a masculine or feminine) in the nominative and accusative singular; e. g., ein redlich Wort, *an honest word* (S.); ein furchtbar, wütend Schreckniſs, *a fearful, raging terror* (S.); lieb Knabe, *dear boy* (S.); hat Sie gut Bier und Wein (U.)? i. e., gutes Bier und guten Wein.

a. So, too, in colloquial phrases and ballad nicknames; e. g., bar Geld, *cash*; auf gut Glück, *for good luck;* Schön Süschen, *Fair Susie.*

2. An attributive adjective which follows its noun is uninflected. The usage occurs chiefly in poetry; e. g., Röslein rot, *little red rose;* bei einem Wirte wundermild, *with a wondrously generous host* (U.); der Räuber groß und wild, *the robber, tall and fierce;* ein Schloß ſo hoch und hehr, *a castle so high and grand;* mein Vater ſelig, *my late father.*

3. An uninflected adjective is sometimes used to characterize a measure, weight, coinage, or the like; e. g., ein Glas bayeriſch, *a glass of Bavarian (beer);* fünf Thaler bar, *five dollars cash.*

4. Where two or more adjectives occur together in verse, inflection is sometimes confined to the last; e. g., mit grauſam, teufeliſcher Luſt, *with cruel, fiendish delight* (S.);

ein ſtolz, verdrießlich, ſchwerer Narr, *a proud, peevish, stolid fool* (S.). Here grauſam, ſtolz and verdrießlich have the form but not the force of adverbs. Such cases must be distinguished from those in which a true adverb occurs, as in ein herrlich ſchön geformter Mann, *a man of gloriously beautiful form* (G.).

a. Official designations like Kaiſerlich Deutſche Poſt, *Imperial German Mail*, and Königlich Sächſiſche Regierung, *Royal Saxon Government*, fall under the head of compound adjectives (§ 109, 5).

5. Lauter, and the archaic eitel, are uninflected in the sense of *sheer, nothing but;* e. g., lauter Unſinn, *sheer nonsense;* mit lauter Waſſer, *with nothing but water;* but mit lauterem Waſſer, *with pure water.* So, too, genug, *enough*, which follows its noun; also, adjectives in erlei and several pronominals. For ganz and halb see § 109, 3.

287. Stems in Unaccented el, en, er show some difference of usage in the matter of contraction. Except before em and en, they usually drop the e of the stem unless both e's be retained; e. g., ein dunkler Tag; ein offnes Fenſter; and(e)re Leute; nichts Beſſeres or Beßres. Before em and en stems in el and en prefer to drop the e of the stem, those in er that of the ending; thus bei offnem Fenſter; mit edlem Stolz (but mit edelm Stolz is not uncommon); die ander(e)n (much better than die andren); zu was Beſſerm (better than Beßrem).

288. Variable Inflections. Certain cases of variation between strong and weak inflection require particular attention.

1. The use of the weak genitive before a noun in (e)s, without preceding article (§ 107, 5), as in voll frohen Lebens, *full of joyous life* (G.), is of quite modern origin (17th century). It is still condemned by some grammarians, but is common in the classics and prevails in the usage of to-day, though some affect the strong form. It is due to a feeling that two strong forms in s should not come together. Schiller has, in *Wallenstein*, both ſtehendes Fußes

and ſtehenden Fußes ; in *Tell*, both wildes Laufs and muntern Laufs. Goethe's usage is similarly inconsistent. Argument may be said to favor the strong form, usage the weak.

a. Pronominal adjectives prefer the strong form ; e. g., keineswegs, meines Wiſſens, jedes Umſtands, anderes Sinnes. In allenfalls and jedenfalls we have, according to Grimm, not a weak gen., but an acc. with adverbial s.

2. In the nom. of address the adjective is properly strong, as in werter Herr, *worthy sir;* geehrte Herren, *honored sirs.* But lieben Freunde is not uncommon for liebe Freunde.

3. The use of a weak adjective after all forms of der, dies, jen-, jed-, and after inflected forms of ein, kein and the possessives, is now a settled practice ; but exceptions are met with, especially after die, dieſe and jene in the nom. and acc. plu.

a. After the forms (nom.-acc. pl.) alle, andere, beide, einige, etliche, manche, mehrere, ſolche, viele, wenige, and also after gewiſſe, ſämtliche and verſchiedene, usage permits either strong or weak inflection, but seems to favor weak after alle, beide, manche, ſolche, and strong after the others. Except in the nom.-acc. pl. these words quite regularly weaken a following adjective.

b. After zweier and dreier strong inflection is the rule, but weak occurs.

4. With personal pronouns the rule is : weak inflection except after the nominative and accusative singular ; but strong forms occur after mir, dir, ihm, and also after uns and euch when accusative.

a. Strong inflection in these cases marks a less intimate association of noun and adjective, the latter, with its noun, being felt as an appositive even though not set off by a comma. Thus the usual dat. of du armes Kind is dir armen Kinde, but this easily becomes dir, armem Kinde. Cf. further: ihr ſchönen Damen, *ye fair ladies*, but ihr, ſchöne Damen, *you, fair ladies ;* euch, tapfre Helden, ſoll ein Weib bezwingen? *shall a woman conquer you, brave heroes?*

5. In general two successive adjectives are either both strong or both weak, according to what precedes ; e. g., guter alter (not alte) Wein ; ein ſchönes neues (not neue) Haus. But when the first adjective is a strong genitive or dative,

the second becomes weak if it is not co-ordinate in meaning with the first, but is a standing epithet of the noun; e. g., mit friſchem, klarem Waſſer, *with fresh, clear water*, but mit friſchem kölniſchen Waſſer, *with fresh cologne;* ein Muſter hoher ſittlichen Güte, *a model of high moral excellence*, i. e. a moral excellence which is high, not an excellence which is high and moral; von großem politiſchen Intereſſe, *of great political interest.* In such cases co-ordinate adjectives are usually separated by a comma.

a. In like manner the adjectives of reference which dispense with the article (§ 224, 3, *b*) may weaken a following adjective; e. g., folgender bedeutende Umſtand, *the following important circumstance.*

289. The Predicate Adjective. (Supplementary to § 110.)

1. The uninflected appositional predicate must be distinguished from the inflected attributive in agreement with a noun understood; e. g., an Hoffnung reich, im Glauben feſt, dacht' ich—, *rich in hope, firm in faith, I thought*— (G.); der Kaiſer, kühn durch die errungenen Siege, *the emperor, emboldened by the victories won* (S.); but alle Menſchen, ſchlechte wie auch gute, *all men, bad as well as good;* weiterer Verkehr, friedlicher und kriegeriſcher, *further intercourse, peaceful and warlike.*

a. While the appositional predicate is not rare, especially in participial constructions, it is much less common in German than in English. The latter is compelled to place the adjective after its noun whenever the adjective is qualified by a phrase; but in most such cases German prefers a prepositive attributive, the phrase being thrown in between the adjective and a preceding article. That is to say, such phrases as *a young woman proud of her beauty, a boy prone to idleness, in a manner very painful to me,* become in German, usually, eine junge, auf ihre Schönheit ſtolze Dame; ein zur Faulheit geneigter Knabe; in einer für mich höchſt ſchmerzlichen Weiſe.

2. Of the adjectives which are used only in the predicate and hence never inflected (§ 109, 4), the most important are as follows:

abhold, *unfriendly.*
abwendig, *alienated.*
anſichtig, *in sight.*
angſt, *anxious.*
ausfindig, *apparent.*
bereit, *ready.*
brach, *fallow.*
eingedenk, *mindful.*
feind, *hostile.*
gar, *done.*
getroſt, *confident.*
gewahr, *aware.*
gewärtig, *expectant.*
gram, *offended.*
habhaft, *in possession.*
handgemein, *hand to hand.*
kund, *known.*
leid, *grievous.*
not, *necessary.*
nütze, *useful.*
quer, *oblique.*
quitt, *quits.*
ſchuld, *to blame.*
teilhaft, *participant.*
unpaß, *unsuited.*
verluſtig, *lacking.*

a. Several of the above occur chiefly in set phrases; as abwendig machen, *alienate;* ausfindig machen, *find;* gewahr werden, *notice;* leid thun, *make sorry;* verluſtig gehen, *lose.*

b. In old German predicate adjectives were declined — a state of affairs from which has survived voller, as stereotyped case-form of voll; e. g., da der Himmel voller Sterne glüht, *since the sky shines full of stars* (G.); das Faß iſt voller Wein, *the cask is full of wine.* Of like origin are halber, *half,* and ſelber, *self.*

290. The Substantive Adjective. An uninflected adjective is sometimes used substantively in set phrases; e. g., zufrieden jauchzet groß und klein, *great and small shout contentedly* (G.); ein Buch für alt und jung, *a book for old and young;* gleich und gleich geſellt ſich gern, *birds of a feather flock together.* Analogous is the elliptical use of the adjective in such a phrase as von jung auf, *from youth up.*

1. The names of languages are substantive adjectives which are indeclinable, except immediately after das; e. g., ich lerne Deutſch, *I am learning German;* wie heißt es auf Engliſch? in mein geliebtes Deutſch, *into my beloved German* (G.); die Merkmale eines guten Franzöſiſch, *the marks of a good French.* But er ſpricht das Deutſche gut; im Deutſchen lügt man, wenn man höflich iſt (G.). Yet one says das heutige Deutſch (not Deutſche).

2. Several English nouns are represented in German by substantive adjectives that follow the rules of adjective declension; e. g., ein Beamter, *an official,* der Beamte, eines Beamten, die Beamten; mein Verwandter, *my kinsman,* der Verwandte, die Verwandten; das Äußere, *the exterior,* but ſein Äußeres, *his* or *its exterior.* Such words are subject to the same uncertainty of inflection as other adjectives after

alle, andere, etc. (§ 288, 3, *a*) ; e. g., alle Gelehrte(n) ; viele Beamte(n).

a. Such a substantive adjective, if preceded by a strong adjective, may become weak, especially in the neut. and the gen. pl.; e. g., ein ſchönes Äußere (instead of Äußeres), *a beautiful exterior;* ein Kreis lieber Verwandten. So, too, one meets with ein großer Gelehrte, *a great scholar,* and ſein reicher Verwandte, *his rich relative;* but Gelehrter and Verwandter are better. In the nom.-acc. pl. without article Verwandte, Beamte, are better than Verwandten, Beamten. But in the dat. sing. without article usage prefers the weak form ; e. g., man könnte ihm als Beamten (rather than Beamtem) wenig vorwerfen, *one could reproach him with little as official* (Andresen). Notice further ein dummer Junge (not Junger), *a stupid youth.*

291. Adjectives and Prepositions. As in English the use of prepositions after adjectives is highly idiomatic. The following examples will illustrate (see further under prepositions) :

achtſam auf (acc.), *heedful* OF.
arm an (dat.), *poor* IN.
aufmerkſam auf (acc.), *attentive* TO.
bange vor (dat.), *afraid* OF.
begierig nach, *eager* FOR.
beſchämt über (acc.), *ashamed* OF.
beſorgt um, *anxious* ABOUT.
blaß vor (dat.), *pale* WITH.
blind auf or an (dat.), *blind* IN.
böſe auf (acc.), *angry* AT.
eiferſüchtig auf (acc.), *jealous* OF.
empfänglich für, *susceptible* TO.
empfindlich gegen, *sensitive* TO.
fähig zu (or gen.), *capable* OF.
krank am Herzen, *sick* AT *heart.*
neidiſch auf (acc.), *envious* OF.
reich an (dat.), *rich* IN.
ſicher vor (dat.), *safe* FROM.
ſtolz auf (acc.), *proud* OF.
verliebt in (acc.), *enamored* OF.

292. Comparison with er and eſt is not confined, as in English, to short words ; e. g., der allerchriſtlichſte König, *the most Christian king ;* das allererbärmlich-langweiligſte Ding von der Welt.

1. A participle should not be compared unless it is in use, or admits of use, as an adjective in the positive degree ; e. g., reizender, *more charming ;* am bedeutendſten, *most important ;* die gewagteſte Annahme, *the boldest assumption.* But exceptions are very frequent in the classics ; e. g., etwas Unterrichtenderes, *something more instructive* (H.) ; an

dem in die Augen fallendſten Orte, *in the most obvious place* (L.); auf der blühendſten Wieſe, *on the most flowery meadow* (U.)

2. Adjectives in iſch either retain the e of the superlative ending eſt, or else drop it and drop also the ſ; e. g., der närriſcheſte or der närriſchte.

293. Umlaut in the Comparative and Superlative is to be regarded as the rule if the stem-vowel is a, o or u (not when it is au). But there are the following exceptions, those marked with an * occurring both with and without umlaut:

*bang, *afraid.*	*fromm, *pious.*	morſch, *rotten.*	ſchmal, *narrow.*
barſch, *rude.*	*geſund, *well.*	nackt, *naked.*	ſchroff, *steep.*
blank, *bright.*	*glatt, *smooth.*	*naß, *wet.*	ſtarr, *fixed.*
*blaß, *pale.*	*grob, *rude.*	platt, *low.*	ſtolz, *proud.*
bloß, *bare.*	hohl, *hollow.*	plump, *clumsy.*	ſtraff, *tight.*
brav, *brave.*	hold, *kindly.*	raſch, *swift.*	ſtumm, *mute.*
bunt, *motley.*	kahl, *bald.*	roh, *rough.*	ſtumpf, *blunt.*
*dumm, *dull.*	*karg, *stingy.*	*rot, *red.*	toll, *mad.*
dumpf, *low.*	*klar, *clear.*	rund, *round.*	voll, *full.*
fahl, *dun.*	knapp, *tight.*	ſacht, *gentle.*	wahr, *true.*
falb, *pale.*	lahm, *lame.*	ſanft, *gentle.*	wund, *sore.*
falſch, *false.*	laß, *lazy.*	ſatt, *sated.*	*zahm, *tame.*
flach, *flat.*	los, *loose.*	ſchlaff, *loose.*	*zart, *tender.*
froh, *glad.*	matt, *faint.*	ſchlank, *slender.*	

a. Bänger, bläſſer, glätter, näſſer are better than banger, blaſſer, etc. In the other doubtful cases the form without umlaut is to be preferred.

294. Absolute and Relative Comparison. In relative comparison one object is compared with another or with others, as in er iſt älter als ich; die Roſe iſt die ſchönſte aller Blumen. Absolute comparison expresses simply an eminent degree; e. g., eine ältere Dame, *an elderly lady;* die neueren Sprachen, *the modern languages;* ein höchſt lehrreiches Buch, *a most instructive book.*

1. The relative superlative is usually preceded by der and may be qualified by a prefixed aller, by some other partitive genitive, or by a phrase with von; e. g., der allerkühnſte Held, *the boldest of all heroes;* der Güter höchſtes, *the*

highest of blessings; dem ärmlichſten von allen Erdenſöhnen, *the poorest of all the sons of earth* (G.).

a. Except allerliebſt a relative superlative without der may not stand in the predicate: one may say das Bild iſt allerliebſt, *is most lovely*, but not iſt ſchönſt, nor allerſchönſt.

2. The absolute superlative is generally denoted by an adverb, as höchſt, äußerſt, ſehr, recht, überaus, durch und durch; or by composition, as wunderſchön, *wonderfully fine;* blutwenig, *mighty little;* pudelnaß, *wet as a drowned rat.*

a. Occasionally the inflected superlative is used absolutely; e. g., weil es die wenigſten können, *since very few can do it* (G.); Leidenſchaften, die ſich in ſeinem ſchönſten Leibe darſtellten, *passions which showed themselves in his most beautiful body* (Arndt). But in the last example wunderbar ſchönen would be more idiomatic.

3. After ein an inflected superlative is not in general to be approved, since A *highest* is necessarily THE *highest.* Still one meets with ein höchſtes Weſen, *a supreme Being;* cf. also es giebt ein Äußerſtes in allen Dingen, *there is an extreme in all things.* Goethe is fond of this construction.

4. For *the greatest possible* one may say der größtmögliche or der möglichſt große. The former is more logical, the latter probably more usual. An awkward double superlative, der größtmöglichſte, also occurs.

5. The phrase with am (§ 112) forms a relative superlative capable of use only in the predicate. Its ordinary and proper function is to compare an object not with other objects, but with itself under other conditions; e. g., Schiller war am größten als Dramatiker, *S. was greatest as dramatist.* Here am größten = *at the greatest;* cf. English *at his best.* Cf., further, es wäre mir am liebſten, *it would be* MOST *agreeable to me*, i. e. *I should prefer*, but es wäre mir äußerſt lieb, *it would be extremely agreeable to me.*

a. But modern German often uses the phrase with am in comparing an object with other objects.

295. **Comparison with mehr and am meiſten** is less common than with *more* and *most* in English (§ 292). The form with mehr is to be preferred whenever the comparison is

between different qualities rather than between different degrees of the same quality; e. g., er iſt mehr gelehrt als klug, *he is more learned than wise.*

a. But even in this case good writers sometimes use the comparative in er; thus Goethe has ernſter als lieblich, *more serious than winsome.*

1. Mehr and am meiſten are also used in comparing the indeclinables in § 289, 2; e. g., ſie war mehr ſchuld als ich, *she was more to blame than I* (G.); was mir am meiſten leid thut, *what grieves me most.*

2. Aside from the above cases, comparison with mehr and am meiſten may occur where it is not strictly required, especially with participial adjectives; e. g., niemand iſt mehr geplagt, *more plagued* (G.); der am meiſten gebildete, *the most cultivated* (G.); ein mehr beſonnenes Gemüt, *a more circumspect disposition* (Platen).

3. Note that the simple meiſt as modifier does not form a superlative, but = meiſtens, *for the most part;* e. g., ſie iſt meiſt liebenswürdig, does not mean *she is most amiable,* but *she is amiable as a general thing.*

296. Defective and Irregular Comparison. (Supplementary to § 114).

1. The following adjectives, denoting position, have no positive except in the form of the preposition or adverb from which they are derived; äußer, *outer;* hinter, *hinder;* inner, *inner;* nieder, *lower;* ober, *upper;* unter, *lower;* vorder, *further forward.* The superlative is formed in each case by adding ſt to the comparative; der äußerſte, der hinterſte, etc.

2. Mittler, *middle* (superlative mittelſt), has positive meaning, the real positive mittel having gone out of use except in compounds: thus die Mittelſtufe or die mittlere Stufe, *the middle stage.*

3. The stem of erſt, *first,* appears in ehe, *before,* and eher, *ere;* that of letzt, *last,* in the obsolete laß, *late.* Erſteſt and letzteſt occur, but are needless monstrosities.

4. For Goethe's meiner = mehr mein, see § 308, 2.

USE OF THE NUMERALS.

297. Notes upon the Cardinals. The form eins is used in counting (where no noun is thought of), except when und follows; e. g., eins, zwei, drei; einmal eins iſt eins; hundert und eins; but ein und zwanzig. So too in giving the time, e. g., halb eins, *half past 12.* But in all these cases ein is also correct, and is preferred in parts of Germany.

a. A thousand and one nights (the noun being fem.) = tauſend und eine Nacht; but *a hundred and one reasons,* or *years* (the noun being mas. or neu.), = hundert und ein Gründe, Jahre.

1. The declined forms zweier, dreier, zweien, dreien are apt to be used when the case would not otherwise be obvious; e. g., durch zweier Zeugen Mund, *by the mouth of two witnesses* (G.); was zweien zu breit iſt dreien zu enge, *too broad for two, too narrow for three.*

a. Down to about the close of the 18th century the form zween, *twain,* was used for the mas. and neu., and zwo for the fem.; thus Voss wrote zwo Nächte zugleich und zween der Tag'. These forms, as also the ordinal zwot- = zweit-, are now obsolete or dialectic.

2. The numbers from drei to neunzehn are generally unvaried, but may form a nominative or accusative in e (less often a dative in en) in colloquial language, when no noun follows; e. g., es waren unſer fünfe, *five of us.* Note also the phrases auf allen vieren, *on all fours;* mit vieren, *with coach and four;* vor vieren, *before 4 o'clock* (G.).

3. Fünfzehn, fünfzig are better than funfzehn, funfzig. Fufzehn, fufzig are colloquial. The short forms ſechzehn, ſechzig, siebzehn, siebzig, are more common than ſechszehn, ſechszig, siebenzehn, siebenzig.

4. Hundert and tauſend can be used as substantives; e. g., viele Hunderte, *many hundreds;* zu Tauſenden, *by thousands.* Million is regularly so used; hence zwei Millionen, not zwei Million.

298. Expressions of Time. In giving a date the year is designated by a cardinal number, with or without preceding im Jahre; e. g., Schiller iſt 1805 geſtorben (or im Jahre 1805, but in 1805 is not good), *Schiller died in 1805.*

1. The day of the month is designated by an inflected ordinal, with preceding article, followed by the name of the month without preposition ; thus am 4. (or 4ten, both being read vierten) Juli, 1776, *on July 4, 1776.* In dating a letter the accusative without preposition (den 4. Juli, 1776) is usual.

2. For the time of day the following are the usual forms of expression : um ſechs (Uhr), *at six (o'clock) ;* es iſt 6 vorbei, or nach 6, *it is past 6 ;* ein Viertel (auf) 7, *a quarter past 6 ;* halb 7, *half past 6 ;* drei viertel (auf) 7, *a quarter to 7.*

3. *It happened in the fifties* = es geſchah in den fünfziger Jahren, or in den Fünfzigern. The same for *a man in the fifties.*

299. Numeral Derivatives. Besides those mentioned in § 118 are to be noted :

1. Iteratives in mal, as dreimal, *thrice ;* multiplicatives in fach, as dreifach, *threefold ;* variatives in erlei, denoting number of kinds, as dreierlei, *of three kinds ;* ordinal adverbs in ens, as drittens, *thirdly.*

2. The obsolete or archaic compounds of ſelb ; e. g., ich fuhr ſelbdritt(er), *I traveled with two others* (myself the third); ſelbviert, *with three others*, etc. Selbander, *with one other*, takes the place of ſelbzweit, ander having once been commonly used in the sense of *second* (*secundus*) ; cf. am andern Tage, *on the following day.*

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

300. The Genitive of the personal pronouns occurs mostly with verbs, adjectives and numerals ; e. g., ſchone meiner, *spare me* (Heine) ; ihr Inſtrumente ſpottet mein, *mock me* (G.) ; dein denk' ich alle Zeit, *I think of thee* (song) ; ſeiner uneingedenk, *unmindful of him.* After nouns it is rare ; e. g., durch die Vergeſſenheit deiner, *forgetfulness of you* (H.) ; aus Verachtung euer, *from contempt of you* (S.).

1. The short forms mein, dein, fein, are older than meiner, deiner, feiner, and are probably possessives in their origin. They occur chiefly in poetry. In the genitive plural the original and proper forms are unſer and euer, but unſrer and eurer occur in the classics; e. g., und eurer wahrlich hätt' ich nicht gefehlt, *I should not have missed you* (S.); ja dann bedarf es unſerer nicht mehr (S.).

2. The old gen. es still survives in certain locutions, but is no longer felt as a gen.; e. g., ich bin es müde, bin es zufrieden, *I am tired of it, satisfied with it*, where it is felt as an acc.; es nimmt mich Wunder, *I wonder*, where it is felt as a nom. (§ 265, 1, *d*).

301. The Pronouns of Address. The literary use of the pronouns of address is a somewhat complicated subject, the bare essentials of which are as follows:

a. Originally du was the only pronoun used in addressing one person. In the 9th century the plu. ihr began to be employed in certain social relations for politeness' sake, du being retained for all cases where formal politeness would be either unnecessary or out of place, e. g., in addressing intimates, inferiors, the lower animals, inanimate objects, the heart, the soul, one's self in soliloquy; also in prayers and apostrophes to supernatural beings, absent or imaginary persons, abstract qualities, etc. This has always been, and still largely continues to be, the usage of the higher poetry.

1. In the classics, then, ihr, as applied to one person, is polite or deferential, while du is simply natural. Du may imply familiarity or contempt, but it may also comport with the highest regard — a regard that feels no need of artificial speech.

a. Thus in Goethe's *Iphigenie* and *Tasso* the characters use only du. Sometimes fine shades of meaning turn upon the use of the pronoun: thus in *Tell*, l. 1691, the change from ihr to du marks the clearing up of a lover's misunderstanding. In *Faust*, l. 300, the transition from du to ihr marks a *descent* from the tone of reverence to that of everyday polite intercourse. In *Nathan* the hero uses the polite ihr to the obscure Templar, but stands on his dignity in returning the Sultan's du with du.

2. Toward the end of the 16th century began the practice of using Herr, Frau and Fräulein as a polite circum-

locution for ihr. This led presently to the use of er, *he*, and ſie, *she*, as pronouns of address.

a. Both usages survive in the classics; e. g., was ſteht dem Herrn zu Dienſten? *how can I serve the gentleman* (i. e. *you*, *Faust*, l. 1322)? komme der Herr nur wieder mit zurück, *just come back again with me* (*Nathan*, I, 3, where the Friar, who usually says ihr to the Templar, several times substitutes the more ceremonious der Herr); ſuch' Er den redlichen Gewinn, *seek you* (i. e. *let him, the 'gentleman,' seek*) *honest gain* (*Faust*, l. 548); ach ſeh' Sie nur, *oh, just see* (*ibid.*, l. 2881)!

b. Er was at first the acme of politeness; it survived longest as a form of address to a social or official inferior, as from ruler to subject, master to servant, teacher to pupil. In the classics the sudden transition from du to Er may denote vexation, as in *Faust*, l. 548 and l. 2304; that from Er to du as in *Faust*, l. 2881, an increase of cordiality, a putting aside of ceremony.

3. The next stage was the employment of Sie, *they*, in the sense of *you*.

a. This grew out of the use of a verb in the 3. plu. with titles; e. g., Eure Majeſtät ſind, *your majesty are*, instead of *is*; Herr Doktor wurden katechiſiert, *the doctor* WERE *catechized* (*Faust*, l. 3523). In such a locution as the last, if a pronoun were to take the place of Doktor, it could only be ſie, *they*. This awkward form of address, which poetry for the most part repudiates, became established about the middle of the 18th century.

4. At present, then, in the language of common life, one uses Sie in addressing strangers (one or more), acquaintances, or any but very intimate friends. Social differences count for nothing, except that for princes and high dignitaries the old forms Euer (Eure) Gnaden, Excellenz, etc., are still in use. Du is said to a member of one's family, an intimate friend, a very young child, an animal or a thing. Ihr is appropriate only as plural; i. e., in addressing several persons each one of whom would be du. In advertisements and notices to the public at large good usage avoids a pronoun of direct address.

5. As to the writing of the pronouns of address usage is still somewhat unsettled. Sie and Ihr, when they mean *you* and *your*, are always given a capital. Also Er, Sie = *she*, and their possessives, are best written with a capital when used in address. As to du, dein,

ihr, euer, there is no uniformity; but the rules recommend that they be given a capital in letters, where the word will fall under the eye of the person addressed.

302. Omission of Personal Pronouns. As a rule a pronominal subject is expressed, except in the imperative, but ich, du, er, ſie, es, are often omitted in colloquial language; e. g., (ich) danke Ihnen, *thank you;* (ich) bitte, *'please';* (es) ſchadet nichts, *it does no harm;* (ich) heiße Magiſter (*Faust,* l. 360); (du) erkenneſt dann (*ibid.,* l. 422); (er) geht da ſtracks (*ibid.,* l. 2867).

a. For the omission of es with impersonal verbs see § 204, 2.

1. Far less common is the omission of wir, ihr, ſie (plu.), but cases occur.

2. In the imperative du and ihr are omitted unless emphatic, as in führe du mein Heer, *do thou lead my army* (S.). The other pronouns er, ſie, wir, Sie, are always expressed.

3. The omission of ich in letter-writing is characteristic of the commercial style; e. g., Ihr Geehrtes vom geſtrigen Datum habe erhalten, (*I*) *am in receipt of your favor of yesterday.*

303. Special Uses of es. Besides serving as pronoun of reference to a neuter noun, es has a variety of special uses, as follows:

1. As indefinite subject of impersonal verbs; e. g., es regnet; es thut mir leid. The poets often use such an impersonal es to convey an idea of something mysterious, vast, or gruesome; e. g., bahnlos liegt es hinter mir, *a trackless waste lies behind me* (S.); regt ſich's nicht quillend ſchon? *is there not already a quickening stir* (G.)?

a. The es in es giebt, *there is,* denotes in a general way the situation, or state of affairs, which 'gives', i. e. affords, or produces, what is denoted by the object (cf. § 340). Quite similar is the es in es hat Gefahr, *there is danger;* es ſetzt Hiebe, *there is a fight on.*

2. As subject of iſt or ſind (without reference to the gender or number of the predicate noun) in expressions

of identity; e. g., es iſt mein Bruder; es iſt meine Schweſter; es ſind Freunde von mir, *they are friends of mine.*

a. But for *it is I, it was you,* etc. (where the predicate is itself a pronoun), German reverses the order, saying ich bin es, du warſt (Sie waren) es, etc.

3. As expletive, or formal subject, with all sorts of verbs, to anticipate a real subject which, for any reason, is to come after the verb. This use of es is only in part parallel to that of English *there;* e. g., es war einmal ein König, *there was once a king;* es lebe die Freiheit! *long live freedom!* es irrt der Menſch, *man errs.*

a. The office of the expletive in such cases is simply to justify the inversion. In old German, however, and even later in poetry, the inversion may occur without es; e. g., ſah ein Knab' ein Röslein ſtehn, *a boy saw a little rose growing* (G.).

4. As indefinite object with certain verbs, taking the place of English *it, things, matters;* e. g., es iſt ohne Beiſpiel, wie ſie's treiben, *how they carry things on* (S.); wie wir's dann ſo herrlich weit gebracht, *how we have brought matters so gloriously far* (G.).

a. Sometimes es is used loosely for an object or subject inferrible from, but not distinctly contained in, the context. Cf., e. g., *Faust,* ll. 285, 534.

5. To avoid repetition of a noun, adjective, pronoun, or clause; e. g., er iſt glücklich (iſt Gelehrter, iſt einer der Großen), ich bin es nicht, *he is happy (is a scholar, is one of the leaders), I am not;* wie viel Uhr iſt es? ich weiß es nicht, *what time is it? I do not know.*

6. To refer to a number of persons in a general way; e. g., was ſich ſonſt an meinem Lied erfreuet, wenn es noch lebt, *they who* (was) *once delighted in my song, if they still live* (*Faust,* l. 24).

304. The Reflexive. In a simple independent sentence the reflexive of the third person is always ſich; e. g., ſie hatte kein Geld bei ſich, *she had no money with her;* der Krieg bringt Elend mit ſich, *war brings misery with it;* ſie haben eine ſchöne Zukunft vor ſich, *they have a fine future before them.*

a. But in old German, just as in the English of the above examples, the personal pronoun was used reflexively in the dat. The usage is common down to the 18th century; e. g., die Heiden ſind ihnen ſelbſt ein Geſetz, *the heathen are a law unto themselves* (Lu.).

b. Sich not referring to the subject is rare, but one may say die Freundſchaft verbindet die Menſchen unter ſich, *binds men among themselves*, i. e. *together*.

1. In a subordinate clause ſich refers to the subject of the clause, the subject of the principal verb being referred to by a personal pronoun; e. g., er belobte die Soldaten, die ſich gehorſam gegen ihn bewieſen hatten, *he praised the soldiers who had shown themselves obedient to him* (Blatz).

a. So, too, when the subordinate clause is represented by an infinitive or an adjective: e. g., ſie bat ihn ſich zu entſchuldigen und ſie zu begleiten, *to excuse himself and accompany her;* er borgte das ihm nötige Geld, *he borrowed the money needful to him.*

2. Sich as reciprocal may be ambiguous; ſie gefallen ſich, may mean *they please themselves* or *they please each other.* The uncertainty can be removed by the use of the true reciprocal einander, the adverb gegenſeitig, *mutually*, or the Gallicism der eine, der andere, — ſie gefallen ſich, der (die) eine dem (der) andern.

3. Observe that the usual equivalent of the objective *myself, thyself*, etc., is the simple mich, dich, etc. Selbſt or ſelber is added only when emphasis is desired.

THE POSSESSIVES.

305. The Absolute Possessive. In agreement with a noun the possessive is always some form of mein, dein, ſein, unſer, euer, ihr, inflected as in § 125; but for the possessive used absolutely, i. e., without a noun, there is a choice between three, in the predicate sometimes four, forms of expression; e. g., *your judgment is more favorable than mine* = Ihr Urteil iſt günſtiger als meines, or das meine, or das meinige.

a. In meaning these forms are to a large degree interchangeable, but der meine belongs in general to more stately, der meinige to more familiar diction. In the predicate the uninflected form implies simple

ownership, while inflection may denote emphasis or contrast; e. g., das Buch iſt mein, but es iſt nicht dein Buch, es iſt meines.

1. Letters end with such formulas as Hochachtungsvoll Ihr (der Ihre, der Ihrige), *respectfully yours;* ganz der Ihrige, der Deinige, etc.; Ihr (Dein) treuer, ergebener, treueſter, ergebenſter, etc.

2. *A friend of mine, a relative of yours* = ein Freund von mir, ein Verwandter von Ihnen.

306. The Compounds meinetwegen, meinesgleichen, etc.

1. Meinetwegen comes from an old dat. plu. *minen wegen* (i. e., meinen Wegen) used adverbially. Developing an excrescent t the phrase became meinentwegen, which is still sometimes met with, though the usual form drops n before t. The halben of meinethalben is also a dat. of Halb, *half, behalf, sake;* here again the stages were meinen Halben, meinenthalben, meinethalben. Meinetwillen comes from um meinen Willen, *for my sake,* with the same phonetic development as in the other cases.

2. In meinesgleichen we have the adjective gleich, *like,* governing a preceding gen., which logically should be the personal pronoun mein or meiner, but became the possessive, giving *my like* instead of the *like of me.* The s is hard to account for. It may be due to the analogy of desgleichen, or of noun-stems with gen. in s. After meines the adjective naturally took a weak form.

3. Such compounds as meinerſeits, *on my part,* and meinesteils, *for my part,* come under § 251, 3.

307. Notes upon ſein and ihr. As in English the possessive of the third person may refer reflexively to the subject of the sentence (= Latin *suus)* or to another noun (= Latin *ejus);* e. g., die Sonne vollendet ihre Reiſe, *the sun completes its journey;* ihr Anblick giebt den Engeln Stärke, *its aspect* (i. e., *the sight of it) gives strength to the angels* (G.).

1. Where an ambiguity might arise it should be avoided by the use of der or derſelbe for the possessive that does not refer to the subject of the sentence; e. g., er verdrängte ſeinen Bruder und trat an deſſen Stelle (or an Stelle desſelben), *he crowded out his brother and took his* (the brother's) *place;* er beſuchte ſeinen Sohn und deſſen Frau, *he visited his son and his daughter-in-law.*

a. Such an ambiguous possessive as appears in the English *he ordered his servant to polish his boots* can be avoided in German by the right use of the dative: er befahl ſeinem Bedienten ihm die Stiefel zu putzen has reference to the master's boots, ſich die Stiefel zu putzen, to the servant's own boots. But many would be content to say ſeine Stiefel and let the ambiguity stand, as in English.

2. Formerly ſein might refer to a fem. noun, ihr being not yet in use as reflexive possessive. Traces of this usage survive in colloquial phrases; e. g., die Sache hat ſeine Richtigkeit, *the thing has its good side;* ſein Thor kennt jede Kuh, *every cow knows her own gate.*

a. Note further the stereotyped adverb ſeiner Zeit, meaning not only *in his* or *its time,* but *in her time, in our time,* or simply *in due time;* e. g., wir waren ſeiner Zeit muntere Burſche, *we were merry lads in our day.*

308. Archaisms and Irregularities. In popular poetry the possessive (of course uninflected) may follow its noun; e. g., Roland gedacht' im Herzen ſein = in ſeinem Herzen, *in his heart.*

1. The form Ihro, in Ihro Majeſtät, *Your Majesty,* is an old gen. plu. of ſie, introduced in quite modern times after the analogy of Dero (§ 309, 5). It is used only in princely titles, and is either mas. or fem., sing. or plu.

2. The comparison of a possessive, as in Goethe's nun iſt das meine meiner als jemals, *now mine is more mine than ever,* is a bold poetic license. Ordinarily one would say mehr mein.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES.

309. Der. (Supplementary to §§ 129–131).

1. The inflection of der was at first precisely that of the definite article, the long forms deſſen, deren, denen, being of quite modern origin. Present usage prescribes deſſen, deren, denen, when the pronoun is used absolutely, but des, der, den, when a noun follows; e. g., des Adels rühme dich, *boast of that nobility* (S.); infolge deſſen, *in consequence of that.*

a. But des, der, are used absolutely in compounds; e. g., deshalb, deswegen (also deſſentwegen), dergleichen, etc. Other archaic exceptions

occur in the classics; e. g., des wird Jupiter ergrimmt, *at that Jupiter becomes wroth* (G.); die Gegenwart des, der die Donner wirft, *the presence of him that hurls the thunderbolts* (S.).

2. For the genitive plural of der the usual form is now deren, unless a relative clause follows, in which case derer is apt to be preferred, especially if the pronoun refers to persons; e. g., deren habe ich viele gesammelt, *I have collected many of them* (G.); die Mißgunst derer, die das Übermaß meines Glückes beleidigte, *the ill-will of those whom the excess of my happiness offended* (W.).

a. Derer occurs before noble names even if there is no relative; e. g., das Schloß derer von Stein, *the castle of the Von Steins.*

3. Der is the pronoun most often used before a genitive or phrase with von, to take the place of a noun previously mentioned; e. g., die Wege Gottes sind verschieden von denen des Menschen, *the ways of God are different from those of men;* die Bevölkerung Londons ist größer als die von Paris, *greater than that of Paris.* Derjenige also occurs in this use, but is not so good.

4. Das, for die referring to persons, is usually contemptuous; e. g., das schleudert wie die Schnecken, *those fellows dawdle like snails* (S.).

5. Dero is an old gen. plu. once common in ceremonious address before high titles; as Dero Gnaden, *Your* (properly *their*) *Grace.*

310. The Compounds of da do not refer to persons, but exceptions occur in familiar language; e. g., ein Paar Kerle, worüber sie streiten können, *a brace of fellows to quarrel about* (G.); ein Vater hatte drei Söhne, davon (cf. § 314) war der älteste klug und gescheit, *three sons of whom the eldest was shrewd and clever* (Gr.).

1. A compound of da should not stand as the antecedent of a relative; e. g., *I thought of what you said* = ich dachte an das (not daran), was du sagtest.

2. Tmesis of a da-compound is rare; e. g., da behüte mich Gott vor (= davor behüte mich), *God keep me from that.*

311. The Determinatives. De'rjenige is an emphatic der used to particularize the antecedent of a relative; e. g., das ist derjenige, von dem wir redeten, *that is the man we were*

talking about; diejenige Freiheit, die ich mir herausnehme, *the (particular) liberty I take* (Kant).

1. Derſe'lbe must refer to something already known. It is a frequent substitute for er, ſie, es; e. g., Kleinigkeiten, die er von Marianen erhalten oder derſelben geraubt hatte, *trifles that he had received from Mariane or stolen from her* (G.).

a. Some prescribe that derſelbe always be substituted for the acc. es governed by a preposition; e. g., das Kind iſt krank; wir wollen für dasſelbe ſorgen, *we will take care of it.* But others repudiate this rule and prefer für es.

b. Observe the contractions am ſelben Tag = an demſelben Tag, zur ſelben Zeit = zu derſelben Zeit; sometimes also zu dieſer (jener) ſelben Zeit, *at this (that) selfsame time.* Selbig-, for ſelb-, is obsolescent.

c. Einundderſelbe, *one and the same,* is best written as one word with ein uninflected; thus an einunddemſelben Tage, rather than an einem und demſelben.

d. In ceremonious address Dieſelben, sometimes with prefixed Hoch, Höchſt, Allerhöchſt, may take the place of Sie.

2. Solch is sometimes used, but not very elegantly, for derſelbe; e. g., ich glaube, meine Gedanken ſind wahr; prüfen Sie ſolche, *I believe my thoughts are true; test them* (S.).

3. The indeclinables ſelbſt and ſelber, while treated in Part I for convenience with the personal pronouns, are not strictly of that class, since they do not denote a person, but emphasize pronouns of every person and also nouns. They may be regarded as a species of determinatives.

a. The two forms ſelbſt and ſelber do not differ in meaning, but ſelbſt may be used adverbially = *even,* while ſelber can not. Further, ſelber always follows the word it emphasizes, while ſelbſt may precede or follow. Cf. § 289, 2, *b.*

THE INTERROGATIVES.

312. Wer and was never agree with a noun, seeming exceptions with was being old partitive genitives which have lost an *s*; e. g., was Wunder(s), *what wonder;* was Teufel! *what the deuce!* Cf. § 253, 2, *b.*

1. Weſſen is less used than *whose;* for *whose picture is that?* idiom prefers (referring to the person portrayed) wer iſt das auf dem Bilde?

(referring to the owner of the picture) wem gehört das Bild? The form wes is rare except in compounds, but occurs adjectively; e. g., wes Sinnes der Herr sei, *of what mind the master may be* (G.).

2. Colloquially, not so often in literature, was is used after prepositions that govern the dative; e. g., zu was taugt es? *what is it good for?* mit was kann ich dienen? *how can I serve you?* Here wozu and womit would be better. On the other hand warum, wofür, etc., are very often, but unnecessarily, substituted for um was, für was, etc.

3. Was is very common in the sense of warum; e. g., was reitst du so schnelle? *why do you ride so fast* (G.)? This was is an adverbial accusative.

313. Welch and was für. The neuter welches is sometimes used absolutely (like es and das) without reference to the gender or number of a following predicate noun; e. g., die Eltern sannen einen ganzen Tag, welches der schönste Name sei, *queried which was the most beautiful name* (Riehl).

1. Was für is always used adjectively; was für ein, usually so, but sometimes without a noun. In the latter case ein has pronominal inflection; e. g., ein Grund ist es allerdings, aber was für einer! *a reason it is to be sure, but what kind of one!*

THE RELATIVES.

314. Der and welch. Der as relative is of secondary origin, having developed out of the demonstrative der. Hence the frequent use of the latter, especially in folk-tales, where one would expect a relative; e. g., es war einmal ein alter König, der war krank, *he was sick*, instead of der krank war, *who was sick*. Cf. also the example with davon in § 310.

1. The genitive singular of der is dessen, deren, dessen, the genitive plural deren (not derer) and the dative plural denen; but short forms, identical with those of the article der, occur in the classics; e. g., die Krone, der (for deren) mein Fürst mich würdig achtete, *the crown of which my prince*

deemed me worthy (G.); die Heil- und Linderungskraft, der wir ſtündlich bedürfen (G.).

2. The use of der as 'compound' relative (containing its own antecedent) is not uncommon; e. g., ach! der mich liebt und kennt, iſt in der Weite, *alas, he who loves and knows me is far away* (G.). Such a der differs from wer in that it refers to a particular antecedent.

3. In early modern German a relative is often preceded by als, the effect being a subaudition of cause; e. g., ihr habt dieſen Menſchen zu mir bracht, als der das Volk abwende, *ye have brought this man unto me as one that perverteth the people* (Lu.). Later this als became all but pleonastic and has now gone out of use, though common in Lessing and Goethe; e. g., Aeneas, als welcher ſich an den bloßen Figuren ergötzet, *Aeneas, who delights in the mere figures* (L.); aus dem Zimmer, als in welchem ſie allein Ruhe hatte, *from the room in which alone she had peace* (G.).

315. Wer and was. The implied antecedent of wer must be expressed (always *after* wer), if there is change of construction; e. g., wer nicht denkt, dem wird ſie geſchenkt, *who does not think, to him it is given* (G.). In other words, wer can stand only for der, der (not for dem, der, nor for den, der).

a. The rule applies also to was, but less rigidly, since the form was is both nom. and acc.; thus it is permissible to omit das in was ich nicht weiß, (das) macht mich nicht heiß, *what I don't know doesn't bother me;* or even in was mich nicht brennt, (das) blaſ' ich nicht, *what doesn't burn me I don't blow.*

1. Distinguish between the interrogative in wer könnte das glauben? *who could believe that?* the indefinite relative in es iſt wahr, was man auch glauben mag, *it is true, whatever one may think,* and the exclamatory indefinite in wer ſo etwas glauben könnte! *as if any one could believe that!*

2. In general was is not used in referring to a definite noun, but exceptions occur in good writers; e. g., die Alten kannten das Ding nicht, was wir Höflichkeit nennen, *the ancients did not know the thing which we call politeness* (L.). Conversely, das or welches is sometimes used for was in referring to a sentence; e. g., ihm hatte man Hilarien beſtimmt, das ihm ſehr wohl bekannt war, *they had destined Hilarie for him, which was very well known to him* (G.).

3. The form wes is still sometimes used adjectively, just as often in the classics; e. g., wes Standes er auch sein mochte, *of whatever station he might be.* Without a noun wes is archaic, save in compounds.

4. Was referring to persons is not uncommon in familiar language; e. g., früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will, *he who wishes to become a master practices early* (S.).

316. Relative Adverbs. A compound of wo or wes is never positively required except when the antecedent is not a noun or pronoun; thus in *the book of which we were speaking, the task I am working upon,* one may say das Buch, von dem, von welchem, or wovon; die Aufgabe, an der, an welcher, or woran. But in *he rises early by which he saves much time,* one can only say wodurch, not durch welches, nor durch das, though durch welches Mittel would be permissible. So also ich war krank, weshalb (not wegen dessen) ich nicht schreiben konnte, *for which reason I could not write.*

1. So as relative is now archaic, but was once very common; e. g., heilig ist das Gesetz, so dem Künstler Schönheit gebietet, *holy is the law which,* etc. (S.).

2. An untranslatable da is sometimes added to a relative as a kind of generalizing particle; e. g., wen da dürstet, *whoever thirsts;* keiner, der da dichtet, *no one, who makes poetry* (G.). But the usage is now quaint.

3. Da and its compounds usually have demonstrative force, rarely that of a relative; as in die Zeiten, da ich noch selbst im Werden war, *the times when I myself was still growing* (G.). Allwo and woselbst, relative particles = wo, are archaic.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

317. All. The undeclined all is most common before der or a possessive in the nominative and accusative singular, masculine and neuter; e. g., all der Schmerz, *all the pain;* all das Leid; all seinen Kummer. In the genitive it is rare but occurs; e. g., der Schauplatz all meiner Glückseligkeit, *the scene of all my happiness* (G.).

1. The form alle occurs mostly after prepositions that govern the dative; as von alle dem, *from all that;* aus alle dem; trotz alle dem. But it may stand as nominative; e. g., alle das Neigen, *all the leaning* (G.); alle sein Mammon, *all his wealth* (S.).

2. Alles may mean *everybody*, as in alles tanzte wie toll, *everybody was dancing like mad* (G.). It may also follow wer, was and even wem, without change of form; e. g., wer war alles da? *who all was there?* wem alles gabst du das Geld (Gr.)?

3. All does not admit of weak inflection: one says der Vater unser aller (not allen); das alles, dies alles, nach dem allem (better than allen). For allenfalls, see § 288, 1, *a*.

4. In the classics all sometimes = jed-, *every;* e. g., aller Zustand ist gut, *every condition is good* (G.); bei allem irdischen Ding (S.); die Frauen alles Standes (G.). In these cases present usage would prefer the sing. of jed- or the plu. of all. Cf. alle Tage, *every day;* alle paar Minuten, *every few minutes.* Quite common are: wir haben allen Grund, allen Anlaß, *every reason, every occasion.*

5. In like manner early writers use all in the sense of ganz, *the whole;* e. g., allen Winter (Logau); durch alles Leben (Frank). One would now say den ganzen Winter, durch das ganze Leben. Cf. die ganze Nacht, *all night;* ganz Amerika, *all America.* But alle Welt is still common, along with die ganze Welt, for *all the world, tout le monde.*

6. After ohne, all and jed- occur sometimes in the sense of Eng. *any;* e. g., ohne allen (or jeden) Begriff, *without any idea.*

7. Note finally the idioms in aller Eile, *in all haste;* in aller Frühe, *very early in the morning;* also es (der Wein, die Freude) ist alle, i. e., *is all gone;* er wird sein bißchen Geld bald alle machen, *he will soon make an end of (run through) his little money.*

318. Ein-. As pronoun ein- may take the place of (irgend) jemand, *some one, any one;* e. g., da liegt schon einer tot, *there lies some one dead* (G.); da fragt niemand, was einer glaubt, *what any one believes* (S.).

1. The neuter form eins may refer to a person; e. g., nun sag' mir eins, *now let some one tell me* (G.); wenn unser eins am Spinnen war, *when you and I were at our spinning* (G.).

a. More often it is used, sometimes almost untranslatably, as cognate object of ſingen, trinken and other verbs; e. g., eins ſingen, *sing a song;* eins trinken, *take a drink;* wenn dir das Mädchen keimt, da liebt ſie eins zum Spaß, *she just falls in love for fun* (G.).

319. Einig- and its Synonyms. For the singular of einig- present usage prefers a substitute (ein, irgend ein, ein wenig, etwas), but it is not uncommon in literature; e. g., aus Furcht des Todes oder ſonſt einiges Dinges, *from fear of death or some other thing* (Claudius); nach einiger Pauſe, *after a short pause* (G.); nicht ohne einiges Bedenken, *not without some hesitation.*

1. The plu. einige implies, according to Grimm, more than two but less than five. For five or more one says mehrere, eine Menge, manche, viele. The ill-sounding einige wenige occurs in the sense of *a few*, but *a few* is better denoted by einige alone, or else by ein paar. Note the orthographic distinction in ein paar Minuten, *a few minutes*, but ein Paar Stiefel, *a pair of boots.*

a. Etliche, welche and etwelche have the same meaning as einige, but etwelche is obsolete and etliche becoming so.

2. Einige may precede a numeral; e. g., einige zwanzig, *twenty odd.* The article ein is sometimes used in a similar way; e. g., ein acht Tage, *some eight days.*

3. Mehre for mehrere is not good. For the phrase morgen ein Mehres, *more to-morrow* (L.), one would now prefer morgen mehr, Weiteres, or das Weitere.

320. Etwas, was, nichts. Both was and etwas may mean *something of importance;* e. g., laßt mich auch etwas ſein, *let me be something too;* ſie rüſten ſich ſchnell, denn ſie dünken ſich was, *for they think themselves 'some'* (G.).

1. The acc. of etwas forms a common adverb = *somewhat, a little;* e. g., etwas kalt, *somewhat cold.* Distinguish therefore between etwas beſſer, *somewhat better*, and etwas Beſſeres, *something better.*

2. Nichts, though classed for convenience with pronominals, is really a substantive—the gen. of *niht* = *naught*,—which is still preserved as a dat. in the phrases zunichte werden, *come to naught*, and mit nichten, *by no means.* In early modern German nicht took a partitive gen.; e. g., und hätte der Liebe nicht, *and had not love*, i. e., *naught of love* (Lu.). This construction still occurs in the phrase hier iſt meines Bleibens nicht, *there is no staying here for me.*

321. Man and its Compounds. Man, from Mann, like French *on* from *homo*, does not individualize at all, whence it is never preceded by irgend, though it may approach the meaning of irgend jemand; e. g., man pocht, *there is a knock, some one is knocking.* Most often it is an indefinite representative of people at large, mankind, the public, as in man ſagt, *they say, it is said;* man kommt zu ſehn, man will am liebſten ſchaun, *people come to see, they wish to gaze* (G.).

1. Again, man may take the place of a personal pronoun of any person. Goethe often uses it for ich in describing his own doings, and interchanges it with wir in the same sentence. Man ſchweige is much the same, only less brusque, as ſchweige, ſchweigt, or ſchweigen Sie. The policeman says wer iſt man? was will man hier? for *who are you? what do you want here?*

2. Jemand and niemand are compounds of man with excrescent d. For the dative and accusative present usage prefers the uninflected form, though the dative in em and (less often) the accusative in en, still occur. Their plural is supplied by einige and keine.

322. Viel and wenig. With these words there is great freedom in the use of uninflected forms. Inflection is required only after der or a possessive; e. g., das viele Geld, das er beſitzt, *the large amount of money that he possesses;* trotz ſeines vielen Geldes; mein Weniges, *my little.*

a. But wenig after der or a possessive and in agreement with a noun in the singular is not common. For ſein weniges Talent, *his little talent* (G.), one would now prefer ſein geringes Talent, ſein kleines, or ſein bißchen Talent.

1. Except after der or a possessive, inflection prevails in the plural and genitive singular (where it may be needed to show case), non-inflection in the nominative singular, masculine and neuter; elsewhere both are about equally common. Examples: ſchon viele Tage, *these many days* (S.); er freut ſich vieler Ehre, *enjoys much honor;* viel Lärm um nichts, *much ado about nothing;* viel Geſchrei und wenig Wolle, *much noise and little wool;* viel Dank, *many*

thanks; mit vieler Mühe; mit wenig Witz und viel Behagen (G.); viel Grüße hat er aufgetragen (G).

2. Sometimes inflection is associated with the idea of variety; e. g., ich meine nicht vieles, sondern viel; ein weniges, aber mit Fleiß; *I mean not (a little in) much, but much (in little); a small quantity, but with care* (L.). Stahr writes: ich habe vieles gesehen, hier und da auch viel, *many things, here and there also much (of importance);* wer vieles bringt, *he who offers a great variety* (G.); viel Wein, *much wine;* vieler Wein, *many kinds of wine.*

THE VERB.

SUPPLEMENTARY DETAILS ON CONJUGATION.

323. Haben and sein as Auxiliaries. All transitive verbs (including reflexives), the modal auxiliaries and many intransitives are conjugated with haben.

1. With a very few exceptions (bleiben, geschehen, gelingen, glücken, sein), the verbs that form their perfect tenses with sein contain the idea of transition from one place or condition to another. They either denote literal motion, as gehen, kommen, or else a change of status, as altern, bersten.

a. Often this idea of change is given by a prefix, and thus we may have a compound conjugated with sein, while the simple verb takes haben; e. g., schlafen, *sleep,* and einschlafen, *fall asleep;* stehen, *stand,* and erstehen, *arise.* Such compounds are quite numerous and only a few specimens of them are given in the list below. The most important of the verbs that take sein are, then, the following, together with their intransitive compounds:

altern, *grow old.*
aufstehen, *arise.*
begegnen, *meet.*
bersten, *burst.*
bleiben, *remain.*
eilen, *hurry.*
entschlafen, *fall asleep.*
erscheinen, *appear.*
ertrinken, *drown.*
erwachen, *awaken.*
fahren, *go.*
fallen, *fall.*
fliegen, *fly.*
fliehen, *flee.*
fließen, *flow.*
folgen, *follow.*
frieren, *freeze.*
gedeihen, *thrive.*
gehen, *go.*
gelingen, *succeed.*
genesen, *recover.*
geschehen, *happen.*
gleiten, *glide.*
glücken, *succeed.*
klimmen, *climb.*
klettern, *clamber.*
kommen, *come.*
kriechen, *creep.*
laufen, *run.*
quellen, *gush forth.*
reisen, *set out.*
reiten, *ride.*
rennen, *run.*

rinnen, *flow.*
ſcheitern, *be wrecked.*
ſchleichen, *creep.*
ſchmelzen, *melt.*
ſchreiten, *stride.*
ſchwimmen, *swim.*
ſein, *be.*
ſinken, *sink.*
ſpringen, *spring.*
ſteigen, *climb.*
ſterben, *die.*
ſtürzen, *rush.*
treten, *step.*
verarmen, *grow poor.*
verhungern, *starve.*
wachſen, *grow.*
weichen, *recede.*
werden, *become.*
ziehen, *pass.*

b. Intransitives that do not come under any of these heads are conjugated with haben. This is the case not only with verbs which contain no idea of motion, as ſchlafen, *sleep*, but also with verbs of motion that denote simply a verbal activity, without any idea of transition from one point to another. Verbs of motion that are usually of this character are omitted from the list above. Such are, e. g., hüpfen, *hop;* knieen, *kneel;* rauſchen, *rustle;* ſchwanken, *waver;* ſchweben, *sweep;* tanzen, *dance.* But any of these may take ſein, if they express transition; e. g., der Vogel iſt durchs Fenſter gehüpft, *has hopped through the window.*

c. On the other hand several of the verbs in the list above may take haben if the tense denotes simply a verbal activity, or a temporal, rather than a local, relation ; e. g., die haben ſchon was Rechts geſprungen, *have danced a good bit* (G.), but one would say ſind ins Waſſer geſprungen, *have leaped into the water;* er hat viel gereiſt, *he has traveled much*, but er iſt nach Paris gereiſt, *has set out for Paris;* das Kind hat erſt heute gegangen, *has never walked until to-day*, but iſt heute von einem Stuhl zum andern gegangen, *walked from one chair to the other;* ich habe eine Stunde geritten, *I rode for an hour*, but ich bin aufs Land geritten, *rode into the country;* ich habe fortgefahren, *I continued*, but ich bin fortgefahren, *I went away.*

d. The general principle regulating the use of haben and ſein is simple: haben calls attention to a verbal action, ſein to the state or condition that has resulted from the action. There is, however, much confusion of the two auxiliaries, ſein being often used where the rule would call for haben; cf. Goethe's iſt viel gereiſt (*Faust*, l. 3019). Even ſtehen, ſitzen and liegen are sometimes conjugated with ſein. On the other hand, begegnen and folgen occur with haben.

324. Omission of the Auxiliaries. The auxiliaries of tense are often omitted at the end of a dependent clause; e. g., dasjenige, was wir von andern gehört (sc. haben), *that which we have heard from others* (G.); das iſt im Feld derſelbe Rain, wo wir dereinſt gegangen (sc. ſind), *the selfsame tract where we once walked.*

a. In this way it is often possible to avoid an unpleasant concurrence of auxiliaries; e. g., der Sieg, den er errungen (hatte), hatte bewiesen, daß —, *the victory he had won had proved that —;* was damit gewonnen worden (war), war unbedeutend, *what had been gained by this, was insignificant.*

b. The frequent omission of the auxiliary is characteristic of certain authors, e. g., Lessing, Goethe, Richter. With writers on style the matter is a moot-question, some advocating, others disapproving, the '*hatte-war* style.' In general it is not well to omit the auxiliary if an ambiguity of mode or tense would result. On the other hand, in such a sentence as the following, quoted by Wustmann, the two final war's would be intolerable: da die Zeit, für die das Herrenhaus gewählt worden (war), abgelaufen war, *since the time had expired for which the House of Lords had been chosen.*

325. Periphrastic and Causal Auxiliaries. Standard German recognizes no auxiliary corresponding to English *do* in *I do believe, I did think*, etc., but thun is so used in dialect and the usage is more or less reflected in literature; e. g., die Augen thäten ihm sinken, *his eyes sank*, i. e., *did sink* (G.); (ich) thät ihn recht herzlich lieben, *I loved him right heartily* (G.).

a. Thun as auxiliary usually has pret. ind. thät, not that. See the examples above.

1. Lassen, *let*, is sometimes called a causative auxiliary, but its meaning may be permissive as well as causal; e. g., laß mich gehen auf deiner Spur, *let me go upon thy track* (permissive); die Mutter ließ einen Pfaffen kommen, *had a priest come* (causal); ich lasse mir meinen Hermann nicht schelten, *I will not let my Hermann be scolded* (G.).

a. On the peculiar passive use of the active inf. after lassen, as in the last example, see § 366, 1, *a.*

b. Machen, *make*, also occurs as causative auxiliary: e. g., ihr habt mich weidlich schwitzen machen, *you have made me sweat vigorously* (G.).

326. Omission of the Augment ge.

1. The prefix ge was not at first a necessary element of the perfect participle. In composition with verbs the particle had various functions, one of which was to give a 'perfective' meaning; e. g., *do der haubtman gelas den brief, when the captain had read the letter*, the preterite

gelas denoting the completion of the action. Becoming thus associated with the idea of completed action, the particle attached itself more and more to the perfect participle and finally became a regular 'sign' of that form.

a. The above statement sufficiently explains the occasional occurrence in the classics of such participles as funden, for gefunden; kommen, for gekommen, etc. They are survivals.

2. At present the following classes of verbs regularly form their perfect participle without ge:

a. Inseparable compounds and verbs in ie'ren, — because of a feeling that ge should not immediately precede an unaccented syllable.

b. The modal auxiliaries, and also heißen, helfen, laſſen, ſehen, when the participle occurs in connection with an infinitive; e. g., ich habe es nicht thun können, *I have not been able to do it;* er hat mich rufen laſſen, *he has had me called.* The old participle of these verbs looks and sounds like an infinitive; for which reason several weak verbs that have followed their analogy put the infinitive in place of the participle when an infinitive precedes. Such are, quite regularly, hören, which seems to have followed ſehen, and sometimes also brauchen, lehren, machen and lernen; e. g., ich habe ſagen hören, *I have heard say;* ich hatte ihn kennen lernen, *I had learned to know him;* ihr habt mich ſchwitzen machen, *you have made me sweat* (G.).

c. Werden in the passive voice, to avoid two concurrent forms with ge.

d. Certain adjective compounds, as hausbacken, *home-baked, homely* (backen instead of gebacken); halbwachſen, *half-grown.*

327. Use of the Connecting Vowel and the Endings. The rules in § 176 present the normal usage of to-day, but there are many exceptions. Solemn or stately diction tends to long forms, easy talk to short, while the poet may take advantage of either for his meter's sake; e. g., redſt du von einem, der da lebet (S.)? ich habe gelebt und geliebet (S.); die ſchönſte Jungfrau ſitzet (Heine); begreife nicht, was er an mir find't (G.). Here the normal forms would be: redeſt, lebt, geliebt, ſitzt, findet.

1. In talk it is usual to drop the connecting vowel e in the pres. ind. 2. sing. after a sibilant (contrary to § 176, 3). In such cases the ſ of the ending ſt is also dropped and the form becomes identical with the 3. sing.; thus du wiſcht, instead of wiſcheſt; du lieſt, for lieſeſt; du läßt,

for läſſeſt; du ſitzt, for ſitzeſt. In the pret. such contractions (du aßt, for du aßeſt, from eſſen) are much more rare.

a. So too a final t of the stem is not heard (though it is best to write it) before ſt; i. e., hältſt, giltſt, fichtſt, are pronounced, usually, hälſt, gilſt, fichſt.

2. In the imv. 2. sing. the ending e belongs properly to all weak verbs. If, therefore, it is omitted, an apostrophe is proper; e. g., lieb' ſolang du lieben kannſt; folg' nur dem alten Spruch (G.). But faſſ', preſſ', and the like, become faß, preß.

a. Strong verbs have no ending in the imv. 2. sing. after a radical i or ie changed from e; thus hilf, tritt, lies. In other cases the use of the final e is in large measure optional. It is quite uniformly omitted in komm, laß and lauf. In beiß(e), fließ(e), geh(e), halt(e), ſauf(e), ſchlaf(e), ſchlag(e), ſchrei(e), ſchweig(e), ſteh(e), ſtoß(e), thu(e), trag(e), zieh(e), the omission of e is at any rate so common that no apostrophe is needed.

b. Strong verbs with radical e that have vowel-change in the pres. ind. should have it also in the imv. 2. sing.; but trete for tritt, nehme for nimm, meſſe for miß, and other such substitutions of weak for strong inflection, are common in good writers.

3. In early modern German a spurious final e is sometimes found in the pret. ind. 1. and 3. sing. of strong verbs; as ſahe for ſah.

328. Strong and Weak Conjugation.

1. As in the case of nouns, so in that of verbs, the terms 'strong' and 'weak' were introduced by Grimm. They were intended to contrast those verbs which form their pret. by means of an internal vowel-change, thus seeming to rely upon their own inner 'strength', with those which have the 'weakness' to rely upon foreign aid in the shape of a suffix. The terms are fanciful, but convenient and in universal use. They are at any rate better than 'old' and 'new', and far better than 'irregular' and 'regular'.

2. The characteristic 'ablaut' of strong verbs (sometimes translated by *gradation*, as umlaut is by *mutation*), is a definite series of changes undergone by the radical vowel in different forms derived from the same root. It is by no means confined to verbs; thus with binden, band, gebunden, cf. the nouns Binde, Band, Bund.

3. The vowel-change of the pres., in strong verbs, is always a species of umlaut, though it is not always marked by the modern sign of umlaut. It is due (cf. § 21) to the former presence of an i in the endings of the 2. and 3. sing. Thus du trägſt, er trägt, represent an earlier

du tragis(t), er tragit; whereas the forms now without umlaut had no i in the ending: ich trage, from *ih tragu*, wir tragen, from *wir tragem(es)*, etc.

a. Verbs with radical ie formerly made a pres. ind. 2. and 3. sing. and an imv. 2. sing. in eu; e. g., fleugſt, fleugt, instead of fliegſt, fliegt, from fliegen; kreuchſt, kreucht, instead of kriechſt, kriecht, from kriechen. These archaic forms are often met with in the classics.

4. In Old and Middle German the pret. of most strong verbs had two different ablaut-stages, i. e., two different radical vowels, one for the sing., the other for the plu.; thus *ich sang, I sang*, but *wir sungen, we sang; ich reit, I rode*, but *wir riten, we rode.* In modern German the vowel of the sing. has usually prevailed for the entire tense. In some cases, however, the vowel of the plu. was transferred to the sing. (cf. Eng. *I sang* and *I sung*), giving rise to doublets, such as ich ſtand and ich ſtund. Such double preterites were once common, and one of them, ward, wurde, still survives. Ward is more stately and bookish than wurde.

a. The secondary vowel of the pret. is much more apt to appear in the subj. than in the ind.; thus while ich ſtarb, from ſterben, no longer occurs, ich ſtürbe, is common. It even has the advantage of ich ſtärbe, in that it is not liable to be confounded by the ear with ich ſterbe. There are many such cases.

329. Ablaut Classes.

1. It is impossible to draw up a classification of strong verbs that will appreciably facilitate the learning of their forms. They must simply be memorized one by one. The only classification that is of any use (and its value is scientific rather than practical) is that which groups together those verbs which originally had the same series of vowel-changes in their principal parts. Such a group is called an ablaut class.

2. There are in all seven such classes. Since, however, the classification is based primarily upon the older forms, which have undergone great changes with the lapse of time, it can not be made fully intelligible without detailed historical explanations which lie beyond the scope of this work. (Consult Brandt's *German Grammar*, §§ 122 ff. and 459 ff.) In the subjoined scheme is given, first, the vowel of the inf.; then, after the first dash, the vowel of the pret., and after the second dash the vowel of the perf. pple. The statistical numbers refer to the list in § 331. The classes, then, are as follows:

Class I: Ablaut ei — i, ie, — i, ie; e. g., reiten, ritt, geritten; bleiben, blieb, geblieben. 43 verbs.

Class II: Ablaut ie, ü, au, — o — o; e. g., fließen, floß, gefloſſen; lügen, log, gelogen; ſaufen, ſoff, geſoffen. 33 verbs.

Class III: e, i, — a short — u short, o short; e. g., werfen, warf, geworfen; binden, band, gebunden. 47 verbs.

Class IV: Ablaut e, ä — a long — o; e. g., brechen, brach, gebrochen; gebären, gebar, geboren. 16 verbs.

Class V: Ablaut i, e, ie, — a long — e; e. g., bitten, bat, gebeten; geben, gab, gegeben; liegen, lag, gelegen. 15 verbs.

Class VI: Ablaut a — u — a; e. g., fahren, fuhr, gefahren. 15 verbs.

Class VII: Vowel-change which looks like ablaut, but is not; a, au, ei, o, u — ie — a, au, ei, o, u; e. g., fallen, fiel, gefallen; laufen, lief, gelaufen; ſtoßen, ſtieß, geſtoßen. 18 verbs.

Remark. A few verbs have passed out of the class to which they originally and properly belong. Thus bellen, *bark*, formerly made pret. ball, pple. gebollen. But ball early gave way to boll (with the vowel of the pple.), and bellen, boll, gebollen, does not conform to any of the seven classes as above given. In the list below such cases are denoted by a bracketed number; e. g., bellen [III] means that the verb once belonged to Class III.

330. Irregular Weak Verbs. Nine weak verbs have in the preterite and perfect participle a vowel-change which looks like ablaut. These are:

Inf.	*Pret. ind.*	*Perf. pple.*	*Pret. subj.*
brennen, *burn*,	brannte,	gebrannt,	brennte.
bringen, *bring*,	brachte,	gebracht,	brächte.
denken, *think*,	dachte,	gedacht,	dächte.
dünken, *seem*,	deuchte,	gedeucht,	deuchte.
kennen, *know*,	kannte,	gekannt,	kennte.
nennen, *name*,	nannte,	genannt,	nennte.
rennen, *run*,	rannte,	gerannt,	rennte.
ſenden, *send*,	ſandte,	geſandt,	ſendete.
wenden, *turn*,	wandte,	gewandt,	wendete.

a. dünken, ſenden and wenden are often regular; brennen, kennen, nennen and rennen, rarely so.

1. The only other weak verbs that present any irregularities are haben (§ 171), the modal auxiliaries (§ 189) and wiſſen (§ 190).

331. List of Strong Verbs.

The following list is meant to contain all the verbs of late modern German that have any strong forms. After the principal parts is given, first, the pres. ind. 2. sing., from which the 3. sing. can usually be got by simply dropping ſ of the ending ſt; thus, du bäckſt, er bäckt. Whenever the 3. sing. cannot be got in this way, as in du giltſt, er gilt, it is given separately. Next comes the pret. subj. 1. sing., and then the imv. 2. sing., the latter distinguished by an [!]. The Roman numeral gives the ablaut class to which the verb belongs or belonged (§ 329, remark). Obsolete forms are enclosed in [ ], forms that are not to be recommended in ( ). For beginnen, verderben, etc., see under =ginnen, =derben.

Backen, *bake,* buk, gebacken; bäckſt; büke; back(e)! VI. — Often weak throughout, except that there is no pple. gebackt. Buk has short u. Gebacken without ge occurs in hausbacken, neubacken, etc.

=bären, =bar, =boren; =bierſt or =bärſt; =bäre; =bier! or =bäre! IV.— Only in gebären, *give birth to* (earlier geberen, whence gebierſt, gebiert, gebier!). Gebäre as pret. subj. is avoided, being like the pres.

Beißen, *bite,* biß, gebiſſen; beißeſt, beißt; biſſe; beiß(e)! I.

Bellen, *bark,* [boll], [gebollen]; [billſt]; [bölle]; [bill!] [III.]—Now always weak, but strong forms occur in the classics. Grimm wrote: ein Hund bellt noch heute, wie er zu Anfang der Schöpfung boll, with weak pres. and strong pret. in the same sentence.

Bergen, *hide,* barg, geborgen; birgſt; bürge or bärge; birg! (berge!). III.

Berſten, *burst,* barſt [borſt], geborſten; birſteſt or birſt, birſt; börſte or bärſte; birſt! III.—Often weak throughout.

Biegen, *bend,* bog, gebogen; biegſt [beugſt]; böge; biege! [beug!] II.

Bieten, *offer,* bot, geboten; bieteſt [beutſt, beut]; böte; biete! [beut!] II.

Binden, *bind,* band, gebunden; bindeſt; bände; binde! III.

Bitten, *ask,* bat, gebeten; bitteſt; bäte; bitte! V.

Blaſen, *blow,* blies, geblaſen; bläſ(eſ)t, bläſt; bliefe; blaſ(e)! VII.— Sometimes weak in pres. The pret. blus (Claudius) is jocose.

Bleiben, *remain,* blieb, geblieben; bleibſt; bliebe; bleib(e)! I.

=bleichen, =blich, =blichen; =bleichſt; =bliche; =bleich(e)! I.—Strong only in erbleichen, verbleichen, *turn pale, die,* which may be weak in the pret. Bleichen, *bleach,* is weak.

Braten, *roast,* briet, gebraten; brätſt, brät; briete; brate! VII.— Sometimes weak, but no gebratet.

Brechen, *break,* brach, gebrochen; brichſt; bräche; brich! (breche!) IV.—Radebrechen, *murder* (a language), is weak: radebrechte, gerade-brecht.

=deihen, =dieh, =diehen; =deihſt; =diehe; =deihe! I.—Only in gedeihen, *thrive.*

=derben, =darb, =dorben; =dirbſt; =dürbe or =därbe; =dirb! III.—Only in verderben, *ruin, be ruined,* which is apt to be weak when transitive. Verderbt means *morally corrupt;* ein verderbtes Herz, but ein verdorbener (*bankrupt*) Kaufmann.

Dingen, *hire,* dang, gedungen; dingſt; dinge! III.—Originally, and still usually, weak. Pret. subj. always dingte, not dänge, nor dünge. Bedingen, *stipulate,* is usually weak, always so in the ppl. adj. bedingt, *conditioned.*

Dreſchen, *thresh,* draſch or droſch, gedroſchen; driſch(eſ)t, driſcht; dröſche or dräſche; driſch! III.—Often weak.

=drießen, =droß, =droſſen. Only in verdrießen, *vex,* which is hardly used except in the 3. sing.; verdrießt [=dreußt]; verdröſſe. II.

Dringen, *press,* drang [drung], gedrungen; dringſt; dränge [drünge]; dringe! III.

Eſſen, *eat,* aß, gegeſſen; iſſeſt or ißt, ißt; äße; iß! (eſſe!) V.—Gegeſſen contracted to geſſen (cf. *Faust,* l. 2838), where ge ceased to be felt as a prefix, and so was prefixed anew.

Fahren, *go,* fuhr, gefahren; fährſt; führe; fahre! VI.

Fallen, *fall,* fiel, gefallen; fällſt; fiele; falle! VII.

Fangen [fahen], *catch,* fing (fieng), gefangen; fängſt [fähſt]; finge (fienge); fange! VII.

Fechten, *fight,* focht, gefochten; ficht(e)ſt, ficht; föchte; ficht! [III.]—Sometimes weak.

=fehlen, =fahl, =fohlen; =fiehlſt; =föhle or =fähle; =fiehl! (=fehle!) IV.—Only in befehlen, *command,* and empfehlen, *recommend.* Fehlen, *fail,* is weak.

Finden, *find,* fand, gefunden; findeſt; fände; finde! III.

Flechten, *braid,* flocht, geflochten; flicht(e)ſt, flicht; flöchte; flicht! [III.]—Sometimes weak.

=fleißen, =fliß, =fliſſen; =fleiß(eſ)t, =fleißt; =fliſſe; =fleiße! I.—Only in ſich befleißen, *attend to.*

Fliegen, *fly,* flog, geflogen; fliegſt [fleugſt]; flöge; fliege! [fleug!] II.

Fliehen, *flee,* floh, geflohen; fliehſt [fleuchſt]; flöhe; fliehe! [fleuch!] II.

Fließen, *flow,* floß, gefloſſen; fließ(eſ)t [fleußt], fließt [fleußt]; flöſſe; fließe! [fleuß!] II.

Fragen, *ask,* fragte (frug), gefragt; fragſt (frägſt); fragte; frage! VI.—A weak verb that has developed strong forms after the analogy of ſchlagen and tragen. But the weak forms are better.

Freſſen, *eat* (said of animals), fraß, gefreſſen ; friſſeſt or frißt, frißt ; fräße ; friß! (freſſe!) V.—A compound of ver and eſſen.

Frieren, *freeze*, fror, gefroren ; frierſt ; fröre ; friere! II.

Gären, *ferment*, gor, gegoren ; gierſt ; göre ; [gier!] [IV.]—Usually weak, especially in the figurative sense *be perturbed.*

Geben, *give*, gab, gegeben ; giebſt (gibſt) ; gäbe, gieb! (gib!) V.

Gehen, *go*, ging (gieng), gegangen ; gehſt ; ginge (gienge) ; geh! VII.

Gelten, *be worth*, galt, gegolten ; giltſt, gilt ; gölte or gälte ; gilt! (gelte!) III.

-geſſen, -gaß, -geſſen ; -giſſ(eſ)t or -gißt, -gißt ; -gäße ; **-giß!** (-geſſe!) V.—Only in vergeſſen, *forget.*

Gießen, *pour*, goß, gegoſſen ; gieß(eſ)t [geußt], gießt [geußt] ; göſſe ; gieße! [geuß!] II.

-ginnen, -gann, -gonnen ; -ginnſt ; -gänne or -gönne ; -ginne! III.—Only in beginnen, *begin.* Begonnte for begann, occurs in the classics.

Gleichen, *be like*, glich, geglichen ; gleichſt ; gliche ; gleiche! I.—Usually weak in the transitive sense *make like.*

Gleißen, *shine*, gliß, gegliſſen ; gleiß(eſ)t, gleißt ; gliſſe ; gleiße! I.—Now usually weak, but little used in any form.

Gleiten, *glide*, glitt, geglitten ; gleiteſt ; glitte ; gleite! I.—Sometimes weak.

Glimmen, *glimmer*, glomm, geglommen ; glimmſt ; glömme ; glimme! [III.]—Sometimes weak.

Graben, *dig*, grub, gegraben ; gräbſt ; grübe ; grabe! VI.

Greifen, *seize*, griff, gegriffen ; greifſt ; griffe ; greife! I.

Greinen, *grin*, [grinn], [gegrinnen] ; greinſt ; [grinne] ; greine! I.—Now weak, and used only in the sense of *whine, cry.*

Halten, *hold*, hielt, gehalten ; hältſt, hält ; hielte ; halte! VII.

Hangen, *hang*, hing (hieng), gehangen ; hängſt ; hinge (hienge) ; hange! VII.—There is also a weak hängen, which, like hangen, is both transitive and intransitive.

Hauen, *hew*, hieb, gehauen ; hauſt ; hiebe ; hane! VII.—Hieb is for hiew ; there is no change of stem, as in gehen, ging.

Heben, *raise*, hob or hub, gehoben ; hebſt, hübe or höbe ; hebe! [VI.] The old pple. gehaben survives in erhaben, *exalted.*

Heißen, *call, be called*, hieß, geheißen ; heiß(eſ)t, heißt ; hieße ; heiße! VII.

Helfen, *help*, half, geholfen ; hilfſt ; hülfe or hälfe ; hilf! (helfe!) III.

Keifen, *quarrel,* [kiff], [gekiffen] ; keifſt ; [kiffe] ; keife ! I.—Now always weak.

Kieſen, *choose,* kor, gekoren ; kieſ(eſ)t ; köre ; kieſe ! II.—Often weak. Cf. küren.

Klieben, *cleave,* klob, gekloben ; kliebſt ; klöbe ; kliebe ! II.—Usually weak, and little used in any form.

Klimmen, *climb,* klomm, geklommen ; klimmſt ; klömme ; klimme ! [III.]—Often weak.

Klingen, *sound,* klang, geklungen ; klingſt ; klänge ; klinge ! III.—Often weak.

Kneifen, *pinch,* kniff, gekniffen ; kneifſt ; kniffe ; kneife ! I.—Often weak.

Kneipen, *pinch,* [knipp], [gekneppen] ; kneipſt ; [knippe] ; kneipe ! I.—Now always weak. Kneipen, *drink,* is weak.

Kommen, *come,* kam, gekommen ; kommſt (kömmſt) ; käme ; komm ! [IV.] —Kömmſt, kömmt, are common in the classics, but kommſt, kommt, are to be preferred.

Kreiſchen, *scream,* kriſch, gekriſchen ; kreiſch(eſ)t, kreiſcht ; kriſche ; kreiſche ! I. See under kreißen.

Kreißen, *scream,* [kriß], [gekriſſen] ; kreiß(eſ)t, kreißt ; [kriſſe] ; kreiße ! I.—Both kreißen and kreiſchen, related words, are often weak, kreißen now regularly so.

Kriechen, *creep,* kroch, gekrochen ; kriechſt [kreuchſt] ; kröche ; krieche ! [kreuch !] II.

Küren, *choose,* kor, gekoren ; kürſt ; köre ; küre ! II.—Often weak. The pret. kor, of kieſen, gave rise to the spurious present küren.

Laden, *load,* lud, geladen ; lädſt, lädt ; lüde ; lade ! VI.—Laden, *invite,* was at first weak, but early became confounded with laden, *load.* Both now prefer weak forms in the pres., strong in the pret.

Laſſen, *let,* ließ, gelaſſen ; läſſeſt or läßt, läßt ; ließe ; laß ! VII.

Laufen, *run,* lief, gelaufen ; läufſt (laufſt) ; liefe ; lauf ! VII.

Leiden, *suffer,* litt, gelitten ; leideſt ; litte ; leide ! I.—Entleiden and verleiden, from Leid, are weak. So is bemitleiden, *pity,* from Mitleid.

Leihen, *lend,* lieh, geliehen ; leihſt ; liehe ; leihe ! I.

Leſen, *read,* las, geleſen ; lieſ(eſ)t, lieſt ; läſe ; lies ! (leſe !) V.

Liegen, *lie, be situated,* lag, gelegen ; liegſt ; läge ; liege ! V.

-lieren, -lor, -loren ; -lierſt ; -löre ; -lier ! II.—Only in verlieren, *lose.*

-lingen, -lang, -lungen ; 3. sing. -lingt ; -länge. III.—Only in gelingen, *succeed,* and mißlingen, *fail.* Used impersonally.

Löſchen, *go out, put out* (of a light), loſch, geloſchen ; liſch(eſ)t, liſchſt ; löſche ; liſch ! [III.]—Often weak, especially, when transitive. Originally leſchen, whence liſcheſt, liſcht, liſch !

Lügen, *lie, speak falsely,* log, gelogen ; lügſt ; löge ; lüge ! II.

Mahlen, *grind,* [muhl], gemahlen ; [mählſt] ; [mühle] ; mahle ! VI.—Now weak, except gemahlen.

Meiden, *shun,* mied, gemieden ; meideſt ; miede ; meide ! I.

Melken, *milk,* molk, gemolken ; milkſt ; mölke ; milk ! [III].—Now usually weak.

Meſſen, *measure,* maß, gemeſſen ; miſſeſt or mißt, mißt ; mäße ; miß ! (meſſe !) V.

Nehmen, *take,* nahm, genommen ; nimmſt ; nähme ; nimm ! (nehme !) IV.

=neſen, =nas, =neſen ; =neſ(eſ)t, =neſt ; =näſe ; =neſe ! V.—Only in geneſen, *recover.*

=nießen, =noß, =noſſen ; =nieß(eſ)t, =nießt ; =nöſſe ; =nieße ! II.—Only in genießen, *enjoy.*

Pfeifen, *whistle,* pfiff, gepfiffen ; pfeifſt ; pfiffe ; pfeife ! I.

Pflegen, *attend to,* pflog [pflag], gepflogen ; pflegſt ; pflöge [pfläge] ; pflege ! [IV.]—Weak in the sense of *nurse,* or *be accustomed.*

Preiſen, *praise,* pries, geprieſen ; preiſ(eſ)t, preiſt ; prieſe ; preiſe ! I.—Sometimes weak.

Quellen, *gush forth,* quoll, gequollen ; quillſt ; quölle ; quill ! [III.]—Du quillſt, er quillt, early gave rise to a weak quillen. Quellen, *soak,* is weak.

Rächen, *avenge,* [roch], [gerochen] ; rächſt ; [röche] ; räche ! [IV.]—Now weak.

Raten, *advise,* riet, geraten ; rätſt, rät ; riete ; rate ! VII.—Rarely weak.

Reiben, *rub,* rieb, gerieben ; reibſt ; riebe ; reibe ! I.

Reißen, *tear,* riß, geriſſen ; reiß(eſ)t, reißt ; riſſe ; reiße ! I.

Reiten, *ride,* ritt, geritten ; reiteſt ; ritte ; reite ! I.

Riechen, *smell,* roch, gerochen ; riechſt [reuchſt] ; röche ; rieche ! [reuch !] II.

Ringen, *wrestle,* rang, gerungen ; ringſt ; ränge [rünge] ; ringe ! III.—Ringen, *form a ring,* and beringen, *give a ring to,* are weak. So is umringen, *surround,* usually ; but umrang, umrungen occur.

Rinnen, *run* (of water), rann, geronnen ; rinnſt ; ränne or rönne ; rinne ! III.

Rufen, *call,* rief, gerufen ; rufſt ; riefe ; rufe ! VII.—Rarely weak.

Salzen, *salt,* [ſielz], geſalzen. VII.—Now weak, except geſalzen.

Saufen, *drink,* ſoff, geſoffen; ſäufſt; ſoffe; ſaufe! II.—Often weak.

Saugen, *suck,* ſog, geſogen; ſaugſt; ſöge; ſauge! II.—Often weak.

Schaffen, *create,* ſchuf, geſchaffen; ſchaffſt; ſchüfe; ſchaffe! VI.—Schaffen, meaning *work, procure, command,* is weak.

Schallen, *sound,* ſcholl, geſchollen; ſchallſt; ſchölle; ſchalle! [III.]—Now usually weak, except in stately diction. The forms blend two verbs, viz., a weak ſchallen and a now obsolete ſchellen, ſchall, geſchollen.

=ſchehen, =ſchah, =ſchehen; 3. sing. =ſchieht, =ſchähe. V.—Only in geſchehen, *happen,* and there only in 3. sing.

Scheiden, *part,* ſchied, geſchieden; ſcheideſt; ſchiede; ſcheide! I.—Weak forms are rare and always transitive. Notice the doublet beſchieden, *appointed,* but beſcheiden, *modest.*

Scheinen, *seem,* ſchien, geſchienen; ſcheinſt; ſchiene; ſcheine! I.

Schelten, *scold,* ſchalt, geſcholten; ſchiltſt, ſchilt; ſchölte or ſchälte; ſchilt! (ſchelte!) III.—Rarely weak in pres.

Scheren, *shear,* ſchor, geſchoren; ſchierſt; ſchöre; ſchier! [IV.].—Often weak.

Schieben, *shove,* ſchob, geſchoben; ſchiebſt; ſchöbe; ſchiebe! II.

Schießen, *shoot,* ſchoß, geſchoſſen; ſchieß(eſ)t [ſcheußt], ſchießt [ſcheußt]; ſchöſſe; ſchieße! [ſcheuß!] II.

Schinden, *flay,* ſchund, geſchunden; ſchindeſt; ſchünde; ſchinde! [III.]—Rarely weak.

Schlafen, *sleep,* ſchlief, geſchlafen; ſchläfſt; ſchliefe; ſchlafe! VII.

Schlagen, *strike,* ſchlug, geſchlagen; ſchlägſt; ſchlüge; ſchlage! VI.

Schleichen, *creep,* ſchlich, geſchlichen; ſchleichſt; ſchliche; ſchleiche! I.

Schleifen, *whet,* ſchliff, geſchliffen; ſchleifſt; ſchliffe; ſchleife! I.—Weak in the sense of *slip* or *drag.*

Schleißen, *slit,* ſchliß, geſchliſſen; ſchleiß(eſ)t, ſchleißt; ſchliſſe; ſchleiße! I.

Schliefen, *slip,* ſchloff, geſchloffen; ſchliefſt; ſchlöffe; ſchliefe! II.

Schließen, *shut,* ſchloß, geſchloſſen; ſchließ(eſ)t [ſchleußt], ſchließt [ſchleußt]; ſchlöſſe; ſchließe! [ſchleuß!] II.

Schlingen, *wind,* ſchlang, geſchlungen; ſchlingſt; ſchlänge; ſchlinge! III.

Schmeißen, *dash,* ſchmiß, geſchmiſſen; ſchmeiß(eſ)t, ſchmeißt; ſchmiſſe; ſchmeiße! I.

Schmelzen, *melt,* ſchmolz, geſchmolzen; ſchmilz(eſ)t, ſchmilzt; ſchmölze; ſchmilz! [III.]—Often weak, especially when transitive.

Schnauben, *snort,* ſchnob, geſchnoben; ſchnaubſt; ſchnöbe; ſchnaube! II.—Now usually weak, but strong forms occur.

Schneiden, *cut,* ſchnitt, geſchnitten; ſchneideſt; ſchnitte; ſchneide! I.

Schnieben, *snort,* ſchnob, geſchnoben; ſchniebſt; ſchnöbe; ſchniebe! II.—Now usually weak; a secondary form of ſchnauben.

Schrauben, *screw,* ſchrob, geſchroben; ſchraubſt; ſchröbe; ſchraube! II.—Originally, and still usually, weak.

Schrecken, *be afraid,* ſchrak, [geſchrocken]; ſchrickſt; ſchräke; ſchrick! IV.—Often weak, especially when transitive = *frighten.* Most common in erſchrecken; erſchrocken takes the place of geſchrocken.

Schreiben, *write,* ſchrieb, geſchrieben; ſchreibſt; ſchriebe; ſchreibe! I.

Schreien, *cry,* ſchrie, geſchrieen; ſchreiſt; ſchriee; ſchreie! I.

Schreiten, *stride,* ſchritt, geſchritten; ſchreiteſt; ſchritte; ſchreite! I.

Schroten, *grind,* [ſchriet], geſchroten. VII.—Weak, except geſchroten.

Schwären, *fester,* ſchwor (ſchwur), geſchworen; ſchwierſt; ſchwöre (ſchwüre); ſchwier! [IV.]—Now usually weak in pres., sometimes so in pret. Pple. always geſchworen.

Schweigen, *be silent,* ſchwieg, geſchwiegen; ſchweigſt; ſchwiege; ſchweige! I.—Schweigen, *silence,* is weak.

Schwellen, *swell,* ſchwoll, geſchwollen; ſchwillſt; ſchwölle; ſchwill! (ſchwelle!) [III.]—Weak when transitive.

Schwimmen, *swim,* ſchwamm (ſchwomm), geſchwommen; ſchwimmſt; ſchwämme (ſchwömme); ſchwimme! III.

Schwinden, *vanish,* ſchwand [ſchwund], geſchwunden; ſchwindeſt; ſchwände [ſchwünde]; ſchwinde! III.

Schwingen, *swing,* ſchwang [ſchwung], geſchwungen; ſchwingſt; ſchwänge [ſchwünge]; ſchwinge! III.—Beſchwingen, *endow with wings,* is weak.

Schwören, *swear,* ſchwor or ſchwur, geſchworen; ſchwörſt; ſchwüre or ſchwöre; ſchwöre! [VI.]—Rarely weak.

Sehen, *see,* ſah, geſehen; ſiehſt; ſähe; ſieh! (ſehe!) V.

Sein, *be,* war, geweſen; biſt, iſt; wäre; ſei! V. (ſein replacing weſen).

Sieden, *boil,* ſott, geſotten; ſiedeſt; ſötte; ſiede! II.—Now usually weak; but geſotten as adjective is still common.

Singen, *sing,* ſang [ſung], geſungen; ſingſt; ſänge [ſünge]; ſinge! III.

Sinken, *sink,* ſank [ſunk], geſunken; ſinkſt; ſänke [ſünke]; ſinke! III.

Sinnen, *think,* ſann, geſonnen; ſinnſt; ſänne; ſinne! III.—Sometimes weak. Geſonnen ſein = *to intend;* geſinnt ſein, *to be minded.*

Sitzen, *sit,* ſaß, geſeſſen; ſitz(eſ)t, ſitzt; ſäße; ſitze! V.

Spalten, *split,* [ſpielt], geſpalten. VII.—Now weak, except geſpalten.

Speien, *spit,* ſpie, geſpieen; ſpeiſt; ſpiee; ſpeie! I.—Often weak.

Spinnen, *spin,* ſpann [ſponn], geſponnen; ſpinnſt; ſpönne or ſpänne; ſpinne! III.

Spleißen, *split,* ſpliß, geſpliſſen; ſpleiß(eſ)t, ſpleißt; ſpliſſe; ſpleiße! I.—Sometimes weak, but rare at best, ſpalten taking its place.

Sprechen, *speak,* ſprach, geſprochen; ſprichſt; ſpräche; ſprich! (ſpreche!) IV.

Sprießen, *sprout,* ſproß, geſproſſen; ſprieß(eſ)t [ſpreußt], ſprießt [ſpreußt]; ſpröſſe; ſprieße! [ſpreuß!] II.

Springen, *spring,* ſprang [ſprung], geſprungen; ſpringſt; ſpränge [ſprünge]; ſpringe! III.

Stechen, *prick,* ſtach, geſtochen; ſtichſt; ſtäche; ſtich! [ſteche!] IV.

Stecken, *stick,* ſtak, [geſtocken]; ſtickſt; ſtäke; ſtick! IV.—Now usually and preferably weak.

Stehen, *stand,* ſtand [ſtund], geſtanden; ſtehſt; ſtände or ſtünde; ſteh! VI.

Stehlen, *steal,* ſtahl, geſtohlen; ſtiehlſt; ſtähle or ſtöhle; ſtiehl! (ſtehle!) IV.

Steigen, *climb,* ſtieg, geſtiegen; ſteigſt; ſtiege; ſteige! I.

Sterben, *die,* ſtarb [ſturb], geſtorben; ſtirbſt; ſtürbe or ſtärbe; ſtirb! (ſterbe!) III.

Stieben, *scatter,* ſtob, geſtoben; ſtiebſt; ſtöbe; ſtiebe! II.

Stinken, *stink,* ſtank, geſtunken; ſtinkſt; ſtänke; ſtinke! III.

Stoßen, *push,* ſtieß, geſtoßen; ſtöß(eſ)t, ſtößt; ſtöße; ſtoße! VII.

Streichen, *stroke,* ſtrich, geſtrichen; ſtreichſt; ſtriche; ſtreiche! I.

Streiten, *contend,* ſtritt, geſtritten; ſtreiteſt; ſtritte; ſtreite! I.

Thun, *do,* that, gethan; thuſt; thäte; thu! Irregular.

Tragen, *carry,* trug, getragen; trägſt; trüge; trage! VI.—Beantragen, *propose,* and beauftragen, *commission,* are not compounds of tragen. Cf. § 343.

Treffen, *hit,* traf, getroffen; triffſt; träfe; triff! (treffe!) IV.

Treiben, *drive,* trieb, getrieben; treibſt; triebe; treibe! I.

Treten, *tread,* trat, getreten; trittſt, tritt; träte; tritt! (trete!) V.

Triefen, *drip,* troff, getroffen; triefſt (treufſt); tröffe; triefe! [treuf!] II.—Now usually weak.

Trinken, *drink,* trank [trunk], getrunken; trinkſt; tränke [trünke]; trinke! III.

Trügen, *cheat,* trog, getrogen; trügſt; tröge; trüge! II.

Wachſen, *grow,* wuchs, gewachſen; wächſ(eſ)t, wächſt; wüchſe; wachſe! VI.—Wachſt, without umlaut, is rare. The pple. without ge occurs in halbwachſen, *half-grown.*

Wägen, *weigh,* wog, gewogen; wägſt; wöge; wäge! [II.] -Cf. wiegen and =wegen.

Waſchen, *wash,* wuſch, gewaſchen; wäſch(eſ)t, wäſcht; wüſche; waſche! VI.—Du waſch(eſ)t, er waſcht, without umlaut, are rare.

Weben, *weave,* wob, gewoben; webſt; wöbe; webe! VI.—Now usually weak.

=wegen, =wog, =wogen; =wegſt; =wöge; =wege! [V.]—Only in bewegen, *move,* which is weak, except in the sense of *induce.*

Weichen, *recede,* wich, gewichen; weichſt; wiche; weiche! I.—Weichen, *soften,* is weak.

Weiſen, *show,* wies, gewieſen; weiſ(eſ)t, weiſt; wieſe; weiſe! I.

Werben, *sue,* warb [wurb], geworben; wirbſt; würbe or wärbe; wirb! (werbe!) III.

Werden, *become,* ward or wurde, geworden; wirſt, wird; würde; werde! III.

Werfen, *throw,* warf [wurf], geworfen; wirfſt; würfe or wärfe; wirf! (werfe!) III.

Wiegen, *weigh,* wog, gewogen; wiegſt; wöge; wiege! II.—The same as wägen and =wegen. Wiegen, *rock,* is weak.

Winden, *wind,* wand, gewunden; windeſt; wände; winde! III.—Winden, *sniff,* is weak.

=winnen, =wann, =wonnen; =winnſt; =wönne or =wänne; winne! III.—Only in gewinnen, *win.*

=wirren, in verwirren, *confuse;* always weak, but with strong pple. verworren, along with verwirrt. III.

Zeihen, *accuse,* zieh, geziehen; zeihſt; ziehe; zeihe! I.

Ziehen, *draw,* zog, gezogen; ziehſt [zeuchſt]; zöge; ziehe! [zeuch!] II.

Zwingen, *force,* zwang, gezwungen; zwingſt; zwänge; zwinge! III.

USE OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

332. While it belongs to lexicography rather than grammar to explain in detail the meanings of words, the modal auxiliaries are of such peculiar idiomatic importance as to justify a departure from the rule in their case. The brief account in § 191 is therefore recapitulated and amplified in the following sections.

333. Dürfen. The root-meaning is *need,* in which sense it is used by Luther with a gen.; e. g., die Geſunden dürfen des Arztes nicht, *need not a physician* (Luke v, 31). This sense is now given by bedürfen.

1. From the meaning *be in want of* it was an easy step to *have occasion for*, as in Lessing's was darf ich jeden Thoren fragen: wer ist der größte Mann? *what need* (*occasion*) *have I to ask?* This sense is now given by brauchen.

2. From the last meaning came naturally that of *have authority*, hence, *be allowed, be justified in.* This is the usual meaning of dürfen in modern German. Sometimes it approaches können, or, with a negative, müssen, and is to be translated by *may, can, must*, according to the connection. Examples: ich darf annehmen, *I may assume;* darf ich bitten? *may I ask?* ich durfte mich ärgern, *I had a right to be annoyed;* er ist krank und darf nicht ausgehen, *can not, must not, go out* (for *he may* (*possibly*) *not go out*, one would say er kann möglicherweise nicht ausgehen); hier bin ich Mensch, hier darf ich's sein, *I can be, may be, have the right to be one* (G.); ich darf nicht sagen wie, *I can not, must not, say how* (because propriety forbids), but ich kann nicht sagen wie, *I can not say how* (because I am unable).

3. Dürfen early became confounded with the now obsolete turren, *dare* (ich tar, *I dare;* ich torste, *I durst*), whence the occasional meaning of *dare, venture;* e. g., wer darf mir's ins Gesicht sagen? *who dares say it to my face?* ich darf behaupten, *I dare assert.* But the student should, in general, be wary of translating dürfen by *dare.*

4. The pret. subj. dürfte is used in mild expressions of probability; e. g., man dürfte manches einwenden, *one might make many objections;* diese Mittel dürften sich nicht bewähren, *these means may not prove effective;* das dürfte der Fall sein, *may be the case.*

334. Können. The original meaning, *to know*, is preserved in a few phrases, mostly of the school; e. g., kannst du die Regel (das Spiel, den Katechismus)? *do you know the rule* (*the game, the catechism*)? Können Sie Deutsch? *do you know German?* Here no verb is understood, though it may seem natural to supply one.

1. Very often it expresses simple ability, being then = vermögen; e. g., du kannst ja alles, Tell, *you can do everything you know* (S.); wenn ich etwas auf dich könnte, *if I could influence you somewhat* (G.); was kann die Welt mir wohl gewähren? *what can the world offer me, pray* (G.)?

2. Most commonly it denotes possibility, variously conditioned by circumstances, inclination, the nature of things; e. g., ich kann nicht hohe Worte machen (G.), *I can not make fine phrases* (it being contrary to my nature); kann das natürlich geschehen? *can that happen naturally?* das kann der Fall sein, *that may be the case* (much the same as das mag der Fall sein).

a. If the conditioning circumstances imply a right, or permission, können may take the place of dürfen ; e. g., nun könnt ihr hereinkommen, *now you can (may) come in;* kein Kaiser kann, was unser ist, verschenken, *no emperor can (has the right to) give away what is ours* (S.).

3. Akin to the last is that meaning which implies that there is good reason for the action ; e. g., Sie können mir glauben, *you may well believe me;* darauf kannst du stolz sein, *you have reason to be proud of that;* in diesem Sinne kannst du's wagen, *you can afford to venture it* (G.).

a. Hence können may convey a request, a suggestion, a mild command or remonstrance. Thus (to a child) : kannst du nicht einmal zu mir kommen, *come and see me, won't you;* (to a servant): Sie können mir eine Flasche Wein bringen, *you may bring me,* etc. ; ich könnte später zurückkehren, *I might return later (I suppose);* so etwas können Sie glauben ? *can you believe such a thing ?*

335. **Mögen.** The radical meaning is *to be able* and this sense is occasionally met with in modern German ; e. g., da keiner dich ergründen mag, *since none can fathom thee* (G.); du magst es prächtig malen, *you can* (i. e., *you are the man to*) *paint it gloriously* (Geibel). But this sense is now for the most part given by können, with which mögen is sometimes pleonastically associated ; e. g., was ich kann und mag, *as much as ever I can.*

1. More common, but still not the most common, is the meaning of possibility, conditioned by outward circumstances ; e. g., ohn' ihn mag ich auf Erden, mag dort nicht selig werden, *without him I can not be happy* (Bürger) ; was mag wohl drinne sein? *what can be in it, pray* (G.) ? er mochte ein böses Gewissen haben, *he possibly had a bad conscience* (L.); wie möchte das zu erweisen sein ? *how could that be proved ?*

a. Mochte is common in narrative to denote a rough approximation ; e. g., ungefähr zwei Monate mochte ich so zugebracht haben, *I may have spent about two months thus.*

b. Out of the general meaning of possibility grows the permissive or concessive force of mögen ; e. g., ein Ding mag noch so närrisch sein, *however foolish a thing may be;* mag er kommen oder gehen, was schiert's mich, *he may come or go, what do I care* (L.). As thus used in indirect discourse it may denote a mild command ; e. g., sie rief, er möge gehen, wohin er wolle, *she called to him to go where he chose.*

2. The subjunctive forms may serve as a periphrasis for a potential or optative mode ; e. g., die Straße wird bestreut, damit die Pferde nicht ausgleiten mögen, *that the horses may not slip* (G.); des Himmels Heere mögen dich bedecken, *may heaven's hosts protect thee* (U.); möchte ich doch

im ſtande ſein, *would that I were able* (G.). Note that in the first two of these examples a simple optative subjunctive would be undistinguishable from the indicative.

3. The usual office of mögen now is to denote a wish, choice or preference; e. g., ſie mag ſich gerne putzen, *she likes to adorn herself* (G.); magſt du ein redlich Wort von mir vernehmen? *do you want to hear an honest word* (S.)? ich möchte wiſſen, *I should like to know;* ich möchte bittre Thränen weinen, *I would fain weep* (G.); es möchte kein Hund ſo länger leben, *no dog would care*, etc. (G.). The infinitive is often omitted; e. g., behalten Sie es für ſich, ich mag es nicht, *I do not care for it;* warum magſt du, was du nicht vermagſt? *why do you wish to do what you can not do?*

336. **Müſſen.** In the oldest German müſſen usually means *to have liberty, to be permitted*, i. e., it corresponds to the modern dürfen. This sense appears now only in negative sentences, where müſſen is sometimes interchangeable with dürfen; e. g., das mußt du nicht thun, *you must not do that;* ihr müßt nur nicht erſchrecken, *you must not be frightened* (S.).

1. The modern müſſen generally implies a constraint from without, as of circumstances, authority, duty, logic; e. g., durch dieſe hohle Gaſſe muß er kommen (S.), *he must come* (there being no other way); Sigeth muß fallen, *Sigeth must fall;* ich muß geſtehen, *I must confess;* ich mußte lachen, *I had to laugh;* ihr mußtet euch ſchweigend fügen, *you should have yielded* (S.), = ihr hättet euch fügen ſollen.

2. Less often it denotes certainty, assurance; e. g., dieſer Menſch muß ein Mörder ſein, '*no doubt this man is a murderer*' (Acts xxviii, 4); man muß keinen Philoſophen kennen, wenn man glaubt, *one must needs be a stranger to philosophers*, etc. (L.); es müßte der Teufel dahinter ſtecken, *the devil would needs be in it* (G.).

3. It may denote that something is so fated, ordained; or it may present a voluntary action as due to constraint; e. g., weh mir, was muß ich hören? *alas, what must I hear?* warum mußteſt du mich verlaſſen? *why did you have to leave me?* ich ſetzte mich hin, um zu arbeiten, und war in guter Laune; nun aber mußte ein langweiliger Beſuch mich ſtören, *a tedious call had to interrupt me*, i. e., *it was my fate to be interrupted.*

337. **Sollen.** The radical meaning of ſollen, to which Schuld is a verbal abstract, is that of obligation, duty. The pret. subj., with present force, corresponds to English *should, ought to*, while the pres. ind. may denote a peremptory command; e. g., er ſollte ſich ſchämen, *he*

ought to be ashamed; du ſollſt nicht ſtehlen, *thou shalt not steal.* So in toasts; e. g., der König ſoll leben! *long live the king!*

1. More often, however, ſollen denotes not that something *ought to be,* but that it *is to be,* in accordance with another's will or decree; e. g., er ſoll gleich kommen, *he shall come at once* (i. e., *I promise that he shall*); die Wahl ſollte bald gehalten werden, *the election was soon to be held.* Thus often in confident promises; e. g., in deine Hütte ſoll der Schweizer wallen, *to thy hut the Swiss shall journey* (S.).

a. Hence ſollen corresponds to English *shall* in deliberative questions; e. g., was ſoll ich thun? *what shall I do? what am I to do?* was ſoll der Menſch verlangen? *what shall man desire* (G.)?

b. Similar to the last is the use of ſollen in was ſoll der Hut? *what is the hat meant for* (S.)? was ſoll es bedeuten? *what is it meant to signify?* i. e, *what construction is to be put upon it?*

2. Very often it is used in reporting on hearsay, or on the authority or claim of others; e. g., das Buch ſoll ſehr intereſſant ſein, *is said to be very interesting;* ſoll (or ſollte) das möglich ſein? *can that be possible?* i. e., *shall* (or *should*) *one be expected to believe it?*

3. Now and then ſollte (pret. subj.) has about the force of the conditional; e. g., ich ſollte meinen, *I should think;* man ſollte glauben, *one would believe.*

338. **Wollen** denotes etymologically a will or intention on the part of the subject; e. g., ich will euch lehren Geſichter machen, *I will teach you to make faces* (G.); du willſt uns gar noch grob begegnen? *do you actually mean to insult us* (G.)?

a. Very often, however, it denotes a wish rather than a will, especially if there is no infinitive; e. g., was wollt ihr da? *what do you want there?* er will noch Dank, *he even wants thanks.* Still fainter is the radical meaning in wollen Sie ſo gut ſein, *will you be so kind* (polite request); wir wollen einen Papſt erwählen, *we will choose a pope* (proposal).

1. Since the intent is apt to be followed by action, wollen often comes to have the meaning *to be on the point of;* e. g., er will gehen, *he is about to go* (common in stage directions); die Uhr ſchrillte (*screeched*) wie immer, wenn ſie eben ſchlagen wollte, *whenever it was about to strike;* der Krieg ſchien ſich nun auf deutſchen Boden ſpielen zu wollen, *seemed about to play* (S.).

2. Specially important is the idiomatic use of wollen with non-personal subjects, which strictly can have no will. The shades of meaning thus given are many and subtle; e. g, das will euch nicht behagen, *that won't suit you,* i. e., *doesn't suit you at all* (G.); das will nichts ſagen, *that*

means nothing; es will eben verlauten, *it is just being noised abroad;* es will ohnehin regnen, *it is bound to rain any way;* das Buch will ſtudiert ſein, *the book must be studied* (cf. § 344, 1).

3. Wollen often implies a claim, an attitude, a seeming intention, on the part of the subject; e. g., willſt heller ſehen als deine edeln Väter? *dost claim to see more clearly* (S.)? er will es gehört haben, *he claims to have heard;* ich will es nicht bemerkt haben, *I will act as if I had not noticed it;* ich will es gern gelogen haben, *I am ready to be called a liar for saying it;* ich ſuch' ihn überall, allein er will mir nicht begegnen, *he is bound not to meet me, seems bent on not meeting me* (G.); wir warteten lange auf ihn, da er aber nicht kommen wollte, etc., *but since he didn't seem inclined to come;* mit der Wahl wollte es immer mehr ernſt werden, *it was bent on becoming,* i. e., *the prospect seemed, more and more serious.*

a. Care must be taken in all cases to avoid confounding wollen with a mere auxiliary of the future; es will mir nicht einleuchten, *I do not understand it at all,* is different from es wird mir nie einleuchten, *I shall never understand it;* er will mir nicht begegnen, in the above example, from er wird mir nicht begegnen, *he will not meet me.* Nevertheless wollen sometimes approaches werden pretty closely; e. g., ich weiß nicht, was das werden will, *I do not know what will come of it* (werden wird would be cacophonous).

4. Notice finally the use of the subjunctive in das wolle Gott nicht, *God forbid;* wollte Gott, daß, *would to God that;* ich wollte lieber nichts davon wiſſen, which may mean *I had rather know nothing of it,* as well as *I preferred to know;* wie wollte es auch zu euren Ohren kommen? *how should it come to your ears* (G.)?

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

339. The Personal and the Impersonal Construction. With certain verbs there is a choice between a personal and an impersonal form of expression; e. g., between es dauert mich and ich bedaure, *I am sorry;* between mich friert and ich friere, *I am cold.*

1. In these cases the impersonal form properly denotes an involuntary experience, the personal a voluntary activity of the subject; thus mir träumte, als ſtünde ich, *I dreamed* (*the dream came to me*) *that I stood* (G.); er träumt von einer Palme, *he is dreaming of a palm-tree* (Heine); mich hungert, *I am hungry,* but er hungert aus Geiz, *he goes hungry from avarice.* Still the distinction is often ignored in practice; thus Grimm writes damit ihr nicht friert and damit euch nicht friere, with precisely the same sense.

340. Es giebt, with object in the accusative, is used in the sense of *there is*, if the object is plural, *there are;* e. g., es giebt was Neues, *there is something new;* heute wird's noch ein Gewitter geben, *there will be a shower yet to-day;* o, giebt es Geister in der Luft, *if there are spirits in the air* (G.).

1. On the es of this phrase cf. § 303, 1, *a*. Since the pronoun denotes a general situation, es giebt should not be used if the object is a concrete thing definitely limited in time or place. Thus one would not say es giebt einen Dieb (but es ist ein Dieb) im Hause, *there is a thief in the house;* not es giebt (but es sind) 10 Mark in dem Beutel, *there are 10 marks in the purse.* The object is apt to be a neuter pronoun, a plural, an abstract, an infinitive; e. g., was giebt's? *what's up? what's the matter* (S.)*?* es giebt im Menschenleben Augenblicke, *there are moments*, etc. (S.)*;* es muß auch solche Käuze geben, *there must be such fellows* (G.)*;* hier giebt's zu thun, *here is work to do* (G.)*;* hier giebt's zu unterscheiden, *here there is a distinction to be made* (L.)*;* was giebt's zu essen? *what is there to eat?*

a. The use of the nom. after es giebt, as in es giebt frischer Hering, *there is fresh herring*, is provincial. So, too, is the use of geben for giebt when the object is plu.; e. g., er ist ein Kauz, wie's mehr noch geben, *such as there are many more* (G.).

COMPOUND VERBS.

341. The Adverbial Prefixes which form separable compounds are as follows, the * marking those that *may* be inseparable:

ab, *off, down.*	entzwei, *in two.*	ob, *over, upon.*
an, *at, on.*	entgegen, *toward.*	*über, *over.*
auf, *up.*	fort, *away, forth.*	*um, *around.*
aus, *out.*	gegen, *against.*	*unter, *under.*
bei, *by, with.*	in(ne), *in.*	vor, *before.*
bevor, *before.*	heim, *home.*	*wieder, *again.*
da(r), *there.*	her, *hither.*	weg, *away.*
dazwischen, *between.*	hin, *thither.*	zu, *to.*
*durch, *through.*	hinter, *behind.*	zurück, *back.*
ein, *into.*	mit, *with.*	zusammen, *together.*
empor, *up.*		

a. To these must be added a number of compound particles formed by combining some two of the above words, the compounds of da(r), her and hin being especially numerous; e. g., davon, *off;* dahin, *thither;*

herauf, *up here;* herein, *in here;* hinab, *down there;* hinüber, *over there;* einher, *along;* umher, *around;* zuvor, *before;* überein, *in accord;* voraus, *in advance.*

1. Bevor hardly occurs as separable prefix except in bevorſtehen, *impend.*—Da occurs in dableiben, daſtehen, but is rare, dar being preferred, as in darbieten, darreichen, darſtellen. In composition with another particle da is preferred before consonants, dar before vowels; thus dabei, damit, but daran, daraus.—Gegen and in are hardly used alone, their places being taken by entgegen, and ein or inne.

2. Of the separable prefixes, some, as ab, ein, empor, fort, heim, weg, hin and her and their compounds, are used only in composition with verbs or in the predicate after ſein; while others are in use as prepositions or as ordinary adverbs. Distinguish between the compound davonkommen, in für diesmal kommſt du ſo davon, *for this once you shall get off thus* (G.), and the simple verb kommen modified by the adverb davon, in ich bin eben davon gekommen, *I have just come from it* (e. g., from the concert).

3. As to compounds of durch, über, um, unter, wieder, separable composition accents the idea of the prefix and is apt to be preferred if the meaning is literal, while inseparable composition is associated more with figurative meanings; e. g., unſern Zuſtand hatte ſie längſt durchblickt, *she had long since seen through* (i. e., *comprehended*) *our condition* (G.), but ich nahm ein Fernrohr und blickte durch, *I took a spy-glass and looked through;* die Kälte durchdringt das ganze Haus, *permeates the whole house,* but das Dach war morſch und das Waſſer drang durch, *the water pressed through;* der Kutſcher hat ein Kind überfahren, *ran over a child,* but er hat uns übergefahren, *he drove us over* (e. g., over the bridge).

a. In many cases, however, the two modes of composition are used interchangeably without perceptible difference of meaning; thus Goethe writes: am 29. durchging ich die Rolle, *I went through the rôle,* and in the next sentence: ich ging dieſelbe Rolle durch.

342. Phrase-Compounds. By this name we designate those compounds in which the first part (the separable prefix) is an adjective, a noun, or a prepositional phrase. They may be divided into three groups, as follows:

1. Compounds of adjective and verb, the adjective having a factitive sense; e. g., bloßſtellen, *expose;* feſthalten, *hold fast;* freiſprechen, *acquit;* hochachten, *esteem;* losgehen, *go off;* totſchlagen, *kill;* wahrnehmen, *perceive;* weismachen, *hoax.* These and some others follow the ordinary rules of separable composition; thus feſthalten, hielt feſt, feſtgehalten.

a. But a few such compounds are inflected like a simple stem; e. g., liebkoſen, *caress,* liebkoſte, geliebkoſt. So also weisſagen and wahrſagen, *prophesy.* Like the latter are also certain quasi-compounds derived from stems already compounded; as frühſtücken, *breakfast* (from Frühſtück), frühſtückte, gefrühſtückt; langweilen, *bore* (from Langweile); frohlocken, *rejoice;* rechtfertigen, *justify.*

2. Compounds of noun and verb, the noun being the object; e. g., achtgeben, *heed;* dankſagen, *thank;* fehlſchlagen, *miscarry;* glückwünſchen, *congratulate;* hofhalten, *hold court;* hohnlachen, *mock;* hohnſprechen, *defy;* lobſingen, *praise;* preisgeben, *give over.* These and some others follow the rules of separable composition; thus teilnehmen, *participate,* nahm teil, teilgenommen. But hohnlachen admits of both hohnlachte and lachte hohn.

a. Other such compounds are inflected like a simple stem, a strong verb becoming weak; e. g., brandſchatzen, *levy tribute;* lobhudeln, *flatter fulsomely;* luſtwandeln, *walk for pleasure;* mutmaßen, *conjecture;* radebrechen, *torture;* wetterleuchten, *lighten;* willfahren, *gratify;* thus zu luſtwandeln, luſtwandelte, geluſtwandelt; zu radebrechen, radebrechte, geradebrecht. Like these again are certain quasi-compounds, as argwöhnen, *suspect* (from Argwohn); brandmarken, *stigmatize* (from Brandmarke); handhaben (handhabte, gehandhabt), *handle;* hofmeiſtern, *play the pedant with;* ratſchlagen (ratſchlagte, geratſchlagt), *take counsel;* wehklagen, *lament;* wetteifern, *emulate.*

b. Whether the separated noun of such compounds is to be written with a capital, or not, will depend upon how far it has lost its substantive character. The matter is not yet very strictly regulated; thus while the rules prescribe nahm teil and fand ſtatt, they also prescribe ſagte Dank. Formerly all such nouns were given a capital, as they still must be if qualified by an adjective; thus ich nahm daran teil, but ich nahm daran keinen Teil. For such matters the wisest must consult the official rules (see Appendix I), or else Duden's *Orthographisches Wörterbuch.*

c. Numerous compounds of a verb with a noun or adjective admit of use only as participial adjectives or substantive infinitives; e. g., fruchtbringend, *fruitful;* ſinnbethörend, *sense-distracting;* rotblühend, *red-blooming;* das Atemholen, *the drawing of the breath.* But there are no verbs, fruchtbringen, atemholen, etc.

3. Compounds of prepositional phrase and verb, as auseinanderſetzen, *explain;* durcheinanderwerfen, *jumble together.*

a. Here may be noticed a numerous class of verbal phrases which are in all respects separable compounds, except that phrase and verb are not written as one word in the inf. and perf. pple. Their spelling is, again, in a very unsettled state. Examples are: zuliebe thun, *do for the love of;* von ſtatten gehen, *go off;* zu ſtande (or zuſtande) kommen, *come to pass;* in ſtand (or inſtand, also in Stand) ſetzen, *put in position;* zu Grunde gehen, *go to ruin.*

343. Compounds of Compounds. These always have the first prefix separable, as in anerkennen, *recognize*, auferziehen, *bring up.* Seeming exceptions are not really compounds, but are derived from nouns; as beauftragen, *commission* (from Auftrag); benachrichtigen, *apprise* (from Nachricht); verabſcheuen, *abhor* (from Abſcheu). Such verbs are weak and inseparable; thus beauftragte, beauftragt.

1. While verbs doubly compounded are regularly separable (auferziehen, erzog auf), there are some of them that are avoided in forms where separation would be in order; e. g., auferſtehen, *rise from the dead;* auserleſen, *select;* einverleiben, *embody.* One can say er iſt auferſtanden, or als er auferſtand, but not er erſtand auf. Some writers even prefer er anerkannte to er erkannte an.

USE OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

344. Werden and Sein. The true passive with werden denotes an activity, the quasi-passive with ſein a state; e. g., es wird behauptet, *it is asserted;* dorthin wurde ich gezogen, *I was drawn thither* (G.); ſein gepudertes Haar war in eine runde Locke aufgeſteckt, *was fastened up into a round mass* (G.); der Entſchluß war gefaßt, *the resolution was formed,* i. e., *had been previously formed* (G.); dieſe iſt teils auf Felſen gebaut, *is built partly on rocks* (G.).

a. Such a form as ich bin gezwungen, *I am compelled,* has reference, then, to the state of constraint in which I find myself, whereas ich werde gezwungen implies an agent. Ich bin gezwungen forms a perf. ich bin gezwungen geweſen, *I was constrained.*

1. In old German ſein was used as auxiliary of the passive, and survivals of this usage are still often met with; e. g., in the imv., ſei

gelobt regularly takes the place of werde gelobt. So also one says ſeid gegrüßt, not werdet gegrüßt, *be greeted*, and laß es dir geſagt ſein, for *be assured*. Instead of werde überredet, for *be persuaded*, usage prefers laß dich überreden. Noteworthy is the use of ſein after wollen = müſſen; e. g., das Buch will nicht nur durchblättert, ſondern ſtudiert ſein, *must be not only perused but studied*.

2. The pple. geboren, *born*, is used with ſein in speaking of living persons, with werden in speaking of the dead: ich bin geboren, *I was born*, but Luther wurde geboren, *Luther was born*. War geboren is properly a pluperfect in sense.

3. The clumsy forms ending in worden ſein are very rare in the classics.

345. Notes on the Passive Construction. The fundamental use of the passive is to furnish a form of statement in which the action itself, or the object of it, is made more prominent than the active agent; thus in der Blitz traf den Baum, *lightning struck the tree*, one thinks primarily of the lightning, but in der Baum wurde vom Blitz getroffen, of the tree.

a. It follows, therefore, that the passive is out of place if the connection shows that the agent is the real subject of thought.

1. With verbs that take two accusatives in the active, both accusatives become nominatives in the passive; e. g., man nannte ihn Wilhelm den Verſchwiegenen, *they called him William the Silent*, becomes er wurde Wilhelm der Verſchwiegene genannt.

a. After lehren, *teach*, the acc. of the thing-object is sometimes retained, but the construction is rare. Instead of ich wurde die Muſik gelehrt, *I was taught music*, one says ich wurde in der Muſik unterrichtet, or die Muſik wurde mir gelehrt.

2. Exceptions to the general rule that intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive (§ 198), occur in talk and even in the classics; e. g., von Jammer gefolgt, ſchreitet das Unglück, *misfortune strides on followed by wailing* (S.). Here and elsewhere gefolgt von imitates the Fr. *suivi de*. Other verbs so used occasionally are danken, glauben, helfen, ſchmeicheln; but it is better to follow the rule and to say mir wurde gedankt, geglaubt, geholfen, geſchmeichelt and not ich wurde gedankt, etc.

SYNTAX OF NUMBER AND PERSON.

346. Congruence of number. A verb agrees with its subject in number.

a. Singular titles may take a plural verb; e. g., Eure Majeſtät (Excellenz, Hoheit, Durchlaucht) haben befohlen, *Your Majesty* (*Excellence, Highness, Serene Highness*) *has ordered;* Herr Doktor wurden katechiſiert, *the doctor was catechized* (G.). Except in ceremonious address to high dignitaries this construction is no longer common.

1. A collective noun takes a singular verb unless there is a plural appositive; e. g., die Menge macht den Künſtler irr' und ſcheu, *the crowd makes the artist confused and shy* (G.); das Volk iſt frei (G.); but eine Menge Gäſte waren verſammelt, *a number of guests were assembled.* Cf., however, Schiller's das junge Volk der Schnitter fliegt zum Tanz.

2. After the expletive es the verb takes the number of the logical subject; e. g., es reden und träumen die Menſchen viel, *men talk and dream much* (S.).

a. After es, dies, das, in expressions of identity, the verb takes the number of the predicate noun; e. g., das ſind Taſchenſpielerſachen, *those are juggler's tricks* (G.).

3. Two or more singular subjects require a plural verb only when they denote different persons or things that do not form a unity; otherwise—and the cases are very much more common than in English—the verb stands in the singular; e. g., der König und die Kaiſerin . . . machten endlich Friede, *the king and the empress finally made peace* (Bürger); der ganze Himmel und Juno erſtaunten darüber, *all Olympus and Juno were astonished at it* (L.); Altar und Kirche prangt in Feſtesglanz, *altar and church are bright with festal splendor* (S.); der Strom, das Meer, das Salz, gehört dem König (S.); und Fels und Meer wird fortgeriſſen (G.).

a. Very often, especially in poetry, position favors the singular verb, it being made to agree with the nearest subject; e. g., Meiſter rührt ſich und Geſelle, *master and man bestir themselves.*

b. Singular subjects connected by oder, weder . . . noch, nicht allein . . . ſondern auch, ſowohl . . . als, take a singular verb.

347. Congruence of Person. A verb agrees with its subject in person.

1. Where there are subjects of different person, the general rule is that the plural verb stands in the first person, if the first person is represented among the subjects, otherwise in the second; e. g., was du und ich dereinſt im Himmel hoffen, *what you and I hope for one day in heaven* (S.); du und er ſeid beide im Irrtum, *you and he are both in error.*

a. If the verb precedes, or if the subjects are connected by oder, weder . . . noch, nicht allein . . . ſondern auch, ſowohl . . . als, the verb is apt to agree with the nearest subject; e. g., in dieſer Sache irrſt du und ich, *in this matter you and I are mistaken* (Blatz); entweder du oder ich muß ſterben, *either you or I must die.*

b. In a relative clause the verb stands in the third person, regardless of the person of the antecedent, unless a personal pronoun is inserted after the relative; e. g., o Gott, der im Himmel throni, *who art enthroned;* but one may also say, der du im Himmel thronſt.

USE OF THE TENSES.

348. The following account of the tenses must be understood as referring primarily to the tenses of the indicative mode. The use of tenses in the other modes can best be dealt with in treating of the modes themselves.

1. There is nothing in German corresponding to the English 'progressive' forms, *I am going, I have been thinking,* etc. A pres. pple. after a form of ſein is felt as an adjective. Cf., however, Lessing's er iſt die Gräfin hier nicht vermutend, *is not expecting,* which approaches the English usage.

349. The Present is the tense of present time and of general statements true without regard to time; e. g., die Sonne tönt nach alter Weiſe, *the sun makes music as of old* (G.); Genießen macht gemein, *pleasure makes vulgar* (G.).

1. As in English, and even more freely, the pres. may take the place of a fut., to denote a present purpose, or a confident expectation; e. g., entſchuldigen Sie mich einen Augenblick, ich bin gleich zurück, *I shall be back directly;* warte nur, ich krieg' ihn ſchon, *just wait, I'll get him* (G.).

2. The historical present for the preterite is common in vivid narration; e. g., plötzlich wurden die Pferde angehalten,

drei Räuber überfallen den Wagen und verlangen von dem Reisenden sein Geld, *suddenly the horses were stopped, three robbers attack the carriage and demand of the traveler his money* (Auerbach).

3. For the English perfect, denoting that which has been and still is, German uses the present, generally with an adverb of time; e. g., der arme Knabe wartet lange, *has been waiting long* (G.); schon viele Tage seh' ich's schweigend an, *these many days I have been noticing* (S.).

4. For the pres. as mild imperative, see § 363, 3, *c*.

350. The Preterite refers to a particular past time defined by the connection. It is thus the tense for narrating past events in their relation to one another; e. g., es war einmal ein junger Kerl, der ließ sich als Soldat anwerben, hielt sich brav und war immer der Tapferste, wenn es blaue Bohnen regnete, *there was once a young fellow who enlisted as a soldier, behaved bravely and was always foremost when it was raining bullets* (Gr.).

1. Just as in Eng., the pret. may denote a repeated or a continued past action. The former is called the 'iterative,' the latter the 'durative' pret. Examples: wenn ich so saß bei einem Gelag, *whenever I was sitting thus at a drinking bout* (G.); Goethe kümmerte sich wenig um die Politik, *cared little for politics*.

2. For the distinction between the pret. and the perf. see § 351.

351. The Perfect denotes primarily a present status that has resulted from a past action; e. g., ich habe mir ein Pferd gekauft, *I have bought me a horse*, i. e., *I have a horse got by buying*; Christ ist erstanden, *Christ has arisen*, i. e., *is now on high* (G.).

1. Very frequently, however, the perfect is used, without any implied reference to present time, to report an isolated past occurrence. In such cases English employs the preterite; e. g., Shakespeare hat etwa vierzig Dramen geschrieben, *S. wrote some forty plays* (English permits *has written* only in speaking of a living person); es ist dir recht

geſchehen, *it served you right;* wo iſt er? ich hab' ihn rufen hören, *where is he? I heard him call* (G.).

a. The perf., then, is the tense for reporting isolated or unconnected facts, while the pret. is the tense for narrating events in their connection. With the pret. one thinks of the time when the thing occurred, with the perf. (save as it may be accompanied by an adverb of time), only of the fact that it occurred.

b. But in the written language the pret. encroaches largely upon the domain of the perf., and must very often be translated by the Eng. perf. Thus Steffens' autobiography is called Was ich Erlebte, i. e., *what I have experienced.* Cf. Goethe's was ich irrte, was ich ſtrebte, was ich litt und was ich lebte, ſind nur Blumen hier im Strauß, *what I have done amiss,* etc. In poetry the two tenses are often used interchangeably; e. g., ich hatte ſelbſt oft grillenhafte Stunden, doch ſolchen Trieb hab' ich noch nie empfunden, *I have often had crotchety hours myself, but I have never yet felt,* etc. (G.); da lief ich friſch hinzu, ſo wie ich war, und mit der Axt hab' ich ihm's Bad geſegnet, *then I ran up quickly just as I was and with my axe I blessed his bath* (S.).

c. In the spoken language, on the other hand, especially that of the uneducated, the perf. encroaches on the domain of the pret. In some of the South-German dialects the pret. is practically extinct, the perf. having taken its place. Even good literature is affected to some extent by this tendency.

352. The Pluperfect denotes a past status resulting from a previous action, or an action completed prior to some past time. It corresponds closely to the English pluperfect; e. g., ich hatte Holz gefällt im Wald, *I had been cutting wood in the forest* (S.); er war mit König Friedrichs Macht gezogen in die Prager Schlacht, *had marched to the battle of Prague* (Bürger).

353. The Future and Future Perfect correspond in the main to the English tenses of like name; e. g., wird uns das Reich beſchützen? *will the empire protect us* (S.)? er wird ſeine Arbeit bald vollendet haben, *he will soon have completed his work.*

1. By a usage not exactly paralleled in English the future may denote a present, and the future perfect a past, probability ('presumptive' future); e. g., es wird Ihnen

bekannt ſein, *it is probably known to you;* du wirſt gehört haben, *you have probably heard.*

2. After wenn the fut. is apt to be replaced by the pres., and the fut. perf. by the perf., just as in Eng.; e. g., wenn einſt ich tot bin . . . und du, mein Auge, . . . nun ausgeweint haſt, *when some day I am dead and thou, mine eye, hast done with weeping* (Kl.).

3. For the fut. as mild imperative see § 363, 3, *c.*

USE OF THE MODES.

354. The indicative corresponds closely to the English indicative and presents, as a mode, no peculiar difficulties. On the other hand the subjunctive, which is all but extinct in English, is fully preserved in German, and has a variety of special uses which require particular attention.

The Subjunctive.

355. Classification of Uses. While the indicative is the mode of actuality, the subjunctive is, broadly speaking, the mode of contingency; it denotes that something is commanded, desired, possible, contrary to fact, reported, thought, or asked. Its various uses may be grouped under five general heads, viz.: the imperative subjunctive, the optative subjunctive, the potential subjunctive, the unreal subjunctive, and the dependent subjunctive.

1. For the name 'subjunctive' the Germans employ 'conjunctive' (Konjunktiv). The mode is named in both languages, from its use in expressing a 'subjoined', 'conjoined', i. e. dependent idea (the fifth of the above-named uses). This is upon the whole the most important and characteristic function of the mode. It is, however, of frequent occurrence in sentences that are not formally dependent, while, on the other hand, any of the first four varieties may occur in a dependent sentence.

356. The Imperative Subjunctive denotes a command and is usually translatable by *let.* It occurs in the first and third persons (rarely in the first singular), where it fills out the inflection of the imperative; e. g., edel ſei der Menſch, *let man be noble* (G.); doch gehen wir, *but let us go* (G.); geſteh' ich's nur, *just let me confess* (G.).

a. Here belongs the imv. with Sie, — haben Sie die Güte, *have the kindness*, being in its origin = *let them have the kindness* (§ 301. 3).

1. A special variety of the imperative subjunctive is the so-called 'concessive' subjunctive, which concedes a proposition to get a basis for some further statement; e. g., es ſei Fabel oder Geſchichte, *be it (whether it be) truth or fable* (L.); ich bin bei dir, du ſeiſt auch noch ſo ferne, *I am with thee, however distant thou mayest be* (G.).

a. The concessive subjunctive followed by denn or dann has acquired, through the omission of the old negative particle *ne*, the force of a negative condition translatable by *unless*; i. e., es ne ſei denn, *be it not so then*, became es ſei denn, *unless it be.* Examples: und kommt man hin . . . erhält man nichts, man bringe denn was hin, *one gets nothing unless one brings something there* (G.); doch eher ſtimm' ich nicht mit ein, es regne denn in meinen Wein, *unless it rains in my wine* (L.).

357. The Optative Subjunctive denotes a wish; e. g., umſonſt ſei all dein Ringen, *may all thy striving be in vain* (U.); wären wir nur den Berg vorbei, *if we were only past the hill* (G.); des Himmels Heere mögen dich bedecken, *may heaven's hosts protect thee* (U.).

1. The present wishes for what is possible and is expected to happen, the preterite that what is so were not so, or *vice versa*, and the pluperfect that what was not so had been so, or *vice versa*; e. g., ſeine Seele ruhe in Frieden, *may his soul rest in peace*; wüßte ich nur, *did I but know* (but I do not know); hätte ich nur gewußt, *had I but known* (but I did not know); wär' ich weit von hier, *would I were far from here* (S.); o, wäre ich . . . entſeelt dahingeſunken, *would that I had fallen lifeless* (G.).

a. As thus used in the pret. and plup. this subjunctive is practically identical with the unreal subjunctive in conditional clauses. In each of the above examples a conclusion can be supplied in thought.

358. The Potential Subjunctive expresses possibility or contingency. It is usually to be translated by *may, might, could, would*; e. g., er wär' ein Narr, *he would be a fool* (G.); ein heiliger Wille lebt, wie auch der menſchliche wanke, *however the*

human will may waver (S.); ich hätte gern nur immer fortgewacht, *I should have liked to keep right on sitting up* (G.).

1. Here belongs, as a special variety, the so-called 'diplomatic' subjunctive, used in modest or tentative expressions of opinion; e. g., ich dächte, *I should think* (a modest substitute for ich denke); nicht daß ich wüßte, *not that I am aware of;* es wäre wohl an der Zeit, *it might perhaps be in order;* das dürfte gefährlich sein, *that might be dangerous.*

2. Another variety is the 'dubitative' subjunctive, used in questions and exclamations. It usually expresses a real certainty or assurance under the form of a pretended doubt or hesitation, or else it denotes a pretended surprise that what really is (or was) so, should be (or should have been) so; e. g., wer wüßte das nicht? *who wouldn't know that?* was hätten wir zu fürchten? *what should we have to fear?* da ließe sich ein Pakt mit euch schließen? *so a compact might be made with you* (G.)*?* das wär' antik! *can that be antique? you call that antique* (G.)*?* das wär' sie denn! *can that be she? so that is she, is it* (G.)*?* er hätte das gesagt? ich glaube es nicht, *can he have said that? I do not believe it* (L.); gastfreundlich hätte England sie empfangen? *you pretend that England received her hospitably* (S.)*?*

3. This subjunctive is regularly used in hypothetical relative sentences; e. g., was wär' ein Gott, der nur von außen stieße? *what would a God be who should only interfere from without* (G.)*?* wer sie nicht kennte, wäre kein Meister, *any one who did not* (i. e., *should not*) *know them would be no master* (G.). Often such a clause is best rendered in English by a participle; e. g., wie ein Strahl der Sonne, der zu heiß das Haupt mir träfe, *like a sunbeam falling too hot upon my head* (G.).

4. Observe that the potential subjunctive may stand in a dependent clause without being in the technical sense, a 'dependent' subjunctive; e. g., das sag' ich euch, damit ihr's wisset, *I tell you that that you may know it* (S.).

359. The Unreal Subjunctive supposes what is (or was) not so, and states what would be (or would have been) so under the supposition; e. g., wenn ich ein Vöglein wär, und auch zwei Flüglein hätt', flög ich zu dir, *if I were a little bird and had two little wings, I would fly to thee* (folk-song); wäre Herder methodischer gewesen, so hätte ich . . . die köstlichste Anleitung gefunden, *if Herder had been more methodical, I should have found most valuable guidance* (G.).

1. The unreal subjunctive occurs both in the condition (protasis) and in the conclusion (apodosis), when the supposition is contrary to fact. The pret. refers to present time, the plup. to past. The condition may be expressed by means of a conjunction, usually wenn, or by the interrogative order. In the conclusion the subjunctive mode may be replaced by the conditional.

a. Closely akin to the unreal subjunctive is the potential subjunctive, used in the pret. to denote a future possibility; e. g., wenn man uns überraschte, *if some one should surprise us* (S.); und träte sie den Augenblick herein, wie würdest du für deinen Frevel büßen, *were she to come in this moment, how you would atone*, etc. (G.). In such cases there is always a present unreality, but it is of no importance, the thought turning altogether upon the future contingency. The two varieties may be closely associated; e. g., wäre nur ein Zaubermantel mein, und trüg' er mich in fremde Länder, *if I only had* (unreal) *a magic mantle, and it would* (potential) *carry me*, etc. (G.).

b. If the conclusion is omitted, the condition may be undistinguishable from an optative subjunctive; e. g., hätte ich das nur gewußt! *if I had only known that!* On the other hand the potential subjunctive may often be construed as the conclusion of an implied condition; e. g., er wär' ein Narr, *he would be a fool* (sc. *if he were to marry her*, *Faust*, l. 3571).

2. In poetry the pret. indic. sometimes takes the place of the unreal plup. subj. in the condition; e. g., mit diesem zweiten Pfeil durchschoß ich euch, wenn ich mein liebes Kind getroffen hätte, *with this second arrow I should have shot you through if I had hit my dear child* (S.); und tratst du, Herr, nicht zwischen uns herein, so stünde jetzt auch ich, etc., *if thou hadst not come between us, I should now be standing*, etc. (G.).

a. On the other hand an unreal subjunctive in the condition may be followed by an indic. in the conclusion, to denote strong assurance; e. g., und wohnt' er droben auf dem Eispalast, . . . ich mache mir Bahn zu ihm, *and if he dwelt up there in the ice-palace, I will* (instead of *I would*) *make my way to him* (S.).

3. A special case of unreal subjunctive is the common construction after als ob, als wenn, *as if*, in which the conclusion is omitted; e. g., ich halte Egmont hier, als ob ich ihm noch was zu sagen hätte, *I will keep E. here as (I would do) if I had something to say to him* (G.); er war so stolz darauf, als ob die Erfindung sein gewesen wäre, *as if the invention had been his* (G.).

a. Very frequently ob or wenn is omitted, in which case the clause takes the inverted instead of the dependent order; e. g., da ward's so eng ihr in der Welt, als hätte sie Lieb' im Leibe, *as if it had love in its body* (G.).

b. The tenses follow the rule given above, but the pres. may stand for the pret., unless the form would be identical with the corresponding form of the indic.; i. e., one may say als sei er, or als ob er sei, instead of als ob er wäre, and als habe er, or als ob er habe, for als ob er hätte, but not als ob sie haben, nor als haben sie, for als ob sie hätten.

360. The Dependent Subjunctive occurs in the object-clause after verbs of *telling, thinking, feeling, asking* and the like; e. g., sie sagen, er les' auch in den Sternen die künftigen Dinge, *they say that he also reads the future in the stars* (S.); ihr fühlet nicht, wie schlecht ein solches Handwerk sei, *you do not feel how vile such a trade is* (G.); er fragte, wen er vor sich sähe, *he asked whom he saw before him* (Gr.); es hieß, er denk' ihn ganz darum zu kürzen, *it was said that he was thinking to deprive him of it altogether* (S.).

a. The effect of this subjunctive is to express uncertainty, or at any rate to put the content of the object-clause on another's authority. It is thus very commonly used in reporting statements, opinions, rumors, etc., without quoting literally (indirect discourse). Daß is often omitted, in which case the clause has normal order. Such a sentence as es ist falsch becomes, then, when reported in the direct form: „es ist falsch", sagt er, or er sagt: „es ist falsch"; in the indirect form: er sagt, daß es falsch sei, or er sagt, es sei falsch.

1. Not every object-clause with daß requires the subjunctive. If the content of the clause is a fact, or appears

as such to the speaker, the indicative is used. The subjunctive indicates that what is stated is matter of report, opinion, assertion, fear, hope, or the like, and relieves the speaker of responsibility for it ; e. g., ich ſchwör' euch zu, mir iſt's als wie ein Traum, *I swear to you, it is like a dream to me* (G.). Here the speaker avers what is in his own mind and is to him a fact, hence the indicative ; but if the person addressed were to report the saying, he would give it the form : er ſchwört (or ſchwor) mir zu, es ſei ihm wie ein Traum.

a. On the other hand, by an elliptical construction, the dependent subj. may stand in clauses that are not formally object-clauses, to imply that what is stated is matter of rumor, pretense, hope, fear, or the like ; e. g., er iſt zurückgetreten, weil er krank ſei, *he has retired because (as he alleges,* or *as people say) he is sick,* but weil er krank iſt, *because he is (actually) sick.* The indic. accepts the report as true, the subj. waives responsibility for it. Observe, then, the force of the modes in the following sentence from Andresen : Mein Bruder widerriet, weil die Sache gefährlich ſei, und weil er den Direktor nicht kennt, *my brother objected, because (in his opinion) the thing was dangerous, and because (as a matter of fact) he does not know the director.*

2. Naturally, therefore, those verbs that imply certainty, as verbs of knowing, seeing, proving, showing, comprehending, and phrases such as 'it is clear,' 'the fact is,' are apt to be followed by the indicative; thus one would not say ich weiß, daß es falſch ſei (but iſt), nor es iſt klar, daß er recht habe (but hat), since the uncertainty of the subjunctive would contradict the certainty of the governing clause. Still, good writers often use the subjunctive even after this class of verbs ; e. g., du ſiehſt, wie ungeſchickt ich ſei, *you see how unfit I am* (G.) ; wir wiſſen, daß ſehr oft deutſches u oder o dem gr. oder lat. e zur Seite ſtehe, *we know that German u or o often corresponds to Greek or Latin e* (Gr.).

3. On the other hand, verbs of thinking and communicating (feeling, believing, hoping, fearing, inferring, asserting, writing, teaching, confessing, denying, etc.) are apt to be followed by the subjunctive, though the indicative is always possible if the object-clause is felt as a fact.

This last will be the case especially when the verb is in the first person; e. g., ich fühle (behaupte), daß ich ſchuldlos bin, *I feel* (*assert*) *that I am blameless;* but, usually, er fühlt (behauptet), daß er ſchuldlos ſei. After a past tense, however, these verbs prefer the subjunctive without regard to person.

4. When the object-clause is an indirect question the subjunctive is no longer usual after a verb in the present tense; thus, for *tell me who he is and how he lives*, one does not say: ſagen Sie mir, wer er ſei und wie er lebe, but wer er iſt und wie er lebt. In the classics, however, the subjunctive is quite common; e. g., und merkt euch, wie der Teufel ſpaße, *observe how the devil jokes* (G.). Cf. also the second example under § 360. The easy admissibility of either mode is shown by Goethe's line: Nicht was der Knecht ſei, fragt der Herr, nur wie er dient (*Faust*, l. 8794). After a past tense the subjunctive was and still is the rule.

5. When a dependent subj. has a verb depending on it (as often happens in sustained indirect discourse), such verb also stands in the subj., unless it states a fact which is not a part of the narration, but rests on the narrator's own authority; e. g., es klagte, daß dieſer Tag, welcher mein Glück mache, — wenn er es anders mache — ſein Unglück auf immer entſcheide, *it complained that this day which made my happiness, — if it really did make it, — decided his unhappiness forever* (L.); fordert er, daß ihm Du Chatel ausgeliefert werde, den er den Mörder ſeines Vaters nennt, *he demands that Du Chatel be given up to him, whom he calls the murderer of his father* (S.).

361. Sequence of Tense in Object-Clauses. The tense of a dependent subjunctive is influenced, (1) by its own natural tense, i. e., the tense it had, or would have, in the direct form; (2) by the tense of the principal verb; (3) by the necessity of resorting, in certain cases, to a change of tense in order to render the subjunctive distinguishable from the indicative. We have, then, the following principles:

1. After a present or future the natural tense remains unchanged (but see 2, *a*, below), save that a preterite

indicative (as well as a perfect) usually becomes a perfect subjunctive ; e. g., *he says that he is right* becomes er ſagt, daß er recht habe ; *he says that he was right*, er ſagt, daß er recht gehabt habe (or daß er recht hatte, but not daß er recht hätte, which might mean *would be right*) ; er meint, es ſei nicht mehr zu ertragen, *thinks it is no longer to be borne* (S.) ; ſie meint, du ſeiſt entflohen, *she thinks you ran away* (or, *have run away* ; one can not tell which the direct form would be). Cf. Schiller's *Tell*, ll. 92–95.

2. After a past tense the tense of the dependent verb is more variable. A natural present may remain present, or may become preterite ; e. g., *he said he was sick* (i. e., *he said : I am sick*), becomes er ſagte, er ſei krank, or er ſagte, er wäre krank (as in English). A natural preterite indicative becomes perfect subjunctive ; *he said he came too late* (*he said : I came too late*) becomes er ſagte, er ſei zu ſpät gekommen (käme would mean *would come*, or would correspond to a direct *I come*, and wäre gekommen would mean *would have come*). A natural future remains, or else becomes present conditional ; e. g., *he said he would be there* (*he said: I shall be there*) becomes er ſagte, er werde (or würde) da ſein.

a. As to the choice between er ſagte, er ſei krank, and er ſagte, er wäre krank (the direct form being ich bin krank) both literary usage and grammatical authority now favor the former. In Old German, however, the latter was the rule. Speaking broadly, South Germans prefer ſei, North Germans wäre. The latter use the pret. freely even after a pres. tense, saying er ſagt, er wäre krank, *for he says that he is sick*. Both usages are abundantly illustrated in good literature ; e. g., ſie glaubten, es wäre Hahnengeſchrei, *they thought it was the crowing of the cock* (Heine); die Abergläubiſchen meinen, du hätteſt einen Kobold, *the superstitious think you have a kobold* (Tieck) ; (usual sequence) ſeine reine Seele fühlte, daß ſie die Hälfte ſeiner ſelbſt ſei, *that she was half of himself* (G.).

b. But while there is in the main a free choice between the pret. and pres. subj., the former is to be employed in those forms in which the subj., if pres., would not be distinguishable from the indic. ; thus, while one may say for *he said he had the headache*, er ſagte, er habe Kopfweh, or er ſagte, er hätte Kopfweh, one may not say ich ſagte, ich habe (but only ich hätte), nor ſie ſagten, ſie haben (but only ſie hätten).

THE CONDITIONAL AND IMPERATIVE.

362. The Conditional Mode is simply a potential, or unreal, subjunctive used in the conclusion of conditional sentences. The present refers to present time and corresponds to the preterite subjunctive, while the perfect refers to past time and corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; e. g., und träte ſie den Augenblick herein, wie würdeſt du für deinen Frevel büßen, *were she to come in, how you would atone* (G.).

1. For the most part there is a free choice between the subjunctive and the conditional, but the former is avoided when it would be undistinguishable from the indicative, as is regularly the case with weak verbs; i. e., there is a free choice between ich wäre and ich würde ſein, or between ich ginge and ich würde gehen, but not between ich machte and ich würde machen.

a. In indirect discourse after a past tense the conditional is preferable if futurity is to be denoted; e. g., ich erfuhr, daß ich Sie hier treffen würde, *I learned that I should find you here* (L.). Here träfe would not do.

2. The use of the conditional in the condition, while not uncommon in good writers, is not to be approved; for *if it would only rain soon*, say wenn es doch bald regnete, rather than wenn es doch bald regnen würde. Still, cf. Goethe's würdeſt du es ahnen können, du wäreſt Teufel g'nug, *if you could understand it, you would be devil enough*, etc. In passive conditions würde . . . werden is avoided; e. g., würden wir von ihr betroffen, *if we should be caught by her* (G.).

363. The Imperative denotes a command. Properly it has only a second person, the first and third being supplied from the subjunctive (§ 356).

a. Strictly the imv. has but one tense, though a kind of perf. sometimes occurs in locutions like er habe es umſonſt gethan, *let him have done it in vain*, i. e., *let it be in vain that he has done it*.

1. The subjects du and ihr are omitted unless emphatic, but other subjects are expressed; e. g., ſei mein Freund! *be my friend!* ſei du mit mir! *be thou with me!* ſchweigt! *be silent!* but er ſchweige! man ſchweige! ſchweigen wir! always with pronoun.

2. The imv. often has concessive or conditional force. See § 356, 1 and 1, *a*.

3. Substitutes for the imperative are as follows:

a. The inf., in placards and brusque commands; e. g., rechts fahren! *keep to the right!* Maul halten! *hold your tongue!*

b. The perf. pple.; e. g., hinaufgeschaut! *look up* (G.)! Cf. § 369, 4.

c. The indic., pres. or fut., in mild commands; e. g., Karl, du kommst mit mir; du aber, Fritz, wirst zu Hause bleiben, *Karl, you come with me; but you, Fritz, will stay at home.*

d. Lassen with infinitive in place of the regular passive imv.; e. g., laß dich überreden! *be persuaded!* Cf. § 344, 1.

THE INFINITIVE.

364. Nature and Development of the Infinitive.

1. In its origin the inf. is a verbal noun having the force of the Eng. verbal in *ing* (which must not be confounded with the pres. pple. in *ing*). In old German it was inflected and the dat. with zu (*ze tragene, for bearing, ze ritene, at riding*), being of frequent occurrence, became a stereotyped phrase (zu tragen, *to bear*, zu reiten, *to ride*). This phrase developed uses of its own and encroached upon the simple inf., while the latter usurped, in a few cases, the functions of a pres. pple.

2. We have, then, in modern Ger.: (1) the substantive inf., translatable usually by the verbal in *ing*; (2) the old inf. without zu, corresponding in the main to the Eng. inf. without *to*, but in part to the pple. in *ing*; (3) the inf. with zu, corresponding in the main to the Eng. inf. with *to*.

365. The substantive Infinitive generally has the article, forms no plural, and is modified by adjectives, not by adverbs; e. g., das Rauchen ist verboten, *smoking is forbidden;* ich liebe nicht das laute Lieben, *I do not love loud loving* (U.); da hört er ein Singen wie Flöten so süß, *there he hears a singing*, etc. (S.); vergeht mir Hören, Sehn und Denken, *hearing, sight and thought forsake me* (G.).

1. Such a verbal with ein sometimes denotes vehemence, frequent repetition or indefinite continuance. See § 230, 2, *a*.

2. The substantive inf. is a noun not a verb, and does not admit a separate object in the acc., as it may in Eng. The object becomes either an objective gen., a dat. with von, or else it is written in one

word with the inf.; e. g., *he is not the man for (the) making (of) a speech* = er iſt nicht der Mann zum Halten einer Rede (not eine Rede), or zum Redehalten; *writing letters is tedious* = das Schreiben von Briefen, or das Brief(e)ſchreiben, iſt langweilig.

a. Adverbial modifiers must be written with the inf. in one word; hence such words as das Umſichgreifen, *the spreading;* das Nebeneinandergehenſtwerden, *the simultaneous execution;* das Nochnichtdageweſenſein, *the non-existence hitherto.*

366. The Infinitive without zu occurs in various constructions as follows:

1. After the modal auxiliaries and laſſen; also after thun, when used as auxiliary or with nichts als, *nothing but;* e. g., es kann ſein, *it may be;* wir mögen das nicht wieder hören, *we do not want to hear that again* (G.); laß alles Sinnen ſein, *let all speculation alone* (G.); was thu' ich weiter fragen? *why do I ask further?* er hat nichts als ſchimpfen gethan, *he did nothing but call names.*

a. The inf. with laſſen has active force only when its subject is at the same time the object of laſſen, as in laß mich dir etwas ſagen, *let me tell you something.* Through the omission of the object-subject in such locutions as the last, the inf. acquired passive force; i. e., laß ein Licht holen, *let (some one) bring a candle,* came to be felt as = *let a candle be brought, have a candle brought.* Laß dir ſagen is thus the same thing as laß dir geſagt ſein (§ 344, 1) which also occurs. This use of the inf. then gave rise to the peculiar impersonal passive seen, e. g., in es läßt ſich hoffen, *it lets itself be hoped,* i. e., *there is room for hope, it may be hoped.*

b. This use of the active inf. with passive meaning gives rise sometimes to ambiguity; e. g., er ließ den Kutſcher fahren, may mean *he let the coachman go,* or *he had him drive,* or *he had him driven.* In such cases the connection must determine the sense.

c. When laſſen is followed by an acc. and that in turn by an intransitive verb with predicate noun, such noun stands regularly in the acc.; e. g., laß mich deinen Freund ſein, *let me be your friend* (G.). So one would say heiß ihn einen braven Knaben ſein, *bid him be a good boy.* But the nom. occurs now and then in good writers; e. g., laß den Grafen dieſer Geſandte ſein, *let the Count be this envoy* (L.)

2. As true infinitive after fühlen, heißen, helfen, hören, lehren, lernen, machen, nennen, ſehen; e. g., ich fühl' ein Herz in meinem Buſen ſchlagen, *feel a heart beat* (W.); heiß mich nicht reden, heiß

mich ſchweigen, *do not bid me speak, bid me be silent* (G.); helft den gemeinen Feind mir niederhalten, *help me keep down*, etc. (S.); ich hab' ihn rufen hören, *I heard him call* (G.); wenn ich dich ihn könnte verachten lehren, *could I teach you to despise him* (G.); ich habe jetzt dich kennen lernen, *have learned to know you* (G.); der Kaſus macht mich lachen, *makes me laugh* (G.); das nenne ich doch beweiſen, *I call that proving* (W.); er ſah ihn fallen, *he saw it fall* (G.).

a. Several of the above verbs, notably heißen, helfen, lehren, lernen, machen, may take the inf. with zu; e. g., o, lehre mich das Mögliche zu thun, *teach me to do what is possible* (G.).

b. After fühlen, hören, ſehen, the active inf. may have passive force, just as after laſſen and with a similar possibility of ambiguity; e. g., ſo hört und ſieht man dich beneiden, *thus one hears and sees you envied.* Ich ſah ihn ſchlagen, might mean *I saw him strike* or *I saw him struck.*

3. In place of a present participle, to denote a status, after bleiben, finden, haben, liegen, ſtehen; e. g., alles blieb ſtehen, *everything* (or *everybody*) *remained standing;* die Uhr iſt ſtehen geblieben, *the clock has stopped;* heraustretend fand ich den Himmel von Sternen blinken, *I found the sky glittering with stars* (G.); ich habe Geld im Kaſten liegen, *I have money lying in the box* (Gr.); Genua liegt ſchlafen, *Genoa lies sleeping* (S.); was ſteht ihr horchen? *why stand you listening* (S.)?

a. With all of these verbs, however, except perhaps bleiben, the pres. pple. is, the more common construction. Between ich finde ihn ſchlafen, and ich finde ihn ſchlafend, there is no difference unless it be that the pple. better expresses duration. Cf. Schiller's *Jungfrau*, l. 447.

4. After gehen, fahren, reiten, and some other verbs of motion, but only in set phrases; as ſpazieren gehen (reiten, fahren) *go walking* (*riding, driving*); ſich ſchlafen legen, *lie down to sleep;* jagen gehen, *go hunting.*

5. As subject of verbs, and as predicate after ſein and heißen (particularly after das heißt = das nennt man mit Recht, *that is properly called*); e. g., blaſen iſt nicht flöten, *blowing is not playing the flute* (G.); dieſes heißt die Zeit verlieren, *this is*

losing time (U.); das hieße die ganze Sache verderben, *that would be to ruin the whole cause* (G.).

a. The inf. in the first example is distinguishable from the true substantive inf. by the fact that a modifier would have to be an adverb, not an adjective.

6. As brusque imv.; e. g., Maul halten! *hold your tongue!*

7. In the idiom er hat gut reden, *it is all well enough for him to talk.*

367. The Infinitive with zu — often called the 'prepositional infinitive' — is used:

1. To denote purpose; e. g., man kommt zu ſchaun, *they come to gaze* (G.); ich eile fort ihr ewiges Licht zu trinken, *I hasten away to drink her eternal light* (G.); ſie nahmen mir's, um mich zu kränken, *they took it from me in order to pain me* (G.); man gab mir zu verſtehen, *they gave me to understand;* ich habe nichts zu eſſen, *I have nothing to eat.*

a. The original force of this inf. is seen if we translate it by *for* with a verbal: *they come for seeing; I have nothing for eating.* When the inf. denotes the purpose for which the subject acts, it is now usually preceded by um, as in the third example above, but it is very common without um in classical poetry.

b. To denote a purpose which is not the purpose of the subject, modern German prefers in general a substantive inf. with zum, or else an equivalent verbal noun; e. g., *he gave me the letter to copy*, er gab mir den Brief zum Abſchreiben (not abzuſchreiben); *he sent me the book to look at*, er ſchickte mir das Buch zur Anſicht (not anzuſehen). Sometimes the purpose can be made the purpose of the subject by the use of laſſen; e. g., *he brought me the watch to repair*, er brachte mir die Uhr, um ſie reparieren zu laſſen (*to have it repaired*). It should be observed, however, that exceptions to this rule are common in talk and even in good writers; e. g., er weckte mich, um den Sonnenaufgang anzuſehen, *he woke me to see the sunrise*, i. e. *that I might see it* (Heine).

c. As in Eng., the prepositional inf. may denote destiny or result under the form of purpose; e. g., ſie ſchieden, um ſich nie wiederzuſehen, *they parted never to see each other again.*

2. As subject of verbs; e. g., euch zu gefallen war mein höchſter Wunſch, *to please you was my highest wish* (G.).

3. As object or complement of verbs; e. g., hör' auf mit deinem Gram zu ſpielen, *cease to play with your grief* (G.); da

beſchloſſen ſie zu bleiben, *there they decided to remain* (S.); mit der Hand winkt' er mir zu gehen, *with his hand he signed to me to go*; was willſt du dich das Stroh zu dreſchen plagen? *why will you trouble yourself to thresh straw* (G.)? ich nehme mich in acht, mit ſolchen Hexen öffentlich zu gehen, *I am careful not to appear in public with such witches* (G.).

a. The verbs and verbal phrases that are thus followed by the inf. with zu are literally too numerous to mention, but the use of the construction corresponds in the main pretty closely to that of the Eng. inf. with *to*. The chief difference is that Ger. does not tolerate an inf. with subject-accusative; for *I know him to be a liar, I judge him to be about 30 years old*, Ger. says: ich weiß, daß er ein Lügner iſt; ich glaube, daß er, etc. Still, classical writers, notably Lessing, sometimes use the construction in imitation of the Latin; e. g., bis er den rechten Zeitpunkt gekommen zu ſein glaubte, *until he believed the right time to have come* (L.).

4. As predicate with passive meaning after ſein, bleiben, ſcheinen, ſtehen; e. g., das iſt zu erwarten, *that is to be expected*; das ſteht nicht zu ändern, *that remains unchangeable*. Cf. § 370, 1.

5. As complement of nouns and adjectives; e. g., es iſt wohl Zeit zu ſcheiden, *it is time to go, I think* (G.); dies iſt die Art mit Hexen umzugehn, *that is the way to deal with witches* (G.); das wäre ſchwer zu beweiſen, *that would be hard to prove*; ihr wäret wert, gleich in die Eh' zu treten, *you would be fit to enter the married state at once* (G.).

a. The construction is very common after adjectives preceded by zu; e.g., ich bin zu alt um nur zu ſpielen, *too old merely to play* (G.). Observe, however, that the familiar Eng. construction seen in *the story is too good for me to believe, the book is too deep for him to have written (it)*, where an inf. with subject different from that of the principal verb is mediated by means of *for*, can not be imitated in Ger.; instead of it we have als daß followed by the potential subj.: die Geſchichte iſt zu gut, als daß ich daran glauben könnte; das Buch iſt zu tief, als daß er es hätte ſchreiben können.

b. An inf. which complements the meaning of a noun or an adjective does not need um, though the useless particle is very often inserted. One meets constantly with sentences of the type: er war geſcheit genug, um den Gedanken zu erfaſſen, aber es fehlte ihm an Mut, um denſelben auszuführen, *he was clever enough to seize the idea, but he*

lacked courage to carry it out. But um is superfluous in both cases. Notice, then, the difference between ich gab mir die Mühe ihn zu besuchen, *I took the trouble to visit him,* and ich gab mir viel Mühe, um ihn zu besuchen, *I took much trouble in order to visit him.*

6. After the prepositions ohne and (an)statt, as well as um; e. g., ich muß euren Kummer noch vergrößern, statt ihn zu heilen, *I must increase your grief instead of healing it* (S.); sie gehen an dem Hut vorbei, ohne darauf zu achten, *they pass by the hat without noticing it* (S.).

a. Other prepositions do not govern the inf. directly, but combine with an anticipating da; e. g., keiner dachte daran, den Hut zu grüßen, *no one thought of greeting the hat* (S.); er ist nicht dazu gemacht, anstrengend zu arbeiten, *he is not made for working hard* (Gr.).

7. Absolutely in exclamations; e. g., was! am Rand des Grabs zu lügen! *what! to lie with his last breath* (G.)*!* und nun — ums Haar sich auszuraufen! *and now — it's enough to make one tear out one's hair* (G.)*!*

THE PARTICIPLE.

368. The Present Participle is used:

1. As adjective, adverb, and substantive; e. g., schäumende Weine, *foaming wines* (G.); man möchte rasend werden, *one could go mad* (G.); in auffallend kurzer Zeit, *in a surprisingly short time;* die Liebenden, *the lovers;* die Entsagenden, *the votaries of renunciation* (G.).

a. In the predicate after sein the pres. pple., has adjectival force and denotes a state or a quality. It does not form a tense as it may in Eng. Cf. § 348, 1.

b. A participial adjective has active force and the noun it qualifies should be the subject of the action, as in ein liebendes Herz, *a heart that loves.* But there are some phrases in use which are exceptions; e. g., der betreffende Punkt, *the point concerned;* eine vorhabende Reise, *an intended journey;* fahrende Habe, *movables;* die reitende Post, *the mounted mail.* Others are also current which are more or less dubious; for essende Waren, *eatables,* say rather Eßwaren; for blasende Instrumente, *wind-instruments* (G.), say rather Blasinstrumente; for fallende Sucht, *falling-sickness,* Fallsucht, etc.

2. As appositional predicate, to denote a concomitant act or state; e. g., wir Schwestern saßen, die Wolle spinnend, *we*

sisters used to sit spinning the wool (S.); und ihr Kuß war Götterbrot, glühend wie der Wein, *and her kiss was ambrosia, glowing like wine* (G.).

a. Observe that this pple. denotes a concomitant act or state, not one which is past or to come. Still, exceptions occur, just as in Eng.; e. g., dies ſagend ritt er trutziglich von dannen, *saying* (i. e., *having said*) *this he rode away defiantly* (S.); in Zug ans Land ſteigend kehrten wir im Ochſen ein, *disembarking in Zug we put up at the 'Ox'* (G.). In the permissible phrase das nächſtens erſcheinende Buch, *the book soon to appear*, the idea of futurity is contained in the adverb. Cf. § 370, *a.*

b. The pple. may denote means, but not cause; e. g., kannſt du mich ſchmeichelnd je belügen, *if you can ever deceive me by flattering* (G.); und als wir ſie friſch rudernd bald erreicht, *and when we had presently reached it by rowing briskly* (S.); verſinke ſtampfend, *sink out of sight by stamping* (G.). But for the Eng. causal pple., seen e. g., in the sentence *having nothing else to do, I went to the theater*, Ger. uses a clause with a causal conjunction: da ich ſonſt nichts zu thun hatte, ging ich ins Theater.

c. The appositional pple. usually refers to the subject, but may refer to an oblique case, if there is no chance of ambiguity; e. g., und find' ihn hier . . . ſpitzfind'ge Rätſel löſend, *and find him here guessing cunning riddles;* noch zuckend, mit des Panthers Zähnen zerreißen ſie des Feindes Herz, *still quivering* (i. e., *the heart*) *they rend with the teeth of the panther the heart of their foe.* Such a construction as this last, however, is admissible only in poetry; in prose one would say das noch zuckende Herz. Still less admissible in prose is the use of a pple., referring to some word not contained in the sentence at all; e. g., erſt kniend laß die treue Widmung dir gefallen, hohe Frau, *first kneeling let my loyal homage please thee,* i. e., *accept the homage I offer on my bended knees* (G.).

369. The Perfect Participle is used most frequently in the conjugation of the perfect tenses and the passive voice. Besides this it occurs:

1. As adjective, adverb, and substantive; e. g., geehrter Herr, *honored sir;* die Bedrückten, *the oppressed;* ein verflucht ſchlauer Kerl, *a cursedly sly fellow.*

a. As adjective the perf. pple. of transitive verbs has passive force, while that of intransitives conjugated with ſein denotes the state that has resulted from the action; e. g., der gefällte Baum, *the felled tree;* der gefallene Baum, *the fallen tree,* = der Baum, der gefallen iſt; ein mißlungener Verſuch, *an attempt that has failed,* = ein Verſuch, der mißlungen iſt.

b. In general, then, one can not use adjectively the perf. pple. of an intransitive conjugated with haben, because such verbs form no passive. That is, one can not say das geſchlafene Kind, *the slept child*, for das Kind, das geſchlafen hat, though one may say das eingeſchlafene Kind for das Kind, das eingeſchlafen iſt. There are, however, a few participial adjectives with active force formed from intransitives conjugated with haben. Such are erfahren, *experienced;* gereiſt, *traveled* (ein Gereiſter, *a traveled man*, just as in Eng.); geſchworen, *sworn* (die Geſchworenen, *the jurors*); ſtudiert, *studied* (ein Studierter, *an educated man*); trunken, *drunk;* verdient, *meritorious;* verſchwiegen, *silent.*

c. There is in Ger. no perf. active pple., though one meets with awkward attempts to form one by means of habend; e. g.. die rühmlichſt gekämpft habende Brigade, *the brigade that had fought most creditably.* Compounds such as ungefrühſtückt, for *without having breakfasted* (Bismarck), and ungebetet, *without having said grace* (Gerok), are quite on a par with 'unbreakfasted' and 'unprayed' in Eng. Still less admissible, grammatically, is the use of a perf. pple. with an object, though it is not so very uncommon, especially when the object is ſich; e. g., das den Grafen befallene Unglück, *the misfortune that had befallen the Count* (G.); an dieſem nach und nach ſich verbreiteten Geheimnis, *this mystery that had spread abroad gradually* (G.).

2. As appositional predicate, in the same way and under the same restrictions, as the present participle (§ 368, 2, *a, b*); e. g., beſchämt nur ſteh' ich vor ihm da, *I just stand there before him ashamed* (G.); entfernt von dir . . . ergötzt mich noch dein liebevolles Bild, *remote from thee, thy dear image still delights me* (G.).

3. In absolute construction, mostly with an accusative absolute; e. g., ſie ſingt hinaus in die finſtere Nacht, das Auge vom Weinen getrübet, *she sings out into the dark night, her eyes dimmed with tears* (S.).

4. With imperative force, through the omission of auxiliary and subject; e. g., friſch gewagt! *venture boldly;* hinaufgeſchaut! *look up!* (G.)

5. With kommen and gehen as the equivalent of a pres. pple.; e. g., da kommt mein Weib gelaufen, *thereupon my wife comes running* (S.). But in verloren gehen, *to be lost* (es iſt verloren gegangen, *it is lost*), the participle has passive force.

6. As predicate after heißen; e. g., das heiß' ich endlich fortgeſchritten, *I call that getting along fast* (G.); das heißt die Willkür auf die Spitze

getrieben, *that is carrying arbitrary caprice too far* (Andresen). But in this last case treiben would seem to be better on account of the object Willkür.

370. The Gerundive. This is in form the present participle preceded by zu and, when used attributively, declined like any adjective. Its force is that of a future passive participle, denoting feasibility, obligation, propriety; e. g., eine nie zu vergeſſende Freude, *a never-to-be-forgotten joy;* ein ſchwer zu erfüllender Wunſch, *a wish difficult of fulfillment.*

a. For the gerundive in the predicate see § 367, 4. Since the gerundive has passive force it should not be formed from intransitive verbs. Such locutions as das bald zu erſcheinende Buch, for *the book soon to appear*, are ungrammatical.

SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

371. Classification of Adverbs. With respect to their function adverbs may be divided into two classes: simple adverbs and adverbial conjunctions.

a. The simple adverbs denote relations of time, place, degree and manner. They may modify a verb as in gut ſchreiben, *write well;* an adjective, as in ſehr gut, *very good;* an adverb, as in ſehr gerne, *very gladly;* a prepositional phrase, as mitten im Feuer, *right in the fire;* a noun, as in der Mann hier, *the man here;* or they may stand in the predicate, as in es iſt vorbei, *it is past.*

b. The adverbial conjunctions modify adverbially the verb of the sentence in which they stand, but serve at the same time to indicate the logical connection of the clause with what precedes or follows; e. g., zwar iſt es leicht, doch iſt das Leichte ſchwer, *to be sure it is easy, yet the easy is hard* (G.). Since the conjunctional aspect of these words is more important than the adverbial, they are treated further on under the head of conjunctions (§ 380).

1. With respect to their origin adverbs may be divided into three groups: (1) primitive words and compounds of such, as da, *there;* darüber, *over there;* (2) derivatives formed by means of a suffix, as teils, *partly;* blindlings, *blindly;* (3) adjectives in the stem-form, as gut, *well.*

372. Primitive Adverbs. These denote time, place and direction; e. g., jetzt, *now;* dann, *then;* hier, *here;* dort, *yonder;* dahin, *thither;* auf, *up;* unter, *down.* Many of them are in use as prepositions and as verbal prefixes (§ 341).

a. Words of this kind may be called demonstrative or positional adverbs. A few of them form adjectives in ig, as hiesig, from hier, dortig, jetzig, damalig, which are used prepositively; e. g., der damalige König, *the then king* (never der damals König); das hiesige Theater, *the theater of this place.* Cf. also § 296, 1.

1. Besides the demonstrative adverbs there are a few others that admit only of adverbial use, the corresponding adjective, if there be one, having either a different form or a different meaning. Such are bald, *soon* (adj. baldig); eben, *just, lately* (eben as adj. = *smooth, even*); fast, *almost* (see below, § 373, 3); gar, *quite;* gern, *gladly;* kaum, *scarcely;* schon, *already, quite;* sehr, *very;* wohl, *well, perhaps.* Schon has numerous idiomatic uses as a particle of assurance; e. g., schon gut, *all right;* schon das erste Wort, *the very first word;* das sieht schon besser aus, *that looks decidedly better;* er wird schon kommen, *be assured he will come.* Wohl, while cognate with *well,* does not often modify verbs in that sense: *he writes well* = er schreibt gut. When used in the sense of *well,* it is accented, but its most common use is that of an unaccented particle of doubt or uncertainty; e. g., (with stress) ich weiß sehr wohl, *I know very well;* es ist wo'hlbeka'nnt, *it is well known;* (without stress) Sie wissen wohl, *you probably know;* es ist wohl bekannt, *it is doubtless known.*

373. Adverb and Adjective. Most adjectives can be used in the stem-form adverbially; e. g., so kalt verlaßt ihr die gemeine Sache? *do you thus coldly desert the common cause* (S.)*?* schon wieder so stolz bescheiden? *again already so proudly modest* (L.)*?*

1. While Ger. has no adverbial suffix of universal applicability, the suffix lich, cognate with *ly,* does form a number of adverbs which can not be used adjectively; e. g., freilich, *to be sure* (frei = *free*); schwerlich, *hardly* (schwer = *heavy, difficult*); sicherlich, *surely;* wahrlich, *truly.* Cf. also hoffentlich, *as may be hoped* (from hoffend); wissentlich, *knowingly* (from wissend), and others like them. But most derivatives in lich admit also of adjectival use; e. g., gütlich, *kindly;* neulich, *recent(ly);* gänzlich, *entire(ly).*

2. Many adverbs are simply case-forms of adjectives, the genitive being the most common; e. g., rechts, *to the right;*

ſtracks, *directly;* zuſehends, *visibly;* höchſtens, *at the most;* zweitens, *secondly.* Where the ending appears to be ens, the en is inflectional.

a. The suffix wärts, cognate with *ward* in *toward, homeward,* is the gen. of an old adj. *wert* of uncertain meaning. It is applied to prepositions and nouns; e. g., vorwärts, *forward;* heimwärts, *homeward;* mauerwärts, *toward the wall.*

b. The acc. neut. (undistinguishable from the stem) of a pronominal adjective is often used adverbially; e. g., etwas kalt, *somewhat cold;* viel größer, *much greater.* So, too, comparatives and superlatives; e. g., beſſer bekannt, *better known;* höchſt ſeltſam, *very strange.*

3. In Old Ger. adverbs were regularly formed from adjectives by means of the ending *o*; thus *sconi, beautiful,* but *scono, beautifully.* As *i* caused umlaut while *o* did not, we have several pairs like ſchon — ſchön; faſt — feſt; fruh (rare) — früh; ſpat (rare) — ſpät. The old adverbial ending still persists, though no longer required in fern(e), gern(e), lang(e). So often in poetry for the meter's sake; e. g., warte nur balde (G.); und ſchnell und unbegreiflich ſchnelle (G.).

4. The modifier of a participial substantive is regularly an adjective, not an adverb, e. g., ein gründlicher Gelehrter, *a thorough scholar;* ein naher Verwandter, *a near relative.*

374. Adverbs from Nouns. These are always case-forms, the genitive being the most common; e. g., abends, *in the evening, evenings;* vormittags, *forenoons;* teils, *in part;* flugs, *speedily.* Often there is a limiting adjective; e. g., großenteils, *in great part;* keineswegs, *by no means;* gewiſſermaßen, *in some sense;* dergeſtalt, *in such way.*

a. When s had thus come to be felt as an adverbial suffix and not as a case-ending, it was often applied in places where it could not be a case-ending; e. g., nachts, *by night* (from a fem. noun); ſeitens, *on the part of* (von Seiten); allerdings (aller Dinge, gen. plu.); jedenfalls, *in any case* (auf jeden Fall).

b. Adverbs in lings are, in their origin, adverbial genitives of nouns in ling; e. g., blindlings, *in the manner of a blind person* (Blindling), *blindly.* Hence what appears to be an adverbial suffix lings applied to adjectives; e. g., jählings, *precipitately.*

1. A very few adverbs are in their origin datives; e. g., morgen, *tomorrow;* mitten, *in the midst,* shortened from inmitten.

2. A somewhat larger number are accusatives (§ 266), e. g. heim, *home;* weg, *away;* weiſe, in ſtückweiſe, *piecemeal;* zwangsweiſe, *by force;* teilweiſe, *partly.* The conversion of an adverb in weiſe into an adjective, as in die teilweiſe Erneuerung, for *the partial restoration,* is hardly to be approved, though it is becoming common.

375. Comparison of Adverbs. As a rule only those adverbs which admit of adjectival use can be compared; e. g., willſt heller ſehn als deine edeln Väter? *dost claim to see more clearly than thy noble fathers* (S.)*?* die geht am weiteſten, *she goes farthest* (S.).

1. Of the list in § 372, 1, eben, faſt, gar and ſchon are not compared. Bald sometimes has balder (bälder), am baldeſten (bäldeſten), but these forms are avoided in favor of eher, am eheſten. Gern has lieber, am liebſten. Sehr compares, like viel, by means of mehr, am meiſten. Wohler, am wohlſten are rare, their place being taken by beſſer, am beſten.

2. The phrase with am forms a relative, that with aufs an absolute, superlative; e. g., ſie ſang am beſten, *she sang best,* i. e. *better than any one else;* but ſie ſang aufs beſte, *she sang her best,* i. e. *as well as she could.* Further examples: der Menſch iſt aufs nächſte mit den Tieren verwandt, *man is very closely related to the animals* (G).; von allen Geiſtern, die verneinen, iſt mir der Schalk am wenigſten zur Laſt, *the rogue is least burdensome to me* (G.).

a. An absolute superlative is also made with the ending ens; e. g., höchſtens, *at the most;* meiſtens, *for the most part;* wenigſtens, *at least;* ich danke beſtens, *my best thanks.*

3. A few uninflected superlatives are used adverbially; e. g., höchſt, *in the highest degree, very;* äußerſt, *exceedingly;* meiſt, *for the most part;* jüngſt, *lately;* längſt, *long since.*

4. Comparison that belongs properly to an adverb should not be transferred to a following adjective; thus, say ſchwerer wiegende Gründe, not ſchwerwiegendere Gründe, for *more weighty reasons;* die höchſtgeſtellten, rather than die hochgeſtellteſten, for *those in the highest position.* There are, however, a few well-established exceptions; e. g., hochverehrteſter, for höchſtverehrter, *most honored sir;* die wohlunterrichtetſten, for die am beſten unterrichteten, *the best informed people.*

SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

376. Prepositions and their Cases. Prepositions govern cases, thus forming phrases which generally have adverbial force, but may modify a noun ; e. g., die Sonne tönt nach alter Weiſe, *the sun makes music in the old way* (G.); ein Kampf ums Leben, *a battle for life.*

1. Historically prepositions are most closely akin to adverbs. Even the old monosyllabic prepositions are adverbs in their origin, and the most of them are still in use as adverbs (separable prefixes). Their case-governing power is of secondary origin, having been acquired through association.

2. The accusative is used after bis, durch, für, gegen, ohne, ſonder, um and wider. (For meanings, examples and comments, see § 377.)

3. The dative is used after aus, bei, mit, nach, von and zu; also after ab, außer, binnen, entgegen, gegenüber, gemäß, nächſt, nebſt, ſamt, ſeit and zuwider.

4. The dative or accusative is used after an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor and zwiſchen.

a. The acc. answers to the questions 'whither'? 'how long'? the dat. to the questions 'where'? 'when'? But there are numerous phrases that do not come under this rule. See the list in § 377.

5. The genitive is used after (an)ſtatt, außerhalb, diesſeits, halb, infolge, inmitten, innerhalb, jenſeits, kraft, längs, laut, ob, oberhalb, trotz, um . . . willen, unangeſehen, unbeſchadet, ungeachtet, unterhalb, (ver)mittelſt, vermöge, während, wegen and zufolge.

a. Besides the above there is a large number of prepositional adverbs that govern the gen. Most of them are of recent coinage and the number is constantly increasing. They are not included under § 377. Such are :

abzüglich, *with deduction of.*
angeſichts, *in view of.*
anläßlich, *apropos of.*
antwortlich, *by way of reply to.*
ausſchließlich, *exclusive of.*
behufs, *for the sake of.*
betreffs, *concerning.*
bezüglich, *concerning.*
einſchließlich, *inclusive of.*
gelegentlich, *apropos of.*

hinſichtlich, *concerning.*
inhaltlich, *according to the content of.*
mangels, *in lack of.*
namens, *in the name of.*
rückſichtlich, *concerning.*
ſeitens, *on the part of.*
unfern, *not far from.*
unweit, *not far from.*
vorbehaltlich, *with reservation of.*
zuzüglich, *with addition of.*
zwecks, *for the purpose of.*

b. Even adverbs of direction, like nördlich, *to the north*, rechts *to the right*, abſeits, *to one side*, are sometimes construed with a gen., but von with dat. is better; say nördlich vom Dorfe, not nördlich des Dorfes, for *north of the village*. The same is to be said of unfern and unweit, though the prepositional use of these has become very common. They are sometimes followed by the dat. The order of preference should be: (1) unweit von dem Dorfe, (2) unweit des Dorfes, (3) unweit dem Dorfe.

377. List of Prepositions.

The use of prepositions is highly idiomatic and constitutes a difficult subject for the learner. It is hoped that the following alphabetical list, with the accompanying comments and illustrations, may be found useful for reference.

Ab, dat. As prep. a rare word. It occurs in South Ger. dialect and in the language of business, in the sense of *from* (= von); e. g., ab der Poſt, *from the post-office*. So of the delivery of goods: ab Hamburg, ab Bahnhof (*from depot*), ab hier, etc.

An, dat. and acc., *at, by, on.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position at or near, in phrases of rest; e. g., am Tiſche ſitzen, *sit at table;* am Abend, *at evening;* es iſt an der Zeit, *it is in order*; am 4. Juli, *on the 4th of July*. It may be = *on*, in the sense of *near to*, or *clinging to* a surface not level; e. g., das Schloß am Meer, *the castle on the sea*, but das Schiff auf dem Meere, *the ship on the sea;* an der Wand, *on the wall* (of a picture), but auf der Mauer (of a person standing 'on the wall'); am Bergesabhang, *on the hill-slope*, but auf dem Berge, *on the hill*. (2) Official position; e. g., an einer Univerſität lehren, *to teach at a university*, but auf einer Univerſität ſtudieren. (3) Occupation, concern; e. g., an einer Aufgabe arbeiten, *work at a task;* an der Feier teilnehmen, *take part in the celebration*. (4) The sphere of plenty and want, increase and decrease; e. g., reich (arm) an Gütern, *rich (poor) in goods;* Mangel an Verſtand, *lack of sense;* an Stärke abnehmen (zunehmen), *decrease (increase) in strength*. (5) The seat of defect, disease, peculiarity; e. g., krank am Herzen, *sick at heart;* beſchädigt am Fuße, *injured in the foot;* es iſt an ſich merkwürdig, *it is remarkable in itself*. (6) The occasion of suffering and death; e. g., an einem Fieber krank ſein, *be sick with a fever;* an der Schwindſucht ſterben, *die of con-*

sumption. (7) The seat of evidence; e. g., man ſieht dir's an den Augen an, *one can see by your eyes;* jemand am Geſicht erkennen, *recognize one by his face.* (8) The means of guidance; e. g., ein Tier am Seile führen, *lead an animal by a rope.*

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g., ans Fenſter gehen, *go to the window;* einen Ring an den Finger ſtecken, *put a ring on one's finger;* an das Ziel gelangen, *arrive at the goal.* (2) The goal of thought; e. g., denkt ihr an mich, *do you think of me;* glaubſt du an Gott? *dost thou believe in God?* jemand an den Tod mahnen, *remind one of death.* (3) The object to or for which, after certain verbs; e. g., an einen ſchreiben, *write to one;* Waren an einen verkaufen, *sell wares to one.* (4) With bis, the end of a period or space; e. g., bis an ſein ſelig Ende, *even to his blessed end;* bis an die Ohren, *up to the ears.*

Anſtatt, gen.; from Statt, *place, stead,* governed in the dat. or acc. by an, hence = *instead;* e. g., anſtatt der goldnen Lieder, *instead of golden songs.* Sometimes with tmesis; e. g., an Sohnes ſtatt, *in a son's stead.* In talk sometimes with dat.: anſtatt mir, anſtatt dem Vater. But an meiner Statt, anſtatt des Vaters, are better.

Auf, dat. and acc., *on, upon.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position upon, in phrases of rest; e. g., auf dem Boden ſtehen, *stand upon the ground;* auf dem Rücken liegen, *lie upon one's back;* auf dem Fluſſe rudern, *row upon the river.* (2) Location at, in numerous phrases; e. g., auf der Burg ſitzen, *reside at the castle;* auf dem Rathauſe (der Univerſität, dem Balle, der Meſſe) ſein, *be at the town-hall (the university, the ball, the fair).* (3) Status, in a looser locative sense; e. g., auf dem Wege, *on the way;* auf der Neige, *on the decline;* etwas auf dem Spiele haben, *have something at stake;* auf ſeinem Kopfe beſtehen, *insist on one's opinion, be obstinate;* das hat nichts auf ſich, *that amounts to nothing* (i. e., *it is a basis with nothing on it*). See under an.

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g., aufs Dach klettern, *climb upon the roof;* ſich aufs Bett legen, *lie down upon the bed.* The verb of motion need not be expressed; e. g., Waſſer auf meine Mühle, *water to my mill.* (2) The goal of perception, attention, preparation, hope, desire, waiting, etc.; e. g., auf die Uhr ſehen, *look at the clock;* auf gutes Wetter warten (hoffen), *wait (hope) for good weather;* ſich auf den Krieg rüſten, *prepare for the war.* Hence often in wishes, healths, etc.; e. g., auf gute Geſundheit, *here's to your health;* auf gut Glück, *for good luck;* auf Wiederſehn, *good-bye.* Cf. further: Ich bin hier auf kurze Zeit, *for a short time* (looking ahead); auf jeden Fall, *in any case, at all events.* (3) Close sequence; e. g., auf Leid kommt Freud, *after sorrow comes joy;* ich thue es auf deinen Rat (Befehl, Wink), *on your advice (command, suggestion);* ich glaube dir aufs Wort, *I take you at your word.* (4) Manner; e. g., auf dieſe Weiſe, *in this manner* = in

dieſer Weiſe; auf Deutſch, *in German;* auf eigene Hand, *on one's own 'hook.'* (5) The direction of feeling, after various adjectives, as böſe, eiferſüchtig, neidiſch, ſtolz; e. g., ſie iſt ſtolz auf ihre Schönheit, *proud of her beauty.* (6) The limit of extent, often with bis; e. g., drei Viertel auf zwei, *a quarter to two;* bis auf Speiſ' und Trank, *even to food and drink.*

Aus, dat., *out of, from.* It denotes: (1) An inner point of departure, with verbs of motion and sensation; e. g., aus der Reihe treten, *step out of the ranks;* einen aus dem Waſſer (den Flammen, der Not) retten, *rescue one from the water (the flames, trouble);* aus dem Fenſter ſehen, *look out of the window.* (2) Simple aloofness, with verbs of rest, or without verb; e. g., laß mich aus der Sache, *leave me out of the affair;* aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn, *out of sight, out of mind.* (3) Origin, both local and logical; e. g., er ſtammt aus guter Familie (aus der Schweiz), *he comes of good family (from Switzerland);* das weiß ich aus Erfahrung, *I know it from experience;* es geſchah aus Unkenntnis, *from ignorance.* (4) Motive; e. g., aus Liebe (Haß, Eiferſucht) handeln, *act from love (hate, jealousy).* (5) Material; e. g., es iſt aus Holz gemacht, *made of wood.*

Außer, dat., *outside of, beside(s).* Formerly with gen., which survives in außer Landes gehen, *go abroad.* It stands before nouns of condition, state, and before pronouns; e. g., außer Atem, *out of breath;* außer Dienſt, *out of service;* außer acht laſſen, *leave out of account;* er iſt außer ſich, *he is beside himself.* Before nouns of place it was once common, but außerhalb is now preferred; e. g., außer dem Lager, *outside of the camp* (Lu.); außer der Stadt, *outside the city* (S.). It is often used in the sense of *except*; e. g., außer mir iſt kein Gott, *there is no God but me.*

Außerhalb, gen., *outside of;* e. g., außerhalb des Thores, *outside the gate;* außerhalb des Geſetzes, *outside of the law.* Sometimes with dat. in the classics and even now; e. g., außerhalb ſeinem Vaterlande (S.); außerhalb dem eingezäunten Hofe, *outside the enclosed court* (Freytag).

Bei, dat., *by, at, near, with.* It denotes: (1) Simple proximity; e. g., beim Fenſter, *by the window;* die Schlacht bei Waterloo, *the battle of,* i. e. *near, W.* (2) Location at, with, among, at the house of, in the works of; e. g., bei einem Gelag, *at a drinking-bout;* bei der Arbeit, *at work;* bei uns zu Lande, *in our country;* beim Onkel wohnen, *live at one's uncle's;* bei einem Profeſſor hören, *hear lectures under a professor;* die Stelle findet ſich bei Schiller, *is found in S.* (3) Status, condition, concomitancy; e. g., er iſt bei Jahren, *well along in years;* er iſt noch bei vollen Kräften, *still in full vigor;* bei ſich, *in one's senses;* ich bin bei Gelde, *I am in funds;* bei Nacht, *at night;* beizeiten, *at times, betimes:* bei gutem Wetter, *the weather being good;* bei dieſer Sachlage, *in view of this situation;* bei offnem Fenſter ſchlafen, *sleep with open window;* beim Gehen, *in walking.* (4) Ground of assertion, prohibition, etc.; e. g., beim Himmel! *by*

heaven! das iſt bei Strafe verboten, *forbidden under penalty;* bei Leibe nicht! *not for your life!* (5) Measure; e. g., bei einem Haare, *by a hair's breadth;* bei weitem, *by a long way.* (6) Point of seizure; e. g., jemand bei der Hand ergreifen, *seize one by the hand.*

Binnen, dat. and gen., *within.* Formerly of place or time, now only of time; e. g., binnen einiger Tage, *within a few days;* binnen drei Monaten, *within three months.* The dat. now prevails.

Bis, acc., *to, till.* It denotes a limit of motion, time, or space; e. g., ich gehe mit bis Leipzig, *I will go along as far as L.;* von Leipzig bis (nach) Dresden, *from L. to D.;* bis Freitag, *till Friday.* It is often followed by an adverb or another prep.; e. g., bis heute, *until to-day;* bis zum Ende, *to the end;* er ſteckt in Schulden bis an die Ohren, *he is up to the ears in debt.* So in numerical approximations; acht bis zehn Jahre, *eight or ten years.*

Diesſeits, gen., *this side of;* from Seite with adverbial s. Diesſeits des Mondes, *this side the moon.* The dat. occurs in old writers.

Durch, acc., *through, by.* It denotes: (1) Transition through space or time; e. g., durch die Luft fliegen, *fly through the air;* durch die Nacht wachen, *watch through the night.* Figuratively: es fuhr mir durch den Kopf, *it flashed through my head.* With verbs of perception: durch ein Fernrohr ſehen, *look through a telescope.* Often emphasized by an added hindurch; e. g., durch viele Jahre hindurch, *through many years.* On the adverbial durch, in die ganze Nacht durch, *the whole night through,* cf. § 266. (2) Means, including personal mediation, but not direct agency, for which see under von; e. g., etwas durch Liſt erlangen, *get something by cunning;* er ließ mir durch einen Boten ſagen, *sent word by a messenger.* (4) Ground, cause, occasion; e. g., ich bitte dich durch Gottes Gnaden, *I pray you by God's grace;* durch einen Zufall, *by an accident;* elend durch mich, *miserable through me* (G.).

Entgegen, dat., *against, toward.* It is really an adverb (separable prefix), but when the verb of motion is omitted it may take on the character of a postpositive preposition; e. g., dem Schnee, dem Regen, dem Wind entgegen, *in face of snow and rain and wind* (G.); ihr ſteigt hinauf, dem Strom der Neuß entgegen, *facing the current* (S.).

Für, acc., *for.* It implies: (1) Interest, benefit; e. g., etwas für einen thun, *do something for one;* für Weib und Kinder beten, *pray for one's wife and children.* (2) Exchange, equivalence; e. g., für einen handeln, *act for* (i. e. *in lieu of*) *one;* es iſt für Geld nicht zu haben, *not to be had for money;* ich halt' ihn für einen Schelm, *take him for a scamp;* fürliebnehmen, *put up with things.* (3) Sphere of application, limitation; e. g., Arznei für ein Fieber, *medicine for a fever;* für einen Narren ſpricht er gar nicht ſchlecht, *not badly for a fool* (G.); ich für mein Teil, *I for my*

part; genug für heute, *enough for to-day;* ich ging im Walde so für mich hin, *all by myself.* (4) Succession; e. g., Schritt für Schritt, *step by step.*

Für is of like origin with vor. The two are often confounded in early modern Ger. and even in the classics; e. g., für Furcht sterben, *die of fear* (S.); weinte für Freuden, *wept for joy* (G.). Für for vor may of course take the dat.; e. g., was hätte er dann noch für seinem Mädchen voraus (S.)?

Gegen (gen), acc., *toward, against, facing.* It denotes: (1) The direction of motion, effort or purpose; e. g., gegen den Strom schwimmen, *swim against the current;* was können wir gegen Albrechts Heere? *what can we do against A.'s armies* (S.)? sich gegen die Thüre stemmen, *brace one's self against the door.* So with nouns; e. g., ein Mittel gegen die Cholera, *a remedy against the cholera.* With verbs of motion gegen is rare in the sense of *toward,* but may occur if the verb is such as to preclude the idea of hostility; thus gegen die Stadt marschieren, means *to march against the city,* but gegen die Stadt spazieren, gegen den Rhein wandern, are permissible, though nach, or nach . . . zu, is preferred. (2) Direction of feeling, friendly or hostile; e. g., freundlich gegen das Volk, *friendly toward the people;* taub gegen die Bitte, *deaf to the request;* Ehrfurcht gegen das Alter, *respect for age.* (3) Offset, exchange, comparison; e. g., Waren gegen bar Geld verkaufen, *sell wares for cash;* Kriegsgefangene gegen einander austauschen, *exchange prisoners;* gegen ihn bin ich nichts, *beside him I am nothing;* ein Mehr von zwanzig gegen zwölf, *a majority of twenty to twelve* (S.). (4) Approximation; e. g., gegen Abend, *toward evening;* gegen drei Monate, *about three months.* (5) Position facing; e. g., ein Fenster gegen Süden, *a window facing the south.*

In early modern Ger. gegen usually took the dat. and this construction is met with now and then in the classics; e. g., ihr werdet gegen der Menge wenig sein, *few in comparison with the multitude* (G.). The short form gen is common in the Bible and still survives in set phrases; e. g., gen Himmel, *toward the sky.*

Gegenüber, dat., *opposite, in face of, in relation to.* It generally follows its noun and is more often adv. than prep. It is used: (1) Of literal position; e. g., der Kirche gegenüber, or gegenüber der Kirche, *opposite the church.* (Gegenüber von, after Fr. *vis-à-vis de,* also occurs.) (2) Of status; e. g., die Stellung des Staates der Kirche gegenüber, *the attitude of the state in relation to the church;* dieser Thatsache gegenüber bin ich sprachlos, *in face of this fact.* Tmesis is common in older writers; e. g., in der Wüsten gegen Moab über, *in the desert over against Moab.*

Gemäß, dat., *according to, in harmony with.* Strictly the adj. gemäß (§ 260) used adverbially. It usually follows its noun; e. g., der Natur gemäß (or naturgemäß) leben, *live according to nature;* demgemäß,

accordingly. Nowadays often with gen.; e. g., gemäß Ihres Schreibens, *according to your letter;* befehlsgemäß, *according to orders.*

Halb, halben, halber, gen., *because of, on account of.* Stereotyped case-forms of the old noun Halb, *side, direction;* always postpositive. Examples: fürſtlicher Hochbegrüßung halb, *in the interest of a princely greeting* (G.); dieſer Hoffnung halben, *on account of this hope;* der Studien halber, *in the interest of study* (Ranke). Now chiefly in compounds; meinethalb(en), altershalber, amtshalber, krankheitshalber, etc.

Hinter, dat. and acc., *behind.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position behind, with verbs of rest; e. g., er iſt hinter dem Hauſe, *behind the house;* hinter dem Berge wohnen, *live on the other side of the mountain.* (2) Concealment; e. g., hinter des Lehrers Rücken, *behind the teacher's back;* es ſteckt etwas dahinter, *there's something behind it.* (3) Support; e. g., er ſteht hinter mir als Bürge, *he stands behind me as security.*

b. With acc. It denotes the goal of motion; e. g., hinters Haus gehen, *go behind the house;* ſchreib' es dir hinters Ohr, *make a note of it.*

In, dat. and acc.; with dat., *in,* with acc., *into.*

a. The dat. marks position, in space or time; e. g., in der Stadt wohnen, *live in the city;* im Fluſſe waten, *wade in the river;* in einem Buche leſen, *read in a book;* er ſtarb im Jahre 1800, *died in the year 1800.*

b. The acc. implies a goal of motion, perception, duration; e. g., in die Stadt gehen, *go into the city;* in den Fluß (hinein) waten, *wade into the river;* in ein Buch ſehen, *look into a book;* er lebte bis ins Jahr 1800, *he lived into the year 1800.* Where a goal of motion is implied Ger. requires the acc. more strictly than Eng. requires *into;* e. g., man pflanzt einen Baum in die Erde, *plants a tree in the ground;* ich ſtecke die Hand in die Taſche, *put my hand in my pocket.* Notice, too, the acc. in phrases of extent; e. g., 20 Fuß in die Höhe, *20 feet high;* wie kann's euch in die Länge freuen? *how can you like it for a steady thing* (G.)?

Infolge, gen., *in consequence of;* = in Folge.

Inmitten, gen., *in the midst of;* = in der Mitte.

Innerhalb, gen., *within, inside of;* of both time and place; e. g., innerhalb des Schloſſes, *within the castle;* innerhalb des Jahres, *within the year.* Common also with dat.

Jenſeits, gen., *on that side of, beyond;* jenſeits dieſer Berge, *beyond these mountains.* Cf. diesſeits.

Kraft, gen., *on the strength of, in virtue of;* e. g., kraft des Berliner Vertrages, *in virtue of the Berlin treaty.* Shortened from in Kraft.

Längs, gen., *along;* e. g., längs des Fluſſes, *along the river.* Common also with dat. An adverbial gen. of lang, with spurious umlaut.

Laut, gen., *according to;* e. g., laut des geſchloſſenen Bundes, *according to the treaty of alliance.* Sometimes with dat. Shortened from nach Laut, *according to the purport.*

Mit, dat., *with.* It denotes: (1) Association, joint activity (friendly and hostile); e. g., komm, geh mit mir, *come, go with me;* mit einem Gegner ſtreiten, *contend with an adversary;* mit Gott, *with God's help.* (2) Concern, often in a very loose sense; e. g., wie ſteht es mit Ihrem Herzen? *how is it with your heart* (G.)? was giebt's mit dem Bauer da? *what's the matter with the peasant there* (S.)? hinaus mit ihm! *out with him!* ich bin mit der Sache fertig, *done with the affair.* (3) Concomitancy, in phrases of manner; e. g., mit Recht, *rightly;* mit wenig Witz, *with little wit.* (4) Appurtenance; e. g., Götz mit der eiſernen Hand, *Götz with the iron hand.* (5) Means; e. g., mit einem Meſſer ſchneiden, *cut with a knife;* mit Genuß betrügen, *deceive with pleasure.* (6) Contemporaneousness; e. g., die Welt wird ſchöner mit jedem Tag, *every day;* mit der Zeit, *in course of time.*

Mitſamt, dat.; the same as ſamt.

Mittels, mittelſt, gen., *by means of;* e. g., mittelſt ihres Anſehens, *by means of their prestige.* Mittels is an adverbial genitive of Mittel; mittelſt has an excrescent t.

Nach, dat., *after, to, according to.* It denotes: (1) Approach, direction of motion, with names of places; e. g., nach Berlin gehen, *go to Berlin;* nach Hauſe eilen, *hurry home.* The object may be an adverb; e. g., nach oben, *up;* nach unten, *down.* Direction, without the idea of arrival, may be expressed by nach . . . zu; e. g., wir fuhren nach der Stadt zu, *drove toward the city.* (2) The direction of effort, desire, attention, etc.; e. g., nach einem ſchlagen, *strike at one;* nach einem Ziele ſchießen, *shoot at a mark;* nach Ruhm ſtreben, *strive for glory;* ſich nach Ruhe ſehnen, *long for rest.* (3) Sequence; e. g., nach einem reden, *speak after one;* eins nach dem andern, *one after the other;* nach kurzer Zeit, *after a short time;* nach Tiſche, *after dinner.* (5) Accordance, often with object preceding; e. g., nach meiner Anſicht, *according to my view;* allem Anſcheine nach, *according to all appearances;* ich kenne ihn dem Namen nach, *know him by name;* es riecht nach Schwefel, *it smells of (like) sulphur.*

Nächſt, dat., *close by, next to;* e. g., nächſt der Brücke, *close by the bridge* (S.). The superlative of nah, used adverbially.

Neben, dat. and acc., *close by, beside.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Simple juxtaposition; e. g., neben einem ſitzen, *sit next to one;* neben der Thüre ſchlafen, *sleep by the door.* (2) Addition or comparison; e. g., du ſollſt keine andre Götter neben mir haben,

no other gods beside me; du haſt noch eine Klugheit neben deiner Liebe, *shrewdness along with your love* (S.); neben ihm bin ich ein Stümper, *a bungler in comparison with him.*

b. With acc. it follows verbs of motion in the sense of *beside, close to*; e. g., er ſtellte ſich neben den Ofen hin, *placed himself by the stove* (S.); er ſetzte ſich neben ſie, *sat down beside her* (G.). But the dat. is not infrequent even after verbs of motion.

Nebſt, dat., *along with, together with*; e. g., der Vater nebſt ſeinen beiden Söhnen, *together with his two sons.* From nebens, an adverbial amplification of neben, with exerescent t.

Ob, dat., *above, over, on account of*; e. g., ob Erden (archaic), *above ground, on earth*; der Prieſter ſprach den Segen ob dem Paare, *pronounced the blessing over the pair* (Lenau); ob all dem edlen Wein, *over*, i. e., *on account of, all the noble wine* (U.). Ob is now rare and confined to stately diction. It occurs also with gen.; e. g., ob des ſeltſamen Gerätes, *on account of the strange implement* (S.).

Ohne, acc., *without*; e. g., ohne guten Grund, *without good reason.* The object may be an inf. with zu or a clause with daß; e.g., bezeugt nur, ohne viel zu wiſſen, *without knowing much* (G.); er ſündigt, ohne daß er es weiß, *sins without knowing it.* Formerly common with dat., and gen., whence the survivals ohnedem, *aside from that*, and zweifelsohne, *doubtless.*

Oberhalb, gen., *above*; e. g., oberhalb des Dorfes, *above the village.* Also with dat.: oberhalb dem Walde, *above the forest.*

Samt, dat., *together with*; e. g., der Vater ſamt den Kindern, *the father together with the children.*

Seit, dat., *since, from the time of*; e. g., ſeit dem letzten Kriege, *since the last war.* Formerly also with gen., whence ſeit alters, *from of old.* The object may be an adverb or adjective; e. g., ſeit geſtern, *since yesterday*; ſeit kurzem, *recently.*

Sonder, acc., *without*; obsolete except in a few phrases such as ſonder Gleichen, *without peer*; ſonder Zweifel, *doubtless.* Formerly used also with dat. and gen.

Trotz, gen. or dat., *in spite of, in competition with*, hence, *as well as*; e. g., trotz aller Bemühungen, *in spite of all efforts*; trotz dem ſchlechten Wetter, *in spite of the bad weather*; trotz alle dem, *for all that*; darauf verſtehen wir uns trotz einer Nation in der Welt, *we understand that as well as any nation in the world* (L.). Shortened from zu(m) Trotze.

Über, dat. and acc., *over, beyond.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position, with verbs of rest; e. g., über allen Gipfeln iſt Ruh', *over all the hill-tops is rest* (G.); er wohnt über

dem Meere, *lives across the sea.* (2) Occupation; e. g., über einem Buche ſitzen, *sit over a book;* über einem Geſpräch den Zug verſäumen, *miss the train over* (i. e., *through being absorbed in*) *a conversation.*

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g., er gießt ihm ein Glas Wein über den Kopf, *pours a glass of wine over his head* (G.); Jammer über die Welt bringen, *bring sorrow over the world;* über eine Brücke gehen, *go over a bridge.* So with nouns that imply crossing; e. g., der Übergang über die Donau, *the crossing of the Danube.* (2) Superiority; e. g., über ein Volk herrſchen, *rule over a people;* über den Feind ſiegen, *prevail over the enemy.* (3) Excess; e. g., das geht über alle Vernunft, *beyond all reason;* über alle Beſchreibung ſchrecklich, *terrible beyond all description;* über zwei Jahre, *over two years.* But this last may also mean *two years hence;* cf. heute über acht Tage, *a week from to-day;* über Nacht, *over night.* Further: einmal über das andere, *time after time;* Briefe über Briefe, *letters upon letters.* (4) Occasion, theme; e. g., über einen Vorfall lachen (weinen, ſich freuen), *laugh* (*weep, rejoice*) *over an occurrence;* über die Kunſt ſchreiben, *write upon art;* Über das Erhabene, *On the Sublime.* So in exclamations: pfui über dich! *out upon you!* According to Brandt, über ein Buch einſchlafen, *to fall asleep over a book,* implies that the book is dull, while über einem Buche einſchlafen means *simply to fall asleep while reading.*

Um, acc., *about, around.* It denotes: (1) Simple position, often with following her or herum; e. g., ums Feuer ſtehen, *stand about the fire;* alle treten um ihn, *come around him* (G.); um den Teich (herum) ſpazieren, *walk round the pond.* (2) Approximation; e. g., um Weihnachten, *about Christmas;* um drei Stunden, *about three leagues.* In giving the time of day, however, um denotes exact time; e. g., um 3 Uhr, *at 3 o'clock.* (3) Concern, solicitude; e. g., es handelt ſich ums Leben, *it is a question of life;* um eine Sache ſtreiten, *contend about a matter;* um etwas bitten, *ask for something.* (4) Exchange, offset, price; e. g., alles iſt euch feil um Gold, *purchasable for gold* (S.); um alles in der Welt, *of (for) all things in the world.* (5) Degree of difference; e. g., um einen Zoll zu breit, *too wide by an inch;* um ein Haar, *by a hair's breadth.* (6) Loss, deprivation; e. g., einen ums Leben bringen, *deprive one of life.*

Um . . . willen, gen., *for the sake of;* e. g., um Gottes willen, *for God's sake;* i. e., um Gottes Willen, *for the will of God.*

Unangeſehen, gen., *not considering.*

Unbeſchadet, gen., *without detriment* (or *prejudice*) *to.* Rarely with dat.

Ungeachtet, gen., *notwithstanding.* Formerly not uncommon with dat., whence demungeachtet (as well as deſſenungeachtet), *nevertheless.*

Unter, dat. and acc., *under, among.*

a. With dat., in constructions of rest, it denotes: (1) Simple position; e. g., unter einem Baume ſitzen, *sit under a tree;* Gretchen unter vielem Volke, *among many people* (G.). So, too, as the equivalent of a partitive gen.; e. g., viele unter den Soldaten, *many among the soldiers.* (2) Status, with reference to superior authority, governing conditions, etc.; e. g., unter einem Offizier dienen, *serve under an officer;* unter Druck ſeufzen, *groan under oppression;* unter ſolchen Umſtänden, *under such circumstances;* ein Buch unter der Preſſe, *a book in press.* (3) Contemporaneousness, concomitancy; e. g., unter der Regierung Karls, *under the reign of Karl;* unter dem Donner der Kanonen vorrücken, *advance amid the roar of cannon.*

b. With acc. it denotes the goal of motion; e. g., etwas unter den Tiſch werfen, *throw something under the table;* ich komm' gar wenig unter Leute, *I go little among people* (G.).

Unterhalb, gen., *below;* e. g., unterhalb des Dorfes, *below the village.* Sometimes with dat.

Vermittelſt, gen., *by means of.* The same as mittelſt.

Vermöge, gen., *in virtue of, by dint of;* e. g., vermöge ſeines Fleißes, *by dint of his industry.*

Von, dat., *from, of.* As we have seen (§ 247), von and the dat. may take the place of the gen. in nearly all the latter's uses. Aside from this it denotes: (1) The starting-point; e. g., von Berlin nach Leipzig fahren, *travel from Berlin to Leipzig;* von nun an, *from now on.* (2) Residence, origin; e. g., der Kaufmann von Venedig, *the merchant of Venice;* Rudolf von Habsburg, *Rudolf of Habsburg.* Hence, in modern times, as a mere sign of nobility; e. g., Fürſt von Bismarck, *Prince von Bismarck.* (3) Agency, with passive verbs; e. g., Amerika wurde von Columbus entdeckt, *was discovered by Columbus.* (4) Source; e. g., von allen Seiten, *from all sides;* von der Luft leben, *live on air;* von wem haben Sie das? *from whom have you that?* das iſt nicht gut von dir, *not kind of you;* von Geburt ein Deutſcher, *a German by birth;* naß vom Regen, *wet with rain.* (5) Separation, release; e. g., das Gute vom Schlechten unterſcheiden, *distinguish the good from the bad;* frei von Stolz, *free from pride;* von der Arbeit ruhen, *rest from toil.* (6) Concern; e. g., von der Politik reden, *talk of politics;* die Lehre vom Zufall, *the doctrine of chance.* (7) Specification; e. g., ein Mann von vierzig Jahren, *a man of forty;* ein Engel von einem Weibe, *an angel of a woman.*

Vor, dat. and acc., *before.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position in place or time; e. g., vor dem Spiegel ſtehen, *stand before the mirror;* vor 3 Uhr, *before three o'clock;* vor einem Monat, *a month ago;* vor Chriſtus, *B. C.* (2) Cause, mostly with words of emotion; e. g., vor Freude weinen, *weep for joy;* Furcht

vor dem Tode, *fear of death.* (3) Precedence; e. g., vor allen Dingen, *before all things;* vor einem den Vorrang haben, *take precedence of one.* (4) Exposure, security; e. g., einen vor der Kälte ſchützen, *protect one from the cold;* ſicher vor dem Feinde, *safe from the enemy;* vor dir hab' ich keine Geheimniſſe, *I have no secrets from you.*

b. With acc. it denotes the goal of motion; e. g., vor den Spiegel treten, *step before the mirror;* ſich vor den Kopf ſchießen, *shoot one's self in the head;* vor einen Baum rennen, *run into a tree* (G).

Während, gen., *during;* e. g., während des Abends, *during the evening.* The pple. of währen, *endure;* währendes Tages, *while the day endures* (§ 251, 1), became während des Tages. Sometimes with dat.

Wegen, gen., *on account of;* e. g., wegen des Wetters, *on account of the weather.* Often postpositive, e. g., der Geſchäfte wegen, *because of business.* Sometimes with dat.

Wider, acc., *against* (but not in a physical sense); e. g., wider das Recht, *contrary to law.*

Zu, dat., *to, at, for.* It denotes: (1) The direction of motion or effort, usually with the idea of arrival; e. g., komm du nur oft zu mir herüber, *come over to my house* (G.); ſie ſang zu ihm, ſie ſprach zu ihm, *she sang to him, she spoke to him* (G.); zu Bett gehen, *go to bed;* zur Kirche gehen, *go to church;* zu Grunde gehen, *go to ruin;* zu Boden fallen, *fall to the ground;* von Ort zu Ort, *from place to place;* von Zeit zu Zeit, *from time to time.* Observe that zu is not used after verbs of motion before names of towns; e. g., *to go to Berlin* is nach Berlin gehen. Sometimes postpositive (with or without preceding nach) in the sense of *toward;* e. g., (nach) der Straße zu, *toward the street.* (2) Position in space or time, with verbs of rest; e. g., zu Hauſe, *at home;* zu Weihnachten, *at Christmas;* im Rathaus zu Bremen, *in the town-hall at Bremen.* (But with names of towns in is more usual.) So, too, of the seat of feeling, e. g., es iſt mir wohl zu Mute, *comfortable in mind.* Observe the idiomatic use of zu with particles of motion; e. g., zur Thür hinaus, *out of* (i. e., *out at, by way of*) *the door.* (3) Purpose, destination, resultant status; e. g., Waſſer zum Trinken, *water for drinking;* zum Beiſpiel, *for example;* zu meiner großen Freude, *to my great delight;* das iſt nicht zum Lachen, *not for laughter, no laughing-matter;* zum Entzücken! *charming!* zu nichte werden, *come to naught;* zu Tode ärgern, *vex to death;* eine zur Frau nehmen, *take one to wife.* (4) Manner, rate, degree; e. g., zu Fuß, *on foot;* zu Waſſer, *by water;* zu Deutſch, *in German;* zu drei Mark das Stück, *at three marks a piece;* zu Hunderten, *by hundreds;* zum Teil, *in part.* (5) Excess, addition; e. g., dazu, zudem, *besides.*

Zufolge, gen., *in consequence of.*

Zuwider, dat., *against;* e. g., das Glück war uns zuwider, *against us.*

Zwiſchen, dat. and acc., *between.* The dat. follows verbs of rest, the acc. verbs of motion.

SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION.

378. Classification of Conjunctions. Conjunctions connect the members of compound or complex sentences (cf. § 410). Those that connect sentences of equal syntactical rank are called 'co-ordinating' conjunctions, while those that introduce dependent clauses are called 'subordinating.' The former class may be subdivided, with reference to their influence on the word-order, into general connectives and adverbial conjunctions.

1. Conjunctions are mainly of adverbial origin, and are not always easily distinguishable from adverbs. The guiding principle is that an adverb modifies a single word, usually the verb, of its clause, while a conjunction limits the clause itself, showing its logical relation to what precedes or follows. But a considerable number of adverbs (see below, § 380, 1) may perform either function, or both at the same time.

379. The General Connectives aber, allein, ſondern, denn, oder and und do not affect the word-order; e. g., aber die Sonne duldet kein Weißes, *but the sun endures nothing white* (G.); denn er war unſer, *for he was ours* (G.); Weib, mach' Platz, oder mein Roß geht über dich hinweg, *woman, give way, or my horse will run over you* (S.).

1. Of the three words for *but*, allein and aber are used without appreciable difference of meaning, but allein always begins its clause, whereas aber may come after one or more words, being then equivalent to *however*; e. g., ich aber blieb mit kummervoller Seele, *I however remained with sorrowful soul* (S.). Sondern is used only after a negative, and introduces a contrast which excludes or contradicts what goes before; e. g., das iſt kein Grund, ſondern nur ein Vorwand, *that is no reason, but only a pretext*; er kam nicht, ſondern er blieb ruhig zu Hauſe, *he did not come, but remained quietly at home.* But if the second proposition does not exclude the first, aber is used even after a negative; e. g., er kam nicht, aber er blieb nicht ohne Grund zu Hauſe, *he did not come, but he had reason for remaining at home.* Sondern is especially common in the correlative phrase nicht allein (or nicht nur) . . . ſondern auch, *not only . . . but also.*

2. Denn, *for*, always begins its clause and is thus easily distinguishable from the inferential denn, *then* (§ 380), which never stands first.

3. Oder, *or*, is often preceded by a correlative entweder, *either*; e. g., entweder ihr kennt mich nicht, oder ihr seid sehr boshaft, *either you do not know me, or you are very malicious* (G.). Entweder sometimes causes inversion, oder very rarely. Oder is often followed by a pleonastic and untranslatable aber; e. g., ich will entweder siegen, oder aber sterben, *I will conquer or die* (Gr.).

4. The use of und corresponds closely to that of *and*. Note, however, the frequent employment of inversion after und, with resumption of the subject by means of a pronoun, usually derselbe; e. g., die Vorstellung beginnt um sechs Uhr, und wird dieselbe ungefähr drei Stunden dauern, *the performance begins at 6 o'clock and will last about three hours*. This usage is characteristic of the commercial and official styles.

a. By the ellipsis of the verb really connected with what precedes und sometimes acquires concessive force; e. g., du mußt, und kostet' es mein Leben, *thou must and should it cost* (i. e., *though it should cost*) *my life* (G.).

380. The Adverbial Conjunctions are adverbs so far as they modify a particular word of the clause in which they stand, but conjunctions in that they show the logical relation of the clause itself to what precedes or follows. As conjunctions they are apt to begin the clause, in which case they cause inversion; but they may also follow the verb like any other adverb; e. g., zwar ist es leicht, doch ist das Leichte schwer, *to be sure it is easy, but the easy is hard* (G.); du magst zwar reden, du hast doch unrecht, *you may talk, to be sure, but you are wrong*.

1. It would be impossible to draw up a complete list of the adverbial conjunctions, because they can not be distinguished sharply from other adverbs. Nor is it easy to classify them according to their meaning. Roughly speaking they are either additive (akin in meaning to *also, moreover*), adversative (meaning *but, yet, on the other hand, else, rather*), temporal (such as *soon, now, then, thereupon, firstly*), partitive (like *partly . . . partly, now . . . again*), consecutive (like *hence, therefore, accordingly, so*), or they express assurance, doubt, probability, etc. Some of the more common are as follows:

allerdings, *to be sure.*	dagegen, *on the contrary.*
also, *so, then.*	damals, *at that time.*
andrerseits, *on the other hand.*	damit, *therewith.*
auch, *also, too.*	dann, *then.*
bald . . . bald, *now . . . again.*	darauf, *thereupon.*

darum, *therefore.*
dazu, *besides.*
demnach, *accordingly.*
denn, *then.*
dennoch, *however.*
deshalb, *therefore.*
desgleichen, *likewise.*
deſſenungeachtet, *notwithstanding.*
deswegen, *therefore.*
doch, *but, yet, surely*
ebenſo, *likewise.*
endlich, *finally.*
erſtens, *firstly.*
freilich, *to be sure.*
gleichfalls, *likewise.*
gleichwohl, *nevertheless.*
halb . . . halb, *half . . . half.*
ja, *indeed, of course.*
jedoch, *nevertheless.*
nachher, *afterwards.*
nämlich, *namely, to explain.*
natürlich, *of course.*
noch, *yet, still.*
nun, *now.*
ſo, *so.*
ſogar, *even.*
ſogleich, *directly.*
ſonſt, *else, formerly.*
teils . . . teils, *partly . . . partly.*
trotzdem, *nevertheless.*
überdies, *besides.*
übrigens, *moreover.*
vielleicht, *perhaps.*
vielmehr, *rather.*
wohl, *perhaps, I presume.*
zudem, *besides.*
zuerſt, *first.*
zuletzt, *last.*
zunächſt, *next.*
zwar, *to be sure.*

a. Some of the above words, notably auch, doch, erſtens, nämlich, often fail to cause inversion ; e. g., auch das iſt falſch, *that too is false;* du ſcheinſt bedenklich, doch du ſcheinſt vergnügt, *you seem pensive, yet you seem happy* (G.). Any word loses its power to cause inversion, when it is set off by a comma ; e. g., nun, wir ſehen einander wieder, *well, we'll see each other again* (G.). This is often the case with the ordinal adverbs, erſtens, zweitens, ferner, endlich, etc.

b. Auch generally stands just before (with weak stress), or just after (with strong stress), the word to be made prominent ; e. g., auch ich or ich auch, bin Dichter, *I too* (as well as others) *am a poet;* ich bin auch Dichter, or Dichter auch, *I am a poet too* (as well as an orator). The former idea can also be expressed : ich bin auch Dichter.

c. Doch is primarily adversative, = *but, yet,* but its adversative force is often directed against an *imaginary* doubt, denial, opposition, or hesitation, so that it becomes merely a particle of emphasis, = *really, surely, I declare;* e. g., das iſt doch unerhört, *that is really unheard of;* treten Sie doch herein, *come in, won't you?* höre doch, *do hear.* So in combination with ja or wohl ; e. g., du biſt ja doch der Herr, *thou art surely the Lord;* Sie ſind doch wohl nicht krank, *you are not sick, I hope.* It quite regularly follows a verb put first for emphasis ; e. g., glaub' ich doch, *I do believe;* hab' ich den Markt und die Straßen doch nie ſo einſam geſehen, *I never did see,* etc. (G.).

d. Ja as additive particle, = *indeed, in fact,* need not cause inversion; e. g., ſetzte ſich zu ihm, ja man dürfte beinah' ſagen, auf ihn, *sat down by him, indeed one might almost say, upon him* (G.). More often ja follows the verb with the sense *of course, you know;* e. g., ich tadle ihn nicht, er iſt ja nur ein Kind, *I do not blame him, he is only a child, you know;* Sie wiſſen ja, *you know, of course.*

e. Noch may have additive or temporal force; e. g., ihr ſeid noch ziemlich wohlgebaut, *you are besides pretty well built* (G.); das iſt noch ſchlimmer, *that is still worse.* As temporal particle it means *yet, still, up to;* e. g., noch iſt es Zeit, *there is still time;* noch vor kurzem, *until lately, quite lately;* das fehlte noch, *that was yet lacking, that caps the climax;* er kann noch lange leben, *he may yet live long.*

f. Nun differs from jetzt in that the latter only denotes present time as such, while nun implies a relation to what precedes; e. g., ich bin jetzt beſchäftigt, *I am busy now,* but nun traf es ſich, *now it happened* (as part of a narrative); nun danket alle Gott, *now all thank God* (in view of his favor).

g. Wohl is sometimes concessive; e. g., wohl hat er Geld, aber er hat wenig Verſtand, *he has money, to be sure, but he has little sense.* Most often, however, it expresses a lack of perfect assurance, being a sort of verbal interrogation-point to be translated by *perhaps, probably, possibly, I presume, I should say,* etc.; e. g., du haſt wohl recht, *you are probably right;* es waren ihrer wohl zwanzig, *there were twenty of them, I should think;* wie ſpät iſt es wohl? *how late is it, I wonder?* The English *well* at the beginning of the sentence is usually given by nun, not by wohl; e. g., nun, wie geht's? *well, how goes it?* Cf. § 372, 1.

h. So is often used to resume the adverbial force of a preceding clause, especially a conditional clause; e. g., wenn ich das gewußt hätte, ſo wäre ich nicht gekommen, *if I had known that, I should not have come;* und kommt er auch, ſo iſt's ein Gauch, *and even if he comes, it is a fool* (G.). The use of this ſo is to make the inversion easier. It should not be translated.

381. The Subordinating Conjunctions introduce dependent clauses which sustain to some word in the main clause the relation of adverb, adjective or noun. They require that the inflected verb stand at the end.

1. Exceptions to the rule of order are not uncommon. Especially is a prepositional phrase often placed after the verb; e. g., und als ich kam ins heimatliche Thal, *when I came into my native valley* (S.). Cf.

also § 194. The most important of the subordinating conjunctions are as follows:

als, *as, when, than*	inwieweit, *how far.*	ſowie, *as, just as.*
als ob, *as if.*	je + adv. or adj., *the —.*	wann, *when.*
als wenn, *as if.*	je nachdem, *according as.*	weil, *because.*
bevor, *before.*	nachdem, *after.*	wenn, *if, when.*
bis, *until.*	ob, *whether.*	wenn auch, *though.*
da, *as, since.*	obgleich, *though.*	wenngleich, *though.*
damit, *so that.*	obſchon, *though.*	während, *while.*
daß, *that.*	obwohl, *though.*	wie, *how, as.*
dieweil, *because*	ſeit(dem), *since.*	wo, *where.*
ehe, *before.*	ſo, *if.*	wo + prep., or particle.
falls, *in case.*	ſo + adv. or adj *as — as.*	wofern, *so far as, if.*
indem, *while.*	zumal (da), *especially as.*	
indes (=deſſen), *while.*		
inwiefern, *how far.*		

a. Als translates Eng. *when* after a pret.; e. g., als ich noch ein Knab war, *when I was still a boy* (G.). It may also be = *as* before a historical pres.; e. g., als ich das Vorgemach durchgehe, *as I go through the anteroom* (S.). After other tenses *when* is given by wenn, which see. Als is the proper conjunction to be used after a comparative; e. g., es iſt ſchlimmer, als ich anfangs vermutete, *it is worse than I at first supposed;* ich bin älter als du, *I am older than you.* So, too, after the positive degree preceded by ſo; e. g., es iſt nicht ſo ſchlimm, als du meinſt, *not so bad as you think;* ich bin gerade ſo alt als du, *exactly as old as you.* In both these cases, however, and especially after the positive degree, it is very common to substitute wie for als. The usage is colloquial, but found abundantly in the best writers. Denn is now little used after a comparative, except to avoid an awkward repetition of als; e. g., Schiller war größer als Dichter denn als Philoſoph, *greater as poet than as philosopher.* Als wie, for als, is colloquial, but common in the classics.

b. Da with pret. may denote simple time, like als; e. g., da ihr noch die ſchöne Welt regiertet, *when you still ruled* (S.). So, too, to define Zeit; e. g., die Zeiten, da ich noch ſelbſt im Werden war, *the times when* (G.). More often, however, it is causal; e. g., da du, o Herr, dich einmal wieder nahſt, *since thou dost again draw near* (G.). Somewhat rare is the sense of *though;* e. g., da ſich mein Vater nicht leicht eine Ausgabe erlaubte, ſo war er dagegen nicht karg, *though my father did not like to spend money, still he was not niggardly* (G.); werd' ein Fürſtenknecht, da du ein Selbſtherr ſein kannſt, *become a vassal, where (though) you may be a sovereign* (S.).

c. Damit denotes purpose, not result, and is usually followed by the subjunctive; e. g., das ſag' ich euch, damit ihr's wiſſet, *I tell you this that*

you may know it (S.). Auf daß, = *in order that*, is common in early modern Ger., but is now archaic ; e. g., ehre Vater und Mutter, auf daß es dir wohl gehe, *honor thy father and mother in order that*, etc. (Lu.).

d. Daß may denote purpose or result ; e. g., alle Blüten müſſen vergehen, daß Früchte beglücken, *blossoms must fade that fruits may bless* (G.). But for this daß modern prose prefers damit. Denoting result daß is apt to be preceded by ſo, auf ſolche Weiſe, dergeſtalt ; e. g., er ſpricht ſo leiſe, daß man nicht verſteht, *he speaks so low that one does not understand.* After zu . . . als, in result-clauses, the subjunctive is usual ; e. g., er ſpricht zu leiſe, als daß man ihn verſtehen könnte, *he speaks too low for one to be able to understand him.* — Most often daß introduces a substantive or adjective clause ; e. g., ich glaube, daß er kommen wird, *I believe that he will come ;* meine Behauptung, daß es falſch iſt, *my assertion that it is false.* The subjunctive in an object-clause is due to the nature of the thought (§ 360), not to any governing power of daß ; e. g., wer dachte, daß die Sache ſo ſtünde ? *who thought that the affair stood thus ?* er meinte, daß es zu ſpät ſei, *he thought that it was too late.* — After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., daß may be omitted, the order becoming normal ; e. g., ich glaube, er wird kommen, *I believe he will come* (instead of daß er kommen wird) ; er ſagte, es wäre alles vorüber, *he said that all was over.* — A clause with daß may define a noun of time ; e. g., es ſind drei Jahre, daß ich hier wohne, *it is three years that I have been living here ;* in der Zeit, daß ich bei ihm war, *in the time that I was with him.* — A daß-clause may depend on the preposition außer or ohne ; e. g., er gleicht ſeinem Bruder, außer daß er blaue Augen hat, *except that he has blue eyes ;* er kam niemals, ohne daß er ein Geſchenk brachte, *without bringing a present.* — Notice finally the idiom : daß ich nicht wüßte, *not that I know of.*

e. Indem denotes contemporaneousness, often with the subaudition of cause. Usually it is best translated by a verbal in *ing*, or else by a participial construction ; e. g., ‚fürchte dich nicht,' ſagte Wilhelm, indem er auf ſie losging, '*do not be afraid,' said Wilhelm, advancing toward her* (G.) ; indem er den Plan zu früh verriet, verdarb er die ganze Sache, *by betraying the plan too soon, he ruined the whole cause.*

f. Je + adv. or adj. introduces 'proportional' clauses, and is usually followed by (um) deſto, less often by je, with inversion ; e. g., je weniger eine Hand verrichtet, deſto zarter iſt ihr Gefühl, *the less a hand does, the more delicate is its feeling* ('the hand of little employment hath the daintier sense,' *Hamlet*) ; je mehr ihr lernt, je mehr vergeßt ihr, *the more you learn the more you forget* (L.).

g. Obgleich, obſchon, obwohl often undergo tmesis ; e. g., ob ſich gleich auf Deutſch nichts reimet, *though nothing rhymes with 'deutsch'* (G.).

h. So + adv. appears in ſobald, *as soon as ;* ſofern, *as far as ;* ſolang, *as long as ;* ſoviel, ſoweit, *as far as.* These words are sometimes, but

not now usually, followed by als; e. g., ſolang' er auf der Erde lebt, *as long as he lives on earth* (G.). A concessive ſo, = *however*, may precede almost any adj. or adv., with dependent order; e. g., erfüll' dein Herz davon, ſo groß es iſt, *fill thy heart with it, great as it is.* But usually there is a following auch; e. g., ſo ſchnell er auch lief, *however fast he ran.*

i. Wann is now always interrogative, direct or indirect; e. g., wann kommt er? *when is he coming?* ich weiß nicht, wann er kommt.

j. Weil is now usually causal, as in er iſt dir neidiſch, weil du glücklich wohnſt, *he is envious of you because you live happily* (S.). But in the classics, and even now in poetry, it is often found in its earlier temporal sense of *while;* e. g., freut euch, weil der Frühling währet, *rejoice while spring lasts* (Voss).

k. Wenn may have conditional or purely temporal meaning. The pret. after the temporal wenn implies repeated or customary action; e. g., an euch nur dacht' ich, wenn ich ſann und ſchrieb, *I thought only of you when(ever) I mused and wrote* (G.). Als ich ſann und ſchrieb would refer to one occasion. Wenn represents Eng. *when* before a pres. or a fut. tense; e. g., wir kommen wieder, wenn der Kuckuck ruft, *when the cuckoo calls.* The conditional wenn may be followed by any tense.

l. Wie as temporal conjunction denotes immediate sequence; e. g., und wie er erwachet, in ſeliger Luſt, *as he awakens, on awakening;* wie er das hörte, ging er fort, *on hearing that.* It thus differs from als and indem, which imply contemporaneousness. More often wie denotes manner, = *how* or *as;* e. g., ich weiß nicht, wie er lebt, *I know not how he lives;* wir ſprachen vom Seemann, und wie er lebt, *of the sailor and his way of living;* es iſt, wie ich dir ſagte, *it is as I told you.* A clause with wie may define a noun of manner; e. g., die Art, wie er lebt, *his way of living.* On the very common, but faulty use of wie for als in comparisons (ich bin älter wie du, ich bin nicht ſo alt wie du) see above under als.

m. Observe that wann, wie, wo and its compounds may be used as direct interrogatives, with the order as in Eng.; it is only when used indirectly in dependent sentences that they require the dependent order; e. g., wo iſt er? wann wird er kommen? *where is he? when will he come?* ich weiß nicht, wann er kommen wird, *I do not know when he will come.* The prepositional compounds of wo, worauf, woran, etc., usually have relative force, but some of them serve also as indirect interrogatives; e. g., die Frage, wovon die Rede iſt, *the question under discussion;* ich weiß nicht, wovon die Rede iſt, *I do not know what the question under discussion is.* The particle auch (less often nur or nimmer) placed after an indirect wann, wie or wo, gives the force of Eng. *ever;* e. g., ein heiliger Wille lebt, wie auch der menſchliche wanke, *a holy will lives, however the human will may waver* (S.); wie das auch ſein mag, *however that may be.*

THE INTERJECTION.

382. Nature of the Interjection. The interjection does not form an integral part of the sentence, but is a sentence by itself, i. e., an independent expression of feeling or will.

1. Some interjections are used only as such, either alone or in connection with some other part of speech ; e. g., ach ! *ah!* ach, Gott ! *ah, God! dear me!* pſt ! *hush!* These may be called the interjections proper.

2. Others are nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, phrases ; e. g.. heil ! *hail!* herrlich ! *splendid!* nun ! *well!* ſieh ! *look!* Gottlob ! *God be praised!* Here belong all sorts of oaths, adjurations and by-words.

3. Others are calls to animals, imitations of sounds, refrains used in singing ; e. g., hiſt ! *haw!* wau ! *bow-wow!* miau ! *mew!* piff ! *bang!* juchheiſa ! heiſa ! he ! *hurrah! heigho! hoho!*

4. While the interjection has no proper case-governing power and is usually followed by the nom., or by a prepositional phrase, it may be associated with a gen., dat. or acc. See §§ 255, 261, 1, *a*, 267, 3.

383. List of Interjections.

The interjections and interjectional phrases that fall under 2 and 3 in the above classification are too numerous to mention. The following list comprises only those of class 1, and of these only some of the more important. Such are :

ach ! *ah! O! alas!*	hallo ! *hello!*	hui ! *whiz!*
ah ! *ah!*	he ! *o!*	hurra ! *hurrah!*
aha ! *aha!*	heda ! *ho there!*	juchhe ! *heigho!*
au ! *O!*	heiſa ! *heigho!*	na ! *indeed! well now!*
bah ! *bah!*	hem ! hm ! *hm!*	o ! oh ! *O! oh!*
eh ! *eh!*	ho ! *ho!*	oho ! *oho!*
ei ! *oho!*	hoho ! *hoho!*	pfui ! *pooh! fie!*
ha ! *ha!*	holla ! *hello!*	pſt ! *pst! hush!*
haha ! *haha!*	hu ! *whew!*	uff ! *ugh!*

1. It is usual to classify interjections according to the nature of the feeling they denote, but with some of the most common the meaning depends largely on the connection, the tone in which they are uttered, the accompanying gesture, etc. Thus ach most often expresses pain or regret, but it may denote surprise, or even delight. — O, oh, are often simply particles of address. — Bah, pfui, uff, express annoyance or disgust. — He, heda, ho, hallo, are used in attracting attention. — Na is deprecatory, a sort of verbal shrug of the shoulders.

WORD-FORMATION.

384. Of Derivation in General. Words are derived from roots, usually with the aid of prefixes and suffixes. Thus, looking at the noun Geburt, *birth*, we find that the prefix ge and the suffix t form a part of numerous other nouns, as well as this one, and have a meaning of their own. They are therefore called formative elements. The root is what remains when all such elements have been removed.

1. From a modern point of view it would seem, then, that the root of Geburt is the syllable *bur*. But Geburt comes from gebären, earlier geberen, which, with its pret. gebar, and its pple. geboren, shows us the *same* root in the forms ber, bar, bor. This internal vowel-change, called, as we have seen, 'ablaut,' plays an important part in derivation.

2. The primary factors in derivation are, then, (1) the radical syllable with its possibilities of ablaut, (2) prefixes, and (3) suffixes. A root must always be present, though its exact meaning is not always determinable. Of the formative elements, suffixes play a much more important part than prefixes. Some suffixes, e. g., heit in Freiheit, and tum in Irrtum, were once independent words; in the case of others no such origin is traceable. A suffix may cause umlaut, which thus enters as a secondary factor into derivation; e. g., Frau, Fräulein.

3. Finally, two or more words, each formed in the manner above described, may combine into a compound; e. g., Geburtstag, *birth-day*.

4. *Remark.* The etymology of German words can not be thoroughly studied without a knowledge of the older Germanic dialects and of comparative Indo-European Philology (Appendix II). The following treatment of derivation, which does not presuppose such knowledge, must of necessity, therefore, be somewhat superficial.

THE DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

385. Nouns of Obscure Derivation. There are many nouns the derivation of which is obscure, either because there is no related verb which shows the root, or because

the suffix, if there is one, has no definable meaning which enables us to associate the word with others of like ending. Such are, e. g., Tag, *day;* Feder, *feather;* Haus, *house;* Buſen, *bosom;* Waſſer, *water.*

1. Such nouns must count, for the student of modern German, as primitive words, though many of them can be explained by the help of comparative philology. Thus Tag probably comes from a root meaning *to burn:* the 'day' was the *warm* part of the four-and-twenty hours. Again Feder comes from a root meaning *to fly,* plus an instrumental suffix: it meant *means of flying.* But the syllable Feb is meaningless in modern German, as is also the suffix er applied to it, though there are other words in abundance in which er has a definable meaning; e. g., Halter, *holder,* from the root of halten, *hold.* Hence we may call Feder a primitive word, and Halter a derivative, though both are in reality derivatives.

386. Derivation by Ablaut. Many nouns are derived from strong verbal roots without the aid of a suffix. The root may appear as in the infinitive of the verb, or in some other ablaut-variation; e. g., Fall, *fall,* from fallen; Biß, *bite,* from beißen; Schuß, *shot,* from ſchießen; Zoll, *toll,* from zählen. The great mass of such derivatives are masculine (cf. § 234, 1, *a*).

387. Derivation by Suffix. The great majority of nouns are formed by the aid of a suffix. Some of the suffixes are applied to a verbal root (usually, but not always, in the form shown by the infinitive), others to a verbal stem or to the stem of a noun or adjective. The following alphabetical list contains those which are most important, i. e., those which are now felt, more or less distinctly, as suffixes, and form derivatives that have a definite and easily discernible relation to the primitive base. Those suffixes that contain a front vowel (e, i) are apt to cause umlaut, but there are many exceptions.

1. **chen** and **lein,** the former cognate with *kin* in *lambkin,* are applied to nouns to form diminutives; e. g., Bäumchen, *little tree;* Röslein, *little rose.* Often there is an implication of familiarity or endearment; e. g., Mütterchen, *little mother, mama;* Süschen, *Susie.* Both suffixes cause umlaut. Of the two the North German chen is the living suffix

and prevails in the language of every-day life, while the South German lein is more literary; cf. Röschen and Röslein, Blümchen and Blümlein. In a few cases there is a stereotyped difference of meaning; e. g., Fräulein, *young lady, Miss*, but Fräuchen, *little wife*.

2. **De**, attached to verbal roots, denotes the thing done, or a concrete manifestation of the action; e. g., Bürde, *burden*, from bären, *bear*; Freude, *joy*, from freuen, *rejoice*; Gemälde, *painting*, from malen, *paint*; Gelübde, *vow*, from geloben, *vow*; Zierde, *ornament*, from zieren, *adorn*.

3. **E** is a very common suffix: (1) Attached to verbal roots it forms a multitude of feminines, which denote the action or its concrete effect, less often that which performs the action; e. g., Lüge, *falsehood*, from lügen, *lie*; Lage, *situation*, from liegen, *lie*; Gabe, *gift*, from geben; Sprache, *language*, from sprechen; Fliege, *fly*, from fliegen; Schlange, *serpent*, from schlingen, *wind*. A few masculines denote persons; e. g., Bote, *messenger*, from bieten, *bid*. (2) Attached to adjectives (always with umlaut, if possible), it forms abstracts; e. g., Größe, *greatness*, from groß; Länge, *length*, from lang; Kürze, *brevity*, from kurz.

4. **Ei', erei'.** Ei is of foreign origin, Lat. *ia*, Fr. *ie*, and is always accented. It is appended both to nominal and to verbal stems to form nouns of action and of place; e. g., Heuchelei, *hypocrisy*, from heucheln, *feign*; Abtei, *abbey*, from Abt, *abbot*. As it was often used after er, the suffix came to be felt as erei, and the latter is now much more common than the simple ei. Erei forms nouns of action, as Malerei, *painting*, from malen; of place, as Bäckerei, *bakery*, from backen; of condition, as Sklaverei, *slavery*, from Sklave; rarely also collectives, as Reiterei, *cavalry*, from Reiter. It often implies contempt, as in Spielerei, Kinderei, *child's play*; Juristerei, *pettifoggery*, from Jurist.

5. **El**, applied to verbal roots, denotes the instrument; e. g., Zügel, *rein*, from ziehen, *draw*; Klingel, *bell*, from klingen, *ring*; Hebel, *lever*, from heben, *lift*. In South-German dialect el forms diminutives and familiar nick-names; e. g., Mädel, *girl*, instead of Mädchen; Seppel, nick-name of Joseph.

6. **Er, ler, ner.** Er, applied to verbal roots denotes the agent; e. g., Seher, *seer*, from sehen; Jäger, *hunter*, from jagen. It may also denote the instrument; e. g., Schläger, *sword*, from schlagen; Bohrer, *gimlet*, from bohren. Attached to noun-stems it denotes a resident or a functionary; e. g., Bürger, *citizen*, from Burg, *castle*; Berliner, *resident of Berlin*; Vogler, *fowler*, from Vogel; Gärtner, *gardener*, from Garten. The use of the suffix er after nouns in el and en (as in the last two examples) gave rise to the two new suffixes ler and ner, which were then appended to nouns not ending in el or en; as Künstler, *artist*, from Kunst, *art*; Kellner, *waiter*, from Keller, *cellar*.

7. **Heit, keit.** Heit, cognate with *hood*, in *falsehood*, and *head* in the archaic *drowsihead*, = *drowsiness*, was once an independent word, meaning *manner, person.* It forms abstracts from adjectives, and collectives from nouns; e. g., Freiheit, *freedom*, from frei; Schönheit, *beauty*, from ſchön; Menſchheit, *mankind*, from Menſch; Chriſtenheit, *Christendom*, from Chriſt. As appended to adjectives in ig, it took, by phonetic dissimilation, the form keit; e. g., Seligheit, *blessedness*, from ſelig, became Seligkeit. The new suffix keit was then appended regularly to adjectives in ig, bar and ſam; e. g., Freudigkeit, *joyfulness*, from freudig; Fruchtbarkeit, *fruitfulness*, from fruchtbar; Langſamkeit, *slowness*, from langſam.

8. **Icht** forms from verbal roots a few nouns that denote the collective result of the action; e. g., Kehricht, *sweepings*, from kehren, *sweep;* Spülicht, *washings*, from ſpülen.

9. **In,** cognate with *en* in *vixen*, earlier *fyxen*, i. e., *she-fox*, forms feminines that correspond to masculines; e. g., Löwin, *lioness;* Königin, *queen;* Fürſtin, *princess.*

10. **Ling,** cognate with *ling*, in *sapling, youngling*, is attached to adjectives, to denote one who possesses or exemplifies the quality; e. g., Fremdling, *stranger*, from fremd; Jüngling, *young man*, from jung; Erſtling, *firstling.* Applied to nouns it denotes connection, origin; e. g., Höfling, *courtier*, from Hof; Sprößling, *scion*, from Sproß. Applied to verbal roots it denotes the agent or the object; e. g., Abkömmling, *descendant*, from abkommen; Findling, *foundling*, from finden. In several words its meaning is uncertain and not distinctly felt; e. g., Sperling, *sparrow* (cf. Eng. *starling*); Frühling, *Spring*, from früh; Schmetterling, *butterfly.*

11. **Nis,** earlier spelling niß, nuß, cognate with *ness* in *goodness*, is applied to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality; e. g., Wildnis, *wilderness*, from wild; Fäulnis, *rottenness*, from faul. Attached to verbal roots it denotes the action, its concrete effect, or the place where it is performed; e. g., Kenntnis, *the act of knowing*, or *knowledge*, from kennen; Betrübnis, *affliction*, from betrüben; Gefängnis, *prison*, from fangen.

12. **Sal,** attached to verbal roots, denotes the thing done or a concrete manifestation of the action; e. g., Schickſal, *fate*, from ſchicken, *send;* Trübſal, *trouble*, from trüben; Labſal, *refreshment*, from laben. Sel, with weaker accent, is another form of the same suffix; e. g., Rätſel, *riddle*, from raten, *guess;* Überbleibſel, *remnant*, from überbleiben.

13. **Schaft,** cognate with *ship* in *friendship*, was once an independent word meaning *character, being.* It is attached to nouns to form abstracts and collectives; e. g., Feindſchaft, *enmity*, from Feind; Mann-

ſchaft, *crew*, from Mann; Herrſchaft, *dominion*, from Herr; Botſchaft, *message*, from Bote.

14. **Tum**, cognate with *dom* in *kingdom*, was once an independent word meaning *status*, *condition*. It is applied to nouns to denote estate, province, sphere, and to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality; e. g., Bürgertum, *citizenship*, from Bürger; Fürſtentum, *principality*, from Fürſt; Altertum, *antiquity*, from Alter; Eigentum, *property*, from eigen, *own*; Heiligtum, *sanctuary*, *halidom*, from heilig. Observe that it does not form collectives as in Eng.; e. g., Chriſtentum, *Christianity*; Chriſtenheit, *Christendom*. It is rarely attached to verbal roots, as in Wachstum, *growth*, from wachſen.

15. **Ung**, cognate with *ing* in *ending*, forms from verbal roots nouns that denote the action or its effect; e. g., Warnung, *warning*, from warnen; Faſſung, *form*, *version*, from faſſen; Meinung, *opinion*, from meinen. It is rarely attached to adjectives, as in Feſtung, *fortress*, from feſt.

388. Derivation by Prefix. Not a few nouns are formed with the aid of a prefix. The word 'prefix,' as here employed, does not include prepositions, adverbs and other parts of speech, that have an independent existence. Such cases as, e. g., Anteil, *share*, and Fürwort, *pronoun*, come under the head of composition. It is also to be observed that many nouns which seem to come from a noun preceded by an inseparable prefix (be, ent, er, ge, ver, zer) are in reality from verbs; thus Beſtand, *constitution*, is not from be + Stand, but from beſtehen; Verfall, *decay*, not from ver + Fall, but from verfallen. The true prefixes, as thus limited, are few in number and, excepting ge, all accented. The more important of them are as follows:

1. **After**, identical with Eng. *after*, forms a few nouns denoting something secondary, spurious, false; e. g., Afterbild, *weak imitation*, from Bild; Aftergott, *false god*, from Gott; Afterrede, *calumny*, from Rede; Afterwelt, *posterity*, from Welt.

2. **Ant**, the same as the unaccented ent, emp, in verbal compounds, appears in Antlitz, *face*, and Antwort, *answer*. Its original meaning is *over against*.

3. **Erz**, Eng. *arch*, from Gk. ἀρχ-, means *chief*, *foremost*; e. g., Erzengel, *archangel*; Erzböſewicht, *arch-villain*; Erzdummkopf, *fool of fools*.

4. **Ge**, originally meaning *with*, is prefixed to noun-stems to form collectives, and nouns denoting joint action, association; e. g., Gewölk,

mass of clouds, from Wolke, *cloud*; Gewäſſer, *waters*, from Waſſer; Gefährte, *comrade, fellow-traveler*, from Fahrt, *journey*; Geſell(e), *companion* (originally *room-mate*, from Saal, *room*); Geſpiele, *playmate*, from Spiel. Prefixed to verbal roots, it forms nouns which denote the action itself or its concrete effect; e. g., Gebrüll, *roaring*, from brüllen; Gerede, *talk*, from reden; Geſchenk, *present*, from ſchenken; Gebäude, *building*, from bauen. Both classes of derivatives are apt to have the suffix e, and the great mass of them are neuter.

5. **Miß**, cognate with Eng. *mis* in *mistake*, means *wrong, amiss*; e. g., Mißbrauch, *misuse, abuse*, from Brauch, *use*; Mißgeburt, *monstrosity*, from Geburt; Mißmut, *ill-humor*, from Mut.

6. **Un**, cognate with *un* in *untrue*, is a negative prefix which besides being prefixed to adjectives, as in Eng., is freely used before nouns to reverse their meaning, or to denote something prodigious; e. g., Unmenſch, *monster*, from Menſch; Unding, *absurdity, chimera*, from Ding; Unzahl, *countless number*, from Zahl; Unmaſſe, *prodigious mass*, from Maſſe.

7. **Ur**, cognate with *or* in *ordeal*, ultimately also with *out*, means *primitive, original, very ancient*; e. g., Urmenſch, *primeval man*; Urſprache, *original language*; Urquell, *original source*; Urahnherr, *remote ancestor*; Urgroßmutter, *great-great-grandmother*.

THE DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

389. Primitive Adjectives. A large number of adjectives, the most of them monosyllabic, must count as primitive words; e. g., alt, *old*; gut, *good*; reich, *rich*; böſe, *base*; eitel, *vain*.

1. Speaking generally the monosyllabic adjectives are really derived, like the nouns, from verbal roots, and had originally a formative suffix; thus alt goes back to an ideal form *al-dá*, in which *da* is a participial suffix and *al* a root meaning *to grow* (cognate with Lat. *al-o, nourish*); so that alt meant originally *grown up*. But there is no root *al* in German, and t is not felt as a suffix; hence the word is to be regarded as primitive. There are, however, a few monosyllabic adjectives which are formed by ablaut from verbal roots that do exist in modern German; e. g., brach, *fallow*, from brechen, *break*; glatt, *smooth*, from gleiten, *slip*.

2. In many cases the old formative suffix has left traces of itself in the umlaut of the root-vowel, or in a final e, or both. Thus ſchön, *beautiful*, was once *sconi*, and the *i* caused umlaut before it disappeared. So böſe is from an older *bosi*, the suffix *i* remaining as e.

390. Adjectival Suffixes. Most adjectives are formed by means of a suffix. The term 'suffix' does not embrace independent words which appear as the final element of a compound and preserve their own proper meaning; e. g., voll, *full*, in ſchmerzvoll, *painful;* reich in gedankenreich, *rich in thought, thoughtful.* On the other hand it may properly include endings such as -artig, -mäßig, -ſelig, which, as suffixes, are not identical with the adjectives artig, mäßig, ſelig. The most important of the adjective-forming suffixes are, then, as follows:

1. **Artig,** a derivative of Art, *kind, manner,* forms adjectives of manner from nouns and adjectives; e. g., blitzartig, *lightning-like,* from Blitz; hundartig, *dog-like,* from Hund; großartig, *grand,* from groß; fremdartig, *strange,* from fremd. Notice also derartig, *of that kind,* from the adverbial gen. der Art.

2. **Bar,** from the root of gebären, *bear,* is attached to verbal roots, sometimes also to nouns, and very rarely to adjectives. Its Eng. equivalent is generally, though with some exceptions, an adjective in *able, ible;* e. g., dienſtbar, *serviceable,* from Dienſt; ſchiffbar, *navigable,* from Schiff; mannbar, *marriageable,* from Mann; furchtbar, *fearful, terrible,* from Furcht; denkbar, *thinkable,* from denken; haltbar, *tenable,* from halten; lesbar, *readable, legible,* from leſen; offenbar, *evident,* from offen.

3. **En, ern.** En, cognate with *en* in *wooden,* forms adjectives of material from nouns; e. g., golden, *golden;* ledern, *leathern,* from Leder. Its use after nouns in er, as in ledern, gave rise to the new suffix ern, which is more common than the original en; e. g., bleiern, *leaden,* from Blei; hölzern, *wooden,* from Holz; ſtählern, *of steel,* from Stahl.

4. **Er** forms indeclinable adjectives from names of cities; e. g., der Kölner Dom, *the Cologne Cathedral.* These adjectives are stereotyped genitives plural; but since they are no longer felt as genitives one should not say, ein Verein Leipziger Lehrer for *an association of Leipzig teachers,* but ein Verein von Leipziger Lehrern (§ 247, 2).

5. **Erlei** forms, from numerals, indeclinable adjectives denoting the *number of kinds;* e. g., einerlei, *of one kind;* mancherlei, *of many kinds.* In their origin these words are adverbial genitives of an old fem. noun Leie, meaning *manner, way.*

6. **Fach** forms multiplicative adjectives from numerals. It corresponds to Eng. *fold;* e. g., dreifach, *threefold;* vielfach, *manifold.*

7. **Faltig, fältig,** a derivative of Falt, *fold*, forms multiplicative adjectives from numerals; e. g., dreifaltig, or dreifältig, *threefold, triple;* mannigfaltig (or -fältig), *manifold.*

8. **Haft,** in its origin a pple. of haben, meaning *had, possessed, found*, is attached to nouns, rarely to verbal roots, and still more rarely to adjectives. It means *partaking of the nature of;* e. g., knabenhaft, *boyish*, from Knabe; ſchalkhaft, *roguish*, from Schalk; fehlerhaft, *erroneous*, from Fehler; ſpaßhaft, *jocose*, from Spaß; boshaft, *malicious*, from böſe (earlier *bos-i*); krankhaft, *sick'y, morbid*, from krank; ſeßhaft, wohnhaft, *resident*, from ſitzen and wohnen.

9. **Icht** forms from nouns a few adjectives of quality; e. g., thöricht, *foolish*, from Thor; nebelicht, *cloudy*, from Nebel; ölicht, *oily*, from Öl.

10. **Ig,** cognate with *y* in *milky*, is one of the commonest of suffixes, being attached to nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and sometimes to verbal roots. Its force is that of the Eng. suffixes *y, ful, ous;* e. g., blutig, *bloody*, from Blut; freudig, *joyful*, from Freude; einig, *united*, from ein; wahrhaftig, *true*, from wahrhaft; heutig, *of to-day*, from heute; damalig, *of that time*, from damals; gültig, *valid*, from gelten.

11. **Iſch,** is cognate with *ish* in *boyish*, and is used in much the same way; e. g., kindiſch, *childish* (with depreciatory meaning as compared with kindlich, *childlike*); weibiſch, *womanish* (but weiblich, *womanly, feminine*). It is the preferred suffix to form adjectives from proper names and foreign words; e. g., römiſch, *Roman* (as well as *Romish*); amerikaniſch, *American;* bayeriſch, *Bavarian;* logiſch, *logical;* philoſophiſch, *philosophical.* A proper adjective in iſch often takes the place of a limiting gen.; e. g., die Leſſing'ſche Theorie, *the theory of Lessing.*

12. **Lich,** cognate with *ly* in *friendly*, is the most common of the adjectival suffixes. Attached to nouns it corresponds in the main to Eng. *ly, ous, ful;* e. g., göttlich, *god'y, divine*, from Gott; täglich, *daily*, from Tag; gefährlich, *dangerous*, from Gefahr; ſchädlich, *harmful*, from Schade. After verbal roots its meaning is similar to that of bar; e. g., leidlich, *tolerable*, from leiden; thu(n)lich, *feasible*, from thun; möglich, *possible*, from mögen. Derivatives in lich and bar are sometimes formed from the same root with hardly perceptible difference of meaning; e. g., greifbar and greiflich, *that can be grasped*, from greifen. More often there is a difference of meaning, bar having a more distinctly passive force; e. g., ausführbar, *practicable;* ausführlich, *complete;* undenkbar, *unthinkable*, undenklich, *immemorial.* Attached to adjectives lich usually has weakening force; e. g., gütlich, *kindly*, from gut; reinlich, *cleanly*, from rein; ſüßlich, *sweetish*, from ſüß. Lich forms a few derivatives that are used only as adverbs (e. g., freilich), § 373, 1), but it has never become, like Eng. *ly*, a true adverbial suffix. Adjectives

in iglich, e. g., wonniglich, *rapturous*, from Wonne, wonnig, belong now to stately diction and are becoming quaint.

13. **Los** is cognate with *less* in *endless* and is used in much the same way; e. g., grundlos, *groundless;* freudlos, *joyless*. As independent word it means *free from, rid of*.

14. **Mäßig,** a derivative of Maß, *manner*, forms adjectives of manner from nouns; e. g., regelmäßig, *regular*, from Regel, *rule;* volksmäßig, *popular*, from Volk.

15. **Sam,** cognate with *some* in *lonesome*, is attached to nouns, adjectives and verbal roots. After nouns it has the force of Eng. *-some;* e. g., furchtsam, *fearsome, timid* (with active meaning in contrast with furchtbar, *fearful*), from Furcht; mühsam, *toilsome*, from Mühe; heilsam, *wholesome*, from Heil. To adjectives it gives a modified meaning which is not definable in general terms; e. g., langsam, *slow*, from lang, *long;* einsam, *solitary, lonesome*, from ein, *one;* wachsam, *vigilant*, from wach, *awake*. Attached to verbal roots it forms verbals with passive, less often with active, meaning; e. g., lenksam, *tractable*, from lenken; biegsam, *flexible*, from biegen; schweigsam, *silent*, from schweigen; aufmerksam, *attentive*, from aufmerken.

16. **Selig,** derived from the noun-suffix sal in such words as trübselig, *sad*, from Trübsal, forms adjectives of manner, quality, character; e. g., saumselig, *dilatory*, from Saumsal; mühselig, *toilsome*, from Mühsal. In other cases the ending selig is the adjective selig, *happy*, e. g., gottselig, *godly, happy in God*. In glückselig, *happy*, from obsolete Glücksal, the independent selig is now felt.

391. Adjectival Prefixes. These are in general the same as the noun-forming prefixes mentioned in § 388. Thus:

1. **Erz,** always accented, forms absolute superlatives, mostly with a humorous tinge; e. g., erzfaul, = äußerst faul, *extremely lazy*.

2. **Ge,** besides forming several adjectives that must count as primitive words, is prefixed to adjectives and verbal roots with a force which is not now distinctly felt and can hardly be defined in general terms (cf. § 396, 4); e. g., genug, *enough;* genau, *exact;* gerecht, *righteous*, from recht; getreu, *faithful*, from treu; gescheit, *clever*, from scheiden; gemäß, *conformable*, from messen; genehm, *acceptable*, from nehmen.

3. **Un,** as negative prefix, is cognate with Eng. *un*, and is used in much the same way, except that its accent is variable. If the basic adjective is not derived from a verbal root, un usually has the chief stress; e. g., u'nruhig, *uneasy;* u'nrichtig, *incorrect;* u'nfruchtbar, *unfruitful*. Notice, however, such exceptions as unendlich, *infinite;*

ungeheu'er, *uncanny, prodigious.* The same principle holds if the basic adjective *is* derived from a verbal root, but is not a verbal in bar, lich, or ſam; e. g., u'nerhört, *unheard of;* u'nangenehm, *unpleasant;* u'nbequem, *uncomfortable.* Verbals in bar, lich and ſam generally accent the root syllable; e. g., unde'nkbar, *unthinkable;* unglau'blich, *incredible;* unbie'gſam, *inflexible.* But in some of this last class the accent is unsettled; e. g., u'nverzeihlich, or unverzei'hlich, *unpardonable.* Observe finally that un may form negatives to which there is no corresponding positive; e. g., unſā'glich, *unspeakable;* u'nverhofft, *unhoped for.*

4. **Ur**, always accented, has the same force as in nouns; e. g., uralt, *very ancient.*

THE DERIVATION OF VERBS.

392. Primitive Verbs. All verbs that are derived directly from a monosyllabic root, with no other suffix than the usual en of the infinitive, must count as primitive words. Such are all of the strong verbs and a large number of older weak verbs; e. g., haben, *have;* holen, *fetch;* reden, *talk.*

1. It is to be noted, however, that the modern en of the inf. represents several different suffixes of the older language. One of the most common of these was the syllable *ja*, which has caused umlaut in some stems that, under the above definition, would have to be regarded as primitive; e. g., hören, *hear*, goes back to an earlier **hōr-jan.*

393. Derivation by Umlaut. Many verbs are derived by umlaut of the root-vowel from verbal roots, nouns and adjectives. The umlaut is due to the old suffix *ja*, and is not always marked by the modern sign of umlaut. Thus we have:

1. A number of factitive verbs from strong roots, but with the root-vowel of the preterite, less often that of the infinitive; e. g., tränken, *make drink, water*, cognate with *drench*, from trinken; führen, *make go, lead*, from fahren; wenden, *make turn*, from winden; legen, *make lie, lay*, from liegen; ſetzen, *make sit, set*, from ſitzen; fällen, *make fall, fell*, from fallen.

a. In a few such factitives there is change of the final consonant; e. g., ätzen, *make eat, etch*, from eſſen; ſchnitzen, *carve*, from ſchneiden; beizen, *macerate*, from beißen, *bite;* ſchmücken, *adorn*, from ſchmiegen, *lie*

smooth. The same mode of formation appears in the weak verb **wecken**, *awake* (transitive), from wachen, *be awake*.

2. Numerous derivatives from nouns and adjectives, the umlaut being due to analogy, or to the fact that the basic word has it; e. g., fürchten, *fear*, from Furcht; küſſen, *kiss*, from Kuß; gründen, *found*, from Grund; bäumen, *rear*, from Baum; ſchwärzen, *blacken*, from ſchwarz; öffnen, *open*, from offen; grünen, *be green*, from grün.

394. Denominatives without Umlaut. A verb formed from a noun or adjective is called a 'denominative.' Many such of late origin are formed without umlaut, by simply adding en. They are mostly intransitive. Examples: hauſen, *dwell*, from Haus; wurzeln, *be rooted*, from Wurzel; landen, *land*, from Land; altern, *age*, from Alter; kranken, *be ill* (cf. kränken, *grieve*); erſtarken, *grow strong* (cf. ſtärken, *strengthen*).

395. Derivation by Suffix. The verbal suffixes are appended to the root, thus forming a new stem which then receives the n or en of the infinitive. The most important of them are as follows:

1. **Ch** forms a very few intensives; e. g., horchen, *hearken*, from hören; ſchnarchen, *snore*, from ſchnarren, *grunt*.

2. **El** forms iteratives, often with diminutive or derisive force, from verbs, nouns and adjectives; e. g., tänzeln, *caper*, from tanzen, *dance;* grübeln, *grub*, from graben, *dig;* lächeln, *smile*, from lachen, *laugh;* hüſteln, *cough slightly*, from huſten, *cough*; liebeln, *make love*, 'spoon,' from lieben; handeln, *act, trade*, from Hand; kränkeln, *be sickly*, from krank.

3. **Er** forms iteratives and intensives, often with causative force; e. g., plätſchern, *spatter*, from platſchen, *splash*; glimmern, *glimmer*, from glimmen, *shine;* zögern, *linger*, from ziehen, *draw;* ſtäubern or ſtöbern, *fly like dust*, from ſtauben. In several verbs of this formation the root is onomatopoetic and does not appear in any simpler form; e. g., flüſtern, *whisper;* räuſpern, *clear the throat*. Different is the ern of verbs derived from adjectives (perhaps comparatives) in er; e. g., ſäubern, *clean*, from ſauber; vergrößern, *enlarge*, from größer.

4. **Ier**, always accented, is of foreign origin, being derived from Fr. *ir, ier*, in such verbs as *partir, étudier*. In general the suffix is

attached only to foreign roots, as ſtudieren, *study;* regieren, *rule;* etablieren, *establish;* telegraphieren, *telegraph.* In a few cases, however, the base is German; e. g., buchſtabieren, *spell,* from Buchſtabe; ſtolzieren, *strut,* from ſtolz. Verbs in ieren are very numerous, an immense number of them having been coined unnecessarily. The present tendency, at least in dignified writing, is to discard those for which there are good native equivalents; e. g., to use gründen or einrichten for etablieren; ärgern for vexieren; ankündigen for annoncieren, etc.

5. **ig,** as verbal suffix, is simply the adjectival suffix ig applied at first in such cases as einigen, *unite,* from einig, or mäßigen, *moderate,* from mäßig, and then extended by analogy to stems that have no adjective in ig; e. g., reinigen, *cleanse,* from rein; benachrichtigen, *inform,* from Nachricht; endigen, *end,* from Ende.

6. **zen** is attached to several pronouns and onomatopoetic roots. The verbs in zen mean *to utter the word* or *sound* denoted by the base; e. g., duzen, *address with* du; ihrzen, *address with* ihr; ächzen, *groan, say* ach; ſeufzen, *sigh;* ſchluchzen, *sob.*

396. Derivation by Prefix. The unaccented inseparable prefixes are briefly treated in Part I, § 208. The account there given is amplified in the following paragraphs:

1. **Be,** i. e. bei weakened by loss of stress, is thought to have meant originally *by, around, on all sides,* as in beſchneiden, *cut around, trim, circumcise.* But this force is now rarely apparent. Usually when prefixed to a verbal root be has intensive or perfective force, denoting thoroughness of operation, or the completed effect of the action upon an object; e. g., befragen, *ply with questions, question,* from fragen, *ask;* beſehen, *look at carefully, inspect,* from ſehen; begraben, *bury,* from graben, *dig;* beſtehen, *withstand, insist,* from ſtehen; bedenken, *consider,* from denken. Often the difference between the simple verb and the compound is one of construction rather than of meaning; e. g., befolgen, *follow* (acc.), from folgen (dat.); beachten, *heed* (acc.), from achten, (gen., or acc. with auf).

a. Prefixed to nouns be forms verbs that mean *to provide with, bestow, convert into,* that which is denoted by the stem; e. g., bemänteln, *mantle,* from Mantel; beeinfluſſen, *influence,* from Einfluß; befreunden, *befriend,* from Freund. Some of these derivates have the suffix er, others ig; e. g., begeiſtern, *inspire,* from Geiſt; bevölkern, *people,* from Volk; beendigen, *terminate,* from Ende; beherzigen, *encourage,* from Herz. A few derivates in be, from nouns, occur only in the perf. pple.; e. g., benachbart, *neighboring,* from Nachbar; bejahrt, *along in years,* from Jahr.

b. Prefixed to adjectives be forms verbs that mean *to invest with*, or *put in operation*, the quality denoted by the stem; e. g., beſeligen, *make happy*, from ſelig; befähigen, *make capable, authorize*, from fähig. The stem may be a comparative; e. g., bereichern, *enrich*, from reicher; befördern, *further*, from vorder.

2. **Ent**, weak form of the accented ant, in Antwort, meant originally *over against, in return;* cf. entgelten, *re-pay, re-quite.* As prefixed to verbal roots it has now two clearly defined uses. First, it forms inceptives or inchoatives (denoting the beginning of an action); e. g., entblühen, *blossom, come to bloom*, from blühen; entzünden, *kindle*, from zünden; entſchlafen, *fall asleep*, from ſchlafen. Secondly, it denotes separation or removal, involving often a simple undoing or reversal of the action denoted by the root; e. g., entgehen, *escape*, from gehen; entnehmen, *take away, borrow*, from nehmen; entdecken, *discover*, from decken; entbinden, *unfasten*, from binden.

a. Prefixed to nouns it has privative force; e. g., enthaupten, *behead*, from Haupt; entblättern, *deprive of leaves*, from Blätter; entſchädigen, *indemnify*, from Schade. Before adjectives that contain already the idea of aloofness, separation, it has simply factitive force; e. g., entfremden, *alienate*, from fremd, *strange;* entblößen, *expose*, from bloß, *bare;* entäußern, *alienate*, from äußer, *outward.*

b. Aside from its inchoative and privative use, ent forms a number of verbs in which the force of the prefix is dimly felt, the compound differing but slightly perhaps from the simple verb; e. g., entbieten *offer*, from bieten, *offer;* entrichten, *set right, discharge* (a debt), from richten, *set right;* enthalten, *contain*, from halten, *hold.*

c. The three verbs empfangen (empfahen), empfehlen, and empfinden, contain the prefix in the form emp, utf having become mpf.

3. **Er**, the same as the accented ur in Urquell, ultimately also cognate with aus, *out*, meant originally *out, forth, to the end.* According as it looks to the beginning or the end it forms, from verbal roots: (1) Intransitive inchoatives; e. g., erſtehen, *stand forth, arise*, from ſtehen; erblühen, *blossom*, from blühen; erwachen, *awaken* (*come into the state of wakefulness* denoted by the durative wachen). (2) Transitive perfectives, denoting attainment of a goal; e. g., erdenken, *think out, excogitate*, from denken; erjagen, *hunt down, capture by hunting;* erfahren, erleben, *experience* (*reach by going*, or *living*); erbetteln, *get by begging.*

a. Prefixed to adjectives er forms inchoatives and factitives; e. g., erkranken, *fall ill;* erblinden, *become blind;* ermuntern, *make cheerful, cheer up;* erneuern, *renew;* ſich erdreiſten, *make one's self bold, presume.* Cf. also, from a noun-stem, ſich ermannen, *make one's self a man, nerve one's self.*

4. **Ge,** called by the Grimm Dictionary, which devotes some eighteen pages to it, 'the most wonderful word of our language,' meant originally *with, together.* It is possibly cognate with Lat. *cum-, con-, co-.* The radical meaning is still dimly felt in gerinnen, *run together, curdle,* and gefrieren, *cool together, freeze, con-geal.* (Cf. the nouns Gebrüder, *brothers,* belonging together in family or firm; Gefährte, *fellow-traveler,* etc.)

a. From the meaning *together* came that of fitness, appurtenance; e. g., gehören, *belong to;* gebühren, *befit;* geziemen, *beseem.*

b. Hence also the perfective force of ge (cf. Lat. *conficio* with *facio*); e. g., gelangen, *arrive at;* gereichen, *reach to, suffice;* geraten, *come into;* genesen, *get well;* gewinnen, *gain.* Out of this meaning grew its use as sign of the perf. pple. (§ 326, 1).

c. In a few verbs ge has durative force, denoting a permanent or persistent condition; e. g., sich gebaren, *behave one's self;* gedenken, *think of, intend;* geruhen, *please, be minded* (not from ruhen, but from an obsolete root cognate with *reck*); gebären, *bear, be in a state of bearing.*

d. In many cases, however, the force of ge is quite indeterminate. Indeed some of the explanations given above may be classed as doubtful, and in no case is the force of ge very distinctly felt even by educated speakers. In glauben, Glück, Gnade, it appears reduced to g.

5. **Ver,** cognate with *for* in *forgive,* at first meant *forth, away.* Like er it may look to the beginning or the end, and forms, accordingly: (1) Verbs that denote a final departure or removal from a previous status; e. g., vergehen, *pass away;* vertreiben, *drive out;* versenden, *send away, despatch;* vergießen, *pour out, spill.* (2) Perfectives that denote a final issue, closing up, using up, or wasting, as the result of the action; e. g., verblühen, *go out of bloom, fade;* verbluten, *bleed to death;* fressen, i. e., veressen, *eat up, devour;* verschwinden, *vanish;* vergraben, *bury;* versiegeln, *seal up;* verbrauchen, *use up;* verspielen, *waste in play.*

a. Out of the first meaning grows that which simply negatives the meaning of the basic verb (cf. *dis-pense* and *dis-unite*); e. g., verbieten, *forbid,* from bieten, *offer;* vergessen, *forget,* from obsolete gessen, *get;* versagen, *refuse.*

b. The final issue being often conceived as wrong, ver comes to mean *amiss, wrongly, in excess, too long;* e. g., verkehren, *pervert* (*give a wrong turn*), from kehren, *turn;* verkennen, *misjudge;* verführen, *lead astray, seduce;* versitzen, *sit too long;* verschlafen, *oversleep.*

c. Prefixed to a noun or adjective ver has factitive force; e. g., vergolden, *gild,* from Gold; vergöttern, *idolize,* from Gott; verewigen, *eternalize;* verlängern, *make longer,* from länger.

d. In some cases the perfective force of ver is so weakly felt that the compound hardly differs appreciably from the simple verb; e. g., vermeiden, *avoid,* and meiden; verleugnen, *deny,* and leugnen.

6. **Zer**, without cognate in modern English, means *asunder, apart, in pieces*; e. g., zerreißen, *tear in pieces*; zertreten, *crush by treading*; zerfallen, *fall to pieces*.

DERIVATION OF PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES.

397. The Pronouns. Of the derivation of pronouns there is little to be said. The personal pronouns, as also the simple possessives and demonstratives, are primitive words formed from pronominal roots. The amplified possessive-stems meinig, deinig, etc., have the adjectival suffix ig. Derſelbe is a compound of der and ſelb, cognate with *self*, which was sometimes uninflected in older German, but is now always inflected with the sense of English *same*.

1. Of the intensives ſelber, ſelbſt, the former is a stereotyped nom. sing. mas. of ſelb, while the latter comes from the gen. ſelbes with excrescent t, due perhaps to superlatives in ſt.

2. The relative pronouns are of secondary origin, der being the demonstrative der, and welch the interrogative welch, which is from the old interrogative stem *hva, hve*, with suffix lich = *like*. Welch is thus = *what-like*. The same suffix appears in ſolch = *so-like*. Wer and was are interrogatives, the r being the ending of the nom. sing. mas., and s, representing an older t (cf. Eng. *what*), that of the neu.

3. The indefinite pronouns are either primitive words (all, ander, beide, jed-, man, viel), compounds of such (jemand = je + man, niemand = nie + man, jedermann = jeder Mann), or they have adjectival suffixes already mentioned (einig, etlich, jeglich, wenig, manch), which is identical with mannig in mannigfalt).

398. The Particles have been pretty fully treated, with respect to their derivation, in preceding sections. Those adverbs which are simply uninflected adjectives have, of course, the derivation of adjectives. On the adverbial suffixes (e)s, ens, lings, wärts, weiſe, see §§ 373-4.

1. The prepositions and conjunctions are mainly of adverbial origin (§§ 376, 378, 1). For the derivation of those prepositions that are not primitive words consult the list in § 377. The conjunctions are either primitive words and compounds of such, or they have the derivation of adverbs. There are no principles of derivation applicable to them as a class. The same is true of the interjections.

WORD-COMBINATION.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

399. Of Noun-Composition in General. Two or more words combined into one and used substantively constitute a compound noun. The last element is nearly always a noun, has weak stress and determines the gender and declension of the whole. The first element may be any part of speech; it has strong stress and contains the dominant idea; e. g., Fra'chtzu'g, *freight-train;* Schne'llzu'g, *fast train;* Ei'senbahn-A'ngelegenheiten, *railway-affairs.*

1. A few compound nouns have an adjective, adverb or phrase as final element; e. g., Ja`hrhu'ndert, *century;* Le`bewo'hl, *farewell;* Nimmersatt, *never-full* (of a glutton or toper); Stelldichein, *rendez-vous;* Springinsfeld, *jump-afield, romp;* Garaus (from gar aus), *finishing-stroke.* But such compounds are comparatively rare and stand apart from the ordinary principles of composition.

400. Compounds of Noun and Noun are the most numerous class. They are formed in German much more freely than in English and hence can not always be translated by an equivalent compound. The important facts relating to them are as follows:

1. The first element may be the simple stem — the earliest mode of composition; e. g., Hausherr, *head of the house;* Buchhandlung, *book-store;* Vaterland, *native country.*

a. Observe, however, that many nouns now monosyllabic once had a stem-suffix. The final vowel of this suffix, becoming e, rendered the 'stem,' for the purposes of composition, in some cases like the plu., with which it later became confused; e. g., Tagebuch, *day-book, diary* (not *days-book,* though it looks so); Hundesteuer, *dog-tax;* Pferdefleisch, *horse-flesh.* In Bräutigam, *bridegroom,* i. e. *bride-man,* and Nachtigall, *nightingale,* i. e. *night-singer,* the old stem-suffix persists as i.

2. More often the first element is the genitive singular in (e)s, (e)n, or the genitive plural in er, en, e; e. g., Geistes-kraft, *intellectual power;* Knabenalter, *boyhood;* Frauenkloster, *nunnery;* Geisterreich, *spirit-realm;* Gänsestall, *goose-pen;*

Mäuſefraß, *damage done by the gnawing of mice.* Possibly the last two cases should come under 1, *a*, above.

a. The ending (e)s of mas. and neu. nouns, having come to be felt simply as a connecting link in compounds, was then applied also to feminines, which would not take it as separate words; e. g., Liebesbrief, *love-letter;* Geburtstag, *birth-day;* Wahrheitsliebe, *love of truth;* Feſtungsmauer, *fortress-wall.* It is thus now quite commonly applied to feminines in t, heit, keit, ſchaft, ung.

b. So, too, the ending en may be added to fem. nouns in the sing.; e. g., Ehrenwort, *word of honor;* Sonnenaufgang, *sunrise.* But these nouns once had en in the gen. regularly. In other cases the final e of a fem. in e is dropped; e. g., Schullehrer, *school-teacher.*

3. With respect to its meaning the first element may limit the second in almost any syntactical relation. Thus it may be equivalent to

a. An appositive; e. g., Gottmenſch, *God-man;* Sternblume, *star-flower.*

b. A genitive, which may be: (1) Partitive, as in Landesteil, *part of the land, district.* (2) Objective, as in Thronbeſteigung, *mounting of the throne;* Kaiſerwahl, *imperial election.* (3) Subjective, as in Blitzſchlag, *lightning-stroke.* (4) Of specification, as in Gefühlsmann, *man of feeling.* (5) Of connection, as in Fürſtenſohn, *son of a prince;* Meereswelle, *wave of the sea.*

c. An accusative, as in Schuhmacher, *shoemaker.*

d. A prepositional phrase denoting purpose, destination, material, source, instrument, place, manner, etc.; e. g., Waſſerglas, *glass for water;* Strohhut, *straw hat;* Freudethränen, *tears of joy;* Dampfſchiff, *steamboat;* Waſſerfahrt, *journey by water;* Fußſoldat, *foot-soldier.*

4. While in general no hyphen is needed between the parts of a compound, very long or unusual compounds should be bisected or trisected for the convenience of the eye; e. g., Feuerverſicherungs-Geſellſchaft, *fire-insurance company;* Perſonal-Veränderungs-Nachweiſung, *report on changes of personnel.* But there is no fixed rule on this subject.

401. Compounds of Adjective and Noun. The adjective is uninflected and the compound has a specific meaning, different from that which would be given by the inflected adjective in agreement with the noun; e. g., Jungfrau, *young (unmarried) woman;* Schwarzwald, *Black Forest;*

Altſtadt, *old-town, old part of town;* Sauerkraut, *sauerkraut;* Hellſeher, *clairvoyant.*

a. A few spurious compounds contain an inflected adjective in agreement; e. g., die La'ngewe'ile, *tedium*, gen.-dat. der Lange(n)weile; das Hohelied, *Song of Solomon*, des Hohenliedes, dem Hohenliede; der Hoheprieſter, *high-priest*, ein Hoherprieſter, des Hoheprieſters, zwei Hoheprieſter; der Geheim(e)rat, *privy counsellor*, ein Geheim(er)rat, des Geheim(en)rats, zwei Geheim(e)räte, die Geheim(en)räte.

1. Substantive adjectives take the form of a weak gen. plu.; e. g., Armenſteuer, *poor-tax;* Krankenhaus, *house for the sick, hospital;* Heiligenſchein, *saintly halo.*

2. Here belong also compounds of numeral and noun; e. g., Dreieck, *triangle;* Viergeſpann, *coach and four.*

402. Compounds of Verb and Noun. The first element is the simple root, sometimes with a connecting e, which represents an earlier stem-suffix; e. g., Schießpulver, *gunpowder*, from ſchießen, *shoot;* Nennwort, *noun*, from nennen; Hörſaal, *lecture-room*, from hören; Leſebuch, *reading-book*, from leſen; Heiſcheſatz, *postulate*, from heiſchen.

403. Compounds of Particle and Noun are quite numerous; e. g., Jawort, *assent*, from ja; Jetztzeit, *present time*, from jetzt; Fürwort, *pronoun;* Anhöhe, *acclivity;* Vorrecht, *prerogative;* Mißmut, *ill-humor;* Oberhaupt, *chieftain;* Unterabteilung, *subdivision.*

1. Numerous words which might seem at first sight to come under this head are not compounds of particle and noun, but derivatives of a compound verb; e. g., Ausgang, *exit*, from ausgehen; Wohlthat, *benefit*, from wohlthun; Überzieher, *overcoat*, from überziehen.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

404. Noun and Adjective. This is the most common type of compound adjective. The first element may be the stem or the genitive. It denotes various syntactical relations, which are easily understood. Examples: geiſtreich, *clever, spiritual;* geiſtesarm, *intellectually poor;* hoffnungsvoll, *hopeful;* menſchenleer, *devoid of men, uninhabited;* herzenskrank, *sick at heart;* arbeitsfähig, *capable of work.*

1. Many compounds of this type imply comparison, the first element being intensive; e. g., rieſengroß, *tall as a giant, gigantic;* blitzſchnell, *quick as lightning;* morgenſchön, *beautiful as the morning;* blutarm, *poor to the very blood, very poor* (but it may also mean *poor in blood*); pudelnaß, *soaking wet* (wet as a poodle emerging from the water).

2. The second element may be a participle (sometimes without ge), the first denoting the object, agent, instrument, or some adverbial relation; e. g., herzzerreißend, *heart-rending;* gottverlaſſen, *God-forsaken;* meerumgeben, *sea-girt;* herzgeliebt, *dearly beloved;* grundverkehrt, *radically perverted;* hausbacken, *home-baked, homely.*

a. Vergeſſen, *forgotten,* occurs with active force as if for vergeſſend; e. g., pflichtvergeſſen, ehrvergeſſen, *duty-forgetting, honor-forgetting.*

405. Adjective (or Adverb) and Adjective. Compounds of two adjectives, denoting a combination of the two qualities, are quite common. The first has the stem-form and is thus not formally distinguishable from an adverb; e. g., altdeutſch, *old German;* tollkühn, *foolhardy;* hellgrün, *bright green.*

a. Compounds of these adjectives also occur; e. g., althochdeutſch, *Old High German;* rotweißblau, *red white and blue.*

1. In such a compound as edel-ſtumm (G.), though we can hardly translate it except by *nobly mute,* edel is not a true adverb. Where the first element is an adverb the second is a participle; e. g., neubacken, *new-baked;* halbwachſen, *half-grown;* heißgeliebt, *fervently loved;* hochgeprieſen, *highly-praised.*

2. A noun with preceding adjectival modifier is converted into a compound adjective by means of the suffixes ig, iſch, lich, both elements taking the stem-form; e. g., einäugig, *one-eyed;* altmodiſch, *old-fashioned;* fremdſprachlich, *pertaining to foreign languages.* The usual suffix is ig.

406. Other Types of Compound Adjective occur, but are less common. Thus the first element may be:

1. The pronoun ſelbſt; e. g., ſelbſtverſtändlich, *obvious.*

2. A verbal root; e. g., lerneifrig, *eager to learn;* denkwürdig, *memorable.*

3. A particle; e.g., anſtellig, *handy;* abhold, *ungracious.*

OTHER COMPOUNDS.

407. The Composition of Verbs, the subject being bound up with that of conjugation, has been fully treated in preceding sections. For inseparable composition see §§ 206–8 and 396; for compounds of separable particle and verb, §§ 210–12 and 341; for compounds of adjective and verb, or noun and verb, §§ 213 and 342; for compounds of compounds, §§ 214 and 343.

408. Compound Particles generally accent the second element. A compound adverb may consist of (1) noun + adverb, as ſtromau'f, *upstream;* (2) adverb (preposition) + adverb, as ſofo'rt, *at once;* dahi'n, *thither;* umhe'r, *round about;* überau's, *altogether;* zuglei'ch, *at the same time;* (3) preposition + case, as überhau'pt, *in general;* vorha'nden, *at hand, extant;* inde'ſſen, *meanwhile.*

a. But the first element receives the accent if it is a pronoun or adjective, or if it is formed by means of one of the adverbial suffixes; e. g., de'mgemäß, *accordingly;* de'rgeſtalt, *in such way;* mei'netwegen, *on my account;* a'llerdings, *to be sure;* neu'erdings, *recently;* a'ndernfalls, *in the other event;* vo'rmittags, *forenoons;* zu'ſehends, *visibly;* te'ilweiſe, *partly.* Some other exceptions occur; e. g., au'ßerhalb, and other compounds of halb, i'rgendwo, de'nnoch. Ei'nmal means *once (and no more);* einma'l, *once (upon a time), just.*

1. Compound prepositions consist of preposition + case; e. g., anſta'tt, *instead;* info'lge, *in consequence of.* Binnen is a compound of bei and the adverb innen. For others consult the list in § 377.

2. Compound conjunctions consist of two adverbs or of conjunction + adverb; e. g., wiewohl, *although;* ſobald, *as soon as;* obgleich, obwohl, *although.* Dieweil, archaic for *because,* is the adverbial acc. die Weil(e), *the while.*

THE SENTENCE.

409. Since the analysis of the sentence and the nomenclature applicable thereto are the same for German as for English, a brief treatment of the subject in its general aspects will be sufficient.

410. The Simple Sentence consists of a single subject and a single verb, each perhaps with modifiers. The subject is always a noun or pronoun. The modifiers of the subject may be: article, attributive adjective, limiting

genitive, adnominal phrase, appositive (appositional predicate) and sometimes an adverb. The modifiers of the verb may be: object, predicate, adverb, dependent infinitive.

1. With respect to its form the simple sentence is either (1) assertive, as er hat das Ziel erreicht, *he has reached the goal;* (2) interrogative, as hat er das Ziel erreicht? (3) optative-imperative, as möge er das Ziel erreichen, *may he reach the goal,* or er behalte das Ziel im Auge, *let him keep the goal in view.* To these may be added (4) the exclamatory type, which, however, may have the dependent form; e. g., wie ſchnell er das Ziel erreicht hat! *how quickly he has reached the goal!* Cf. § 413, 1, *b.*

a. An initial verb with following doch renders an assertive sentence emphatic; e. g., iſt doch die Stadt wie gekehrt, *really the city is as if swept* (G.).

b. Any of the above forms may be negatived by the adverb nicht. As in English, double negation is now regarded as vulgar and ungrammatical, but it is common in the spoken language and is found abundantly in the best literature of all periods; e. g., es iſt als hätte niemand nichts zu treiben, *it is as if no one had anything to do* (G.); nur kein Geld hat ſie nicht, *only she hasn't any money* (L.). See the multitude of examples in the Grimm Dictionary, under kein.

c. A pleonastic nicht may occur (1) in exclamatory sentences, (2) in dependent clauses after a verb of denying, doubting, forbidding, hindering, or the like, and (3) after a comparative; e. g., from Gleim, wie munter war ſie nicht! *how lively she was!* i. e., what degree of liveliness did she *not* exhibit? wie ſchwer ſind nicht die Mittel zu erwerben! *how hard the means are to obtain* (G.)! ich will zwar nicht leugnen, daß an dieſen Büchern nicht manches zu verbeſſern ſein ſollte, *I will not deny that many things in these books might be capable of improvement* (L.); wer zweifelt, daß ihr nicht . . . die Großmut ſelber ſeid? *who doubts that you are magnanimity itself* (L.)? das iſt ſogar unendlich wahrer als ihr es ſelbſt nicht empfindet, *that is indeed infinitely more true than you yourself feel* (G.). This last usage is due to French influence and has now gone out of vogue.

411. The Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences co-ordinately connected; e. g., die Kunſt iſt lang und kurz iſt unſer Leben, *art ist long and our life is short* (G.).

a. A sentence consisting of two connected subjects with one verb, or of two verbs with one subject, may be classed as 'partly compound.'

1. The conjunctions that unite the members of a compound sentence are the general connectives (§ 379) and the adverbial conjunctions (§ 380).

412. The Complex Sentence consists of two sentences, one of which is subordinate to some word in the other; e. g., ich ſehe nicht, warum du fragſt, *I do not see why you ask.* The important characteristic of the dependent clause is the final position of the verb.

1. A clause may be dependent in fact without being so in form; e. g., geſchrieben ſteht: im Anfang war das Wort, *it is written: in the beginning was the Word.*

2. Every dependent clause performs the function of a substantive, an adjective, or an adverb. We have to do, therefore, with three kinds of

DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

413. Substantive Clauses are introduced by daß, a relative pronoun, or an indirect interrogative. The latter may be either an interrogative pronoun, a compound of wo, or one of the conjunctions ob, wann, wie, wo, rarely als.

1. The clause may be subject, object (of verb or preposition ohne), predicate, or appositive; e. g., was wirklich iſt, iſt vernünftig, *what is real is rational;* wie ſie die Augen niederſchlägt, hat tief ſich in mein Herz geprägt, *her way of casting down her eyes has impressed itself deeply on my heart* (G.); ich fühle wohl, daß mich der Herr nur ſchont, *I feel sure that you are only sparing me* (G.); du biſt am Ende — was du biſt, *you are after all — what you are;* er ſündigt, ohne daß er es weiß, *he sins without knowing it;* der Satz, daß alle Menſchen gleich ſind, *the proposition that all men are equal.*

a. As to the mode and tense of object clauses, see §§ 360–61.

b. The omission of the verb before object clauses with was, wie, was für, has given rise to exclamatory sentences of dependent form; e. g., was du nicht alles zu erzählen haſt! *what all haven't you to tell* (G.)! wie

alles ſich zum Ganzen webt! *how everything weaves itself into a whole* (G.)! But exclamatory sentences do not by any means always have this form. Cf. Goethe's wie lieb' ich dich! wie blickt dein Auge! wie liebſt du mich!

c. A substantive clause is often anticipated by a compound of da; e. g., der Wert der Erfindung beſteht darin, daß ſie überall anwendbar iſt, *the value of the invention consists therein that it is universally applicable.* So a daß-clause may follow an interjection; e. g., ach! daß die Menſchen ſo unglücklich ſind! *alas, that people are so unfortunate* (G.)!

d. Clauses with als ob, or als with inversion (§ 359, 3, *a*), while formally adverbial, sometimes have substantive character; e. g., damit Sie nicht glauben, als handelte ich übereilt, *that you may not believe that I acted overhastily* (G.).

414. Adjective Clauses modify a noun or pronoun and are introduced by a relative pronoun, a compound of wo (rarely da), or one of the conjunctions als, da, wann (rare), wenn, wie, wo; e. g., der Gott, der Eiſen wachſen ließ, *the God who caused iron to grow;* den lieb' ich, der Unmögliches begehrt, *I love him who desires the impossible* (G.); man durchſuchte alle Örter, wo Fremde wohnen konnten, *all places where strangers might dwell* (S.); die Zeiten, da ich noch ſelbſt im Werden war, *the time when I myself was still growing* (G.).

415. Adverbial Clauses either define an adverb or limit the verb of the main sentence. They are introduced by the subordinating conjunctions and may be classified as follows (see § 381 for further examples and comments).

1. Local, introduced by wo and its compounds, rarely by da; e. g., bleibt, wo ihr ſeid, *remain where you are;* überall, wohin mein Fuß mich trug, *everywhere where my feet carried me* (S.).

2. Temporal, introduced by als, bevor, bis, da, ehe, indem, indes, nachdem, ſeit(dem), ſobald, ſolange, ſo oft, wann (archaic), wenn, während, wie, wo and its compounds; e. g., damals ſchien er mir gewandt, als ich ihn noch nicht verſtand, *at that time he seemed to me clever when I did not yet understand him* (G.); bleibt doch, bis meine Wirtin kommt, *remain, won't you, until my wife comes* (S.).

3. Conditional, introduced by als with inversion (§ 359, 3, *a*), als ob, als wenn, es ſei denn daß (§ 356, 1, *a*), falls, im Falle daß, ſo (archaic), wenn; e. g., wir könnten viel, wenn wir zuſammenſtünden, *we could do much if we stood together* (S.). For the mode of conditional clauses see § 359.

a. As a variety of conditional clause we may regard the restrictive clause introduced by inwiefern, inwieweit, ſofern, ſoweit, wofern; e. g., er ehrt die Wiſſenſchaft, ſofern ſie nützt, *he honors science so far as it is useful* (G.).

b. A conditional clause is often thrown into the form of an interrogative sentence: e. g., o, giebt es Geiſter in der Luft, *O, if there are spirits in the air* (G.).

4. Concessive, introduced by obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, ob zwar, ſo + adverb or adjective, wenn auch, wenngleich, wenn ſchon, wiewohl, wie auch, trotzdem daß, ungeachtet daß; e. g., gehorchen will ich, ob ich gleich hier noch manches ſagen könnte, *I will obey, though I might say much on this point* (G.); ſo gut man wählt, kann man ſich doch betrügen, *however well one chooses* (*though one choose ever so well*), *one may be mistaken.*

a. Concession can be expressed by simple inversion with following gleich, auch, ſchon, und (§ 379, 4, *a*); e. g., iſt gleich die Zahl nicht voll, *although the number is not complete* (S.); und ſollt' er auch ſtraucheln überall, *and though he should stumble everywhere* (S.).

5. Causal, introduced by da, indem, weil, zumal (da); e. g., ich kann fröhlich ſcheiden, da meine Augen dieſen Tag geſehen, *I can depart happy, since my eyes have seen this day* (S.).

6. Proportional, introduced by je, je nachdem, wie; e. g., je eher du zu uns zurücke kehrſt, je ſchöner wirſt du uns willkommen ſein, *the sooner you return to us*, etc. (G.).

7. Comparative, introduced by als, wie, gleichwie, ſowie; e. g., der träge Gang des Krieges that dem König ebenſoviel Schaden, als er den Rebellen Vorteil brachte, *the slow progress of the war injured the king just as much as it profited the rebels* (S.); ihr ſeht die Sachen, wie man die Sachen eben ſieht, *you see things as people do just see them* (G.).

a. The clauses with als ob, als wenn, classed above as conditional, are strictly a combination of comparative and conditional.

b. Where the verb is the same in both clauses, it is often omitted in the second, just as in English; e. g., du nimmſt es höher, als ich ſelbſt (es nehme), *you take it more seriously than I myself* (G.).

8. Final, denoting purpose, and introduced by daß, damit, auf daß (archaic); e. g., eilt heim mit ſorgender Seele, damit er die Friſt nicht verfehle, *hurries home with anxious heart, in order that he may not fail to be on time* (S.).

9. Consecutive, denoting result, and introduced by daß, usually with preceding ſo, der Art, dergeſtalt, etc.; e. g., der Wind wehte ſo ſtark, daß wir kaum rudern konnten, *the wind blew so hard that we could scarcely row.*

a. The peculiar use of the daß-clause after a comparative or zu (§ 367, 5, *a*) grew out of an ellipsis of ſo ; i. e., er iſt größer (zu groß), als daß der Neid ihm ſchaden könnte, *he is too great for envy to injure him*, stands for er iſt größer als ſo groß, daß, etc.

WORD-ORDER.

416. Types of Word-Order. We have to distinguish three types of word-order according as the finite verb occupies second place, first place, or last place, in relation to other elements of the sentence.

a. Essentially, then, the subject of word-order is all bound up in the position of the finite verb. This is the basis of classification and the point which should receive the learner's attention before everything else.

1. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies second place may be called the *assertive order*. It presents two cases. If the subject precedes, as in er iſt da, we have the *normal order*. If an adjunct of the verb precedes, thus requiring the subject to follow the verb, as in da iſt er, we have the *inverted order*.

a. The terms 'normal' and 'inverted' are used in a somewhat conventional sense. It is not to be understood that the order er iſt da is either more ancient or more common than the order da iſt er. From the German point of view there would be no serious impropriety in taking the latter as the starting-point, and regarding the former as an 'inversion.' Indeed, some recent grammarians ignore this distinction entirely and call every sentence 'normal,' in which the finite verb occupies second place. It is, however, convenient for some purposes to keep the term 'inversion' in its traditional sense.

2. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies first place, as in iſt er da, may be called the *interrogative order*, though its use is not confined to interrogative sentences.

3. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies last place, as in (ich weiß nicht) ob er da iſt, being characteristic of dependent clauses, may be called the *dependent order*.

417. The **Normal Order** is used for independent assertive sentences in which no other element precedes the subject in order of thought. The arrangement is: first, the subject and its modifiers; second, the finite verb; third, the adjuncts of the verb; last, the non-finite part of the verb. Examples: der Schäfer putzte sich zum Tanz, *the shepherd dressed himself for the dance* (G.); das enge Leben steht mir gar nicht an, *the narrow life does not suit me at all* (G.); ihr habt ihn treulich eingesungen, *you have faithfully sung him to sleep* (G.).

1. Observe that in the normal order the finite verb must have second place; no adjunct of the verb may intervene between it and the subject. Thus, where English says *I really believe, he soon returned*, etc., German says ich glaube wirklich, er kehrte bald zurück.

a. A few words are excepted from this rule, viz.: aber, quite frequently; auch, when its force falls on the preceding subject; sometimes also doch, indessen, jedoch, dagegen, trotzdem, nämlich, also, and a few others; e. g., das also war des Pudels Kern, *so that was the kernel of the poodle* (G.). Other exceptions may occur in case of phrases possessing a quasi-adnominal character; e. g., Morley, in seiner englischen Literaturgeschichte, fügt Angaben . . . bei, *Morley, in his History of English Literature, adds statements*, etc. (Scherer). So very often in poetry, which cares little for rules of order; e. g., der alte Winter, in seiner Schwäche, zog sich in rauhe Berge zurück, *Old Winter, in his weakness, has retired*, etc. (G.).

b. There is, however, no limit to the number of words, phrases and even clauses, which may precede the finite verb, provided that they all belong to the subject and so form one element of the sentence; e. g., König Jakob von England, der gleichgültig zugesehen hatte, wie sein Eidam die böhmische Krone verlor, erwachte aus seiner Fühllosigkeit, *King James of England, who had looked on indifferently while his son-in-law lost the Bohemian crown, awoke from his apathy* (S.).

2. The non-finite part of the verb (i. e., the infinitive or participle of a compound tense, or an adverb that has become so closely associated with the verb as to form a part of it, under the name of a 'separable prefix,') comes last, a participle preceding an infinitive; e. g., er reist morgen ab, *he departs to-morrow;* er wird morgen abreisen, *he will depart*

to-morrow; er iſt ſchon abgereiſt, *he has already departed;* er wird wohl ſchon abgereiſt ſein, *he has probably departed already.*

3. As to the adjuncts of the verb (object, predicate-word, adverb), these are arranged after the finite verb in accordance with principles to be explained below (§ 421–4). The arrangement of these elements is the same in all three (or four) types of word-order.

4. While the normal order is most common in assertive sentences, it is also frequently used for imperative sentences; e. g., er ſtehe feſt und ſehe hier ſich um, *let him stand fast and look about him here* (G.).

418. The Inverted Order is used for independent assertive sentences, in which some adjunct of the verb comes first in order of thought. The arrangement is the same as in the normal order, except that the subject follows the verb instead of preceding it; e. g., den Göttern gleich' ich nicht, *I am not like the gods* (G.); ungern heb' ich das Gaſtrecht auf, *I do not like to refuse hospitality* (G.); doch iſt es jedem eingeboren, *yet it is natural to every one* (G.).

a. The element put first may be an adverb, object, predicate-word, or a part of the verb itself. The initial position does not necessarily imply emphasis any more than in the case of the subject. In talk it simply reflects the order in which the thought presents itself to the speaker's mind. In studied writing it may be a matter of style.

1. Observe then that when an adjunct of the verb begins the sentence, the finite verb itself must have second place: neither the subject nor any second adjunct may intervene before the verb. Where, then, English says *true it is; money I have not; evidently you are wrong; beautiful to be sure she is not,* German must say: wahr iſt es; Geld habe ich nicht; offenbar haben Sie unrecht; ſchön iſt ſie freilich nicht.

a. An exception to this rule is permitted in the case of doch, ja, nämlich, and, in general, of any adverb which is separated by a pause from what follows and hence is not felt as beginning the sentence; e. g., doch viel iſt mir bewußt, *yet much is known to me* (G.); gewiß, Albert iſt

der beſte Menſch unter dem Himmel, *certainly, Albert is the best man under the sun* (G.). The same principle applies also, of course, to interjections; e. g., fürwahr! es iſt ſehr wohl gethan, *forsooth, it is very well done* (G.). To bring a word under this exception it is not necessary that the separating pause be written. Thus in the last two examples Goethe actually wrote: gewiß Albert iſt, and fürwahr es iſt.

b. For a similar reason the general connectives, und, aber, allein, ſondern, denn, and entweder . . . oder, precede the subject without causing inversion: they are not felt as adjuncts of the verb, but simply as connecting links.

c. Excepted from the rule, again, are initial adverbs the force of which is felt with the subject rather than with the verb; e. g., auch ich, *I too;* ſelbſt der König, *even the king;* nur der, *only he.*

d. From the general principle stated above it follows that a sentence should not begin with two adverbs, unless they are so connected as to form in reality but one element of the sentence; e. g., den andern Morgen war leider das magiſche Gerüſt wieder verſchwunden, *the next morning, alas, the magic stage had again disappeared* (G.). Here one could not say den andern Morgen leider war, nor leider den andern Morgen war, though it would be permissible to say den andern Morgen, leider, war, since the pause makes leider parenthetical and thus deprives it of the character of a direct adjunct of war verſchwunden. On the other hand, connected adverbs count as one element: e. g., gegen Abend um die beſtimmte Zeit ward Wilhelm abgeholt, *toward evening at the appointed time they called for Wilhelm* (G.).

2. A preceding subordinate clause having the value of an object or an adverb has the same effect upon the order as any other object or adverb; e. g., ob er gefährlich verwundet iſt, wiſſen wir nicht, *whether he is dangerously wounded we do not know* (L.); als ich noch ein Knabe war, ſperrte man mich ein, *when I was yet a boy they shut me up.*

a. Such a clause is very often resumed by a pronoun or an adverb, which makes the inversion easier; thus in the last two examples one might say ob er gefährlich verwundet iſt, das wiſſen wir nicht; als ich noch ein Knabe war, da ſperrte man mich ein. When there is no resuming particle, the subject is sometimes allowed to precede the verb; e. g., wie es in ſolchen Fällen zu gehen pflegte, niemand war vorbereitet, *as is wont to happen in such cases, no one was prepared* (G.).

b. Parenthetical sentences meaning *said he, thought he,* and the like, put the verb first because what precedes is the object; e. g., „verzeih' mir," ſagte Wilhelm lächelnd, *'pardon me,' said Wilhelm with a smile* (G.).

3. An appositive preceding the subject is treated like an adjunct of the verb and causes inversion; e. g., nachdenkend über dieſes Abenteuer, ging er nach ſeinem Zimmer, *meditating upon this adventure, he went to his room* (G.).

4. The usual position of the subject in the inverted order is immediately after the verb, but an unemphatic pronoun or adverb may come between; e. g., auf dem Schauplatze hatten ſich viele Zuſchauer eingefunden, *in the theater a number of spectators had found places* (G.); endlich kamen wirklich Menſchen an, *at last persons actually arrived* (G.).

5. If an inverted clause is followed by another coordinate clause having the same subject, an adverb may not precede the second verb unless the subject is repeated; e. g., da kam ſie zu einem königlichen Garten und beim Mondenſchimmer ſah ſie, daß—, *thereupon she came to a royal garden and saw by the moonlight that*—(Gr.). Here it would have been equally correct to say und ſah beim Mondenſchimmer, daß, but not und beim Mondenſchimmer ſah, daß.

a. For the unnecessary resumption of the subject after und by means of derſelbe, see § 379, 4.

b. If the second clause of the compound sentence has a new subject, it usually stands in the normal order; e. g., endlich kam er zurück und ſie begrüßte ihn mit Freude, *at last he came back and she greeted him with joy.*

6. The effect of inversion without the form of it can be produced by using the expletive es to anticipate a subject which, for stylistic, metrical or other reasons, it is desired to have follow the verb; e. g., es reden und träumen die Menſchen viel, *men talk and dream much* (S.); es irrt der Menſch, ſo lang er ſtrebt, *man errs as long as he strives* (G.).

419. The Interrogative Order puts the finite verb first. It is used:

1. In all interrogative sentences except such as begin with a subject-pronoun; e. g., kennſt du den Fauſt? *knowest thou Faust* (G.)? was wettet ihr? *what will you wager* (G.)? But: wer weiß? *who knows?*

2. In optative sentences; e. g., wären wir nur den Berg vorbei, *would that we were past the hill* (G.).

a. But the subject may precede in an optative sentence; e. g., des Himmels Heere mögen dich bedecken, *may heaven's hosts protect thee* (U.). So, too, with the real subject anticipated by es; e. g., es lebe die Freiheit, *long live freedom.*

3. In imperative sentences, more especially when the verb is in the second person; e. g., betracht' ihn recht, *look at him carefully* (G.); führe du mein Heer, *lead thou my army* (S.); bezähme jeder die gerechte Wut, *let every one control his righteous wrath* (S.); gesteh' ich's nur, *just let me confess.*

a. But imperative sentences may also take the normal or the inverted order, especially in the third person; e. g., er stehe fest und sehe hier sich um, *let him stand firm and look about him here* (G.); jetzt gehe jeder seines Weges still, *now let each quietly go his way* (S.); doch gehen wir, *but let us go* (G.).

4. In conditional sentences; e. g., irre ich nicht, *if I am not mistaken;* hat etwas Wert, es muß zu Tage kommen, *if a thing has value, it must come to the light* (G.).

5. In emphatic assertive sentences, the verb being usually followed by doch; e. g., sind doch ein wunderlich Volk die Weiber, *indeed, women are a strange race* (G.). Such a sentence is often best translated by a question.

a. In older German the finite verb might come first without special emphasis, and traces of this freedom are preserved in poetry; e. g., sah ein Knab' ein Röslein stehn, *a boy saw a little rose growing.* But in prose one would now need to say: Es sah ein Knab' u. s. w.

420. The Dependent Order is used in dependent clauses introduced by a relative pronoun or particle, an indirect interrogative, or a subordinating conjunction; e. g., ich bin der Geist, der stets verneint, *I am the spirit that always denies* (G.); weh mir, wenn du nichts Besseres weißt, *woe is me if you know of nothing better* (G.); wer weiß, wo nun es die vier Winde haben? *who knows where the four winds have it now* (G.)?

a. A sentence may be logically but not formally dependent, i. e., it may be without a subordinating conjunction. Such a clause takes the

normal order; e. g., du ſiehſt, ein Hund und kein Geſpenſt iſt da, *you see, a dog and no spirit is there* (G.); ſie meint, du ſeiſt entflohen, *she thinks you have run away* (G.).

b. In the universality of its application the dependent order is a comparatively recent development of literary usage. Early modern German allows the finite verb considerable freedom of position, and this freedom it still preserves in colloquial language and in poetry; e. g., wenn es nicht wär' durch falſche Leut' verraten worden, *if it had not been betrayed by treacherous persons* (G.); ich weiß nicht, was ſoll es bedeuten, *I know not what to make of it* (Heine); wenn ich ſo ſaß bei einem Gelag, *when I would be sitting thus at a revel* (G.); wenn mit Blumen die Erde ſich kleidet neu, wenn die Brünnlein fließen im lieblichen Mai, *when the earth clothes itself anew with flowers, when the springs flow in lovely May* (S.).

1. A special case is presented by the compound tenses of the modal auxiliaries and those verbs (§ 326, 1, *b*), which follow their analogy in substituting what looks like the infinitive for the participle. In such case the tense-auxiliary precedes the two 'infinitives' and may be separated from them by intervening words; e. g., ich ſehe nicht, wie mein Bruder hätte ſchöner ausgebildet werden können, *I do not see how my brother could have been better educated* (G.).

a. Lessing is fond of omitting the tense-auxiliary in such cases; e. g., ſo merken die Ausleger ſehr wohl an, daß der Dichter hierdurch jene als Barbaren, dieſe als geſittete Völker ſchildern wollen, *the commentators remark very properly that the poet intended by this to represent the former as barbarians, the latter as civilized people.*

b. Aside from the case just mentioned, some writers occasionally prefer to place the tense-auxiliary before instead of after the perfect infinitive of a compound tense; e. g., es ſcheinet dem Leſer weit kürzer auf dem Papiere, als es den Zuſchauern wird vorgekommen ſein, *it seems to the reader much shorter on paper than it probably appeared to the spectators* (L.).

2. The dependent order may occur in exclamatory sentences through the omission of a governing verb; e. g., wie ſich die platten Burſche freuen! *how the low fellows enjoy themselves* (G.)!

3. The subject of a dependent clause usually stands just after the introductory connective, but a short unem-

phatic pronoun or adverb often intervenes before it; e. g., du ſtehſt nur hier, weil dich mein Vater brauchte, *you only stand here because my father used you* (G.).

4. In old German the finite verb might stand at the end in sentences not dependent, and traces of this freedom are preserved in poetry; e. g., denk', Kind, um alles in der Welt, der Herr dich für ein Fräulein hält, *the gentleman takes you for a fine young lady* (G.).

POSITION OF ADJUNCTS.

421. Adjuncts of the Noun. An attributive adjective or participle precedes its noun and is preceded by its own modifiers; e. g., von echtem, aus der Quelle geſchöpftem Golde, *of genuine gold obtained from the source* (G.); ein berühmter, und damals wegen ſeiner Talente ſehr geſchätzter Weltmann, *a gentleman of reputation, who was at that time very much esteemed for his talents* (G.).

1. An appositive generally follows its noun, but may precede; if an adjective or participle, it usually follows its own modifiers, but may precede them for stylistic reasons. Thus it would be natural to say: durch dieſe Worte tief gerührt, brach ſie in Thränen aus, *deeply touched by these words, she burst into tears.* But if a relative clause were to follow Worte, one might prefer to change the order and say: tief gerührt durch dieſe Worte, die offenbar vom Herzen kamen, brach ſie in Thränen aus.

2. A limiting genitive, except a proper name, generally follows its noun, but exceptions are very frequent, especially in poetry.

422. Adjuncts of the Verb: A General Principle. The adjuncts of the verb come in the reverse order of their importance, the more weighty elements tending toward the end.

1. Observe that this is only a general tendency, the operation of which is more or less crossed and interfered with by other considerations. As a tendency, however, it is important. It explains, in the first place, the final position of the infinitive or participle of a compound tense: these, being felt as parts of the verb are of course, highly essential elements of the predication.

2. The same principle explains the final position of an adverb, adjective, noun or phrase, that has become so intimately associated with the verb as to form a part of it; e. g., auf in aufſtehen; bloß in bloßſtellen; Teil in teilnehmen; in Stand in inſtandſetzen.

3. So, too, we can account for the final position of a predicate adjective in relation to a limiting genitive; e. g., du biſt dir nur des einen Triebs bewußt, *thou art conscious only of the one impulse.* Here bewußt is felt as the important element of the predication. On the other hand a weighty prepositional phrase may easily follow a predicate adjective; e. g., ſie iſt ſehr ſtolz auf ihre Schönheit, *she is very proud of her beauty.*

423. Position of Objects. From the general principle just stated it follows that short, unemphatic, pronominal objects tend toward the beginning; e. g., ich kenne ihn ſchon ſeit Jahren, *I have known him these many years;* ich habe ihm längſt vergeben, *I have long since forgiven him.*

1. The least emphatic pronouns are es and the reflexive, which accordingly precede; e. g., ich gab es dir, *I gave it to you;* ſie nähert ſich ihm, *she approaches him.* As between these two ſich comes first, but with exceptions.

2. In general a direct object (especially if it denote a person) is of more importance than an indirect object (especially if it denote a thing), and hence comes nearer the end; e. g., der Anblick giebt den Engeln Stärke, *the sight gives strength to the angels.* But where both objects are persons, or both things, this relation may easily be reversed; e. g., ſie ſtellte den Herrn ihrem Bruder vor, *she introduced the gentleman to her brother;* er widmete ſeine Kräfte dem Dienſte des Vaterlands, *he devoted his powers to the service of his country.*

a. On the other hand an accusative object very regularly precedes a genitive or a prepositional phrase; e. g., der lange Krieg beraubte das Vaterland ſeiner kräftigſten Söhne, *the long war robbed the country of its*

strongest sons (Gr.); er befreite die Philoſophie von ihren Feſſeln, *freed philosophy from its fetters.*

424. Position of Adverbs. The general rule is that the adverbs of direction (auf, ab, her, hin, etc.) are of most importance: they accordingly come last under the name of separable prefixes; e. g., die Sonne geht jetzt um 6 Uhr auf, *the sun rises now at 6 o'clock.*

1. Next in importance are the negative adverbs nicht, nie, niemals, keineswegs; these accordingly tend toward the end, especially in emphatic negations; e. g., das Leben iſt der Güter höchſtes nicht, *life is not the highest of blessings* (S.); daß die Beſchränkung die Unendlichkeit keineswegs ausſchließe, *that limitation by no means excludes infinity* (S.); ich kann die Stelle nicht überſetzen, *I can not translate the passage.*

a. But a negative adverb that is not felt as an adjunct of the verb usually stands before the particular word or phrase that it modifies; thus one would ordinarily say in prose: das Leben iſt nicht das höchſte der Güter.

2. An adverb of time generally precedes one of place or manner; that is, among the relations denoted by adverbs that of manner or degree is more important than that of place, place more important than time. But this order of precedence varies easily under the influence of special emphasis.

425. Dependent Infinitives are preceded by their own modifiers; e. g., du brauchſt dich nicht darüber zu ängſtigen, *you do not need to trouble yourself about that;* Wilhelm konnte ſich nicht entſchließen, die Rolle des lebenden Königs dem Pedanten zu überlaſſen, *could not make up his mind to leave the rôle of the living king to the pedant.*

1. The prepositional infinitive is often incorporated in the sentence as one of the verbal adjuncts, especially if it stands alone or has no modifier of great importance; e. g., das Mädchen fing zu weinen an, *began to cry;* da ſie zu weinen

anfing, *as she began to cry.* But one would say: ſie fing an, heftig zu weinen; da ſie anfing, heftig zu weinen.

426. Dependent Clauses. Since dependent clauses have the value of substantives, adverbs or adjectives, their position falls under the rules already given. Thus:

1. An adverbial clause should not intervene between subject and verb in the normal order. Such a type of sentence as *the party, though it had suffered defeat, was not discouraged,* must become: die Partei war, obwohl ſie eine Niederlage erlitten hatte, keineswegs entmutigt; or else: die Partei war keineswegs entmutigt, obwohl ſie, etc.; or else: obwohl die Partei eine Niederlage erlitten hatte, war ſie, etc.

2. So, too, a sentence should not begin with two adverbial clauses. In English we may say: *As soon as the horses were ready, although it was still very early, we got under way.* This becomes in German: Sobald die Pferde bereit waren, machten wir uns, obwohl es noch ſehr früh war, auf den Weg; or else: machten wir uns auf den Weg, obwohl es noch ſehr früh war.

3. Whether a dependent clause should be incorporated in the structure of the main sentence or attached to it as an appendix, is a question of style. An important principle is that a sentence should not end weakly after a subordinate clause. Thus one would not say: er fuhr, ſobald er gefrühſtückt hatte, ab, but er fuhr ab, ſobald er gefrühſtückt hatte, *he left as soon as he had breakfasted.* On the other hand one might very well say: er fuhr, ſobald er gefrühſtückt hatte, in der größten Eile ab.

4. To explain further the principles according to which clauses are concatenated into more or less elaborate periods, is the province of a treatise on style, rather than of a grammar.

EXERCISES IN SYNTAX.

*EXERCISE I.**

USE OF THE ARTICLES.

§§ 224–32.

1. Fall has come and the birds are flying towards the south. 2. Life is not the highest of blessings, but the greatest of evils is guilt. 3. Wisdom is only in the truth. 4. Innocence has a friend in heaven. 5. Am I in Uri, in the land of freedom? 6. Love makes the cleverest man a fool. 7. The sun is singing in the old way. 8. Error is related to truth as sleep to waking. 9. My home is far in the south, in beautiful Spain. 10. Here rests the dust of Saint Louis. 11. Little Karl came running to meet his mother. 12. Father is now in Switzerland; he is coming home the last of September.

EXERCISE II.

THE ARTICLES—*Continued.*

1. Frogs can live on land or in water. 2. One can now ascend Vesuvius by rail. 3. Water is best, says a Greek proverb; and for my part I prefer water to wine. 4. The king and queen go to church twice a week. 5. The action of a (= the) serious drama should have the following properties. 6. Give me your hand and look straight in my face. 7. The *what* of a work interests men more than the *how*. 8. The art of speaking is too much neglected by most men. 9. There is a courtesy of the heart; it is

* NOTE.—These exercises, for which consult the general English-German vocabulary at the end of the book, are designed to accompany and illustrate a systematic course in the essentials of German syntax as treated in Part Second. A knowledge of Part First is of course presupposed.

akin to love. 10. The more he writes the worse his style becomes. 11. A hearth of one's own is worth gold. 12. I think the gate will hold now for a year and a day. 13. Christmas! ah, what a thinking and planning and inspecting of shops!

EXERCISE III.

Peculiarities of Number.

§§ 240 and 346.

1. An army of ten thousand men lay only three or four miles distant. 2. The book cost me seven marks and fifty pfennigs. 3. Two glasses of wine are always too much for him. 4. A thousand francs is a very considerable sum. 5. The horse is fifteen hands high and weighs a thousand pounds. 6. Three years is a short time. 7. As we passed by, the people stuck their heads out of the windows. 8. A large number of guests came to the festival. 9. A swarm of bees had attached itself to a tree in our garden. 10. My nature holds me back, and also my promise. 11. Field, forest and village (= the landscape) lay before us in the soft morning light. 12. Easter comes very early this year. 13. If your Highness commands, our servant can attend to it at once.

EXERCISE IV.

The Nominative.

§§ 241–243.

1. He is called Hans, with the nickname "little Hans." 2. Mary Stuart will die as queen and heroine. 3. He remained a pious Christian to the end of his days. 4. There remains one more question, which seems the most difficult of all. 5. You have grown up here a mystery to yourself. 6. If I were self-possessed I should not be called Tell. 7. The peasant could still count as a handsome man. 8. Alas, that I was born a beggar! 9. It is

not given to every one to become a great scholar. 10. There was nothing to be seen but the deep-black shadows of the trees. 11. You stood (as) a bright star in my sky. 12. She was to be like the sun when I come, and like the moon when I go. 13. He is rightly to be called the savior of his country. 14. The body must become earth again. 15 Alas, your home-land has become to you a foreign country!

EXERCISE V.

The Adnominal Genitive.

§§ 246–7.

1. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. 2. I have received a letter of the following import. 3. I still see drops of blood upon your sword. 4. The young people were of the same opinion. 5. Not master of myself I struck the messenger. 6. A man of middle age entered the room and began to talk; he seemed a person of intelligence. 7. Yes, we are of one heart, of one blood. 8. O, learn to feel of what stock you are! 9. The King of Prussia has a castle in the city of Berlin. 10. I am a dead man if they seize me. 11. I do what belongs to my office. 12. With a dozen good friends he now passed several days of undisturbed happiness.

EXERCISE VI.

The Genitive with Verbs.

§§ 248–9.

1. You must not be ashamed of your choice. 2. My house lacks the father. 3. If you need me for a definite deed, then call on Tell. 4. O, think not of the error of my youth! 5. I found a covered table awaiting me. 6. Not all are free who make light of their chains. 7. Carried too far, severity fails of its wise purpose. 8. How if we should now make use of him in our trouble? 9. A

general gayety took possession of the little company. 10. The world does not accuse you of cold severity. 11. You are still young enough so that good breeding may teach you a better way. 12. The king employed the learned Aristotle as the teacher of his son.

EXERCISE VII.

Further Uses of the Genitive.

§§ 251–5.

1. Every workman is worthy of his pay. 2. I know a being that is worthy of him. 3. I am tired of living and of ruling. 4. The house of his parents was always full of the best society. 5. Not able to control my feelings I stood there. 6. It costs only one word to be instantly free of the oppression. 7. But they always remained mindful of their origin. 8. One day the bear returned from his wandering. 9. Shall you be able to come before this man with a calm face? 10. Let each one go his way. 11. To my knowledge I have never treated you unkindly. 12. I often hear her walking about softly in the night. 13. As is well known (= in known manner) A. W. Schlegel was in his day a famous poet. 14. The man is a tailor by trade. 15. Oh, the unhappy hour!

EXERCISE VIII.

The Dative with Verbs.

§§ 257–8.

1. The soul of man resembles water. 2. The man can be helped. 3. I told the boy that he must obey his parents. 4. It is better to meet a bear robbed of its young than a fool in his folly. 5. No man of honor will submit to the disgrace. 6. I gladly follow the example that you give me. 7. If you do that, God will forgive you your sins. 8. If you have faithfully served the state, that

redounds to your honor. 9. Who is a brother to me? He who comes to my aid in trouble. 10. He who wishes to please all will always displease the best. 11. I look forward calmly to my fate. 12. Since thou canst not renounce the world, conquer it for thyself by force.

EXERCISE IX.

Further Uses of the Dative.

§§ 259–61.

1. The time is favorable to our plan. 2. A good book is ever welcome to the traveler. 3. To all these children I was "the good uncle." 4. Tears stood in the old man's eyes. 5. Truth is necessary to the soul. 6. This rose blooms not for me. 7. I had a strange feeling, as if the place were familiar to me. 8. The sun has burned my face. 9. It does one good to look into your face once more. 10. When will a savior come to (= for) this land? 11. I demand obedience to the law. 12. (I want you to) look at those handsome boys there!

EXERCISE X.

The Accusative with Verbs.

§§ 263–5.

1. That makes no great difference. 2. Why have you not answered my letter all this time? 3. No one can rob me of my honor. 4. Methinks you would have done better if you had followed my advice. 5. What would man be if he had never dreamed the dream of freedom? 6. His duty is to stand guard before the gate of the palace. 7. Let each one fight his battle alone. 8. I wonder whether he will ever come back? 9. The ancient Greeks taught their youth wisdom out of Homer. 10. Who is permitted to call the child by its right name? 11. I at least consider him a great poet. 12. I can not make him my friend.

EXERCISE XI.

Further Uses of the Accusative.

§§ 266–9.

1. He sent me the nearest way into the city. 2. The governor himself is bringing him up the lake. 3. The child has fallen down stairs. 4. This very night yet he must leave the city. 5. He lives about an hour's walk further up the valley. 6. A good half of the way not a tree is to be seen. 7. He is six feet high and weighs two hundred pounds. 8. The war lasted only a month, but it cost ten thousand human lives and an immense sum of money. 9. Every Sunday, year in and year out, she writes me a long letter. 10. The stranger sat at the table, his head supported upon his arms and his cloak drawn closely about him. 11. But, jesting aside, what do you really want of me? 12. We walked hand in hand, our eyes fixed upon the guide. 13. Frederick the Great thought the Nibelungenlied not worth a charge of powder. 14. Now that I am rid of the novel, I have time again for other things. 15. She has given me her word; I am content (with it).

EXERCISE XII.

Apposition.

§§ 270–1 and 285.

1. They shall not have it, the free German Rhine. 2. There came the governor riding from Küssnacht, his castle. 3. Oh, do not forsake it, the holy cause of your country. 4. We were received by an old man, the servant of the prince. 5. We admire the deeds of the brave Prince Friedrich Karl. 6. The passage is found in the "Sorrows of Young Werther," a novel by Goethe. 7. The name (of) poetic genius was just then anything but honorable. 8. I will not endure it longer to lie here idly as a prisoner. 9. Strong man as I was, my knees trembled.

10. His Majesty King May's first songstress, Dame Nightingale, has just returned from the south. 11. I come to you as a friend whom I can trust. 12. We arrived on the 15th of the month, a dark, rainy day, as it happened. 13. He is no longer satisfied with his position as German teacher. 14. I have a desire for something new. 15. The meal consisted of a large piece of bread, two glasses of milk and half a dozen boiled eggs.

EXERCISE XIII.

The Adjective.

§§ 288–94.

1. Free word befits free man. 2. You dear child, come, go with me. 3. Oh, woe to me, poor girl! 4. Ye, blind hearts, are without feeling. 5. They sent us young people into another room. 6. Many good books are my quiet friends. 7. Nothing remains but a handful of light dust. 8. The German and English languages are closely akin. 9. All good spirits praise the Lord. 10. Of all good things there are three. 11. He has come-to-be of another mind. 12. The following important point must not be forgotten. 13. He has at any rate a handsome exterior. 14. The strong man is mightiest alone. 15. I have but few acquaintances in the city. 16. A man of fine moral feeling would never do such a thing.

EXERCISE XIV.

The Personal Pronouns

§§ 300–4.

1. I see you do not know me, but I remember you very well. 2. The sight of you reminds me of old times. 3. Children, can you not be quiet? I am ashamed of you. 4. Be quiet, poodle! what do you want, you stupid beast? 5. One of us would never have done the like. 6. There are three of them, if I am not mistaken. 7. When you

know our plan, you will give it a better name. 8. She took the Bible and read in it a long time. 9. Then we should be slaves and deserve to be such. 10. And there is a call from the depths : Dear boy, thou art mine. 11. The father is a merchant and the son intends to become one. 12. It is easy living with this man. 13. I opened her eyes with regard to herself. 14. One can compare Venice only to itself. 15. He asked one of the men to fetch him his sword.

EXERCISE XV.

The Possessives.

§§ 305–8.

1. Man carries his life in his own hand. 2. Your heart has always remained mine. 3. If one names the best names, mine too is named. 4. Think of your happiness and of mine. 5. God's ways are not like ours. 6. We love art ; our hearts grow warm in its light. 7. The castle was in its day inhabited by brave knights. 8. The unhappy lady lived now only for her daughter and her (= the daughter's) children. 9. Siegfried killed the dragon and bathed himself in his blood. 10. Joy was to be seen in all their faces (*i. e.*, in the faces of them all). 11. It is not well to be thinking always of one's own happiness. 12. There are people who have no idea of mine and thine.

EXERCISE XVI.

Demonstratives and Relatives.

§§ 309–11 ; 314–16.

1. The bonds of friendship are often stronger than those of blood. 2. Let the Greek rule and the barbarian serve ; for the former is born free and the latter a slave. 3. The face resembles that of the deceased king. 4. The prize falls to the lot of him who deserves it. 5. It is you

who are to blame for the whole misfortune. 6. Hail to thee, Macbeth, who wilt one day be king. 7. He who seizes the moment, he (that) is the right man. 8. The first man whom I send hither (him), do you cast into the hell yonder. 9. He went back the same way he had come. 10. There was once a king and a queen who lived at peace with each other, and had twelve children that were all boys. 11. Oh, that sort of people must always be drinking and eating! 12. Whoso stands, let him see to it that he do not fall. 13. That is not the worst that you have done. 14. Of what the heart is full, of that the mouth runneth over.

EXERCISE XVII.

Indefinite Pronominals.

§§ 317–22.

1. All my trouble was in vain. 2. How did you come by all that money? 3. Every few days he writes us a long letter. 4. I had every reason to regard him as my friend. 5. The world becomes more beautiful (with) every day. 6. One or the other of you is to blame for it. 7. So they both loved each other, but neither would confess it to the other. 8. I can only remain a few days. 9. There is a certain way of telling one that one loves him which is charming. 10. He who brings much will bring something to many a one. 11. No one lives as he would like; everybody lives only as he can. 12. We are born for something better. 13. I find little good in the book. 14. Man wants but little here below, nor wants that little long.

EXERCISE XVIII.

The Auxiliaries of Tense.

§ 323.

1. Winter is here; the leaves have fallen and the birds have flown southward. 2. He would certainly have become famous, if he had not died so early. 3. I have rid-

den to and fro for two hours. 4. The gentleman was not at home when we arrived ; he had ridden to the city. 5. Goethe had traveled more than Schiller and seen more of the world. 6. Your tears have flowed too long already. 7. Your father has aged rapidly of late. 8. I have only met one sad man. 9. In spite of everything, I have continued to believe in his fidelity. 10. The water had pressed into the city. 11. I could hardly stand, for I had remained awake all night. 12. This watch has never gone right from the beginning.

EXERCISE XIX.

Modal Auxiliaries.

§§ 333–8.

1. It might be difficult to find anything better. 2. One must not seem richer than one is. 3. The world shall tremble if I must perish. 4. It was already too dark for one to be able to find the way easily. 5. I might have lived a pretty life, if I had not been a fool. 6. The man claims to have lived here, but I cannot remember him. 7. I may have been a boy of fourteen at the time. 8. I send you herewith the little that I have been able to save. 9. I should like to travel, but I must not think of traveling this year. 10. He could not have (done) it, even if he had wished. 11. What's the use of all that? You will never be able to convince me. 12. We will drive out the governors, but, if it may be, without blood.

EXERCISE XX.

Passive, Impersonal and Reflexive Constructions.

§§ 344–5.

1. He has been made better by misfortune. 2. I should like to write more, but I am this moment interrupted by a call. 3. Another way had to be found. 4. I had written thus far yesterday, when I was called away. 5. From

your journey there is not always a returning. 6. Care is taken that the trees do not grow up into the sky. 7. That is easy to say but hard to practice. 8. As might be expected, the work was but little heeded by the public. 9. I like it better at home ; I have never been drawn to foreign parts. 10. It may be hoped that the great riddle is at last solved. 11. God be praised, the child is found. 12. My greetings to thee, thou lofty house!

EXERCISE XXI.

Tenses of the Indicative.

§§ 348–53.

1. She dies as soon as you command it. 2. I am going into the garden—shall be back in ten minutes. 3. You just run and get me my purse. 4. He will do no more harm ; I have killed him. 5. I know secret ways that no man ever trod. 6. I wonder where he may have passed the night. 7. When she sees your beauty, the hour of her annihilation will have (= has) struck. 8. A good man will always choose the better part. 9. His life is over (= he has lived), the stroke of death has fallen. 10. The place that a good man has set foot upon is consecrated. 11. I shall certainly visit you as often as I have time. 12. I think that I saw him last evening in the theater. 13. I learned German years ago as a child. 14. There will be action before the new year begins its course.

EXERCISE XXII.

Imperative and Optative Subjunctive.

§§ 355–7.

1. Let there be truth between us. 2. Not to me, to age be the honor! 3. Let him be bound to the linden tree yonder. 4. But let us go ; the world has already turned gray. 5. Let some one mount the tower and see how it

is going. 6. May I be, grant me the request, the third in your league. 7. May your ashes rest in peace, and your works remain. 8. Be the story true or false, it is at any rate interesting. 9. Oh, full moonlight, didst thou but look for the last time upon my pain! 10. May the day never appear! 11. O, that I had never lived to look on that! 12. God help the poor people! 13. He who does not hear the voice of poetry is a barbarian, be he whoever he may. 14. I shall not see him, unless it be that he comes here.

EXERCISE XXIII.

POTENTIAL AND UNREAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

§§ 358–9.

1. How would it be with you if I should withdraw my army? 2. We could do much if we stood together. 3. If I had arrived a moment earlier I might have saved her life. 4. I couldn't state the true reason. 5. I should not like to assert such a thing. 6. I should think it would be better not to answer the letter at all. 7. So that's finished! well, what next? 8. There, now you have my reasons! I say no more. 9. Can it be that he is back already? it seems impossible. 10. So (you think) there is nothing more to be feared? 11. What? (you say) it was robbers who attacked us? 12. If only it were the imperial crown? 13. It was as if something strange were coming between them. 14. It was almost as if he had now reached the goal of his journey. 15. The end of the letter was exactly as if he had written it himself. 16. Some books appear to be written not that one may learn from them, but that one may know that the author knew something.

EXERCISE XXIV.

DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

§§ 360–1.

1. Do you think I am a child? 2. Socrates believed that the soul of man is immortal. 3. The belief that life

is good is natural to man. 4. They felt that without freedom everything was lost. 5. He said that he should return on the morrow. 6. She demanded that I give back all the letters that she might have written to me. 7. They said that I had not changed, only my face was pale. 8. I have no other wish than that you should be friends. 9. No one knew who he was or how he lived. 10. My guide asserted that he did not know whence the robbers came. 11. She wrote me a week ago that she was lying ill in bed and could not even read. 12. The boys reported that the bear was right at hand; that they had themselves seen him and had then run away in fear.

EXERCISE XXV.

The Infinitive.

§§ 364–7.

1. Acting is easy, thinking is difficult, says Goethe. 2. The life of a woman is an eternal going and coming, or lifting and carrying. 3. Doing right causes (one) to rest quietly. 4. To die is nothing, but to live and not to be able to see, that is a misfortune. 5. I feel myself becoming gradually young again. 6. It is hard to swim against the stream. 7. In this room there must be no smoking. 8. He has never learned to swim; who will help me save him? 9. It befits a noble man to heed the word of woman. 10. I am ready to accompany you. 11. The question is hard to answer. 12. Suddenly I heard my name called from the distance. 13. To satisfy the mother, I had a doctor summoned. 14. I am too old merely to play, too young to be without a wish.

EXERCISE XXVI.

The Participle.

§§ 368–71.

1. She has been ailing these two weeks. 2. We went against the danger (that was) threatening us. 3. A drunken man is always repulsive. 4. The task in question

was satisfactorily (satisfyingly) performed. 5. The ancients imagined their gods as living in Olympus. 6. The letters that have reached me say not a word of this intended journey. 7. Boldly ventured is half won. 8. The concert did not please me at all, one single piece excepted. 9. Her eye remained fixed upon the child (who had) now fallen asleep. 10. There comes a man running at full speed. 11. The whole question is a hard one to answer. 12. Looked at from the workman's point of view, the question appears quite different.

EXERCISE XXVII.

Conditional and Imperative.

§§ 362–3.

1. If you should get into trouble I would gladly help you. 2. The eagle vowed to take vengeance as soon as wings should be grown. 3. I saw it coming, that he would sink against the wall of rock. 4. Without his death the affair would have gone quite differently. 5. They invited me to a family festival to which a number of guests would be coming. 6. Any one who saw it for the first time would step back with horror. 7. O, let us hear everything ; you have time. 8. Be not deceived by false prophets. 9. Greetings to you, noble gentlemen, greetings to you, fair ladies! 10. For God's sake, don't lose your head! 11. The child kept calling: Wake up, dear mother, wake up!

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Prepositions.

§ 377.

1. At your age and with your great wealth you can confidently undertake it. 2. Old in years, rich in goods, a father once divided his property. 3. You ascend, facing the current of the Reuss. 4. Come, fly with me away beyond the mountains. 5. In accordance with your wish

I enclose his letter. 6. In my opinion there is no danger. 7. The number of the fallen is estimated at a hundred. 8. That is forbidden under a penalty of ten marks. 9. He is proud of his reputation. 10. The tower is ninety to a hundred feet high. 11. Confronted by such vulgarity, I can only keep silent. 12. He who does not lose his understanding over certain things has none to lose. 13. Such an angel of a child I never saw before. 14. He is taller than I by a whole head.

EXERCISE XXIX.

Conjunctions.

§§ 378–81.

1. He is no genuine friend of the workingmen, but (he) always acts in his own interest. 2. He is no genuine friend of the workingmen, but he has other good qualities. 3. You are not safe in Uri ; for the tyrants lend a hand to one another. 4. Sorrows last but a short time ; therefore we should endure them with patience. 5. The more I worked, the worse my situation became. 6. As she entered the room I noticed that she had been weeping. 7. When (ever) the day was very hot the child would go into the woods. 8. God helps only (then), when men no longer help. 9. So may God help you as you pity me. 10. I will not do it, and even if you should promise me the world for a reward. 11. It was nearly 8 o'clock when the performance began. 12. I must bring you into jolly company that you may see how easily life can be lived. 13. I could live with him, though I shouldn't like to have him for a husband.

APPENDIX I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. Spelling Reform in Germany. German spelling is based in a general way upon the usage handed down by the writers, grammarians and lexicographers of the eighteenth century. But this traditional spelling, while much better than our own, is not free from defects. It represents simple sounds by compound signs, as in Saal, hier, thun; different sounds by the same sign, as in Bad – da, gehen – Tag; the same sound by different signs, as in Glas – Haß, Bäume – Freude, and it has a much-used silent h. Differences of usage with regard to these and other points led, in 1876, to a movement for governmental regulation of orthography. Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Württemberg and other German governments published official spelling-books, and the spelling thus prescribed is slowly making its way toward universal acceptance. It should be said, however, that the government rules do not aim at a thorough and scientific reform, but only at a working compromise between the ideal demand and the facts of usage.

2. The Prussian Rules, which furnish the orthographic standard of this work, are contained in a small pamphlet of forty-six pages, entitled Regeln und Wörterverzeichnis für die deutsche Rechtschreibung zum Gebrauch in den preußischen Schulen. But since the 'rules' admit of not a few exceptions in favor of conventional usage, one can not easily spell by them without frequently referring to the accompanying 'word-list'; and as this, in turn, contains only a limited number of representative words, the student, or at any rate the teacher, should have at hand Duden's *Orthographisches Wörterbuch.* This excellent manual, which costs but thirty-seven cents, seldom leaves one in doubt about even the smallest detail of the Prussian spelling. It also has foot-notes which exhibit the divergent spellings prescribed by other governments. Practically we have followed Duden in this grammar.

3. The Old Spelling and the New. Since many writers and editors still continue to use the older spelling, though with more or less diversity in details, we append a list of the more important points regulated by the Prussian rules.

1. Ä, Ö, Ü, Äu, are to be preferred to Ae, Oe, Ue, Aeu. **The same in Roman type.**

2. Ä and äu are to be preferred to e and eu in words which have kindred with a, au; hence rächen (on account of Rache); Ärmel (Arm); räumen (Raum); but echt, not ächt, Hering, not Häring, leugnen, not läugnen, etc. There are, however, a few exceptions; thus edel (in spite of Adel), Eltern (in spite of alt).

a. In a few cases ä and e distinguish words of different meaning; e. g., Ähre, *ear of grain*, and Ehre, *honor;* Lärche, *larch*, and Lerche, *lark*.

3. Ai is written only in a few words, of which the more common are Bai, Hain, Kaiſer, Laie, Mai, Maid, Mais. Elsewhere ei is used. Observe, however, the distinctive spellings: Laib, *loaf*, and Leib, *body;* Saite, *string*, and Seite, *side;* Waiſe, *orphan*, and Weiſe, *tune*.

4. The use of doubled vowels is somewhat restricted, though by no means done away with. Thus the following words are to be spelled with a single vowel: bar, Barſchaft, Herd, Herde, Los, loſen, Loſung, los, Maß, quer, Schaf, Scham, Schale, Schar, Schoß, ſelig, Star, Wage, Wagen, Ware.

5. Ie is preferred to i in gieb, giebſt, giebt, and in the verbal ending ieren; but i to ie in hing, fing. The spelling distinguishes Fiber, *fiber*, from Fieber, *fever;* Mine, *mine*, from Miene, *expression;* Lid, *eyelid*, from Lied, *song;* Stil, *style*, from Stiel, *stem;* wider, *against*, from wieder, *again*.

6. Except in Stadt, *city*, which is thus distinguished from Statt, *place*, the combination dt is to be written only where t is inflectional, as in lädt, wandte, geſandt. Write therefore tot, not todt; Brot, not Brodt nor Brod; so also Schwert, geſcheit, Ernte.

7. The endings ich and ig are to be distinguished in writing, though pronounced alike; hence Fittich, Pfirſich, Teppich, but Honig, Eſſig, Käfig. For others consult the 'word-list,' or Duden.

8. Except in Epheu, *ivy*, ph is to be used only in foreign words, as Philoſophie, Philiſter. Write, therefore, Adolf, Rudolf, Weſtfalen.

a. As to the use of initial v and f (vor but für, fließen but Vließ), consult the dictionary.

9. S, not ß, is to be written in the pronominal forms, des, wes, dies and their compounds, and also in the suffix nis.

a. Medial ſ becomes s before a suffix of derivation, but not before an inflectional t; hence, Häschen, from Haſe; Röschen, from Roſe; weislich, from weiſe; but reiſt, from reiſen.

b. In Roman type the rules prescribe that ß be represented by ſs, or else by a specially-cast digraph. But non-German printers usually employ sz or ss. The latter is open to the objection that it does not distinguish ſſ from ß.

10. Th is to be written only in foreign words, as Thee, Thema, Theorie, and in a few native words in which th before the vowel takes the place of h after the vowel, as a sign of length; e. g., Thor (= Tohr), thun, Thal. Write, therefore, Tier, Teil, Rat, raten, wert, Reichtum. This is upon the whole the most important and characteristic rule of the official spelling.

11. Three concurrent consonants are avoided in some cases (by dropping one), permitted in others, e. g., dennoch (i. e. denn noch), Mittag, Schiffahrt; but Betttuch, Stilleben, alliebend.

a. Final h before the suffix heit is dropped; e. g., Roheit. So, too, Hoheit, from hoch; but Weichheit, from weich.

b. The plural of See, Armee, is either Seeen, Armeeen, or Seen, Armeen.

12. In foreign words k is written for a guttural c, z for the affricate; as Katalog, Klasse, klerikal, Zirkel, Offizier. But a good many exceptions are allowed, especially in case of French words; e. g., Coupé, Ceder or Zeder, Concept or Konzept. When in doubt whether to write c, k or z, consult Duden's dictionary.

13. The use of initial capitals is greatly restricted. Nouns used adjectively, as ein bißchen, ein paar, das ist schade; adverbially, as abends, nachts, vormittags; prepositionally, as kraft, mittels, trotz, mangels, or as parts of a verbal phrase, as stattfinden, instand setzen, are to be written with a small initial.

a. This is the most difficult subject that the rules deal with, and they leave it in a rather unsatisfactory condition. When in doubt consult Duden.

b. Adjectives from names of persons have a small initial when their meaning is general; e. g., die luthe'rische Kirche, *the Lutheran church;* but die Lu'therische Bibelübersetzung, *Luther's translation of the Bible.*

c. Adjectival phrases, such as im ganzen, fürs erste, bei weitem, des weiteren, etc., have no initial capital.

14. The apostrophe is to be used sparingly, for the purpose of marking the suppression of a letter usually written. But on this point the rules are not very precise, and there is much diversity of usage. Omit the apostrophe at any rate in aufs, unterm, etc., and in the genitive of proper names that do not end in a sibilant.

4. The Roman Letters are extensively used in scientific writings of every kind. In using the Roman letters many writers, particularly philologists, discard altogether the initial capital of nouns and thus avoid the most serious practical difficulty of German orthography.

APPENDIX II

ENGLISH-GERMAN COGNATES.

1. **The Relation of English to German** is a subject which belongs rather to comparative linguistics than to German grammar, and can not be studied to the best advantage without some knowledge of Old English, Old German, Gothic, Latin, Greek, Sanskrit and general phonetics. Such knowledge is not presupposed for the users of this book. At the same time it is important that every student who approaches German by way of English, learn to recognize the familiar words of his mother tongue in their unfamiliar German forms, and acquire the habit of thinking clearly and correctly, if not profoundly, concerning the relationship of cognates. To this end, it is hoped, the following paragraphs will be found helpful. What is here given, however, is only a very elementary introduction to a large and difficult subject.

a. The most valuable of all helps for the study of German words in their relation to cognate forms in other languages is Kluge's *Etymologisches Wörterbuch der deutschen Sprache*.

2. The Indo-European Family of Languages. German and English belong to the Germanic (sometimes called Teutonic) branch of the Indo-European (also called Aryan and Indo-Germanic) family of languages. The Indo-European family has ten branches, three of them Asiatic and seven European. The Asiatic branches are the Indic, Iranic and Armenian. The European branches are the Hellenic, Italic, Germanic, Slavic, Baltic, Keltic and Albanian.

a. Observe that these names are the names of 'branches' put forth in ancient times by the Indo-European parent-stem. Each one of them has branched again and again, thus giving rise in our day to a large number of separate languages and dialects variously related to one another.

1. When we say that the languages of the ancient Hindus, Persians, Greeks, Italians, Germans, Slavs, etc., belong to the same 'family,' this means that the remote ancestors of these various peoples once dwelt together, forming a single community and speaking a common language. Where this pro-ethnic Indo-European home was located—

whether in Asia or in Europe,— when the dispersion began and how it proceeded, are still moot questions.

2. The Indo-European parent-speech is known to us in a measure through the process of restoration. By a comparison of cognate forms, as they actually appear in the derived languages, scholars have been able to reconstruct the alphabet, the grammar, and in part the vocabulary, of the parent-speech. Thus Eng. *brother*, Lat. *frāter*, Gk. *φράτηρ*, Sansk. *bhrātar-*, point back to an I.-E. parent-form * *bhrāter* (a prefixed * is used to distinguish ideal reconstructions from words historically known).

3. The Germanic Branch of the Indo-European Family. There was a time during which the ancestors of the various peoples now known to us as Germanic, having parted from the Indo-European parent-stock, still dwelt together in one community and spoke a common language. Later this Germanic stock parted into three branches, the eastern, the northern and the western. The eastern branch is known from the extinct Gothic alone. The northern branch gave rise to the Scandinavian languages, Danish, Swedish, Icelandic and Norwegian. The western branch gave rise to German, English, Dutch, Flemish and Frisian.

1. Where the pro-ethnic home of the Germanic race was situated is not precisely known, nor have we any historical remains of their language in this stage of its history. It is possible, however, by comparison of derived forms, to reconstruct the alphabet, the grammar, and in large part the vocabulary, of the Germanic parent-speech. Thus Gothic *brōthar*, Old English *brōthor*, Old High German *bruodar*, Old Low German *brōthar*, and Old Icelandic *brōthir*, point back to a Germanic * *brōthar*.

4. Phonetic Change. In every language the pronunciation of words is more or less subject to change. Through a modified mode of utterance a sound is converted into another sound or ceases to be heard. In this way, given time enough, the pronunciation of a word may change to almost any imaginable extent. Thus Eng. *ten* is the same word as Latin *decem*, only it is pronounced differently.

1. But changes of pronunciation do not take place at hap-hazard. When a particular tendency to change sets in, at a given time and in a

given language, it does its work thoroughly and uniformly. For example, if the tendency is to convert *d* into *t*, it will convert *d* into *t everywhere*, unless there is some interfering cause. Such a uniformly operating tendency to change of pronunciation is called a phonetic law. The principal causes that interfere with the uniform operation of phonetic laws are the position of the sound with respect to other sounds or to the accent, and the attracting influence—analogy—of other words.

2. Spelling is often an imperfect and deceptive representation of sounds, and is much more conservative than pronunciation. One of the most important maxims that the student of linguistics has to learn, is to think in terms of sounds, not in terms of letters.

5. The Germanic Shifting of Consonants. If, now, we compare a large number of Indo-European words, ideally restored, with their Germanic descendants, ideally restored, we shall find that the latter have undergone changes both in their vowels and in their consonants. One set of these changes, affecting the explosive consonants, or stops, is of fundamental importance in the study of English and German etymology, viz.: The Indo-European voiced aspirates *bh, dh, gh*, become, in Germanic, the voiced stops *b, d, g ;* the voiced stops *b, d, g*, become voiceless, giving *p, t, k*, and the voiceless stops *p, t, k*, become spirant, giving *f, th, h*.

1. The following examples will illustrate :

Indo-European	*Greek.*	*Latin.*	*Germanic.*	*English.*
*bhrāter	φράτηρ	frater	*brōthar	brother
*dhē, *dhō	θῆναι	facio	*dōn	do
*ghans-	χήν	(h)anser	*gans	goose
*dwo	δύο	duo	*two	two
*genu	γόνυ	genu	*kniwa	knee
*pād-	πούς (ποδ-ός)	pes (ped-is)	*fōt	foot
*trejis	τρεῖς	tres	*thrijis	three
*kun-	κύων (κυ-νός)	canis	*hun-dos	hound

a. There are some exceptions to this law due to the operation of special causes. But a discussion of these, or of the changes undergone by the vowels and non-explosive consonants, would take us too far a-field for the present purpose. Consult Brugmann's *Grundriss der vergleichenden Grammatik*, vol. 1.

6. The High German Shifting of Consonants. If we examine, in turn, the consonantal system of High German, we shall find it to have undergone a second shifting of consonants, which differentiates High German more or less completely from all the other Germanic languages. This second shifting consists in the conversion of Germanic *d* into *t*, *t* into *s* or *ts*, *th* into *d*, and *p* into *f* or *pf*. Thus Gc. **dago-*, Eng. *day*, becomes Ger. Tag; Gc. **two*, Eng. *two*, Ger. zwei; Gc. **itan*, Eng. *eat*, Ger. eſſen; Gc. **thrijis*, Eng. *three*, Ger. drei; Gc. **diupa*, Eng. *deep*, Ger. tief.

1. The High German shifting began in the 7th century, or earlier, in South Germany, and spread thence northward with diminishing thoroughness. Except the conversion of *th* into *d*, it did not affect the Low German dialects. Even in South Germany the time at which the change began, and the thoroughness with which it was carried through, vary with the different dialects.

a. The two shiftings described in this and the last section are often called, after one of their discoverers, 'Grimm's Law.' The first is known in German as die germaniſche, the second as die hochdeutſche, Lautverſchiebung.

2. German words borrowed from other languages previous to the High German shifting shared in the general change, as kurz, from Lat. *curtus*, Eng. *curt;* but words borrowed after the shifting retain their original consonants, as Titel, from Lat. *titulus*, Eng. *title*. Thus the form of a word may give a clew to its provenience and the date of its adoption.

3. English, which has grown out of an amalgamation of Low German dialects carried into Britain in the 5th and 6th centuries, preserves unchanged the Germanic *d*, *t*, *th* and *p*, which High German shifted to *t*, *s* or *ts*, *d*, and *f* or *pf*. But in some other respects German has been more conservative than English. This will appear from the following detailed statements.

7. The Labials correspond, in English and German, as follows:

1. Eng. *p* = Ger. f, ff, pf; e. g., up – auf; ripe – reif; sleep – ſchlafen; hope – hoffen; plight – Pflicht; camp – Kampf; plant – Pflanze.

a. Pf is the regular representative of original *p* in words borrowed previous to the High German shifting, as in Pflanze, from Lat. *planta;*

pfropfen, from Lat. *propago*. A Ger. p corresponding to an Eng. *p* is evidence of late borrowing; e. g., Pein – pain; Pech – pitch; plump – plump.

b. A preceding ſ prevents p from shifting; e. g., spin – ſpinnen; lisp – liſpeln.

2. Eng. *b* initial = Ger. b; e. g., bear – Bär; break – brechen; bid – bieten; burst – berſten.

a. While Eng. preserves an *initial* Gc. *b* unchanged, it converts a medial Gc. *b* into *v* and a final Gc. *b* into *f*, *ff*. Hence Ger. *b* medial = Eng. *v*, and Ger. *b* final (pronounced as *p*) = Eng. *f*, *ff*; e. g., haben – have; Knabe – knave; ſterben – starve; ab – of, off; Dieb – thief; halb – half. Exceptions are due to late borrowing on the one side or on the other; e. g., Ebbe – ebb; Giebel – gable.

3. Eng. *f* initial = Ger. ſ (sometimes written v); e. g., foot – Fuß; feather – Feder; fly – fliegen; father – Vater; fleece – Vließ.

a. Eng. *f*, *ff*, medial or final, may either preserve an original Gc. *f* unchanged, or it may come from Gc. *b* (see above, 2, *a*). In the former case it will appear in Ger. as f, ff, in the latter as b; e. g., hoof – Huf; stiff – ſteif; wolf – Wolf; wife – Weib; life – Leib; of – ab; calf – Kalb.

b. Eng. *ft* = Ger. ft; e. g., soft – ſanft; drift – Trift; craft – Kraft.

4. Eng. *v* initial hardly occurs except in borrowed words (*vat* and *vixen* should be *fat* and *fixen*), where it corresponds to Ger. v, sometimes to f, rarely to w; e. g., verse – Vers; vane – Fahne; vetch – Wicke.

a. Eng. *v* medial usually represents Gc. *b*, in which case it corresponds to Ger. b, in a few cases to f; e. g., over – über; salve – Salbe; live – leben; devil – Teufel; oven – Ofen. Medial v = v is evidence of late borrowing; e. g., slave – Sklave.

8. The Dentals correspond as follows:

1. Eng. *t* = Ger. z, tz, ſſ, s, ß; e. g., two – zwei; twig – Zweig; sit – ſitzen; cat – Katze; eat – eſſen; water – Waſſer; this – dies; that – das; lot – Los; bite – beißen; foot – Fuß.

a. Observe that z, tz, ſſ, s and ß are five ways of writing two sounds, viz., the affricate *ts* and the voiceless sibilant *s*. The affricate is written z when initial, and also after l, n, r, but tz after a short vowel, where it takes the place of zz from Gc. *tt*. Hence, tin – Zinn; salt – Salz; mint – Münze; heart – Herz; heat – Hitze (Gc. * hittja); cat – Katze (Gc. * katta). The simple voiceless sibilant is written ſſ when medial after a short vowel, but ß when final, or medial after a long vowel. In a very few words, however, final s takes the place of ß. Hence, let –

laſſen; mete – meſſen; write – reißen; shoot – ſchießen; shot – Schuß; vat – Faß; that – das; lot – Los.

b. A preceding spirant (f, ſ, ch) prevents t from shifting; e. g., craft – Kraft; oft – oft; strong – ſtreng; breast – Bruſt; might – Macht; plight – Pflicht. So, too, the combination tr does not shift; hence, true – treu; tread – treten; bitter – bitter (Gc. * bĭtr); otter – Otter (Gc. * ŏtr). Other exceptions are due to late borrowing; e. g., temple – Tempel (from Lat. *templum*); senat – Senat (from Lat. *senatus*). Bottom – Boden presents an irregularity that has not yet been fully explained.

2. Eng. *d* = Ger. t; e. g., daughter – Tochter; day – Tag; ford – Furt; hard – hart; hold – halten; heed – hüten; side – Zeit. Observe that Ger. t is sometimes badly written th; hence, door – Thür; do – thun; dale – Thal.

a. A preceding *n*, and sometimes a preceding *l*, prevented Gc. *d* from shifting in Ger.; hence, bind – binden; send – ſenden; wild – wild; bold – bald (but old – alt, and cold – kalt). Notice that in und – and, although the final d is pronounced as t, and can not occur medially (as the d of wild may in wildes), we have no real case of Gc. *d* shifting to t. It comes under the general rule that all voiced final consonants have become voiceless in Ger. — Except after n and l, Ger. d corresponding to Eng. *d* is evidence of late borrowing; e. g., Dogge – dog; Decke – deck.

3. Eng. *th* = Ger. d; e. g., three – drei; thin – dünn; feather – Feder; loathe – leiden; both – beide; heath – Heide.

a. A very few exceptions to this rule as father – Vater, weather – Wetter, are due to the fact that Eng. *th* is an interloper, taking the place (under Norse influence) of an older *d*. The Old English ancestors of *father* and *weather* are *fæder* and *weder*. Another small group of exceptions, as thousand – tauſend, thaw – tauen, are due probably to an early assimilation of the initial stop to the voiceless consonant which usually preceded it.

4. Eng. *s* = Ger. ſ, s, ß; e. g., soap – Seife; send – ſenden; glass – Glas; less – los; horse – Roß; breast – Bruſt.

a. But Gc. initial *s* before *w* is regularly converted in Ger. into ſch; hence, swine – Schwein; swell – ſchwellen; sweat – Schweiß. So, too, in the standard pronunciation before p and t, though the sound is written ſ; hence, stead – Statt; steel – Stahl; spin – ſpinnen; sprout – Sproß. For Eng. *sh* see below (§ 9, 1, *a*).

9. The Gutturals correspond as follows:

1. The Gc. voiceless stop *k* either remains unchanged, being written in Eng. as *c*, *k*, *ck*, and in Ger. as f, ck; or else it becomes in Ger. the spirant ch and in Eng. the affricate *tsh* (written sometimes as *ch*, again

as *tch*). Hence, Eng. *c, k, ck, ch, tch* = Ger. k, ck, ch; e. g., kiss – küſſen; cow – Kuh; bake – backen; seek – ſuchen; weak – weich; chalk – Kalk; churl – Kerl; lick – lecken; stick – Stück; watch – wachen; ditch – Teich; stretch – ſtrecken.

a. Gc. *sk* becomes Eng. *sh*, Ger. ſch; e. g., shape – ſchaffen; shoot – ſchießen; fish – Fiſch; rash – raſch.

2. The Gc. voiced stop *g* remains unchanged in Ger. when initial; when medial or final, it is usually (but not in all dialects) converted into a spirant, though still written as g. In Eng. it is generally unchanged when initial, though in several words it has become, after passing through a spirant stage, a palatal semivowel (written *y*). When medial or final, it usually became first spirant, then semivocalic, and the semivowel combined with a preceding vowel to form a diphthong. Our spelling preserves it as *y* or *w*. Examples: geben – give; groß – great; gelb – yellow; geſtern – yester-; ſagen – say; Tag – day; legen – lay; Auge – eye; ſchlug – slew; Bogen – bow; Magen – maw; Vogel – fowl; Regen – rain; folgen – follow; Talg – tallow; Sorge – sorrow.

a. The Gc. combination *gj* becomes in Eng. a voiced affricate, written *dg*, in Ger. ck; e. g., edge – Ecke; ridge – Rücken; bridge – Brücke.

3. The Gc. guttural spirant *h* appears initially both in Ger. and Eng. as the breath *h* – h; e. g., heart – Herz; horn – Horn; have – haben. Medially it appears in Ger. as silent h, finally as silent h or as ch. In Eng. it has either disappeared entirely, or it appears in our spelling as *gh*, which is either silent or labialized to an *f*-sound; e. g., ſehen – see; zehn – ten; nah – nigh; hoch – high; roh – rough; Flucht – flight; durch – through; lachen – laugh; zäh – tough.

10. The Liquids, Nasals and Semivowels l, r, m, n, ng, j, w, usually correspond in the two languages, the Ger. j being the orthographic equivalent of Eng. *y*. Observe, too, that the old labial semivowel *w* has become spirant in modern Ger. Examples: learn – lernen; old – alt; red – rot; heart – Herz; man – Mann; stem – Stamm; lamb – Lamm (the Eng. *b* is an orthographic superfluity); nut – Nuß; find – finden; sing – ſingen; long – lang; year – Jahr; yoke – Joch; wine – Wein; wit – wiſſen.

a. A noteworthy difference is seen, however, in the fact that Ger. retains, while Eng. drops, an original *n* before a spirant in the accented syllable; e. g., ander – other; fünf – five; Gans – goose; ſanft – soft.

b. In a few words Ger. final n corresponds to Eng. final *m*; e. g., Buſen – bosom; Beſen – besom; Boden – bottom.

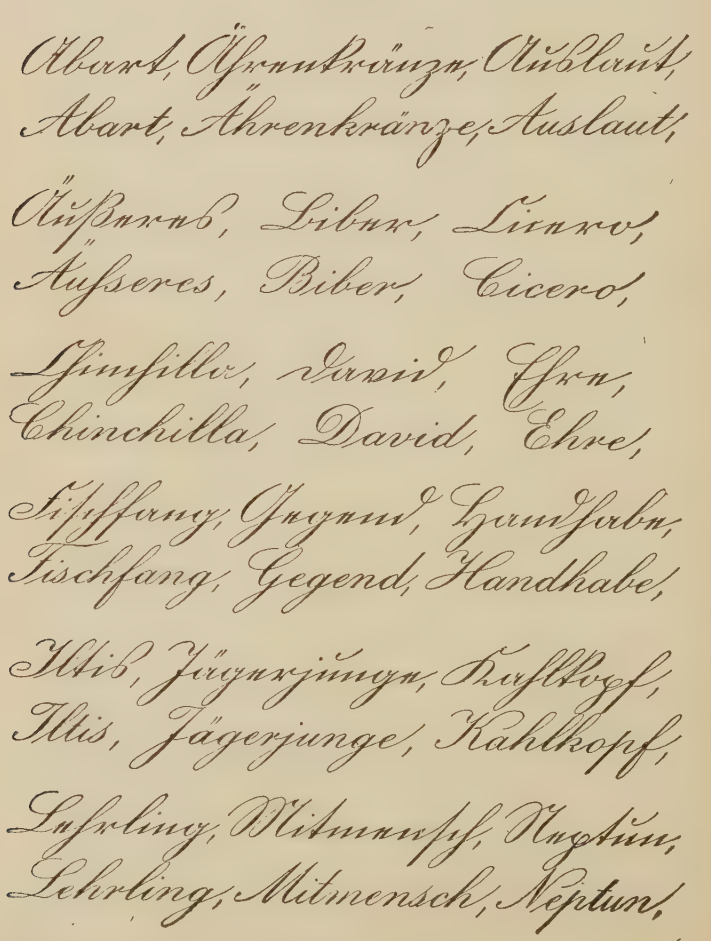
11. The Vowels and Diphthongs. The correspondence of vowels and diphthongs is a much more difficult and complicated subject than that of the consonants. To the beginner it will seem altogether chaotic. Compare, e. g., the pairs: Vater – father; Stamm – stem; Nacht – night; ſchlafen – sleep; ſanft – soft; lachen – laugh. Here German a has six different representatives in English, and conversely Eng. *a* with its various sounds is diversely represented in German.

1. It must not be supposed, however, that the changes undergone by the vowels, in either language, are any less subject to law than those undergone by the consonants. It is only that the laws are very much more intricate, especially in Eng. with its deceptive historical spelling. There are no simple and general rules that would be of any value, and to give accurate detailed rules would carry us too far into the realm of historical phonetics. The vocalism of Eng. and Ger. can not be studied intelligently without a knowledge of Old and Middle English and of Old and Middle High German.

APPENDIX III.

THE GERMAN SCRIPT.

I.—SELECTED WORDS SHOWING CAPITAL AND SMALL LETTERS WITH ROMAN EQUIVALENTS.



Oberon, Ölgötze, Pappe,
Oberon, Ölgötze, Pappe,

Quinquennium, Rührei,
Quinquennium, Rührei,

Sanskrit, Schriftsprache, Strasze,
Sanskrit, Schriftsprache, Strasze,

Schlüssel, Temperatur, Trotzkopf,
Schlüssel, Temperatur, Trotzkopf,

Uhu, Überbürdung, Vivisektion,
Uhu, Überbürdung, Vivisektion,

Werwolf, Xerxes, York,
Werwolf, Xerxes, York,

Zeitgeist,
Zickzack.

II.—THE LETTER ON PAGE 142 OF THIS GRAMMAR.

Göttingen, den 23. Juni, 1893.

Mein lieber Freund!

Endlich hast du dein langes Schweigen gebrochen; dein Brief vom 12. dieses Monats ist mir soeben in die Hände gekommen. Für die Nachrichten, die du mir aus der Heimat giebst, danke ich dir herzlich, obwohl andere Freunde mir zum Teil über dieselben Dinge geschrieben hatten. Ich schließe aus deinem Briefe, daß es dir gut geht, und daß du keine Gefahr läufst, an der Schwindsucht zu sterben. Die Beschreibung deiner Reise nach Chicago war mir höchst interessant. Was du nicht alles gesehen hast! Und in wie kurzer

Zeit! Denn es scheint, daß Du nur ein paar Tage dort geblieben bist.

Nun ich habe auch kürzlich eine kleine Reise gemacht, - eine Fußwanderung im Harzgebirge. Vielleicht wirst Du gern davon hören. Ich hatte viel von den Schönheiten dieser Gegend gehört und gelesen, und war natürlich recht neugierig darauf geworden. Vor etwa zwei Wochen sprach ich eines Tages darüber mit einem Freunde, der meine Neugierde zu teilen schien, und wir trafen die Verabredung, den berühmten Brocken zusammen in Augenschein zu nehmen.

III.—THE SONG AT THE BEGINNING OF SCHILLER'S WILHELM TELL.

Es lächelt der See, er ladet zum Bade,
Der Knabe schlief ein am grünen Gestade,
Da hört er ein Klingen,
Wie Flöten so süß,
Wie Stimmen der Engel
Im Paradies.
Und wie er erwachet in seliger Lust,
Da spülen die Wasser ihm um die Brust,
Und es ruft aus den Tiefen:
Lieb Knabe, bist mein!
Ich locke den Schläfer,
Ich zieh' ihn herein.

VOCABULARIES.

EXPLANATIONS.

The following abbreviations are used in the grammar and vocabularies:

acc. accusative.
adj. adjective.
adv. adverb, or adverbial conjunction.
art. article.
aux. auxiliary.
cf. compare.
comp. comparative.
conj. conjunction.
dat. dative.
def. definite.
dem. demonstrative.
Eng. Engl.sh.
Ex. Exercise.
f. feminine noun.
fem. feminine.
Fr. French.
fut. future.
G. Goethe.
Gc. Germanic.
gen. genitive.
Ger. German.
Gk. Greek.
Gr. Grimm.
I.-E. Indo-European.
impers. impersonal(ly).
imv. imperative.
indcl. indeclinable.
indef. indefinite.
ind(ic). indicative.
inf. infinitive.
inter. interrogative.
interj. interjection.
intr(ans). intransitive.
irr. irregular.
Kl. Klopstock.
L. Lessing.
Lat. Latin.
lit. literally.
Lu. Luther.
m. masculine noun.
mas(c). masculine.
mx. mixed.
n. neuter noun.
neu(t). neuter.
nom. nominative.
num. numeral.
perf. perfect.
pers. person(al).
pl(u). plural.
plup. pluperfect.
poss. possessive.
ppl. participial.
pple. participle.
pres. present.
prep. preposition.
pret. preterite.
pron. pronoun.
refl. reflexive.
rel. relative.
S. Schiller.
s. strong.
sing. singular.
sub. subordinating.
subj. subjunctive.
subst. substantive(ly).
superl. superlative.
s. v. sub voce, under the word.
tr(ans). transitive.
U. Uhland.
v. verb.
W. Wieland.
w. weak.

English words printed in heavy-faced type are cognate with the German vocabulary-word preceding. A hyphen shows that only a part of the English word is cognate with the German, or *vice versa*. Brackets enclose cognates which are obsolete, imaginary, or such as do not now translate the German word. An English word printed in italics is *borrowed* from the same source as the corresponding German word. For the principal parts of strong verbs see § 331.

Abbildung, *f. w.*, picture, illustration.
Abend, *m. s. 2*, **even**-ing; ---blatt, *m. s. 3*, evening paper; —eſſen, *n. s. 1*, evening meal, supper.
Abenteuer, *n. s. 1*, *adventure*.
aber, *conj.*, *adv.*, but, however.
abreiſen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein), depart, leave, [-rise].
abſchließen, *v. s.*, close up.
abſchreiben, *v. s.*, copy.
Abweſenheit, *f. w.*, absence.
ach, *interj.*, oh! ah!
Adreſſe *f. w.*, *address*.
Advokat', *m. w.*, lawyer, [*advocate*].
Affe, *m. w.*, **ape**, monkey.
ähnlich, *adj.* (*dat.*), similar (to).
Akt, *m. s. 2*, *act*.
all, *pron.*, *adj.*, **all**, every; alles (*used alone*), everything.
allein', *adj.*, *adv.*, **alone**.
allerdings', *adv.*, to be sure, [of **all things**].
allerlei', *adj.* (*indcl.*), **all** sorts of.
allerliebſt', *adj.* (§ 294, 1, *a*), most charming *or* delightful.
als, *sub. conj.*, than, when, **as**.
alſo', *adv.*, so, then, accordingly, [also].
alt, *adj.*, **old**.
Altar', *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* ä), *altar*.
Alter, *n. s. 1*, age, old age.
Altertum, *n. s. 3* (§ 91), antiquity.
Amerika, *n. s.*, *America*.
Amerika'ner, *m. s. 1*, *American*.
amerika'niſch, *adj.*, *American*.
amüſieren (ſich), *v. w.*, enjoy (*amuse*) one's self.
an, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), **on**, by, at, to.
anbieten, *v. s.*, offer.
Anblick, *m. s. 2*, view, sight.
ander, *adj.*, **other**, else.
anders, *adv.*, **other-wise**, **differ**-ently.
anderthalb, *adj.*, one and a half (§ 118, 3, *b*).
Anfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), beginning; anfangs, in the beginning, at first (§ 251, 2).
anfangen, *v. s.*, begin.
Angelegenheit, *f. w.*, affair.
angenehm, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.
Angſt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* Ä), *anxiety*, apprehension, fear.
ängſtigen (ſich), *v. w.*, torment one's self, be anxious.
ankommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), arrive.
annehmen, *v. s.*, take (on), assume, accept; ſich — (*gen.*), interest one's self in, take charge of.
Anſicht, *f. w.*, view, opinion, [-sight]; —ſkarte, souvenir card.
anſtatt, *prep.* (*gen.*), in-**stead** of.
anſtecken, *v. w.*, light, ignite.
Antwort, *f. w.*, **answer**.
antworten, *v. w.* (*intr.*), **answer**.
Anzahl, *f.* (*no pl.*), number, quantity.
Anzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), suit (of clothes).
Apfel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ä), **apple**; —ſchuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe), **apple-shot**.
April', *m. s. 2*, *April*.
Arbeit, *f. w.*, work, labor.
arbeiten, *v. w.*, work.
Arbeiter, *m. s. 1*, workingman.
ärgern (ſich), *v. w.*, be vexed, angry.
arm, *adj.*, poor.
Arm, *m. s. 2*, **arm**.
Armee', *f. w.*, *army*.
Art, *f. w.*, kind, sort.
artig, *adj.*, good, well-behaved.
Arznei', *f. w.*, medicine.

Arzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Ä), physician.
atmen, *v. w.*, breathe.
auch, *adv.*, also, too, [eke].
auf, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), on, upon; *adv.*, **up.**
Aufbruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), departure, start, [**up-break**].
aufeinander, *adv.*, **one** after **another.**
Aufenthalt, *m. s. 2*, stay, sojourn.
Aufgabe, *f. w.*, exercise.
Aufgang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), rising, rise.
aufgehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **go up,** rise.
aufhalten (ſich), *v. s.*, stay.
aufhören, *v. w.*, stop, cease.
aufrichtig, *adj.*, sincere, frank, candid, [**upright**].
Aufſatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), essay, composition.
aufſparen, *v. w.*, save up, [-**spare**].
aufſtehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), get up, rise.
aufwachſen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), grow up.
Aufzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), act (of a play), [**up-tug**, i. e., of the curtain].
Auge, *n. mx.*, **eye**; —**nblick**, *m. s. 2*, moment, instant; —**nkrankheit**, *f. w.*, —**nleiden**, *n. s. 1*, malady of the eyes; —**nſchein**, *m. s. 2*, view, [**eye-shine**].
Auguſt', *m. s. 2*, *August.*
aus, *prep.* (*dat.*), **out** of, from.
Ausdruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), expression.
aus'einan'derſetzen, *v. w.*, explain.
Ausflug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), excursion, [**out-fly**-ing].
Ausgabe, *f. w.*, edition.
ausländiſch, *adj.*, foreign, [**outland-ish**].
ausruhen (ſich), *v. w.*, rest one's self.
Ausſchuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe), committee.
ausſehen, *v. s.*, look, appear.
außer, *prep.* (*dat.*), except, **out**side of, [**outer**]; **äußerſt**, *adv.*, exceedingly, extremely.
außerdem', *adv.*, besides.
Ausſicht, *f. w.*, view, prospect, [**out-sight**].
Ausſprache, *f. w.*, pronunciation.
ausſprechen, *v. s.*, express, pronounce.
Ausſtellung, *f. w.*, exposition.
auswendig, *adv.*, by heart.
ausziehen, *v. s.*, take off (a garment).
Autor, *m. mx.*, *author.*

Bach, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), brook, [beck].
Bad, *n. s. 3*, **bath.**
Bahnhof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), station, depot.
bald, *adv.*, soon, [**bold**].
Ball, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **ball.**
Band, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 90, 1), **band,** bond, ribbon.
bang(e), *adv.*, anxiously; — **machen**, *with dat. of pers.*, to trouble.
Bank, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **bench.**
Bart, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **beard.**
Bau, *m. s. 2* (§ 275, 2, *a*), building.
bauen, *v. w.*, build.
Bauer, *m. mx.*, peasant, [**boor**].
Baum, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), tree, [**beam**].
beantworten, *v. w.* (*tr.*), -**answer.**
bedauern, *v. w.*, pity.
bedeuten, *v. w.*, signify, mean; **bedeutend**, *ppl. adj.*, significant; *as adv.*, notably.
Bedienung, *f. w.*, service.
Bedingung, *f. w.*, condition.
Bedürfnis, *n. s. 2*, need, necessity.
beeilen (ſich), *v. w.*, hurry.
befehlen, *v. s.*, command, order.
befinden (ſich), **find** (one's self), 'do'.
begegnen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein, *dat.*), meet.
begehen, *v. s.*, commit.
begierig, *adj.*, eager.
beginnen, *v. s.*, **begin.**
begleiten, *v. w.*, accompany, [-**lead**].
begreifen, *v. s.*, comprehend, [-**gripe**].
begreiflich, *adj.*, comprehensible, [-**gripe**-].
Begriff, *m. s. 2*, idea, conception, [-**grip**].
behalten, *v. s.*, keep, retain, [-**hold**].

Behandlung, *f. w.*, treatment, [-handling].
behaupten, *v. w.*, assert.
behilflich, *adj.*, help-ful.
bei, *prep.* (*dat.*), by, at, with, at the house of.
beide, *pron.*, *adj.*, both, two (§ 148).
beina'he, *adv.*, almost, [-nigh].
Beiſpiel, *n. s. 2*, example, [-spell].
beißen, *v. s.*, bite.
bekannt, *adj.*, known; *as noun*, acquaintance (§ 290, 2).
Bekanntſchaft, *f. w.*, acquaintance.
bekennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), acknowledge, confess.
bekommen, *v. s.*, get, obtain, receive.
belohnen, *v. w.*, reward, repay.
bemerken, *v. w.*, notice, re-mark.
benutzen, *v. w.*, employ, use.
bequem, *adj.*, comfortable [quem = come].
bereit, *adj.*, -ready, prepared.
bereuen, *v. w.*, regret, -rue.
Berg, *m. s. 2*, mountain, [bar-row].
Bericht, *m. s. 2*, report, information.
berühmt, *adj.*, famous.
beſchäftigt, *ppl.*, busied, occupied, busy.
beſchreiben, *v. s.*, describe, [-shrive, *-scribe*].
Beſchreibung, *f. w.*, description.
beſehen, *v. s.*, look at, examine, [be-see].
beſetzen, *v. w.*, occupy, fill, [beset].
beſitzen, *v. s.*, possess.
beſonder, *adj.*, special; —s, *adv.*, especially, particularly.
Beſorgnis, *f. s. 2*, care, anxiety, fear, solicitude, [-sorrow-].
Beſprechung, *f. w.*, discussion.
beſtehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), last, endure; consist (of, aus; in, in); insist (upon, auf, *dat.*).
beſteigen, *v. s.* (*tr.*), climb.
beſtimmen, *v. w.*, destine, intend.
beſtrafen, *v. w.*, punish.
Beſuch, *m. s. 2*, visit, [-seek].
beſuchen, *v. w.*, visit, attend, [-seek, beseech].
beträchtlich, *adj.*, considerable.
betragen, *v. s.*, amount to.
Betragen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), conduct, behavior.
Betreff, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), reference, regard; in betreff (*with gen.*), in regard to, in the matter of.
betreffen, *v. s.*, concern; was . . . betrifft, as far as . . . is concerned, as for . . .
Bett, *n. mx.* (§ 280, 1), bed.
Bettler, *m. s. 1*, beggar.
Beutel, *m. s. 1*, purse.
Beweis, *m. s. 2*, proof, [-wise].
beweiſen, *v. s.*, prove, [-wise].
Bewohner, *m. s. 1*, inhabitant, occupant.
bezahlen, *v. w.*, pay.
Bezug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), reference, regard.
Bibel, *f. w.*, *bible*.
Bibliothek', *f. w.*, library.
biegen, *v. s.*, bend, [bow].
bieten, *v. s.*, offer, bid.
Bild, *n. s. 3*, picture.
bilden, *v. w.*, form, fashion; culti. vate, refine.
Bilderbuch, *n. s. 3*, picture-book.
Billet', *n. s. 2* (*pl.* -tte), ticket.
billig, *adj.*, cheap, moderate.
billigen, *v. w.*, approve.
binden, *v. s.*, bind.
binnen, *prep.* (*dat.*), within.
bis, *prep.* (*acc.*), up to, until; — an, clear to, as far as; — zu, un. til; *sub. conj.*, until.
bißchen, ein, a little, [bit-].
biswei'len, *adv.*, at times.
Bitte, *f. w*, request, [bid-]
bitten, *v. s.* ask, request, [bid]; (ich) bitte, please.
blaſen, *v. s.*, blow, [cf. blast].
Blatt, *n. s. 3*, leaf, [blade].
blau, *adj.*, blue.
bleiben, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), remain, stay, [-leave]
Bleiſtift, *m. s. 2*, lead-pencil.
blenden, *v. w.*, blind, dazzle, [blend].
Blick, *m. s. 2*, glance, look.
Blitz, *m. s. 2*, flash, lightning.
bloß, *adj.*, mere; *adv.*, merely, only.
Blume, *f. w.*, flower, [bloom].
Blut, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), blood.

blutig, *adj.*, **bloody**, fierce.
Boden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), ground, floor, [**bottom**].
böſe, *adj.*, bad, ill, evil.
Bote, *m. w.*, messenger.
brauchen, *v. w.*, need, [**brook**].
braun, *adj.*, **brown**.
brechen, *v. s.*, **break**.
breit, *adj.*, **broad**, wide.
Breite, *f. w.*, breadth, [**bread-th**].
Brief, *m. s. 2*, letter, [*brief*]; —träger, *m. s. 1*, letter-carrier, postman.
bringen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **bring**.
Brot, *n. s. 2*, **bread**.
Brücke, *f. w.*, **bridge**.
Bruder, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ü), **brother**.
Brunnen, *m. s. 1*, well, spring, [**bourn, burn**].
Buch, *n. s. 3*, **book**; —handel, *m. s. 1*, book trade; —handlung, *f. w.*, book-store.
Bücherſchrank, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), book-case.
Bühne, *f. w.*, stage (of theater).
Burg, *f. w.*, castle, stronghold, [**borough, bury**].
Bürger, *m. s. 1*, citizen, [**burgher**].
Buſch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **bush**.
Butter, *f.* (*no pl.*). *butter;* —brot, *n. s.*, bread and butter.

Cent, *m. s.* (*pl.* =), *cent.*
central', *adj.*, *central.*
Charak'ter, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* =te're), *character.*
Chor, *n. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), *choir.*
Couſi'ne, *f. w.*, *cousin* (*fem. only*).

da, *adv.*, **there**; *sub. conj.*, as, since.
dabei', *adv.*, in connection with that, [**there-by**].
Dach, *n. s. 3*, roof, [**thatch**].
dafür', *adv.*, for that, [**there-for**].
dage'gen, *adv.*, against it, on the other hand.
daher', *adv.*, therefore.
Dame, *f. w.*, lady, *dame.*
damit', *adv.*, therewith, with that, with it; *sub. conj.*, in order that.
Dampfer, *m. s. 1*, steamer, (steam-) boat.
dane'ben, *adv.*, besides.
Dank, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **thanks**.
dankbar, *adj.*, **thank-ful**, grateful.
Dankbarkeit, *f.* (*no pl.*), **thank-fulness**, gratitude.
danken, *v. w.* (*dat.*), **thank**.
dann, *adv.*, **then**.
daran', *adv.*, **thereon**, of that.
darauf', *adv.*, **thereup-on**.
darbieten, *v. s.*, offer.
darin', *adv.*, **therein**, in it.
darſtellen, *v. w.*, represent.
darü'ber, *adv.*, about that, about it, [**thereover**].
darum', *adv.*, therefore.
darun'ter, *adv.*, under that, under it, among them, [**thereunder**].
das, *art.*, the; *dem.*, **that**; *rel.*, which, **that**; das ſind, those are.
daß, *subj. conj.*, **that**.
dauern, *v. w.*, last, continue, [*dure*].
davon', *adv.*, of that, of it, from that, from it.
dazu', *adv.*, besides, withal, for that, [**thereto**].
deklamieren, *v. w.*, *declaim*, recite.
Demokrat', *m. w.*, *democrat.*
denken, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **think**.
Denkmal, *n. s. 2–3*, monument.
denn, *conj.*, for; *adv.*, **then**.
der, die, das, *art.*, the; *dem.*, that; *rel.*, who, which, that.
deſto, *adv.*, so much the, the (*with compar.*).
deswegen, *adv.*, on that account, therefore.
deuten (auf, *acc.*), *v. w.*, point (to).
deutlich, *adj.*, plain, distinct; *as adv.*, plainly, distinctly.
Deutſch, *n.* (*indcl.*), German, [**Dutch**, cf. § 1, 1]; deutſch, *adj.*, German.
Deutſchland, *n.*, Germany.
Deze'mber, *m. s. 1*, *December.*
dicht, *adj.*, close, dense, thick, [**tight**].
Dichter, *m. s. 1*, poet.
Dichtung, *f. w.*, poetry.
dick, *adj.*, **thick**.
Dieb, *m. s. 2*, **thief**.
Diebin, *f. w.*, (female) **thief**.
Diener, *m. s. 1*, servant.
Dienſt, *m. s. 2*, service; —mädchen, *n. s. 1*, servant-girl.
Dienſtag, *m*, *s. 2*, Tuesday.
dies, *pron.* (*dem.*), **this**.

diesmal, *adv.*, this time, [-mole].
Ding, *n. s. 2*, thing.
Direk'tor, *m. mx.* (§ 98), *director.*
doch, *adv.*, yet, still, though, surely, really.
Doktor, *m. mx.* (§ 98), *doctor;* —titel, *m. s. 1*, doctor's *title.*
Dollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* ⸚), dollar.
Dom, *m. s. 2*, cathedral, *dome.*
Donnerstag, *m. s. 2*, Thursday.
Dorf, *n. s. 3*, village, [thorp, p. 34, n. 3]; —bewohner, *m. s. 1*, villager; —brunnen, *m. s. 1*, village-well.
Dörfchen, *n. s. 1*, little village.
dort, *adv.*, yonder, there.
Drama, *n. mx.*, *drama.*
drama'tiſch, *adj.*, *dramatic.*
draußen, *adv.*, outside (dr for dar, außen from aus).
drei, *num.*, three.
dreimal, *adv.*, three times, [-mole].
drinnen, *adv.*, therein, inside.
droben, *adv.*, up there.
drüben, *adv.*, over yonder, over there.
du, *pron.*, thou, you (§ 301).
dumm, *adj.*, stupid, [dumb].
dunkel, *adj.*, dark.
durch, *prep.* (*acc.*), through, by.
Durchſchnitt, *m. s. 2*, average, [through-cut].
dürfen, *v. w.* (§ 189), be permitted (§ 191, 1).
Dutzend, *n. s. 2*, *dozen.*

eben, *adv.*, even, just; —ſo . . . als, just as . . . as.
Ebene, *f. w.*, plain, [even].
edel, *adj.*, noble, [Ethel].
Edelmann, *m. s. 3* (§ 238, 2, *a*), noble-man.
ehe, *subj. conj.*, before.
eher, *adv.*, sooner, rather.
Ehre, *f. w.*, honor.
ehren, *v. w.*, honor.
ehrlich, *adj.*, honorable.
Ei, *n s. 3*, egg.
Eifer, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), zeal.
eigen, *adj.*, own.
ei'gentlich, *adj.*, real, actual; *as adv.*, really, properly, anyway.
Eigentum, *n. s. 3*, property, [own-dom].
Eigentümer, *m. s. 1*, own-er.
Eile, *f.* (*no pl.*), haste.
eilen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein), hurry, hasten.
ein, *art.*, a, an; *num.*, one; *pron.*, cf. § 116, 1, § 149.
einan'der, *pron.* (*indcl.*), each other, one another.
Eindruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), impression.
einfach, *adj.*, simple.
einfallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), come into one's head, occur to (*dat. of pers.*).
Einfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), influence.
einige, *pron. adj.*, some.
Einkauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), purchase; Einkäufe machen, to shop.
einladen, *v. s.*, invite.
Einladung, *f. w.*, invitation.
einlaſſen, *v. s. with* ſich, enter upon, go into, (auf, *acc.*).
ein'mal, *adv.*, once; einmal', one time (*indef.*), even, just, pray.
einſchränken, *v. w.*, limit.
Einſicht, *f. w.*, insight.
einſt, *adv.*, once, one day, some time.
Eintritt, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), admission, entrance, [-tread]; —billet, ticket of admission.
einzig, *adj.*, single, only, [one-ly]; *as adv.*, solely.
Eiſen, *n. s. 1*, iron; —bahn, railway, railroad, [iron-way].
elend, *adj.*, wretched, miserable.
Eltern, *pl. only*, parents, [elders].
empfehlen, *v. s.*, recommend.
empfinden, *v. s.*, feel, be sensible of.
Ende, *n. mx.* (*gen.* ⸚), end.
endlich, *adv.*, finally, at last, [end-].
eng, *adj.*, narrow.
Engländer, *m. s. 1*, Englishman.
engliſch, *adj.*, English.
Entdeckung, *f. w.*, discovery, [-thatch-].
entfernt, *adv.*, distant, far away, (from fern, far).
entgegen, *prep.* (*dat., follows governed word*), toward, in the direction of.
entgegenkommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), come toward, come to meet.

entgehen (*aux.* ſein), *v. s.* (*dat.*), escape.
enthalten, *v. s.*, contain, [-**hold**].
entſcheiden, *v. s.*, decide.
entſchließen (ſich), *v. s.*, resolve, determine.
Enttäuſchung, *f. w.*, disappointment.
entwerfen, *v. s.*, outline, plan.
er, *pron.*, he.
Erde, *f. w.*, **earth**.
erfahren, *v. s.*, ascertain, learn, [-fare].
Erfahrung, *f. w.*, experience, [-faring].
erfinden, *v. s.*, invent, [-**find**].
Erfindung, *f. w.*, invention, [-**find**-ing].
erfüllen, *v. w.*, ful-**fill**.
ergötzen (ſich), *v. w.*, delight in, take pleasure in (an, *dat.*).
erhalten, *v. s.*, keep, preserve; receive, [-**hold**].
erinnern, *v. w.*, remind; — ſich (*with gen.*), remember.
erkälten (ſich), *v. w.*, take **cold**.
Erkältung, *f. w.*, **cold**.
erklären, *v. w.*, explain, make *clear*.
Erklärung, *f. w.*, explanation.
erkranken, *v. w.*, sicken, be taken sick.
erlauben, *v. w.*, allow, permit.
erlügen, *v. s.*, invent for deception, [-lie].
ermüden, *v. w.*, tire, fatigue.
ernennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), appoint, -**name**.
erreichen, *v. w.*, -**reach**, come to.
erſchöpft, *ppl.*, exhausted, worn-out.
erſt, *adj.*, first, [**erst**]; *as adv.*, first, not until.
Erſtaunen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), astonishment.
erſtaunt, *ppl.*, astonished.
erwachen, *v. w.* (*intr.*), a-**wake**.
erwarten, *v. w.*, expect, [-**ward**].
erwecken, *v. w.* (*tr.*), a-**waken**.
erwidern, *v. w.*, reply, [wider = with].
erzählen, *v. w.*, relate, -**tell**.
Erzählung, *f. w.*, story, narrative, -tale.
erziehen, *v. s.*, bring up, educate.
es, *pron.*, it, there (§ 303).
eſſen, *v. s.*, **eat**.
etlich, *pron.*, *adj.*, some.
etwa, *adv.*, about, approximately.
etwas, *pron.* (*indef.*), something, anything; *as adv.*, somewhat.
euer, *pron.* (*poss.*), **your**.
Euro'pa, *n.*, *Europe*.
ewig, *adj.*, everlasting, eternal, [aye-].
Exa'men, *n. s.* (*pl.* -a'mina), *examination*.

fähig, *adj.*, capable (of = *gen.*), fit, suited (for, zu).
fahren, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), travel, go, [fare].
Fahrrad, *n. s. 3*, bicycle, [fare-; Rad = wheel].
Fahrt, *f. w.*, journey, trip.
Fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case, [**fall**].
fallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **fall**.
falſch, *adj.*, *false*, wrong; —er Name, assumed name.
Fami'lie, *f. w.*, *family*; —nbild, *n. s. 3*, family portrait; —nleben, *n. s. 1*, family life.
faſſen, *v. w.*, grasp, seize.
faſt, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
faul, *adj.*, lazy, idle, [**foul**].
Faulheit, *f.* (*no pl.*), laziness, idleness.
Februar', *m. s. 2*, *February*.
fechten, *v. s.*, **fight**.
Feder, *f. w.*, pen, **feather**.
fehlen, *v. w.*, *fail*, be lacking, missing; was fehlt (*with dat. of pers.*)—what is the matter (with)?
Fehler, *m. s. 1*, mistake, [*fail*-].
feiern, *v. w.*, celebrate.
Feiertag, *m. s. 2*, holiday.
Feind, *m. s. 2*, enemy, [**fiend**].
feind, *adj.*, hostile (to = *dat.*).
Feld, *n. s. 3*, **field**; —herr, *m. w.*, (§ 94, 1), commander-in-chief.
Felſen, *m. s. 1* (§ 279, 2, *a*), rock.
Fenſter, *n. s. 1*, window.
Ferien, *pl. only*, vacation.
Ferne, *f. w.*, distance, [**far**-].
fertig, *adj.*, ready, finished; — mit, through with.
Fertigkeit, *f. w.*, skill, proficiency.
feſt, firm, strong; *as adv.*, firmly, **fast**.

Feſt, *n. s. 2*, festival, **feast.**
Feuer, *n. s. 1*, **fire.**
Fieber, *n. s. 1*, *fever.*
finden, *v. s.*, **find**; — ſich, find one's self, be.
Finger, *m. s. 1*, **finger.**
finſter, *adj.*, dark.
Fleiſch, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), meat, **flesh.**
Fleiß, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), industry.
fleißig, *adj.*, industrious.
fließen (*aux.* ſein), *v. s.*, flow, [to fleet].
flüchtig, *adj.*, hasty, cursory; *as adv.*, hastily, hurriedly, [**flight-y**].
Flügel, *m. s. 1*, wing.
Fluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ⸗üſſe), river.
Folge, *f. w.*, consequence, result.
folgen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein, *dat.*), follow.
fort, *adv.*, away, **forth.**
fortan', *adv.*, hence-**forth**, hereafter.
fortfahren, *v. s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* haben), continue.
fortſetzen, *v. w.* (*tr.*), continue.
Foſſil', *n. mx.* (*pl.* ⸗ien), *fossil.*
Frage, *f. w.*, question.
fragen, *v. w.*, ask, inquire.
franzöſiſch, *adj.*, French.
Frau, *f. w.*, wife, lady, woman, Mrs.
Fräulein, *n. s. 1*, young lady, Miss.
frei, *adj.*, **free.**
freigebig, *adj.*, generous, liberal, [free-giv-ing].
Freiheit, *f. w.*, **free**-dom, liberty.
freilich, *adv.*, to be sure, [**freely**].
Freitag, *m. s. 2*, **Friday.**
fremd, *adj.*, strange, foreign; *as noun*, stranger (§ 290, 2).
Fremde, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), foreign land; in der —, abroad.
Freude, *f. w.*, joy, pleasure.
freuen, *v. w.*, rejoice; es freut mich, I am glad.
Freund, *m. s. 2*, **friend**; —in, *f. w.*, friend, lady friend.
freundlich, *adj.*, **friendly**, kind.
Freundſchaft, *f. w.*, **friendship.**
Friede, *m. mx.* (*gen.* ⸗n̈s), peace.
friſch, *adj.*, **fresh.**
froh, *adj.*, happy.
Frucht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), *fruit.*
fruchtbar, *adj.*, fertile, *fruit*-ful.
früh, *adj.*, early; —er, formerly.
Frühling, *m. s. 2*, spring.
Frühſtück, *n. s. 2*, breakfast, [**-stick**].
fühlen, *v. w.*, **feel.**
führen, *v. w.*, lead, conduct, carry on (as conversation, war, etc.).
Fülle, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), abundance, plenty, [**full**-ness].
fünf, *num.*, **five.**
für, *prep.* (*acc.*), **for.**
Furcht, *f.* (*no pl.*), fear, [**fright**].
fürchten, *v. w.*, fear.
furchtſam, *adj.*, timid, [**fright**-some].
Fuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ⸗üße), **foot**; —**ball**, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **football**; —**wande**rung, *f. w.*, pedestrian tour, tramp.

Gabel, *f. w.*, fork.
Gallerie', *f. w.*, *gallery.*
ganz, *adj.*, all, whole (§ 109, 3); *adv.*, quite, entirely; im —en, on the whole; — und gar, altogether, utterly.
gar, *adv.*, quite, altogether; — nicht, not at all.
Garten, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), **garden**, [**yard**]; —thor, *n. s. 2*, **garden**-gate, [**-door**].
Gärtner, *m. s. 1*, **gardener.**
Gaſt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **guest**; —haus, *n. s. 3*, inn.
Gebäude, *n. s. 1*, building.
geben, *v. s.*, **give**; es giebt (*with acc.*, § 340), there is, there are.
Gebirge, *n. s. 1*, mountains.
geboren, *ppl.*, **-born** (from gebären).
gebrauchen, *v. w.*, use.
Geburt, *f. w.*, **-birth**; —ſhaus, *n. s. 3*, **birth**-place; —ſtag, *m. s. 2*, **birthday.**
Gebüſch, *n. s. 2*, **bush**-es, thicket.
Gedanke, *m. mx.* (*gen.* ⸗n̈s), thought, idea.
gedenken, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), intend, purpose.
Gedicht, *n. s. 2*, poem.
Geduld, *f.* (*no pl.*), patience.
Gefahr, *f. w.*, danger, risk, [**-fear**].
gefährlich, *adj.*, dangerous, perilous.
gefallen, *v. s.* (*dat.*), please.
Gefallen, *m. mx.* (§ 279, 2), favor.

gefaßt, *ppl. adj.*, composed, calm.
Gefühl, *n. s. 2*, feel-ing.
gegen, *prep.* (*acc.*), against, towards, to [a-**gain**].
Gegend, *f. w.*, region, country.
Gegenſatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), contrast.
Gegenteil, *n. s. 2* (§ 235, 3), contrary, reverse; im —, on the contrary.
gegenü'ber, *prep.* (*dat., usually follows governed word*), opposite.
Gegner, *m. s. 1*, opponent, adversary.
gehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein), go; das geht nicht, that won't do.
gehören, *v. w.* (*dat.*), belong to.
Geiſt, *m. s. 3*, intelligence, spirit, ghost.
geläufig, *adj.*, fluent, ready; *as adv.*, fluently; (from laufen).
gelb, *adj.*, **yellow**.
Geld, *n. s. 3*, money, [**yield**].
Gelegenheit, *f. w.*, opportunity.
gelehrt, *ppl. adj.*, learnéd; *as noun*, scholar (§ 290, 2).
gelingen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein, *impers. with dat.*), succeed, be successful; es gelingt mir, I succeed.
gelten, *v. s.*, be at stake, involve, be a question *or* matter of, [**yield**].
gemein, *adj.*, common, ordinary, [-**mean**].
Gemüt, *n. s. 3*, feeling, soul, (from Mut, **mood**).
genau, *adj.*, exact, accurate, careful.
geneigt, *ppl. adj.*, inclined.
genießen, *v. s.*, enjoy.
genug, *adj.* (*indcl., follows noun*), enough.
genügen, *v. w.*, be **enough**, suffice.
gerade, *adv.*, exactly, just, [-**rath**-er].
gern, *adv.*, gladly, willingly; ich möchte gern, I should like; — haben, like, be fond of; — leſen, like to read, (cf. § 375, 1).
Gerücht, *n. s. 2*, rumor.
Geſchäft, *n. s. 2*, business (from ſchaffen, *v. w.*, to do).
geſchehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein, *3d pers. only*), happen; = *passive of* machen, thun, be done.
Geſchenk, *n. s. 2*, present, (from ſchenken).
Geſchichte, *f. w.*, story, history, (from geſchehen).
geſchichtlich, *adj.*, historical.
geſchickt, *adj.*, skillful.
Geſchmack, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä, *rare*), taste, [-**smack**].
Geſellſchaft, *f. w.*, society, company.
Geſicht, *n. s. 3* (§ 276, *a*), face, countenance, -**sight**.
Geſpenſt, *n. s. 3*, ghost, spook.
Geſpräch, *n. s. 2*, conversation, (from ſprechen).
geſtehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), confess.
geſtern, *adv.*, **yester**-day.
geſund, *adj.*, well, healthy, [-**sound**].
Geſundheit, *f. w.*, health, [**sound**-**hood**].
gewähren, *v. w.*, afford, grant.
gewaltig, *adj.*, powerful.
gewinnen, *v. s.*, gain, -**win**.
gewiß, *adj.*, certain; *adv.*, certainly; to be sure, [-**wit**].
Gewitter, *n. s. 1*, thunder-storm, [-**weather**].
gewöhnen (ſich), *v. w.*, accustom one's self (to, an, *acc.*).
gewöhnlich, *adj.*, usual, ordinary; *adv.*, usually.
gewohnt, *ppl. adj.*, accustomed.
gießen, *v. s.*, pour.
Gipfel, *m. s. 1*, peak, summit.
glänzen, *v. w.*, glitter, glisten, [glance].
Glas, *n. s. 3*, **glass**.
Glaube, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), belief, faith, [be-**lief**].
glauben, *v. w.*, be-**lieve** (§ 257, 1, *a*).
gleich, *adj.*, -**like**, a-**like**; *adv.*, directly.
gleich'falls, *adv.*, **like**-wise.
gleichviel', *adv.*, no matter, just the same.
Glocke, *f. w.*, bell, [**clock**]
Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), -**luck**, fortune; zum —, fortunately
glücklich, *adj.*, -**lucky**, fortunate, happy.
glücklicherweiſe, *adv.*, fortunately, [**lucky**-**wise**].
gnädig, *adj.*, gracious.
golden, *adj.*, **golden**, gold.
Goldſtück, *n. s. 2*, **gold**-piece, [-**stick**].

graben, *v. s.*, dig, [**grave**].
Grad, *m. s. 2*, degree, *grade*.
Graf, *m. w.*, count, [-**grave** in margrave].
Grammat'ik, *f. w.*, *grammar*.
Gras, *n. s. 3*, **grass**.
grau, *adj.*, **gray**.
greifen, *v. s.*, grasp, seize, **grip(e)**.
griechiſch, *adj.*, *Greek*.
groß, *adj.*, **great**, large; (*of stature*) tall.
Großmutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü), grandmother.
grün, *adj.*, **green**.
Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), reason, **ground**, foundation.
gründlich, *adj.*, thorough, [**ground**-].
Gruß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **greet**-ing.
gut, *adj.*, **good**; *adv.*, well.
Güte, *f.* (*no pl.*), **good**-ness, kindness.
Gymnaſium, *n. mx.*, *gymnasium*.

Haar, *n. s. 2*, **hair**.
haben, *v. w. irr.* (§ 171), **have**.
Hafen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), harbor, [**haven**].
halb, *adj.*, **half** (§ 109, 3).
Hals, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), neck, throat, [**halse**].
halten, *v. s.*, **hold**, consider (§ 265, 3, *c*); — von, think (much, little) of; Wort —, keep (one's) word.
Hand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **hand**.
Handel, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), trade, commerce, [**handle**].
handeln, *v. w.*, act, [**handle**]; es handelt ſich um, it is a question of.
Handelsfreiheit, *f. w.*, free-trade.
Handlung, *f. w.*, shop, store, [handling].
Handſchuh, *m. s. 2*, glove, [**hand**-**shoe**].
Hängematte, *f. w.*, hammock.
hangen, *v. s.*, **hang**.
häufig, *adj.*, frequent; *adv.*, often, [**heap**-].
Haupt, *n. s. 3*, **head**, chief (cf. § 276).
hauptſächlich, *adv.*, chiefly.
Hauptſtadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), capital, [**head**-**stead**, *i. e.* chief city].
Haus, *n. s. 3*, **house**; —herr, *m. w.*, —wirt, *m. s. 2*, man-of-the-house, landlord; —herrin, *f. w.*, governess; nach —e, home (homeward); zu —e, at home.
Häuschen, *n. s. 1*, little house, cottage.
heftig, *adj.*, violent.
hegen, *v. w.*, cherish, [**hedge**].
heilig, *adj.*, **holy**, sacred.
Heimat, *f. w.*, home, native place *or* country, [**home**-].
Heirat, *f. w.*, marriage.
heiß, *adj.*, **hot**.
heißen, *v. s.*, be called, [be **hight**].
heiter, *adj.*, cheerful.
Held, *m. w.*, hero.
Heldin, *f. w.*, heroine.
helfen, *v. s.* (*dat.*), **help**; das hilft nichts, that avails nothing, does no good.
hell, *adj.*, bright, clear, light.
her, *adv.*, hither, along.
Herbſt, *m. s. 2*, autumn, [**harvest**].
herein', *adv.*, in hither, in here (§ 210, 2).
hereinbrechen, *v. s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* ſein), set in.
Herr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1), gentleman, sir, Mr.
herrlich, *adj.*, glorious, splendid.
herumgehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein), walk about.
Herz, *n. mx.* (§ 97, 2, *a*), **heart**; —ensfreund, *m. s. 2*, bosom-friend.
herzlich, *adj.*, **heart**-y, sincere, cordial.
heulen, *v. w.*, **howl**.
heute, *adv.*, to-day; heutzutage, nowadays.
heutig, *adj.*, of to-day, to-day's.
Hexe, *f. w.*, witch, [**hag**].
hier, *adv.*, **here**.
Hilfe, *f.* (*no pl.*), **help**.
Himmel, *m. s. 1*, heaven, sky.
hinaus', *adv.*, **out** thither, out there (§ 210, 2).
hinausgehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **go out** (there).
hindern, *v. w.*, **hinder**, prevent.
Hindernis, *n. s. 2*, hindrance, difficulty, [**hinder**-**ness**].
Hinſicht, *f. w.*, respect, [-**sight**].
hinter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), be-**hind**.
Hintergrund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **back**-**ground**.

Hinterwäldler, *m. s. 1*, backwoodsman.
hinüberfliehen (*aux.* ſein), *v. s.*, flee over.
hinübergehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein), go over.
hiſto'riſch, *adj.*, *historical.*
hoch, *adj.*, high (§ 109, 1).
höchſtens, *adv.*, at the most.
Hof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), court; —leben, *n. s. 1*, court-life.
hoffen, *v. w.*, hope.
Hoffnung, *f. w.*, hope, [hoping].
höflich, *adj.*, polite.
Höflichkeit, *f. w.*, politeness.
Höhe, *f. w.*, height.
holen, *v. w.*, fetch, get, [hale].
Holz, *n. s. 3*, wood, forest, [holt].
Honorar', *n. s. 2*, fee.
hören, *v. w.*, hear.
hübſch, *adj.*, pretty.
Hügel, *m. s. 1*, hill.
Hund, *m. s. 2*, dog, [hound].
hundert, *num.*, hundred.
hungrig, *adj.*, hungry.
Hut, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), hat, [hood].
hüten (ſich), *v. w.*, be on one's guard, [heed].

ich, *pron.*, I.
ihr, *poss. pron.*, her, their; Ihr, your.
immer, *adv.*, always.
in, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), in, into.
indem', *sub. conj.*, while, since.
indeſ'ſen, *adv.*, meanwhile, however.
Inhalt, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), contents, [in-hold].
Inſel, *f. w.*, island.
intereſſant', *adj.*, *interesting.*
Intereſ'ſe, *n. mx.* (*gen.* -ſſes), *interest.*
irgend, *pron.* (*indcl.*), any, some (§ 152).
Irrtum, *m. s. 3*, error, [err-dom].
italie'niſch, *adj.*, *Italian.*

ja, *adv.*, yes; of course, you know (§ 380, 1, *d*).
Jäger, *m. s. 1*, hunter.
Jahr, *n. s. 2*, year; —esfeſt, *n. s. 2*, annual festival; —estag, *m. s. 2*, anniversary; —eszeit, *f. w.*, season.
Jahrhun'dert, *n. s. 2*, century.
Januar', *m. s. 2*, *January.*
jed-, *pron.*, every, each.
jedenfalls, *adv.* at any rate.
jedermann, *pron.* (*indcl.*), every one (§ 153).
jedoch, *adv.*, nevertheless, yet.
jemand, *pron.*, *indef.*, some one, any one (§ 154).
jen-, *dem. pron.*, that, [yon].
jetzt, *adv.*, now, [yet].
jetzig, *adj.*, present (from jetzt).
Jugend, *f.* (*no pl.*), youth.
Ju'li, *m. s.*, *July.*
jung, *adj.*, young.
Junge, *m. w.*, boy, lad.
Jungfrau, *f. w.*, maid.
Jüngling, *m. s. 2*, youth, young man.
Ju'ni, *m. s.*, *June.*

Kaffee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), *coffee.*
Kahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), boat, rowboat.
Kaiſer, *m. s. 1*, emperor, [*Cæsar*].
kalt, *adj.*, cold.
Kälte, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), cold.
Kamerad', *m. w.*, *comrade*, companion.
Kandidat', *m. w.*, *candidate.*
Kanzel, *f. w.*, pulpit, *chancel.*
Kapital', *n. s. 2* (*pl. also* -ien), *capital*, principal.
Kapitän', *m. s. 2*, *captain.*
Karte, *f. w.*, *card.*
Kaſten, *m. s. 1*, box.
Kathedra'le, *f. w.*, *cathedral;* Kathedral'kirche, *f. w.*, cathedral -church.
Kauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), purchase, [chap, cheap].
kaufen, *v. w.*, buy.
Kaufmann, *m. s. 3* (§ 238, 2, *a*), merchant, [chap-man].
kaum, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.
kein, *adj.*, no, not a, none (§ 155).
keineswegs, *adv.*, by no means, in no way.
kennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), know, be acquainted with, [ken].
Kenntnis, *f. s. 2*, knowledge.
Kerl, *m. s. 2*, fellow, [churl].
Kerlchen, *n. s. 1*, little fellow.
Kind, *n. s. 3*, child.
Kindheit, *f.* (*no pl.*), child-hood.

Kirche, *f. w.*, **church**, [**kirk**].
Kiſſen, *n. s. 1*, *cushion*.
klar, *adj.*, *clear*.
Klaſſe, *f. w.*, *class*.
Klavier', *n. s. 2*, piano, [*clavier*]; —ſtunde, *f. w.*, piano-lesson.
Kleid, *n. s, 3*, garment, dress; *pl.* clothes, [**cloth**].
Kleidung, *f. w.*, **clothing**, apparel; —ſtück, *n. s. 2*, article of clothing.
klein, *adj.*, small.
Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*, trifle, small matter.
Klima, *n. s.* (*pl.* -ta or -te), *climate*.
klimmen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **climb**.
klingen, *v. s.*, sound, [**clink**].
klopfen, *v. w.*, knock.
Kloſter, *n. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), convent, *cloister*.
klug, *adj.*, clever, ingenious.
Klugheit, *f.* (*no pl.*), prudence, cleverness, shrewdness.
Knabe, *m. w.*, boy, [**knave**]; -nſchule, *f. w.*, boys'-*school*.
Koffer, *m. s. 1*, trunk, [*coffer*].
kommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **come**.
Komponiſt', *m. w.*, *composer*.
König, *m. s. 2*, **king**.
Königin, *f. w.*, queen.
königlich, *adj.*, royal, **kingly**.
können, *v. w.* (§ 189), **can**, be able.
Konzert', *n. s. 2*, *concert*.
Kopf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), head, [**cup**].
Kopfſchmerz, *m. mx.*, headache, [-smart].
Kopfweh, *n. s. 2*, headache, [-woe].
Koſt, *f. w.*, fare, board, [*cost*].
koſten, *v. w.*, *cost*.
Koſten, *w.* (*pl. only*), *cost(s)*, expense.
Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), force, strength, [**craft**].
kräftig, *adj.*, strong, pithy, [**crafty**].
kraftvoll, *adj.*, powerful, [**craft-full**].
krank, *adj.*, sick, ill.
Krankheit, *f. w.*, sickness, illness, disease; —ſall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case of sickness.
Krieg, *m. s. 2*, war; —ſchiff, *n. s. 2*, war-**ship**, man-of-war.
Krone, *f. w.*, *crown*.
Kronprinz, *m. w.*, *crown prince*.
Küche, *f. w.*, *kitch*-en.
kühl, *adj.*, **cool**.
kümmern, *v. w.*, trouble, concern; — ſich, care (about, um).
künftig, *adj.*, coming, next, future.
Kunſt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), art; —geſchmack, *m. s.*, artistic taste.
kurieren, *v. w.*, *cure*, treat.
Kurſus, *m.* (*pl.* Kurſus *or* Kurſe), *course*.
kurz, *adj.*, short, [*curt*]; *as adv.* (*of time*), shortly.
kürzlich, *adv.*, lately, recently.
Kutſche, *f. w.*, *coach*.

lachen, *v. w.*, **laugh**.
Laden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), store, shop.
Lage, *f. w.*, situation, location, position, [**lay**].
Land, *n. s. 2–3* (p. 46, n. 10), **land**, country; auf dem —e, in the country.
Landsmann, *m. s. 3* (*pl.* -leute, but see § 238, 2, *a*,) countryman, fellow-countryman.
lang, *adj.*, **long**; ſeit —em, for a long time (past).
lange, *adv.*, **long**, for a long time.
Länge, *f. w.* length, [**leng-th**].
längs, *prep.* (*gen.*), along.
langſam, *adj.*, slow; *as adv.*, slowly, [**long-some**].
längſt, *adv.*, long since.
langweilig, *adj.*, dull, tedious, [**long-while-y**].
laſſen, *v. s.*, **let**, cause; (etwas) thun —, have (something) done (§ 366, 1, *a*).
Latein', *n. s.* (§ 290, 1), *Latin*.
latei'niſch, *adj.*, Latin.
laufen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), run, [**leap**].
lauten, *v. w.*, purport, run.
lauter, *adv.*, exclusively, none but.
leben, *v. w.*, **live**.
Leben, *n. s. 1*, life, [**live**].
lebhaft, *adj.*, **live**-ly; *as adv.*, keenly.
legen, *v. w.*, **lay**.
Lehnſtuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), easy-chair, [**lean-stool**].
Lehrbuch, *n. s. 3*, text-**book**.
Lehrer, *m. s. 1*, (man) teacher; —in, *f. w.*, woman teacher.
lehrreich, *adj.*, instructive, [-**rich**].

leicht, *adj.*, **light**, easy; *as adv.*, easily, readily.
leid, *adj.*, disagreeable; es thut mir —, I am sorry, [**loath**].
leiden, *v. s.*, suffer, [**loathe**].
Leiden, *n. s. 1*, suffering, trouble.
leider, *adv.*, unfortunately, alas!
leise, *adv.*, softly, in low tone.
Lektü're, *f. w.*, text for reading, [*lecture*].
lernen, *v. w.*, **learn**.
Lesebuch, *n. s. 3*, reading-book, reader.
lesen, *v. s.*, read.
Leser, *m. s. 1*, reader.
letzt, *adj.*, **last**.
Leute, *pl. only*, people.
Licht, *n. s. 3* (§ 276, *a*), **light**.
lieb, *adj.*, dear, [**lief**]; — haben, to like, be fond of, [**have lief**].
Liebe, *f. w.*, **love**; —sscene, *f. w.*, love-scene; —sbrief, *m. s. 2*, love-letter.
lieben, *v. w.*, **love**.
liebenswürdig, *adj.*, lovely, [**love-worthy**].
lieber, *adv.*, rather, preferably, [**liefer**].
liebgewinnen, *v. s.*, grow fond of.
lieblich, *adj.*, **lovely**, sweet(-scented).
Lied, *n. s. 3*, song.
liegen, *v. s.*, **lie**, be situated.
link, *adj.*, left.
Liste, *f. w.*, *list*.
Lit'teratur', *f. w.*, *literature*.
loben, *v. w.*, praise, [**love**].
Loch, *n. s. 3*, hole, [**lock**].
Löffel, *m. s. 1*, spoon, [to **lap**].
lohnen (sich), *v. w.*, be worth while.
los, *adj.*, ridof, free from, **loose**, **-less**.
los'brechen, *v. s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* sein), **break loose**, burst.
Luft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), air, breeze; —schloß, *n. s. 3*, castle-in-the-air.
lügen, *v. s.*, **lie**, tell a falsehood.
Lust, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), desire, [**lust**].
lustig, *adj.*, jolly, [**lusty**].
Lustspiel, *n. s. 2*, comedy.

machen, *v. w.*, **make**; sich auf den Weg —, set out, start.
Macht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), power, **might**.
Mädchen, *n. s. 1*, girl, maiden, [**maid-kin**]; —schule, *f. w.*, girls'-school.
Magd, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **maid**, maid-servant.
Mai, *m. s. 2*, *May*.
Mal, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 276, *a*), time, [**mole**]; ein'mal, once; ein paar-mal, a few times.
Maler, *m. s. 1*, painter, artist.
Malerei', *f. w.*, painting.
man, *pron.*, *indef.*, one, they, people (§ 156), [**man**].
manch, *pron.*, *adj.*, **many**, **many** a; —mal, many a time, often.
Mann, *m. s. 3*, **man**.
mannigfaltig, *adj.*, **manifold**.
Mantel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), *mantle*, cloak.
Mark, *f. w.*, **mark**.
Mathematik', *f. w.* (*no pl.*), *mathematics*.
Mauer, *f. w.*, wall, [*mure*].
Medizin', *f. w.* (*no pl.*), *medicine*.
Meer, *n. s. 2*, sea, [**mere**].
mehr, *adj.*, more; *as adv.*, **more**; nicht —, no longer.
mehrere, *pron.*, *adj.*, several (§ 158), [**more-**].
Mehrheit, *f. w.*, majority, [**more-hood**, *i.e.* more-ness].
mehrmals, *adv.*, several times, frequently.
Meile, *f. w.*, *mile*.
meilenweit, *adv.*, for miles.
mein, *pron.*, *poss.*, my, **mine**.
meinen, *v. w.*, **mean**.
meistens, *adv.*, **most-ly**.
Meister, *m. s. 1*, *master*.
Menge, *f. w.*, mass, multitude, great number, [**many**].
Mensch, *m. w.*, man, mankind (from Mann).
menschlich, *adj.*, human.
merken, *v. w.*, notice, **mark**.
merkwürdig, *adj.*, remarkable, [**mark-worthy**].
Messe, *f. w.*, fair, *mass*.
Messer, *n. s. 1*, knife, [**meat**].
Metho'de, *f. w.*, *method*.
Miete, *f. w.*, hire, rent, [**meed**].
mild, *adj.*, **mild**, gentle.
mindestens, *adv.*, at least.
Mineral', *n. mx.* (*p.* -ien), *mineral*.

Minu'te, *f. w.*, *minute.*
mit, *prep.* (*dat.*), with, [**mid** in **mid**-wife]; *adv.*, along.
Mittag, *m. s. 2*, **mid-day**, noon.
mitteilen, *v. w.*, impart, tell, inform of, [**-deal**].
mittel, *adj.*, **middle.**
Mittelalter, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), **Middle** Ages.
Mittelpunkt, *m. s. 2*, central *point*, center.
Mittelweg, *m. s. 2*, **middle way** *or* course.
Mittwoch, *m. s. 2*, Wednesday, [mid-week].
Mode, *f. w.*, fashion, *mode.*
mögen, *v. w.* (§ 189), **may**, wish, like (§ 191, 3).
möglich, *adj.*, possible (from mögen).
Monat, *m. s. 2*, **month**; —ēſchrift, *f. w.*, **month**-ly (journal *or* magazine).
Mönch, *m. s. 2*, *monk.*
Mond, *m. s. 2*, **moon.**
mondhell, *adj.*, **moon**-light.
Montag, *m. s. 2*, **Monday.**
Morgen, *m. s. 1*, **morn**-ing; —blatt, *n. s. 3*, morning paper; —luft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), morning air *or* breeze.
morgen, *adv.*, to-**morrow** (= Morgen, **morn**).
müde, *adj.*, tired.
Mühe, *f. w.*, pains, trouble; der — (*gen.*) wert, worth while.
Mund, *m. s. 2–3* (*pl. rare*), **mouth.**
Muſe'um, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ſe'en), *museum.*
Muſik', *f. w.*, *music.*
müſſen, *v. w.* (§ 189), **must**, be obliged, be compelled, have to.
Mut, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), courage, **mood.**
Mutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü), **mother**; —ſprache, mother-tongue, native language.

nach, *prep.* (*dat.*), after, to, toward, according to, [**nigh**].
Nachbar, *m. mx.*, **neighbor.**
nachdem', *sub. conj.*, after.
nachher', *adv.*, afterward, subsequently.
Nachmittag, *m. s. 2*, afternoon, [**-mid-day**].
Nachricht, *f. w.*, report, news, tidings.
nächſt, *see under* nah.
Nacht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **night.**
nah, *adj.*, near, **nigh** (§ 114, 2); nächſt, *superl.*, nearest, **next.**
Nähe, *f. w.*, vicinity, [**nigh**-ness].
Name, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), **name**; —nsvetter, *m. mx.*, namesake; Namens, by name.
nämlich, *adv.*, **namely**, that is to say.
Narr, *m. w.*, fool.
Naſe, *f. w.*, **nose.**
naß, *adj.*, wet, [**nas**-ty].
Nation', *f. w.*, *nation.*
Natur', *f. w.*, *nature;* —ſchönheit, *f. w.*, beauty of nature; —wiſſenſchaft, *f. w.*, natural science.
Natura'lien, *pl. only*, *natural* curiosities.
natür'lich, *adv.*, naturally, of course.
Nebel, *m. s. 1*, fog, mist.
neben, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), beside, close by, next to, alongside, along with.
Nebenfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe), tributary.
Neffe, *m. w.*, nephew.
nehmen, *v. s.*, take.
nein, *adv.*, no, [**none**].
nennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **name.**
Neſt, *n. s. 3*, **nest.**
nett, *adj.*, *neat*, nice.
neu, *adj.*, new.
Neugierde, *f. w.*, curiosity.
neugierig, *adj.*, curious (gierig, eager for).
neulich, *adv.*, lately, recently, [**newly**].
nicht, *adv.*, not, [**naught**].
nichts (§ 320, 2), *indcl.*, nothing.
nie, *adv.*, never.
nieder, *adv.*, down, [**nether**].
niederbrennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), burn down.
niederſetzen (ſich), *v. w.*, sit down, [**-set**].
niedrig, *adj.*, low, [**nether-y**].
niemals, *adv.*, never.
niemand, *pron.*, *indef.*, no one, nobody (§ 160).
noch, *adv.*, yet, still; — nicht, not yet; *conj.*, nor.

nochmals, *adv.* again, once more.
Norden, *m. s. 1*, **north.**
Nordſeite, *f. w.*, **north side.**
Nordlicht, *n. s. 3*, **North**-ern Light-s.
Not, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), **need**, distress.
Notfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case of **need**, emergency.
nötig, *adj.*, **need**-ful, necessary.
Notiz', *f. w.*, note, *notice.*
Numero, *m.* (*indcl.*), at No.
nun, *adv.*, now, well.
nur, *adv.*, only, just.
Nuß, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **nut.**

o, *interj.*, **O**, oh.
ob, *sub. conj.*, whether ; als —, as if (§ 359, 3).
Obdach, *n. s. 3*, shelter, [-**thatch**].
oben, *adv.*, above, [ab-**ove**].
ober, *adj.*, upper.
obgleich', *sub. conj.*, although.
Obſt, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), fruit.
obwohl', *sub. conj.*, although.
oder, *conj.*, or.
Ofen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ö), stove, [oven].
offenbar, *adj.*, evident, plain; *as adv.*, evidently, clearly, [**open**-].
öffnen, *v. w.*, **open.**
oft, *adv.*, often, **oft.**
öfters, *adv.* (*comp. of* oft), often, frequently.
ohne, *prep.* (*acc.*), without.
Ohr, *n. mx.*, **ear.**
Onkel, *m. s. 1*, *uncle.*
Oper, *f. w.*, *opera.*
Ort, *m. s. 2–3* (§ 275, 2, *a*), place.
Oſtern, *w.*, *pl. only*, **Easter.**

Paar, *n. s. 2*, *pair;* ein paar, a few.
Palaſt', *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *palace.*
Papier', *n. s. 2*, *paper.*
Park, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* Parks), *park.*
paſſen, *v. w.* (*dat.*), fit, suit.
Paſtor, *m. mx.*, *pastor.*
Pauſe, *f. w.*, *pause*, recess.
Penſion', *f. w.*, board, boarding-house; — haben bei, to board with.
Perſon', *f. w.*, *person.*
Pfad, *m. s. 2*, **path.**
Pfeife, *f. w.*, *pipe.*
Pfennig, *m. s. 2*, **penny.**
Pferd, *n. s. 2*, horse, [*palfrey*].
Pfingſten, *pl. only*, Whitsuntide, *Pentecost.*
Pflicht, *f. w.*, duty, [**plight**].
Philoſophie', *f. w.*, *philosophy.*
Photographie', *f. w.*, *photograph.*
Plan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *plan.*
Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *place*, seat.
plaudern, *v. w.*, chat.
plötzlich, *adj.*, sudden; *adv.*, suddenly.
Politik', *f. w.* (*no pl.*), *politics.*
politiſch, *adj.*, *political.*
Polizei', *f. w.*, *police.*
Poliziſt', *m. w.*, policeman.
Poſt, *f. w.*, mail, *post.*
prächtig, *adj.*, splendid.
Präſident', *m. w.*, *president;* —enwahl, *f. w.*, presidential election.
Preis, *m. s. 2*, *price.*
Preſſe, *f. w.*, *press.*
Preßfreiheit, *f. w.*, freedom of the press.
Prinz, *m. w.*, *prince.*
Profeſſor, *m. mx.*, *professor.*
Prolog', *m. s. 2*, *prologue.*
Proſa, *f.* (*no pl.*), *prose.*
Prozent', *n. s. 2*, per *cent.*
Prüfung, *f. w.*, trial, test, *proving.*
Pult, *m.* (*and n.*) *s. 2*, desk [*pulpit*].
Punkt, *m. s. 2*, *point.*

quälen (ſich), *v. w.*, be tormented, be bored.
quer, *adv.*, across, [**queer**].

Rad, *n. s. 3*, wheel.
Rand, *m. s. 3*, edge, border, [**rand**].
raſch, *adj.*, fast, [**rash**].
Rat, *m. s.* (*no pl. in this sense*), advice, counsel.
raten, *v. s.*, guess, advise, [**read, rede**].
Räuber, *m. s. 1*, **robber**; Straßen—, footpad.
rauchen, *v. w.*, smoke, [**reek**].
rauh, *adj.*, **rough**, harsh.
rechnen, *v. w.*, **reckon**, count (on, auf, *acc.*).
recht, *adj.*, **right**, right-hand; *adv.* right, very.

Recht, *n. s. 2*, **right**; recht haben, to be right (*of persons only*).
Rede, *f. w.*, speech, address; —freiheit, *f. w.*, freedom of speech.
reden, *v. w.*, talk.
redlich, *adj.*, honest, candid.
Redlichkeit, *f.* (*no pl.*), honesty.
Reform', *f. w.*, *reform.*
Regel, *f. w.*, *rule.*
regelmäßig, *adj.*, *regul*-ar.
Regen, *m. s. 1*, **rain**; —ſchirm, *m. s. 2*, umbrella; —tag, *m. s. 2*, rainy day.
regnen, *v. w.*, **rain.**
reich, *adj.*, **rich.**
Reich, *n. s. 2*, empire, [**rich**].
reichen, *v. w.*, **reach**, hand.
reichlich, *adj.*, plentiful, abundant; *as adj.*, **richly.**
Reichtum, *m. s. 3*, **rich**-es.
reif, *adj.*, **ripe**, mature.
Reihe, *f. w.*, **row.**
Reiſe, *f. w.*, journey, trip, [**rise**]; —kamerad', *m. w.*, traveling companion (*comrade*); —plan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), route.
reiſen *v. w.* (*aux.* § 323, 1, *c*), travel, [**rise**]; der Reiſende, *pres. ppl. as noun* (§ 290, 2), traveler.
reiten, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **ride.**
Reiter, *m. s. 1*, **rider**, horseman.
Reitpferd, *n. s. 2.*, saddle-horse.
Reiz, *m. s. 2*, charm.
reizend, *ppl. adj.*, charming.
Republik', *f. w.*, *republic.*
Republika'ner, *m. s. 1*, *republican.*
reſervieren, *v. w.*, *reserve.*
retten, *v. w.*, rescue, save, [**rid**].
Reue, *f.* (*no pl.*), regret, repentance, [to **rue**].
Rhein, *m. s.*, Rhine; —fahrt, *f. w.*, trip, *or* sail, on the Rhine.
Rheumatismus, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), *rheumatism.*
richten, *v. w.*, judge, (from recht).
richtig, *adj.*, **right**, correct.
Richtung, *f. w.*, direction.
riechen, *v. s.*, smell, [**reek**].
Ring, *m. s. 2*, **ring.**
Ritter, *m. s. 1*, knight, [**rider**].
Rock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), coat; (*of women's apparel*) skirt.
Rolle, *f. w.*, *rôle*, part.
Roman', *m. s. 2*, novel, *romance.*
römiſch, *adj.*, Roman.
Roſe, *f. w.*, *rose.*
rot, *adj.*, **red.**
Rückkehr, *f. w.*, return.
Rückreiſe, *f. w.*, return journey.
Rückweg, *m. s. 2*, return, **way** back.
rufen, *v. s.*, call, summon.
Ruhe, *f.* (*no pl.*), rest.
ruhen, *v. w.*, rest.
ruhig, *adj.*, quiet.

Saal, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Säle), hall, (large) room; Konzert—, concert-hall.
Sache, *f. w.*, affair, thing, [**sake**].
Sage, *f. w.*, tradition, legend, story, [**say**].
ſagen, *v. w.*, **say**, tell.
Salaman'der, *m s. 1*, *salamander.*
Sammlung, *f. w.*, collection.
Samstag, *m. s. 2*, Saturday.
ſanft, *adj.*, gentle, **soft.**
ſauer, *adj.*, bitter, **sour.**
Scene, *f. w.*, *scene.*
Schade, *m. nx* (*pl.* Schäden), injury, loss; das iſt ſchade, that is a pity, [**scathe**].
ſchämen (ſich), *v. w.*, be ashamed (of = *gen.*), [**shame**].
ſchändlich, *adj.*, shameful, disgraceful.
Schatten, *m. s. 1*, **shade, shadow.**
ſchätzen, *v. w.*, value, esteem.
ſchaukeln, *v. w.*, rock.
Schaukelpferd, *n. s. 2*, rocking-horse.
Schaukelſtuhl, *m. s 2* (*pl.* ü), rocking-chair, [**stool**].
Schauplatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), scene, [**show** *place*].
Schauſpieler, *m. s. 1*, actor, [**show**-].
Schauſpielerin, *f. w.*, actress.
Schein, *m. s. 2*, appearance(s), [**shine**].
ſcheinbar, *adj.*, seeming, apparent; *as adv.*, seemingly.
ſcheinen, *v. s*, seem, **shine.**
Schelm, *m. s. 2*, rogue, scamp.
ſchenken, *v. w.*, present, give.
ſchicken, *v. w.*, send.

ſchießen, *v. s.*, shoot.
Schießpulver, *n. s. 1*, gunpowder, [shoot-*powder*].
Schiff, *n. s. 2*, **ship**; Kriegs—, war-ship, man-of-war.
Schinken, *m s. 1*, ham.
Schlacht, *f. w.*, battle, [**slaught**-er].
Schlaf, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **sleep**; —zimmer, bedroom.
ſchlafen, *v. s.*, **sleep**.
ſchlagen, *v. s.*, strike, [**slay**].
ſchlecht, *adj.*, bad, poor, [**slight**].
ſchließen, *v. s.*, close, conclude, infer.
ſchlimm, *adj.*, bad, [**slim**].
Schlittſchuh, *m. s. 2*, skate, [**slide**-shoe].
Schloß, *n. s. 3* (*pl.* ¨öſſer), castle, [**slot**].
Schluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ¨üſſe), end, close.
Schlüſſel, *m. s. 1*, key.
ſchmal, *adj.*, narrow, [**small**].
ſchmeichelhaft, *adj.*, flattering.
ſchmeicheln, *v. w.* (*dat.*), flatter.
Schmerz, *m. mx.*, pain, grief, [**smart**]; Kopf—, headache; Zahn—, toothache.
ſchmerzen, *v. w.*, pain, grieve, [**smart**].
Schnee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **snow**.
Schneider, *m. s. 1*, tailor.
ſchneien, *v. w.*, **snow**.
ſchnell, *adj.*, swift, quick; *adv.*, quickly, fast, [**snell**].
Schnellzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), express train.
ſchon, *adv.*, already, quite.
ſchön, *adj.*, beautiful, lovely, [**sheen**].
Schönheit, *f. w.*, beauty; Natur—, beauty of nature.
ſchrecklich, *adj.*, terrible.
ſchreiben, *v. s.*, write, [**shrive**, *scribe*, *scrib-ble*].
ſchreien, *v. s.*, call, cry, scream.
ſchreiten, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), step, stride.
Schrift, *f. w.*, writing, [**shrift**, *script*].
Schriftſteller, *m. s. 1*, writer, author.
Schritt, *m. s. 2*, step.
Schuh, *m. s. 2*, **shoe**.
Schuhmacher, *m. s. 1*, **shoemaker**.
Schuld, *f. w.*, debt, guilt, [**should**]; er iſt daran (*dat.*) ſchuld, it is his fault.
ſchuldig, *adj.*, indebted, guilty; — ſein, to owe.
Schule, *f. w.*, *school*.
Schüler, *m. s. 1*, *scholar*, pupil.
Schuljahr, *n. s. 2*, *school*-**year**.
Schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ¨üſſe), **shot**.
Schuſter, *m. s. 1*, cobbler.
ſchweigen, *v. s.*, be silent.
Schweigen, *n. s. 1* (*no pl.*), silence (§ 365).
Schweiz, *f.* (§ 225, 3), **Switz**-erland.
ſchwer, *adj.*, heavy, hard, grave, serious.
ſchwerlich, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely.
Schweſter, *f. w.*, **sister**.
Schwiegervater, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), father-in-law.
Schwierigkeit, *f. w.*, difficulty.
ſchwimmen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **swim**.
ſchwinden, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), vanish, disappear.
Schwindſucht, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), consumption.
ſchwören, *v. s.*, **swear**.
See, *f. w.* (*pl.* Seen *or* Seeen), **sea**, ocean; —reiſe, *f. w.*, —fahrt, *f. w.*, voyage.
ſeekrank, *adj.*, **sea**-sick.
Seele, *f. w.*, soul.
ſehen, *v. s.*, **see**.
Se'henswür'digkeit, *f. w.*, sight, object, *or* place, of interest, [something **worth seeing**].
ſehnen (ſich), *v. w.*, long (for, nach).
ſehr, *adv.*, very, much, [**sore**].
ſein, *v. irr.* (§ 171), be.
ſein, *pron. poss.*, his, its, one's.
ſeit, *prep.* (*dat.*), since, (*duration of time*) for.
Seite, *f. w.*, **side**, page.
ſelbſt, *pron.*, **self**, myself, etc.
ſelten, *adj.*, rare; *adv.*, **seldom**.
ſeltſam, *adj.*, strange, quaint.
Semmel, *f. w.*, roll (bread).
ſenden, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **send**.
September, *m. s. 1*, *September*.
ſetzen, *v. w.*, **set**, **seat**, put; ſich —, to sit down.
ſich, *pron., refl.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

ſicher, *adj.*, *secure*, *sure*, certain; *as adv.*, surely.
Sie, *pron.*, you; ſie, she, they, her, them.
Sieg, *m. s. 2*, victory.
Silber, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), silver.
ſilbern, *adj.*, silver.
ſingen, *v. s.*, sing.
ſinken, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), sink.
Sinn, *m. s. 2*, sense, mind.
Sitte, *f. w.*, habit, custom.
ſittlich, *adj.*, moral.
Sitz, *m. s. 2*, seat, [sit].
ſitzen, *v. s.*, sit.
ſo, *adv.*, so, thus; *in exclamations and questions*, indeed!? ſo . . . als, as . . . as (§ 381, 1, *h*); ſo *introducing principal verb after subordinate clause usually not translated*, cf. p. 111, n. 2.
ſoeben, *adv.*, just now, just, [so-even].
Sofa, *n. s.* (*pl.* ö), *sofa*, lounge.
ſofort', *adv.*, at once.
ſogar', *adv.*, actually, even.
ſogenannt', *adj.*, so-called.
Sohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), son.
ſolch, *pron.*, *adj.*, such (§ 135).
Soldat', *m. w.*, *soldier*.
ſollen, *v. w.* (§ 189), shall, ought, be to, be said to (§ 191, 5).
Sommer, *m. s. 1*, summer.
ſonderbar, *adj.*, strange, peculiar, [a-sunder, sundr-y].
ſondern, *conj.*, but (§ 379, 1).
Sonnabend, *m. s. 2*, Saturday, [eve of Sun-day].
Sonne, *f. w.*, sun; —naufgang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), sunrise; —nſtrahl, *m. mx.*, sunbeam.
Sonntag, *m. s. 2*, Sunday.
ſonſt, *adv.*, else, otherwise.
Sorge, *f. w.*, care, concern, anxiety, [sorrow].
ſorgfältig, *adj.* careful.
Spa'nier, *m. s. 1*, *Spaniard*.
ſpaniſch, *adj.*, *Spanish*.
ſparen, *v. w.*, save, spare.
ſparſam, *adj.*, saving, economical, [spare-some].
Sparſamkeit, *f. w.*, economy.
Spaß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), jest, joke.
ſpät, *adj.*, late.
ſpäteſtens, *adv.*, at the latest.
ſpazie'ren, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein), walk, saunter; —gehen, take a walk, go walking.
Spazier'gang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), walk; einen — machen, take a walk.
Spiegel, *m. s. 1*, mirror.
ſpielen, *v. w.*, play.
Spielkamerad', *m. w.*, playmate, [*-comrade*].
Spitze, *f. w.*, point, top, [spit].
Sprache, *f. w.*, language.
Sprachlehrer, *m. s. 1*, language-teacher.
Sprachſtunde, *f. w.*, language-lesson.
ſprechen, *v. s.*, speak.
Sprichwort, *n. s. 3*, proverb.
ſpringen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), spring, jump.
Spruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), saying.
Staat, *m. mx.*, *state*.
Stadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), city, [stead, *i.e.* place]; —haus, *n. s. 3*, city-hall; —kirche, *f. w.*, city church; —muſeum, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ſe'en), city museum; —park, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* -s), city park; —ſchule, *f. w.*, city school; —wahl, *f. w.*, city election.
Städtchen, *n. s. 1*, little city.
ſtark, *adj.*, strong, stout, (*of disease*) severe, [stark].
ſtattfinden, *v. s.*, take place, [find stead, *i.e.* place].
ſtecken, *v. w.*, put, stick.
ſtehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), stand.
ſtehlen, *v. s.*, steal.
ſteigen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), climb, mount, [to sty].
Stelle, *f. w.*, place.
Stenograph', *m. w.*, *stenographer*.
ſterben *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), die, [starve].
ſtets, *adv.*, always, [stead-ily].
Stimme, *f. w.*, voice, vote.
ſtimmen, *v. w.*, vote, tally, coincide.
Stimmung, *f. w.*, mood.
Stock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), stick, cane, [stock].
ſtolz, *adj.*, proud, [stout].
Strafe, *f. w.*, punishment.
Strahl, *m. mx.*, beam, ray.

Straße, *f. w.*, *street;* —räuber, *m. s. 1*, footpad, [*street*-robber].
Strecke, *f. w.*, **stretch**, distance.
Streich, *m. s. 2*, prank, trick, stroke.
Streit, *m. s. 2*, strife, conflict, quarrel.
ſtreng, *adj.*, strict, severe, [**strong**].
Stroh, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), **straw**; —hut, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), straw-hat, [**head**].
Strom, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), **stream**, torrent.
Stück, *n. s. 2*, piece, play, [**stick**].
Student', *m. w.*, *student;* —in, *f. w.*, woman student.
ſtudie'ren, *v. w.*, *study*.
Studium, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -dien), *study*.
Stuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), chair, [**stool**]; Lehn—, easy chair; Schaukel—, rocking-chair.
Stunde, *f. w.*, hour, lesson.
Sturm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **storm**.
ſtürmiſch, *adj.*, **storm**-y, violent.
Stütze, *f. w.*, prop, support.
ſuchen, *v. w.*, **seek**, look for.
Süddeutſchland, *n.*, **South** Germany.
Süden, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **south**.
Summe, *f. w.*, *sum*.
Sumpf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **swamp**.
Sympathie', *f. w.*, *sympathy*.

Tabak, *m. s. 2*, tobacco.
Tag, *m. s. 2*, **day**.
täglich, *adj.*, *adv.*, **daily**.
Tante, *f. w.*, *aunt*.
Tanz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *dance;* —platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), dancing-place.
tapfer, *adj.*, brave, [**dapper**].
Taſche, *f. w.*, pocket; —ngeld, *n. s. 3*, pocket-money.
Taſſe, *f. w.*, cup.
Taugenichts, *m.* (*indcl.*), good-for-nothing.
Teil, *m. s. 2*, part, [**deal**]; *n. s. 2*, share.
teilen, *v. w.*, share, [**deal**].
teils, *adv.*, partly.
Teller, *m. s. 1*, plate.
Tendenz', *f. w.*, *tendency*.
Termin', *m. s. 2*, *term*.
teuer, *adj.*, **dear**, expensive.
Teufel, *m. s. 1*, *devil*.
Thal, *n. s. 3*, valley, **dale**.
Thaler, *m. s. 1*, thaler, dollar.
That, *f. w.*, **deed**, act.
Thatſache, *f. w.*, fact.
Thea'ter, *n. s. 1*, *theater*.
Thor, *n. s. 2*, gate, [**door**].
Thräne, *f. w.*, tear.
thun, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), **do**.
Thür(e), *f. w.*, **door**.
tief, *adj.*, **deep**.
Tier, *n. s. 2*, animal, beast [**deer**]; —garten, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), zoological **garden**, park.
Tinte, *f. w.*, ink.
Tiſch, *m. s. 2*, table, [**dish**].
Titel, *m. s. 1*, *title*.
Tochter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), **daughter**.
Tod, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **death**.
toll, *adj.*, mad, [**dull**].
tot, *adj.*, [**dead**].
töten, *v. w.*, kill.
tragen, *v. s.*, carry, wear, [**drag, draw**].
traurig, *adj.*, sad, sorrowful, [**dreary**].
treffen, *v. s.*, hit, hit upon, meet.
trefflich, *adj.*, excellent, capital.
treiben, *v. s.*, **drive**.
Treppe, *f. w.*, stairway, flight (of stairs).
treten, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), step, [**tread**].
treu, *adj.*, **true**, faithful.
treulos, *adj.*, faithless, [**true-less**].
trinken, *v. s.*, **drink**.
trocknen, *v. w.*, dry.
tröſten, *v. w.*, comfort, [**trust**].
trotz, *prep.* (*gen. or dat.*), in spite of.
trotzdem, *adv.*, in spite of that, nevertheless.
Tuch, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 276), cloth, [**duck**].
Turm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), tower.
Turnübung, *f. w.*, gymnastics, athletics.

übel, *adj.*, **evil**, amiss; — nehmen, take amiss, take offense at.
über, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), **over**, about, concerning, by way of.
überall', *adv.*, everywhere, [**over-all**].
überhaupt', *adv.*, in general, **at** large, at all, [**over-head**].

überle'gen, *v. w.*, ponder, consider.
überſetz'en, *v. w.*, translate, [overset].
übertrei'ben, *v. s.*, exaggerate, [over-drive].
übrig, *adj.*, remaining, [over-]; das —e, the rest; — bleiben, be left.
übrigens, *adv.*, moreover, furthermore.
Übung, *f. w.*, practice, exercise.
Ufer, *n. s. 1*, bank, shore.
Uhr, *f. w.*, clock, [*hour*].
um, *prep.* (*acc.*), around, about, (*of time*) at; um . . . zu, *with inf.*, to, in order to.
um'bringen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), kill.
Umfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), circumference, range, extent.
umge'ben, *v. s.*, surround.
Umge'bung, *f. w.*, environs.
umge'hen, *v. s.*, evade, avoid.
unan'genehm, *adj.*, un-pleasant.
unbeant'wortet, *ppl. adj.*, unanswered.
un'bedeutend, *adj.*, insignificant.
und, *conj.*, and.
un'dankbar, *adj.*, unthank-ful, ungrateful.
un'deutlich, *adj.*, indistinct; *adv.*, indistinctly.
un'edel, *adj.*, ignoble, base.
un'erträg'lich, *adj.*, intolerable, unbearable.
Un'fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), accident.
un'flektiert, *adj.*, uninflected.
un'freundlich, *adj.*, unfriendly, unamiable.
Un'geduld, *f.* (*no pl.*), impatience.
un'geduldig, *adj.*, impatient.
un'gefähr, *adv.*, about.
un'genügend, *adj.*, unsatisfactory.
Un'glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), misfortune, unhappiness [-luck].
unintereſſant', *adj.*, *uninteresting.*
Univerſität', *f. w.*, *university*; —ſtadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), university-town.
unmög'lich, *adj.*, impossible.
un'recht, *adj.*, wrong.
Un'recht, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), wrong, injustice, [un-right].
Un'ruhe, *f. w.*, unrest, concern.
un'ruhig, *adj.*, restless, uneasy.
unſer, *poss. pron.*, our.
Un'ſinn, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), nonsense.
unter, *adj.*, lower, [under].
unter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), under, among, below.
unterbrech'en, *v. s.*, interrupt.
unterhal'ten, *v. s.*, entertain.
unterneh'men, *v. s.*, undertake.
Un'terricht, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), instruction.
unterrich'ten, *v. w.*, instruct, teach.
unterſchei'den, *v. s.*, distinguish.
Un'terſchied, *m. s. 2*, difference.
unterſchrei'ben, *v. s.*, sign.
unterſu'chen, *v. w.*, investigate.
Un'terthan, *m. mx.*, subject.
unterwer'fen, *v. s.*, subject; ſich —, submit (to = *dat.*).
un'verſchämt, *adj.*, shame-less, outrageous.
un'willkommen, *adj.*, unwelcome.
un'wohl, *adj.*, unwell, indisposed.
unzwei'felhaft, *adj.*, undoubted, unquestionable; *as adv.*, undoubtedly.
ur'alt, *adj.*, very old, ancient.
Ur'ſache, *f. w.*, cause, reason.
urteilen, *v. w.*, judge.
Vater, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), father.
Vaterland, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), father-land, native country.
Veilchen, *n. s. 1*, *violet.*
Verabredung, *f. w.*, agreement, arrangement.
verachten, *v. w.*, despise.
verbergen, *v. s.*, hide, conceal, [-bury].
verbeſſern, *v. w.*, correct, improve, [-better].
verbleiben, *v. s* (*aux.* ſein), remain, [-leave].
Verbrechen, *n. s. 1*, crime.
verbündet, *ppl.*, allied.
verderben, *v. s.*, spoil, ruin.
verdienen, *v. w.*, deserve, earn.
vereinigt, *ppl.*, united, [-one-].
verfallen *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), fall a prey (to = *dat.*).
Verfaſſer, *m. s. 1*, author.
vergebens, *adv.*, in vain.
vergehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), pass, [for(e)-go].
vergeſſen, *v. s.*, forget.

vergeuden, *v. w.*, waste.
vergleichen, *v. s.*, -liken, compare.
Vergnügen, *n. s. 1*, pleasure, enjoyment, [-enough].
Verhältnis, *n. s. 2*, relation.
verhindern, *v. w.*, -hinder, prevent.
verirren (ſich), *v. w.*, lose one's way.
verkaufen, *v. w.*, sell.
verlangen, *v. w.*, demand, want, [-long].
verlaſſen, *v. s.*, leave, [-let]; ſich — auf (*acc.*), rely *or* depend upon.
Verlauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), course, [-leap].
verliebt, *ppl.*, in love (with, in, *acc.*).
verlieren, *v. s.*, lose; verloren, *ppl.*, lost, [forlorn]; verloren gehen, be lost, get lost.
verlobt, *ppl.*, engaged, betrothed (to = mit), [-love].
verloren, *see* verlieren.
vermeiden, *v. s.*, avoid.
Vermögen, *n. s. 1*, property, wealth.
verneinen, *v. w.*, answer (a question) in the negative.
verraten, *v. s.*, betray.
verreiſen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein), depart.
verſammeln, *v. w.*, gather, assemble.
Verſammlung, *f. w.*, assemblage, meeting.
verſchieden, *adj.*, different, various.
verſchließen, *v. s.*, lock.
verſchmitzt, *adv.*, shrewdly.
verſchwinden, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), vanish, disappear.
verſetzen, *v. w.*, answer, transpose.
verſichern, *v. w.*, assure, [-*sure*].
verſprechen, *v. s.*, promise.
Verſtand, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), intelligence, under-stand-ing.
Verſtändnis, *n. s. 2*, understanding, comprehension.
verſtehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), understand.
verſuchen, *v. w.*, try, attempt, [-seek].
verteidigen, *v. w.*, defend.
verwandt, *ppl.*, related; *as noun*, relative (§ 290, 2).
verweilen, *v. w.*, tarry, stay, [-while].
verzeihen, *v. s.* (*dat. of pers.*), pardon.
Vetter, *m. mx.*, cousin.
viel, *pron.* (§ 161), *adj.*, *adv.*, much.
vielleicht', *adv.*, perhaps.
vielmehr', *adv.*, rather.
Viertel, *n. s. 1*, quarter; —dollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* -ö), quarter(-dollar); —jahr, *n. s. 2*, quarter(-year); —ſtunde, *f. w.*, quarter-hour.
Vogel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), bird, [fowl].
Vögelchen, *n. s. 1*, little bird.
Vogelneſt, *n. s. 3*, bird's nest.
Volk, *n. s. 3*, folk, people, nation; —glaube, *m. mx.*, popular belief; —leben, *n. s. 1*, people's life; —lied, *n. s. 3*, folk-song, popular song; —ſage, *f. w.*, popular legend; *pl.* folk-lore.
voll, *adj.*, full.
vollen'den, *v. w.*, complete, finish [-end].
vollends, *adv.*, completely, utterly.
vollkom'men, *adj.*, complete, perfect, thorough.
von, *prep.* (*dat.*), from, of, by.
vor, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), before, [fore].
Vorbereitung, *f. w.*, preparation, [fore-ready-]; —ſchule, *f. w.*, preparatory school.
vor'geſtern, *adv.*, day be-fore yester-day.
vorher', *adv.*, before, previously.
vorig, *adj.*, last, former.
vorkommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), occur.
vorläufig, *adv.*, for the time being, for the present.
vor'mittags, *adv.*, in the forenoon, [fore-midday].
Vorrat, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), supply, stock.
vorſchlagen, *v. s.*, propose.
Vorſtellung, *f. w.*, performance.
Vorteil, *m. s. 2*, advantage.

vorüber, *adv.*, past, -ever.
vorwärts, *adv.*, forward(s).
Vorzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), advantage.

wach, *adj.*, a-wake.
wachſen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), grow, [wax].
Wagen, *m. s. 1*, **wagon**, carriage, [wain].
Wahl, *f. w.*, choice, election.
wahr, *adj.*, true, genuine, real; nicht wahr? isn't it, doesn't it, aren't they, etc.
während, *sub. conj.*, while; *prep.* (*gen.*), during.
wahrhaft, *adj.*, truthful, real, actual; *as adv.*, truly, really.
Wahrheit, *f. w.*, truth.
wahrſcheinlich, *adv.*, probably.
Wald, *m. s. 3*, forest, woods, [wold].
Wand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), wall.
Wanderung, *f. w.*, wandering, travel.
wann, *adv.*, *inter. only*, when.
warm, *adj.*, warm.
warnen, *v. w.*, warn (of, vor, *dat.*).
Warnung, *f. w.*, warning.
warten, *v. w.*, wait, [ward].
warum', *adv. inter.*, why.
was, *pron. inter.*, what; — für ein (§ 145), what kind of; *as rel. pron.*, which, a thing which, etc. (§ 141).
Waſſer, *n. s. 1*, water; —leitung, *f. w.*, water-supply (-leading), plumbing.
weder, *conj.*, neither; weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor.
Weg, *m. s. 2*, way, road.
wegen, *prep.* (*gen.*), on account of.
Weib, *n. s. 3*, woman, wife.
Weihnachten, *w. pl.*, Christmas.
Weihnachtsgeſchenk, *n. s. 2*, Christmas present.
weil, *sub. conj.*, because, [while].
weinen, *v. w.*, weep, cry.
Weiſe, *f. w.*, way, manner, wise.
weiß, *adj.*, white.
weit, *adj.*, wide, broad, far; weiter, further.
welch, *pron. rel.*, *indef.*, *inter.*, who, which, that, what (§§ 144, 162).
Welt, *f. w.*, world; —ſtadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), cosmopolitan city.
wenden, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), turn, [wend].
wenig, *adj.*, little; ein —, a little.
wenigſtens, *adv.*, at least, at any rate.
wenn, *sub. conj.*, if, when.
wer, *pron. inter.*, who; *rel.*, he who, whoever (§ 140).
werden, *v. s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* ſein), become, get, [worth].
werfen, *v. s.*, throw, cast, [warp].
Werk, *n. s. 2*, work.
weshalb, *adv. inter.*, why, wherefore.
Weſten, *m. s. 1*, west.
weſtlich, *adj.*, west-; *as adv.*, westward.
weswegen, *adv. inter.*, on what account, wherefore, why.
Wetter, *n. s. 1*, weather.
wichtig, *adj.*, important, weighty.
Wichtigkeit, *f. w.*, importance, weighti-ness.
wider, *prep.* (*acc.*), against, [with].
widerſprech'en, *v. s.*, contradict.
widerſteh'en, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), withstand, oppose.
wi'derwärtig, *adj.*, obnoxious, distasteful.
wie, *adv. and subj. conj.*, how, as, like, [why].
wieder, *adv.*, again, [with].
wiederauf'nehmen, *v. s.*, resume.
wiederho'len, *v. w.*, repeat; wiederholt', *ppl. as adv.*, repeatedly.
wie'derſehen, *v. s.*, see again; auf Wiederſehen, good-bye.
wiegen, *v. s.*, weigh.
wild, *adj.*, wild, savage.
Wille, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), will; um . . . willen, *with gen.*, for the sake of.
willkom'men, *adj.*, welcome.
Wind, *m. s. 2*, wind.
Winter, *m. s. 1*, winter; —abend, *m. s. 2*, winter-evening.
Wirken, *n. s. 1*, work, activity, effect.
wirklich, *adv.*, really.
wirkungsvoll, *adj.*, effective, strong, [working-full].

Wirt, *m. s. 2*, landlord, man-of-the-house.
Wirtin, *f. w.*, landlady.
Wirtshaus, *n. s. 3*, inn.
wiſſen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 190), know, [to wit].
Wiſſen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), knowledge.
Wiſſenſchaft, *f. w.*, science.
wo, *adv.*, where.
Woche, *f. w.*, week.
wöchentlich, *adj.*, weekly.
wofür', *adv.*, for what.
woher', *adv.*, whence, from where; — haben Sie? where did you get?
wohl, *adv.*, probably, I presume, well.
Wohl, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), wel-fare.
wohnen, *v. w.*, dwell. live [cf. to won, with its *pple.* wont].
Wohnort, *m. s. 2*, abode, dwelling-place.
Wohnung, *f. w.*, dwelling, residence, habitation.
Wohnzimmer, *n. s. 1*, living- *or* sitting-room.
Wolke, *f. w.*, cloud, [welk-in].
wollen, *v. w.* (§ 189), will, be willing; be about to, be on the point of, claim, pretend, etc. (§ 191, 6).
Wort, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 276, *a*), word.
Wörterbuch, *n. s. 3*, dictionary, [word-book].
worum', *adv.*, about what, why.
wozu', *adv.*, to what end, what for, [whereto].
Wunder, *n. s. 1*, wonder, miracle.
wunderbar, *adj.*, wonder-ful, marvellous.
wundern, *v. w.*, cause to wonder; mich wundert's, I wonder.
wunderſchön, *adj.*, wondrously beautiful.
Wunſch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), wish.
wünſchen, *v. w.*, wish.
wußte, *see* wiſſen.

zählen, *v. w.*, count, [tell].
zahlreich, *adj.*, numerous, [tale-rich].
Zahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), tooth; —arzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), dentist; —ſchmerz, *m. mx.*, toothache.
zehn, *num.*, ten.
Zeichnung, *f. w.*, drawing.
zeigen, *v. w.*, show, [teach].
Zeile, *f. w.*, line.
Zeit, *f. w.*, time, [tide].
Zeitlang, eine, *adv. phrase*, for a time, (= eine Zeit lang).
Zeitung, *f. w.*, newspaper, [tiding].
zerfallen, *v. s.*, be divided (into, in, *acc.*).
zerreißen, *v. s.*, tear.
ziehen, *v. s.*, draw, [tow].
Ziel, *n. s. 2*, aim, goal, destination.
ziemlich, *adv.*, pretty, tolerably.
Zimmer, *n. s. 1*, room, [timber].
zittern, *v. w.*, tremble.
zu, *prep.* (*dat.*), to, at, for; *adv.*, too.
zuerſt', *adv.*, first, at first, [-erst].
zufrie'den, *adj.*, content.
Zug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), train, [tug].
Zukunft, *f.* (*no pl.*), future.
zunächſt', *adv.*, first, [-next].
zurück', *adv.*, back, [-ridge].
zuſam'men, *adv.*, together.
Zuſam'menhang, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), connection, [-hang].
Zuſchauer, *m. s. 1*, spectator.
Zuſchuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe), addition, increase.
Zuſtand, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), condition.
zutragen (ſich), *v. s.*, happen.
zuträglich, *adj.*, beneficial.
zuwei'len, *adv.*, sometimes, now and then, [-while].
zwar, *adv.*, to be sure, forsooth (zu wahr).
Zweck, *m. s. 2*, purpose, object.
zwei, *num.*, two.
Zweifel, *m. s. 1*, doubt, [two-].
Zweig, *m. s. 2*, branch, bough, twig.
Zweikampf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), duel.
zweimal, *adv.*, twice.
zwingen, *v. s.*, compel, force, [twinge].
zwiſchen, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), between, among.

a, an, ein.
able, to be — to, können (§§ 189–191).
abode, Wohnort, *m. s. 2.*
about, *adv.*, etwa, ungefähr; *prep.*, über, um (*acc.*), von (*dat.*); — it, that, darüber; news — the elections, Nachrichten über die Wahlen; to care —, sich kümmern um; to talk —, sprechen von.
above, oben; — all, vor allem.
abroad, in der (*or* die) Fremde.
absence, Abwesenheit, *f. w.*
abundance, Fülle, *f. w.*
abundantly, reichlich.
accident, Unfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
accompany, begleiten, *w.*
accordance, in — with, gemäß (*dat.*).
according to, nach (*dat.*).
accordingly, also.
account, on — of, wegen (*gen.*); on that —, deshalb, deswegen; on what —, weshalb, weswegen; on my —, meinetwegen.
accuse, anklagen, *w.* (of = *gen.*).
accurate(ly), genau.
accustom, — oneself to, sich gewöhnen an (*acc.*), *w.*
accustomed, gewohnt (to = an, *acc.*).
acknowledge, bekennen, *w.* (§ 330).
acquaintance, Bekanntschaft, *f. w.*; (of persons) Bekannte(r), *adj. as noun* (§ 290, 2); to make the — of, kennen lernen (*acc.*).
acquainted, bekannt.
across, *adv.*, quer.
act, (of a play) Akt, Aufzug (*pl.* ü), *m. s. 2*; (deed) That, *f. w.*
act, handeln, *w.*; (play), spielen, *w.*
action, Handlung, *f. w.*; take —, handeln, *w.*
actor, Schauspieler, *m. s. 1.*
actress, Schauspielerin, *f. w.*
actual(ly), eigentlich, wahrhaft; (even) sogar.
addition, Zuschuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* =üsse).
address, (discourse) Rede, *f. w.*; (place of residence) Adresse, *f. w.*
admire, bewundern, *w.*
admission, Eintritt, *m. s. 2.*
advance, in —, im voraus.
advantage, Vorteil, *m. s. 2.*; Vorzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
adventure, Abenteuer, *n. s. 1.*
advice, Rat, *m. s.* (*no pl. in this sense*).
advise, raten, *s.*
affair, Angelegenheit, *f. w.*; Sache, *f. w.*
afford, gewähren, *w.*
after, *prep.*, nach (*dat.*); — all, am Ende; *sub. conj.*, nachdem.
afternoon, Nachmittag, *m. s. 2*; this —, heute nachmittag; — performance, Nachmittagsvorstellung, *f. w.*
afterward, nachher.
again, wieder, nochmals.
against, gegen (*acc.*).
age, Alter, *n. s. 1*; old —, (hohes) Alter.
age, *v.*, altern, *w.* (*aux.* haben or sein).
ago, vor (*dat.*); an hour —, vor einer Stunde.
agreement, Verabredung, *f. w.*
ah, ach.
aid, Hilfe, *f.* (*no pl.*).
ail, leiden, *s.*
aim, Ziel, *n. s. 2.*
air, Luft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
akin, verwandt (to = *dat.*).
alas, ach; (= unfortunately, unhappily), leider.
alike, gleich.
all, all (= all of); (whole) ganz; all sorts of, allerlei (*indcl.*); (= exclusively, none but) lauter.

allied, verbündet, *ppl. adj.*
allow, erlauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*); to be —ed to, dürfen (§§ 189–191).
almost, beinahe, faſt.
alone, allein.
along, *adv.*, her, mit; come —, kommen Sie mit; — with, zugleich mit; *prep.*, längs (*gen.*).
alongside, neben (*acc. and dat.*).
already, ſchon.
also, auch.
altar, Altar, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* ä).
although, obgleich, obwohl, *sub. conj's.*
altogether, (utterly) durchaus, gar, ganz und gar.
always, immer, ſtets.
am, bin; am visiting, beſuche, am going, gehe. (See p. 34, n. 5.)
America, Amerika.
American, Amerikaner, *m. s. 1.*
American, *adj.*, amerikaniſch.
amiss, übel; to take —, übel nehmen.
among, unter, zwiſchen (*dat. and acc.*); — them, darunter.
amount, — to, betragen, *s.*
amply, reichlich.
ancient, alt; (primeval) uralt; the ancients, die Alten.
and, und.
angel, Engel, *m. s. 1.*
animal, Tier, *n. s. 2.*
annihilation, Vernichtung, *f. w.*
anniversary, Jahrestag, *m. s. 2.*
another, (additional) noch ein; (different) ein anderer; one —, einander (*indcl.*).
answer, Antwort, *f. w.*
answer, antworten (*dat. of pers.*); (*trans.*) beantworten; (reply) verſetzen; — in the negative, verneinen (*trans.*).
antiquity, (in all senses) Altertum, *n. s. 3.*
anxiety, (fear) Angſt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* Ä); (care, solicitude) Beſorgnis, *f. s. 2*; Sorge, *f. w.*
anxious, be —, ſich ängſtigen, *w.*; to make —, to trouble, bang(e) [*adv.*] machen, *with dat.*
any, irgend (§ 152); have you — money, haſt du etwas Geld? — one, jemand, irgend jemand; — thing, etwas, irgend etwas; not —thing, nichts; —thing but, nichts weniger als; — such thing, ſo etwas; —way, eigentlich, *adv.*
apartment(s), Wohnung, *f. w.*
ape, Affe, *m. w.*
apparel, Kleidung, *f. w.*
apparent ly), ſcheinbar.
appear, (look) ausſehen, *s.*; (seem) ſcheinen, *s.*; (make one's appearance) erſcheinen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
appearance(s), Schein, *m. s. 2.*
apple, Apfel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ä); —shot, Apfelſchuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe).
appoint, ernennen, *w.* (§ 330).
approve, billigen, *w.*
April, April, *m. s. 2.*
Aristotle, Ariſtoteles.
arm, Arm, *m. s. 2.*
army, Armee, *f. w.*; Heer, *n. s. 2.*
around, um (*acc.*).
arrangement, Verabredung, *f. w.*
arrive, ankommen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
art, Kunſt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
artistic, —taste, Kunſtgeſchmack.
as, (*temporal*) als, da, wie (§ 381, 1, *a*, *b*, *l*); (*modal*) wie; (*causal* = since) da; *all sub. conj's.* not so good as, nicht ſo gut wie; as you say, wie du ſagſt; as . . . as, so . . . as, ſo . . . als (§ 381, 1, *h*); as if, als ob, als wenn (§ 359, 3); as for me, was mich betrifft.
ascend, *intr.* hinaufſteigen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); *tr.* beſteigen, *s.*
ascertain, erfahren, *s.*
ashamed, to be —, ſich ſchämen, *refl. w.* (*with gen.*).
ashes, Aſche, *f. w.*
aside, bei Seite; — from, außer (*dat.*).
ask, (question) fragen, *w.*; (request) bitten, *s.*; (demand) verlangen, *w.*; — for, bitten um (*acc.*).
asleep, fall —, einſchlafen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
assemblage, Verſammlung, *f. w.*
assemble, (*trans.*) verſammeln, *w.*
assert, behaupten, *w.*
assumed, (name) falſch.
assure, verſichern, *w.*
astonished, erſtaunt.

astonishment, Erſtaunen, *n. s. 1 (no pl.)*.
at, an (*dat. and acc.*), zu (*dat.*); (*of time*), um (*acc.*); (with, at the house of) bei (*dat.*); — the window, an dem Fenſter; — a table, an einem Tiſche; — home, zu Hauſe; — ten o'clock, um zehn Uhr; — your house, bei Ihnen zu Hauſe; — any rate, jedenfalls; — No. 2, Numero zwei; — once, ſofort; — the most, höchſtens.
athletics, Turnübungen, *f. w. pl.*
attach, — oneself to, ſich hängen an (*acc.*), *w.*
attack, anfallen, *s.*
attend, (visit) beſuchen; — to, beſorgen, *w.*
audience, Zuſchauer, *m. s. 1, pl.*
August, Auguſt, *m. s. 2.*
aunt, Tante, *f. w.*
author, (in the sense of 'writer by profession') Schriftſteller, *m. s. 1;* (otherwise) Autor, *m. mx.*, Verfaſſer, *m. s. 1.*
autumn, Herbſt, *m. s. 2;* — time, Herbſtzeit, *f. w.*
avail, helfen (*with dat.*); it —s nothing, es hilft nichts.
average, Durchſchnitt, *m. s. 2;* on an —, im Durchſchnitt.
avoid, vermeiden, *s.;* (evade) umgeh'en, *s.* (§ 185).
await, warten (*with gen.*).
awake, *adj.*, wach.
awake, *v. intrans.*, erwachen, *w.*
awake(n), *v. trans.*, erwecken, *w.*
away, fort; far —, weit entfernt.

back, *adv.*, zurück.
background, Hintergrund, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ü).
backwoodsman, Hinterwäldler, *m. s. 1.*
bad, ſchlecht, ſchlimm, (evil, wicked) böſe.
ball, Ball, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä).
band, Band, *n. s. 2.*
bank, Ufer, *n. s. 1.*
barbarian, Barbar, *m. w.*
base, unedel.
bath, Bad, *n. s. 3.*
bathe, baden, *w.*
battle, Schlacht, *f. w.*
be, ſein, *s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* ſein); (= be present, involved) vorhanden ſein; — (= fare) with, ſtehen um.
beam, Strahl, *m. mx.*
bear, Bär, *m. w.*
beard, Bart, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä).
beast, Tier, *n. s. 2.*
beat, ſchlagen, *s.*
beautiful, ſchön.
beauty, Schönheit, *f. w.;* — of nature, Naturſchönheit.
because, weil, *sub. conj.*
become, werden, *s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* ſein).
bed, Bett, *n. mx.*
bedroom, Schlafzimmer, *n. s. 1.*
bee, Biene, *f. w.*
befit, ziemen (*dat.*).
before, *prep.* vor (*dat. and acc.*); *sub. conj.*, bevor, ehe; *adv.* (= hitherto) bisher; there are four days — Christmas, es ſind vier Tage bis Weihnachten.
beg, (request) bitten (for, um, *acc.*).
beggar, Bettler, *m. s. 1.*
begin, beginnen, *s.*, anfangen, *s.*
beginning, Anfang, *m. s. 2 (pl.* ä); from the —, vom Anfang an; in the —, anfangs, *adv.*
behavior, Betragen, *n. s. 1.*
behind, hinter (*dat. and acc.*).
being, Weſen, *n. s. 1;* human —, Menſch, *m. w.*
belief, Glaube, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
believe, glauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*); — in, glauben an (*acc.*).
bell, Glocke, *f. w.*
belong, gehören, *w.* (*dat.* = to); — to (be a part of), gehören zu; — to (be the duty of), ſein (*with dat.*).
below, *prep.*, unter (*dat. and acc.*); the picture —, das Bild darunter.
bench, Bank, *f. s. 2 (pl.* ä).
bend, biegen, *s.*
beneficial, zuträglich.
beside, neben (*dat. and acc.*).
besides, außerdem, dazu.
best, beſt, am beſten; *as adv.*, am beſten, aufs beſte (§ 375, 2).
betray, verraten, *s.*
better, beſſer; make —, beſſern, *w.*
between, zwiſchen (*dat. and acc.*).

beyond, jenſeits (*gen.*).
bible, Bibel, *f. w.*
bicycle, Fahrrad, *n. s. 3.*
bind, binden, *s.*
bird, Vogel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö).
birth, Geburt, *f. w.*
birthday, Geburtstag, *m. s. 2.*
birthplace (i.e. the house), Geburtshaus, *n. s. 3.*
bite, beißen, *s.*
bitter, ſauer.
black, ſchwarz.
blame, to — for (i.e. to be to blame for), ſchuld ſein an (*dat.*).
blessing, Gut, *n. s. 3.*
blind, *adj.*, blind.
blind, *v.*, blenden, *w.*
blood, Blut, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
bloody, blutig.
bloom, blühen, *w.*
blow, *v.*, blaſen, *s.*
blue, blau.
board, (fare) Koſt, *f. w.*
board, *v.*, Penſion haben.
boarding-house, Penſion, *f. w.*
boat, (row-boat) Kahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); (= steamboat) Dampfer, *m. s. 1.*
body, Leib, *m. s. 3.*
boil, kochen, *w.*
bold, friſch.
bond, Band, *n. s. 2.*
book, Buch, *n. s. 3;* — case, Bücherſchrank, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); — store, Buchhandlung, *f. w.;* — trade, Buchhandel, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
border, Rand, *m. s. 3.*
bore, quälen, *w.*
born, geboren.
bosom, — friend, Herzensfreund, *m. s. 2.*
both, beide; both . . . and, ſowohl . . . als (auch).
box, Kaſten, *m. s. 1.*
boy, Knabe, *m. w.*, Junge, *m. w.*, Bube, *m. w.;* —s' school, Knabenſchule, *f. w.*
branch, Zweig, *m. s. 2.*
brave, tapfer.
bread, Brot, *n. s. 2.*
breadth, Breite, *f. w.*
break, brechen, *s.;* — loose, losbrechen (*intr.*, *aux.* ſein).
breakfast, Frühſtück, *n. s. 2.*
breathe, atmen, *w.*
breeding, Zucht, *f.* (*no pl.*).
breeze, Luft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
bridge, Brücke, *f. w.*
bright, hell, klar.
bring, bringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); — up (hither), heraufführen, *w.;* — up (educate), erziehen, *s.*
broad, breit.
brook, Bach, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
brother, Bruder, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ü).
brown, braun.
build, bauen, *w.*
building, (act of —) Bau, *m. s. 2* (§ 275, 2, *a*); (structure) Gebäude, *n. s. 1.*
burn, brennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); — down, niederbrennen.
burst, losbrechen, *s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* ſein).
bush, Buſch *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
bushes, (thicket) Gebüſch, *n. s. 2.*
busied, beſchäftigt.
business, Geſchäft, *n. s. 2;* on — of state, in Staatsgeſchäften.
busy, beſchäftigt.
but, aber, ſondern (§ 379, 1), doch; (= only) nur.
butter, Butter, *f.* (*no pl.*).
buy, kaufen, *w.*
by, an (*dat.*); bei (*dat.*); *with the passive*, von (*dat.*); = by means of, durch (*acc.*); — the window, am Fenſter; by the train, mit dem Zuge; by rail, mit der Eiſenbahn; by a messenger, durch einen Boten.

call, (summon) rufen, *s.;* — on, rufen; — away, abrufen; (cry) ſchreien, *s.;* (name) nennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); be called (named), heißen, *s.*
call, (= visit) Beſuch, *m. s. 2.*
calm, gefaßt, *ppl.*; ruhig.
can, können (§§ 189–191).
candid, aufrichtig.
candidate, Kandidat, *m. w.*
cane, Stock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
capable, fähig (of = zu).
capital (-city), Hauptſtadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
capital, (principal) Kapital, *n. s. 2* (*pl. also* -ien).
capital, *adj.*, trefflich.

captain (of a ship), Kapitän, *m. s. 2.*
card, Karte, *f. w.*
care, Besorgnis, *f. s. 2*, Sorge, *f. w.*; take —, sorgen, *w.*
care, to — about, sich kümmern, *refl. w.*, um (*acc.*).
careful, sorgfältig.
careful, to be —, sich hüten, *refl. w.*
carefully, sorgfältig; (exactly) genau.
carriage, Wagen, *m. s. 1.*
carry, tragen, *s.*; — on (a conversation, a war), führen; (= employ), treiben, *s.*
case, Fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
cast, werfen, *s.*
castle, Schloß, *n. s. 3* (*pl.* ¨sser); Burg, *f. w.*
cathedral, Dom, *m. s. 2*; Kathedrale, *f. w.*; — church, Kathedralkirche, *f. w.*
cause, (reason) Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); (agency) Ursache, *f. w.*; (affair) Sache, *f. w.*
cause, *v.*, lassen, *s.*; verursachen, *w.*
cease, aufhören, *w.*
celebrate, feiern, *w.*
cent, Cent, *m. s.* (*pl.* —s).
central, central; — station, Centralbahnhof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
century, Jahrhundert, *n. s. 2.*
certain, gewiß; to know for —, gewiß (*or* sicher) wissen.
chain, Kette, *f. w.*
chair, Stuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
change, *intr.* sich verändern.
character, Charakter, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ¨tere).
charge, take — of, sich annehmen, *s.* (*w. gen.*).
charge (of a weapon), Schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
Charles, Karl.
charm, Reiz, *m. s. 2.*
charming, reizend, bezaubernd, *ppl. adj.*
chat, plaudern.
cheap, billig.
cheerful, heiter.
cherish, hegen, *w.*
chief, *in compounds*, Haupt-; — reason, Hauptgrund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); — study, Hauptstudium, *n. mx.* (*pl.* ¨ien).
chiefly, hauptsächlich.
child, Kind, *n. s. 3*; little —, Kindchen, *n. s. 1* (*pl.* also Kinderchen.
childhood, Kindheit, *f. w.*
choice, Wahl, *f. w.*
choir, Chor, *n. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
choose, wählen, *w.*
Christian, Christ, *m. w.*
Christmas, Weihnachten, *pl.*; — gift, Weihnachtsgeschenk, *n. s. 2.*
church, Kirche, *f. w.*
citizen, Bürger, *m. s. 1.*
city, Stadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); on — business, in Stadtgeschäften; — clock, Stadtuhr, *f. w.*; — election, Stadtwahl, *f. w.*; — hall, Stadthaus, *n. s.*; — library, Stadtbibliothek, *f. w.*; — park, Stadtpark, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* —s); — school, Stadtschule, *f. w.*; — theater, Stadttheater, *n. s. 1*; little —, Städtchen, *n. s. 1.*
claim, they — to have seen . . ., man will . . . gesehen haben.
class, Klasse, *f. w.*
clear, klar; make —, erklären, *w.*; (evident) offenbar; (bright) hell.
clearly, offenbar.
clever, klug.
cleverness, Klugheit, *f. w.*
climate, Klima, *n. s.* (*pl.* -ta *or* -te).
climb, (*intrans.*) klimmen, *s.* (*aux.* sein), steigen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (*trans.*) besteigen, *s.*
cloak, Mantel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
clock, Uhr, *f. w.*; city —, Stadtuhr.
close, Schluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse).
close, *adj.*, dicht, nahe (near); — by, neben, *prep.* (*dat.*).
close, *v.*, schließen, *s.*; — up, abschließen, *s.*
cloth, Tuch, *n. s. 2–3* (Tücher in compounds; cf. § 276, *a.*)
clothes, Kleider, *pl.*
clothing, Kleidung, *f. w.*; article of —, Kleidungsstück, *n. s. 2.*
cloud, Wolke, *f. w.*
coach, Kutsche, *f. w.*
coat, Rock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
cobbler, Schuster, *m. s. 1.*
coffee, Kaffee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
coincide, stimmen, *w.*

cold, *adj.*, kalt.
cold, (weather) Kälte, *f.* (*no pl.*).
cold, (sickness) Erkältung, *f. w.*; to take —, ſich erkälten, *refl. w.*
collection, Sammlung, *f. w.*
come, kommen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — by, kommen zu; — before, treten vor (*acc.*); — between, treten zwiſchen (*acc.*); — toward, — to meet, entgegenkommen; come-to-be, werden.
comedy, Luſtſpiel, *n. s. 2.*
comfort, tröſten, *w.*
comfortable, bequem.
coming, *adj.*, künftig.
command, befehlen, *s.* (*dat.*); gebieten, *s.* (*dat.*).
commander-in-chief, Feldherr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1).
commerce, Handel, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
commit, begehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
committee, Ausſchuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe).
common, gemein.
companion, Kamerad, *m. w.*
company, Geſellſchaft, *f. w.*
compare, vergleichen, *s.*
compel, zwingen, *s.*; be compelled, müſſen (§§ 189–191).
complete, vollenden, *w.*
complete, *adj.*, vollkommen.
completely, vollends.
composed, gefaßt, *ppl.*
composer, Komponiſt, *m. w.*
composition, Aufſatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
comprehend, begreifen, *s.*
comprehensible, begreiflich.
comprehension, Verſtändnis, *n. s. 2.*
comrade, Kamerad, *m. w.*
conceal, verbergen, *s.*
conception, Begriff, *m. s. 2.*
concern, Sorge, *f. w.*, Unruhe, *f. w.*
concern, *v.*, betreffen, *s.*; so far as I am —ed, was mich betrifft; (= trouble) kümmern, *w.*
concerned, in Sorge; not —, ohne Sorge; be —, care about, ſich kümmern um (*acc.*).
concerning, (about) über (*acc.*); (= in reference to) in betreff, *with gen.*
concert, Konzert, *n. s. 2*; — hall, Konzertſaal, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -ſäle).
conclude, ſchließen, *s.*
condition, (terms) Bedingung, *f. w.*
condition, (state) Zuſtand, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
conduct, führen, *w.*
conduct, (behavior) Betragen, *n. s. 1.*
confess, bekennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); geſtehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
confidently, getroſt.
conflict, Streit, *m. s. 2.*
connection, Zuſammenhang, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
conquer, erobern, *w.*
consecrate, einweihen, *w.*
consequence, Folge, *f. w.*
consider, (deem) halten . . . für (§ 265, 3, *c*), betrachten (als) *w.*; (reflect, think over,) überlegen, *w.*
considerable, beträchtlich.
consist (of), beſtehen (aus), *s. irr.* (§ 185); — in, beſtehen in (*dat.*).
consumption, Schwindſucht, *f. w.*
contain, enthalten, *s.*; contains, enthält.
content(ed), zufrieden.
contents, Inhalt, *m. s. 2.*
continue, (last) dauern, *w.*; *trans.*, fortſetzen, *w*; *intrans.* (= keep on) fortfahren, *s.* (*aux.* haben).
contradict, widerſprechen, *s.*
contrary, Gegenteil, *n. s. 2*; on the —, im Gegenteil.
contrast, Gegenſatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
control, able to —, mächtig (*with gen.*).
convent, Kloſter, *n. s. 1* (*pl.* ö).
conversation, Geſpräch, *n. s. 2.*
convince, überzeugen, *w.*
cool, kühl.
copy, abſchreiben, *s.*
cordial, herzlich.
correct, *adj.*, richtig.
correct, *v.*, verbeſſern, *w.*
cost, koſten, *w.*
cost, (expense) Koſten, *pl.*
cottage, Häuschen, *n. s. 1.*
could, konnte, könnte (§ 191, 2); — have done, hätte thun können (§ 192 *and* 1).
counsel, Rat, *m. s.* (*no pl. in this sense*).
count, (reckon) rechnen, *w.* (on = auf, *acc.*); (enumerate) zählen, *w.*; *intr.* (= be reckoned or considered), gelten, *s.*

count, (title) Graf, *m. w.*
countenance, Geſicht, *n. s. 3.*
country, Land, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 276, *a*); (go) to the —, auf das Land; in the —, auf dem Lande; (= native country) Vaterland, *n. s.*; (region) Gegend, *f. w.*
countryman, (= fellow —) Landsmann, *m. s. 3* (*pl.* =leute, § 238, 2, *a.*)
couple, a —, ein paar; a — of times, ein paarmal.
courage, Mut, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
course, (of study) Kurſus, *m. s.* (*pl.* Kurſus *or* Kurſe); Kreis, *m. s. 2.*
course, in the — of, im Verlauf (*m. s. 2*, *pl.* äu).
course, of —, natürlich.
court, Hof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö); — life, Hofleben, *n. s. 1.*
courtesy, Höflichkeit, *f. w.*
cousin, *masc.*, Vetter, *m. mx.*
cousin, *fem.*, Couſine, *f. w.*
cover, decken, *w.*
crime, Verbrechen, *n. s. 1.*
crowd, Menge, *f. w.*
crown, Krone, *f. w.*
crown-prince, Kronprinz, *m. w.*
cry, (call) ſchreien, *s.*; (weep) weinen, *w.*
cultivate, bilden, *w.*
cup, Taſſe, *f. w.*
cure, furieren, *w.*
curiosity, Neugierde, *f. w.*
curiosities, natural —, Naturalien, *pl.*
curious, neugierig.
current, Strom, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
cushion, Kiſſen, *n. s. 1.*
custom, Sitte, *f. w.*

daily, täglich.
Dame, Frau.
dance, tanzen, *w.*
dance, Tanz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); — music, Tanzmuſik, *f.*
danger, Gefahr, *f. w.*
dangerous, gefährlich.
dark, dunkel, finſter.
dart, ſchießen, *s.*
daughter, Tochter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ö).
day, Tag, *m. s. 2*; in the daytime, am Tage; one — (= some day, some time), einſt.
dazzle, blenden, *w.*
dead, tot; to be a — man, des Todes ſein.
dear, teuer, lieb.
death, Tod, *m. s. 2* (§ 238, 1, *b*).
debt, Schuld, *f. w.*
deceased, verſtorben, *ppl. adj.*
deceive, (mislead) verführen, *w.*
December, Dezember, *m. s. 1.*
decide, entſcheiden, *s.*
deed, That, *f. w.*
deep, tief; — black, tiefſchwarz.
defend, verteidigen, *w.*
definite, beſtimmt.
degree, Grad, *m. s. 2.*
delight, Freude, *f. w.*
delight, to — in, ſich ergötzen (*w.*) an (*dat.*).
demand, verlangen, *w.*; fordern, *w.*
democrat, Demokrat, *m. w.*
denote, bezeichnen, *w.*
dense, dicht.
dentist, Zahnarzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* =ärzte).
depart, abreiſen, *w.* (*aux.* ſein).
departure, Aufbruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
depend, abhängen, *s.* (on = von, *dat.*); ankommen, *s.* (on = auf, *acc.*); — upon (rely), ſich verlaſſen (*s.*) auf (*acc.*).
depth, Tiefe, *f. w.*
describe, beſchreiben, *s.*
description, Beſchreibung, *f. w.*
deserve, verdienen, *w.*
desire, Luſt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
desk, Pult, *m.* (*and n.*) *s. 2.*
despise, verachten, *w.*
destination, Ziel, *n. s. 2.*
determine, ſich entſchließen, *s.*
devil, Teufel, *m. s. 1.*
dictionary, Wörterbuch, *n. s. 3.*
die, ſterben, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
differ, abweichen, *s.*
difference, Unterſchied, *m. s. 2.*
different, verſchieden; (otherwise) anders.
differently, anders.
difficult, ſchwierig, ſchwer.
difficulty, Schwierigkeit, *f. w.*; (obstacle) Hindernis, *n. s. 2*; (trouble) Mühe, *f. w.*
dig, graben, *s.*
diligent, fleißig.
direction, Richtung, *f. w.*; in the — of, entgegen (*dat.*).
directly, gleich.

director, Direktor, *m. mx.*
disagreeable, unangenehm. [ſein).
disappear, verſchwinden, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
disappointment, Enttäuſchung, *f. w.*
discovery, Entdeckung, *f. w.*
discussion, Beſprechung, *f. w.*
disease, Krankheit, *f. w.*
disgrace, Schmach, *f.* (*no pl.*).
disgraceful, ſchändlich.
displease, mißfallen, *s.* (*dat.*).
distance, (remoteness) Ferne, *f. w.*; (stretch) Strecke, *f. w.*
distant, entfernt.
distasteful, widerwärtig.
distinct, deutlich.
distinguish, unterſcheiden, *s.*
distress, Not, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
divide, teilen, *w.*
divided, be — into, zerfallen in (*acc.*).
do, (*as aux., untranslated, e. g.* do you know, kennen Sie); thun, *s. irr.* (§ 185); machen, *w.*; to — an exercise, eine Aufgabe machen; that won't do, das geht nicht; (of the health), ſich befinden, *refl. s.*; how do you do? wie befinden Sie ſich?
doctor, Doktor, *m. mx.*; doctor's title, Doktortitel, *m. s. 1.*
dog, Hund, *m. s. 2.*
dollar, Dollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* -s); Thaler, *m. s. 1.*
door, Thür(e), *f. w.*
doubt, Zweifel, *m. s. 1*; no —, wohl.
dozen, Dutzend, *n. s. 2.*
dragon, Drache, *m. w.*
drama, Drama, *n. mx.*
dramatic, dramatiſch.
draw, ziehen, *s.*
drawing, Zeichnung, *f. w.*
dream, Traum, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu).
dream, *v.*, träumen, *w.*
dress, Kleid, *n. s. 3.*
drink, trinken, *s.*; (immoderately) ſaufen, *s.*
drive, (*trans.*) treiben, *s.*; — out, vertreiben; (*intrans.*) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
drop, Tropfen, *m. s. 1.*
drunken, betrunken.
dry, *adj.*, trocken.
dry, *v.*, trocknen, *w.*
duel, Zweikampf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
dull, langweilig.
during, während (*gen.*).
dust, Staub, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
duty, Pflicht, *f. w.*

each, jed- (§ 153); — other, ſich, uns, euch (§ 123, 3), einander (*indcl.*).
eager, begierig.
eagle, Adler, *m. s. 1.*
ear, Ohr, *n. mx.*
early, früh.
earn, verdienen, *w.*
earth, Erde, *f. w.*
Easter, Oſtern, *pl. only.*
easy, leicht; — chair, Lehnſtuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
eat, eſſen, *s.*; (of animals, or contemptuously of persons) freſſen, *s.*
economical, ſparſam.
economy, Sparſamkeit, *f. w.*
edge, Rand, *m. s. 3.*
edition, Ausgabe, *f. w.*
educate, erziehen, *s.*
effective, wirkungsvoll.
egg, Ei, *n. s. 3.*
either, *with negatives*, auch; nor I —, ich auch nicht; either . . . or, entweder . . . oder.
elderly, älter.
election, Wahl, *f. w.*
else, (otherwise) ſonſt; nothing —, nichts and(e)res.
emergency, Notfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
emperor, Kaiſer, *m. s. 1.*
empire, Reich, *n. s. 2.*
employ, ſich bedienen, *w.* (*with gen.*).
enclose, beilegen, *w.*
end, Schluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Schlüſſe); Ende, *n. mx.*
endure, ertragen, *s.*
enemy, Feind, *m. s. 2.*
engaged, — to, verlobt mit (*dat.*).
English, engliſch.
Englishman, Engländer, *m. s. 1.*
enjoy, genießen, *s.*; to — one's self, ſich amüſieren, *refl. w.*
enjoyment, Vergnügen, *n. s. 1.*
enough, genug (*indcl.*); to be —, genügen, *w.*
enter, eintreten (in, *acc.*); to — into, ſich einlaſſen (*refl. s.*) auf (*acc.*).
entertain, unterhalten.
entertaining(ly), unterhaltend.
entire(ly), ganz.
environs, Umgebung, *f. w.*

error, Irrtum, *m. s. 3.*
escape, entgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185), (*aux.* ſein, *with dat.*).
especially, beſonders.
essay, Aufſatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
esteem, ſchätzen, *w.*
estimate, angeben, *s.*
eternal, ewig.
Europe, Europa, *n.*
evade, umgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
even, eben, ſogar; — if, wenn auch, *sub. conj.*
evening, Abend, *m. s. 2.*; this —, heute abend; — paper, Abendzeitung, *f. w.*
ever, jemals.
everlasting, ewig.
every, jed= (§ 153); — other day, alle zwei Tage.
everyone, jedermann (§ 153).
everything, alles (§ 146, 2).
everywhere, überall.
evident(ly), offenbar.
evil, Übel, *n. s. 1.*
evil, *adj.*, übel, böſe.
exact, genau; (= altogether, entirely) ganz.
exactly, genau, gerade.
exaggerate, übertreiben, *s.*
examination, Examen, *n. s.* (*pl.* =amina).
examine, (look at) beſehen, *s.*
example, Beiſpiel, *n. s. 2.*; for —, zum Beiſpiel (*abbreviated* z. B.).
exceedingly, äußerſt.
excellent, trefflich.
except, *v.* ausnehmen, *s.*
except, *prep.*, außer (*dat.*); — on, außer an.
exception, Ausnahme, *f. w.*
exclusively, lauter.
excursion, Ausflug, *m. s. 2.* (*pl.* ü).
exercise, (task) Aufgabe, *f. w.*; (practice) Übung, *f. w.*
exhausted, erſchöpft.
expect, erwarten, *w.*
expense, Koſten, *pl. only.*
expensive, teuer.
experience, Erfahrung, *f. w.*
explain, erklären, *w.*; auseinanderſetzen, *w.*
explanation, Erklärung, *f. w.*
exposition, Ausſtellung, *f. w.*
express, ausdrücken, *w.*; ausſprechen, *s.*
express (= express train), Schnellzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
expression, Ausdruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
extent, Umfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
exterior, äußer= (§ 290, 2).
extremely, äußerſt.
eye, Auge, *n. mx.*; trouble with the —s, Augenleiden, *n. s. 1*; disease of the —s, Augenkrankheit, *f. w.*

face, Geſicht, *n. s. 3.*
fact, Thatſache, *f. w.*; in —, in der That, eigentlich.
fail, fehlen, *w.*; — of, verfehlen (*gen.*).
fair, *adj.*, ſchön.
fair, Meſſe, *f. w.*
faith, Glaube, *m. mx.* (*gen.* =ns).
faithful, treu.
faithfully, treulich.
fall, fallen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — down, hinunterfallen.
fall, (autumn) Herbſt, *m. s. 2.*
false, falſch.
familiar, bekannt (to, *dat.*).
family, Familie, *f. w.*; — festival, Familienfeſt, *n. s. 2*; — portrait, Familienbild, *n. s. 3.*
famous, berühmt.
far, weit, fern; so — as, ſoweit, *sub. conj.*; — away, entfernt.
fare, Koſt, *f. w.* (*no pl.*).
fashion, Mode, *f. w.*; it is the —, es iſt in der Mode.
fast, *adj.*, *adv.*, ſchnell, raſch; (fixed, firm) feſt.
fate, Schickſal, *n. s. 2.*
father, Vater, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
father-in-law, Schwiegervater, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
fatherland, Vaterland, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
fatigue, ermüden, *w.*
fault, Schuld, *f. w.*; it is his —, er iſt ſchuld daran (*dat.*).
favor, Gefallen, *m. mx.* (§ 279, 2).
favorable, günſtig (to, *dat.*).
fear, Furcht, *f.* (*no pl.*).
fear, *v.*, fürchten, *w.*
feather, Feder, *f. w.*
February, Februar, *m. s. 2.*
fee, Honorar, *n. s. 2.*
feel, fühlen, *w.*; (be sensible of) empfinden, *s.*; to — concerned, in Sorge ſein; the fresh air —s good, die friſche Luft thut einem wohl.

feeling, Gefühl, *n. s. 2;* Gemüt, *n. s. 3;* have a strange —, seltsam zu Mute sein (*dat. of pers.*).
fellow, Kerl, *m. s. 2;* little —, Kerlchen, *n. s. 1.*
fertile, fruchtbar.
festival, Fest, *n. s. 2.*
fetch, holen, *w.*
fever, Fieber, *n. s. 1.*
few, wenige; a —, ein paar, einige.
fidelity, Treue, *f.* (*no pl.*).
field, Feld, *n. s. 3.*
fifteen, fünfzehn.
fight, *intr.* fechten, *s.;* *tr.* kämpfen, *w.*
fill, (occupy) besetzen, *w.*
finally, endlich.
find, finden, *s.;* to — one's self, sich befinden; be found, sich finden.
fine, schön; (delicate) fein.
finger, Finger, *m. s. 1.*
finish, vollenden, *w.*
finished, (done) fertig; (over) vorüber.
fire, Feuer, *n. s. 1.*
firm, fest.
first, *adj.*, erst; *adv.* (not until) erst; at —, zuerst; in the — place, erstens; (next) zunächst.
fit, passen, *w.* (*dat.*).
five, fünf.
fix, richten, *w.*
flash, Blitz, *m. s. 2.*
flatter, schmeicheln, *w.* (*dat.*).
flattering, schmeichelhaft.
flee, — over, hinüberfliehen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
flight (of stairs), Treppe, *f. w.*
flow, fließen, *s.* (*aux.* sein, cf. § 323, 1, *c*).
flower, Blume, *f. w.*
fluent(ly), geläufig.
fly, fliegen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — away (= flee), hinfliehen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
fog, Nebel, *m. s. 1.*
folk, Volk, *n. s. 3;* — song, Volkslied, *n. s. 3;* — lore, Volkssagen, *pl.*
follow, *intr.* folgen, *w.* (*aux.* sein, *dat.*); *tr.* befolgen, *w.*
following, folgend, *ppl. adj.*
folly, Narrheit, *f. w.*
fond, be — of, lieb haben; grow —, of, liebgewinnen, *s.*
fool, Narr, *m. w.;* Thor, *m. w.*
foot, Fuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); on —, zu Fuß; set — upon, betreten, *s.*
football, Fußball, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
footpad, Straßenräuber, *m. s. 1.*
for, *prep.*, für (*acc.*), zu (*dat.*); (*of time since*) seit (*dat.*); *time how long expressed by acc. without prep.;* — example, — instance, zum Beispiel; to know — certain, gewiß (*or* sicher) wissen.
for, *conj.*, denn.
forbid, verbieten, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*).
force, *n.*, Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); Gewalt, *f. w.*
force, *v.*, zwingen, *s.*
foreign, fremd, ausländisch; — land *or* country, Fremde, *f. w.*
forenoon, in the —, vormittags.
forest, Wald, *m. s. 3;* Holz, *n. s. 3.*
forget, vergessen, *s.*
forgive, vergeben, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*).
fork, Gabel, *f. w.*
form, Gestalt, *f. w.*
former, früher, vorig; der erstere, jener (§ 130, 1).
formerly, früher.
forsake, verlassen, *s.*
fortunate, glücklich.
fortunately, glücklicherweise, zum [Glück.
fortune, Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*); (property) Vermögen, *n. s. 1.*
forty, vierzig.
forward, vorwärts.
fossil, Fossil, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ien).
foundation, Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
four, vier.
fourteen, vierzehn.
franc, Frank, *m. mx.*
frank, aufrichtig.
Frederick, Friedrich.
free, frei; — from, los (*acc.*).
freedom, Freiheit, *f. w.;* — of speech, Redefreiheit.
free-trade, Handelsfreiheit, *f.*
French, *adj.*, französisch.
French (language), Französisch.
frequent, häufig.
fresh, frisch.
Friday, Freitag, *m. s. 2.*
friend, Freund, *m. s. 2;* Freundin, *f. w.;* — of the workingmen (people), Volksfreund.
friendly, freundlich.

friendship, Freundschaft, *f. w.*
fro, to and —, hin und her.
frog, Frosch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
from, von (*dat.*); = out of, aus (*dat.*), from it *or* that, davon.
fruit, Frucht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); (*collect.*) Obst, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
fulfill, erfüllen, *w.*
full, voll.
fully, vollends.
further, weiter.
furthermore, übrigens.
future, Zukunft, *f.* (*no pl.*).
future, *adj.*, künftig.

gain, gewinnen, *s.*
gallery, Gallerie, *f. w.*; picture —, Bildergallerie.
garden, Garten, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
gardener, Gärtner, *m. s. 1.*
gate, Thor, *n. s. 2*; garden —, Gartenthor.
gather, sammeln, versammeln, *w.*
gayety, Heiterkeit, *f.* (*no pl.*).
general, allgemein; in —, überhaupt.
generous, freigebig.
genius, Genie, *n. s.* (*pl.* -s).
gentle, sanft.
gentleman, Herr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1).
genuine, wahr.
German, *adj.*, deutsch.
German (language), Deutsch, *n.*, das Deutsche (§ 290, 1).
Germany, Deutschland, *n.*
get, (obtain) bekommen, *s.*; (fetch) holen, *w.*; (= become) werden, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — into (a state or condition), geraten in, *s.* (*aux.* sein); where did you — that, woher haben Sie das?
get, — up (rise), aufstehen, *s.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein).
ghost, Geist, *m. s. 3*; Gespenst, *n. s. 3.*
girl, Mädchen, *n. s. 1*; —s' school, Mädchenschule, Töchterschule, *f. w.*
give, geben, *s.*; (present) schenken, *w.*; — back, zurückgeben; to — one headache, einem Kopfweh machen.
glad, froh; to be —, sich freuen, *refl. w.*; I am — to hear that, ich höre das gern.
gladly, gern.
glance, Blick, *m. s. 2.*
glass, Glas, *n. s. 3.*
glisten, glänzen, *w.*
glitter, glänzen, *w.*
glorious, herrlich.
glove, Handschuh, *m. s. 2.*
go, gehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185) (*aux.* sein); (in any conveyance) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — walking, spazieren gehen; — driving, spazieren fahren; — against, entgegengehen; — into (enter upon), sich einlassen (auf, *acc.*); — out (there), hinausgehen; — over, hinübergehen; I am going, ich gehe; it is going to rain, es wird regnen.
goal, Ziel, *n. s. 2.*
God, Gott, *m. s.*; gods = Götter.
gold, Gold, *n. s.* (*no pl.*); — piece, Goldstück, *n. s. 2.*
golden, golden.
good, gut; (well-behaved) artig; — evening, guten Abend.
good-bye, auf Wiedersehen!
good-for-nothing, Taugenichts, *m.* (*indcl.*).
goodness, Güte, *f. w.*
goods, Gut, *n. s. 3.*
governess, Hauslehrerin, *f. w.*
governor, Vogt, Landvogt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
gradual, allmählich.
grammar, Grammatik, *f. w.*
grand, herrlich; (= large) groß.
grandmother, Großmutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü).
grant, gewähren, *w.*
grasp, fassen, *w.*; greifen, *s.*
grass, Gras, *n. s. 3.*
grateful, dankbar.
gratitude, Dankbarkeit.
grave, schwer.
gray, grau; turn —, ergrauen, *w.* (*aux.* sein.).
great, groß.
Greek, Grieche, *m. w.*
Greek (language), Griechisch, *n.*
Greek, *adj.*, griechisch.
green, grün.
greet, grüßen, *w.*
greeting, Gruß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üße).
grief, Schmerz, *m. mx.*
grieve, schmerzen, *w.*
ground, Boden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö); (= reason) Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).

grow, wachſen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); (= become) werden, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — up, aufwachſen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
guard, Wache, *f. w.*
guard, be on one's —, ſich hüten, *refl. w.* (against = vor, *dat.*).
guess, raten, *s.*; (infer) ſchließen, *s.*
guest, Gaſt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
guide, Führer, *m. s. 1.*
guilt, Schuld, *f. w.*
guilty, ſchuldig.
gunpowder, Schießpulver, *n. s. 1.*
gymnasium (a preparatory school), Gymnaſium, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ien); — suit (for gymnastic exercises), Turnanzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü)

habit, Sitte, *f. w.*
habitation, Wohnung, *f. w.*
hail! heil!
hair, Haar, *n. s. 2.*
half, halb; Hälfte, *f. w.*; the first —, die erſte Hälfte; — past nine, halb zehn; two and a half, zwei und ein halb, *or* drittehalb; one and a half, anderthalb.
hall, Saal, *m. s. 2* (*pl* Säle); concert —, Konzertſaal.
ham, Schinken, *m. s. 1.*
hammock, Hängematte, *f. w.*
hand, Hand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); right at —, gleich in der Nähe.
hand, *v.*, reichen, *w.*
handsome, ſchön.
hang, *intr.* hangen, *s.*
happen, geſchehen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); ſich zutragen, *refl. s.*; as it happened, *adv. phrase*, zufälligerweiſe.
happiness, Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
happy, froh, glücklich.
harbor, Hafen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
hard, ſchwer.
hardly, kaum, ſchwerlich.
harm, Schade, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns, *pl.* Schäden); do —, ſchaden, *w.*
harsh, rauh.
Harz Mts., Harzgebirge, *n. s. 1.*
haste, Eile, *f.* (*no pl.*).
hasten, eilen, *w.*; ſich beeilen, *refl. w.*
hast'ily, flüchtig.
hat, Hut, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
have, haben, *w. irr.* (§ 171); to — to, müſſen (§§ 189–191); to — done, thun laſſen (§ 366, 1, *a*).
he, er.
head, Kopf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö); Haupt, *n. s. 3.*
headache, Kopfſchmerz, *m. mx.*, Kopfweh, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
health, Geſundheit, *f. w.*
healthy, geſund.
hear, hören, *w.*; vernehmen, *s.*
heart, Herz, *n. mx.* (§ 97, 2, *a*); by —, auswendig.
hearth, Herd, *m. s. 2.*
hearty, herzlich.
heaven, Himmel, *m. s. 1.*
heavy, ſchwer; — rain, ſtarker Regen.
heed, achten, beachten, *w.* (§ 396, 1).
height, Höhe, *f. w.*
hell, Hölle, *f. w.*
help, helfen, *s.* (*dat.*).
help, Hilfe, *f. w.*
helpful, behilflich (to = *dat.*).
henceforth, fortan.
her, *acc.* ſie; *dat.* ihr; *poss.* ihr.
here, hier; — below, hienieden; (= hither) hierher.
hereafter, fortan.
herewith, hiermit.
hero, Held, *m. w.*
heroine, Heldin, *f. w.*
hide, verbergen, *s.*
high, hoch (§ 109, 1); — wind, ſtarker Wind.
Highness, (title) Hoheit, *f. w.*
hill, Hügel, *m. s. 1.*
him, *acc.* ihn; *dat.* ihm.
himself, *emphatic*, ſelbſt; *refl.*, ſich.
hinder, hindern, verhindern, *w.*
hindrance, Hindernis, *n. s. 2.*
hire, Miete, *f. w.*
his, ſein.
historical, geſchichtlich, hiſtoriſch.
history, Geſchichte, *f. w.*
hit, — upon, treffen, *s.*
hither, her, hierher.
hold, halten, *s.*; — back, zurückhalten.
hole, Loch, *n. s. 3.*
holiday, Feiertag, *m. s. 2*; —s (*collect.*), Ferien, *pl.*
holy, heilig.
home, Heimat, *f. w.*; *adv.*, nach Hauſe; = at home, zu Hauſe.
home-land, Heimat, *f.*
honest, redlich.
honesty, Redlichkeit, *f. w.*

honor, Ehre, *f. w.*; man of —, Ehrenmann.
honor, *v.*, ehren, *w.*
honorable, ehrlich; (bringing honor) ehrenvoll.
hope, Hoffnung, *f. w.*
hope, *v.*, hoffen, *w.*
horror, Entſetzen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
horse, Pferd, *n. s. 2.*
host, Wirt, *m. s. 2.*
hostile, feind (to = *dat.*).
hot, heiß.
hour, Stunde, *f. w.*
house, Haus, *n. s. 3*; little —, Häuschen, *n. s. 1*; at the — of, bei (*dat.*).
how, wie; — about? wie verhält es ſich mit?
however, indeſſen, jedoch.
howl, heulen, *w.*
human, menſchlich; — life, Menſchenleben, *n. s. 1.*
human being, Menſch, *m. w.*
hundred, hundert; a — times, hundertmal.
hungry, hungrig.
hunter, Jäger, *m. s. 1.*
hurry, eilen, *w.*; ſich beeilen, *refl. w.*
husband, Mann, *m. s. 3.*

I, ich.
idea, Gedanke, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns); Begriff, *m. s. 2.*
idle, (lazy) faul; (inactive) müßig.
idleness, Faulheit, *f. w.*
if, wenn, *sub. conj.*; = whether, ob, *subj. conj.*; as —, als ob, als wenn (§ 359, 3).
ignite, anzünden, *w.*
ill, krank; (= evil), böſe.
illness, Krankheit, *f. w.*
imagine, *tr.*, denken, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
immense, koloſſal.
immortal, unſterblich.
impart, mitteilen, *w.*
impatience, Ungeduld, *f.*
impatient, ungeduldig.
imperial, kaiſerlich.
import, (meaning) Inhalt, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
importance, Wichtigkeit, *f. w.*
important, wichtig.
impossible, unmöglich.
impression, Eindruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
improve, beſſern, *w.*
in, in (*dat. and acc.*); — the country, auf dem Lande; — the evening, am Abend; — order to, um zu, *with inf.*; — it, darin; — there, drinnen; — view of, bei, nach (*dat.*); — other words, mit andern Worten.
inclined, geneigt, *pple.*
increase, Zuſchuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
indebted, ſchuldig (to = *dat.*).
indeed, in der That, allerdings, zwar; yes —, ja wohl, *or* jawohl.
indisposed, unwohl.
indistinct(ly), undeutlich.
industrious, fleißig.
industry, Fleiß, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
infer, ſchließen, *s.*
influence, Einfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
inform, — of, mitteilen.
information, Bericht, *m. s. 2.*
inhabit, bewohnen, *w.*
inhabitant, Bewohner, *m. s. 1.*
injury, Schade, *m. mx.* (*pl.* Schäden).
injustice, Unrecht, *n. s. 2.*
ink, Tinte, *f. w.*
inn, Gaſthaus, Wirtshaus, *n. s. 3.*
innkeeper, Wirt, *m. s. 2.*
innocence, Unſchuld, *f.* (*no pl.*).
inside, drinnen.
insight, Einſicht, *f. w.*
insignificant, unbedeutend.
inspect, durchmuſtern, *w.*
instance, Beiſpiel, *n. s. 2*; for —, zum Beiſpiel.
instantly, augenblicks.
instead of, anſtatt (*gen.*).
instruct, unterrichten.
instruction, Unterricht, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
instructive, lehrreich.
intelligence, Geiſt, *m. s. 3*; Verſtand, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
intend, (*trans.* = destine) beſtimmen, *w.*; (purpose) vorhaben, *w. irr.* (§ 171), planen, *w.*; (*intrans.* = purpose) gedenken, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
interest, Intereſſe, *n. mx.*; object of —, Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*
interest, *v.*, intereſſieren, *w.*; — one's self in, ſich annehmen, *s.* (*gen.*).
interesting, intereſſant.

interrupt, unterbrechen, *s.*
intimate, näher.
into, in (*acc.*).
intolerable, unerträglich.
invent, erfinden, *s.*; — falsely, erlügen, *s.*
invention, Erfindung, *f. w.*
investigate, unterſuchen, *w.*
invitation, Einladung, *f. w.*
invite, einladen, *s.*
involve, gelten, *s.*
iron, Eiſen, *n. s. 1.*
is, iſt; is going, geht (cf. p. 34, n. 5); he is going to make, er macht (cf. p. 62, n. 5).
island, Inſel, *f. w.*
it, es; translate by forms of er or ſie when referring to masc. or fem. noun (§ 122, 1).
Italian, *adj.*, italieniſch.

January, Januar, *m. s. 2.*
jest, Spaß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
jesting, Scherz, *m. s. 2.*
joke, Spaß, *m s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
jolly, luſtig.
journey, Reiſe, Fahrt, *f. w.*
joy, Freude, *f. w.*
judge, *v.*, urteilen, *w.*
July, Juli, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
jump, ſpringen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
June, Juni, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
just, *adv.* (= only) nur, einmal; (= exactly) gerade; — ask, fragen Sie nur; *of time*, eben; — now, eben jetzt, ſoeben; just as . . . as, ebenſo . . . als.

keep, (= retain) behalten, *s.*; to — awake, wach bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — one's word, Wort halten, *s.*; keep (doing), immerfort (thun).
key, Schlüſſel, *m. s. 1.*
kill, töten, *w.*; umbringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); erſchlagen, *s.*
kind, Art, *f. w.*; what — of, was für (§ 145).
kind, freundlich.
kindness, Güte, *f. w.*
king, König, *m. s. 2.*
kitchen, Küche, *f. w.*
knee, Knie, *n. s. 1.*
knife, Meſſer, *n. s. 1.*
knight, Ritter, *m. s. 1.*
knew, I —, he —, ich, er wußte.
knock, klopfen.
know, = to be acquainted with, kennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); in other cases, wiſſen, *irr.* (§ 190).
knowledge, Kenntnis, *f. s. 2*; Wiſſen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*); to my —, meines Wiſſens.
known, bekannt; it is —, man weiß; as is well —, bekanntermaßen.

labor, Arbeit, *f. w.*
lack, be —ing, fehlen, *w.* (*impers. with dat.*); (= do without) entbehren, *w.* (*gen.*).
lack, Mangel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
lady, Dame, Frau, *f. w.*; young —, Fräulein, *n. s. 1.*
lake, See, *m. nx.*
land, Land, *n. s. 2–3* (p. 46, n. 10).
landlady, Wirtin, *f. w.*
landlord, Wirt, *m. s. 2.*
language, Sprache, *f. w.*; — lesson, Sprachſtunde, *f. w.*; — study, Sprachſtudium, *n. nx.*; — of flowers, Blumenſprache.
large, groß (§ 114, 3).
last, letzt, vorig; the — days, die letzten Tage; — year, voriges Jahr; — evening, geſtern abend; at —, endlich.
last, (continue) dauern, *w.*; (exist) beſtehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
late, ſpät; at the latest, ſpäteſtens; of —, in der letzten Zeit; latest news, neueſte Nachrichten.
lately, kürzlich, neulich.
Latin, Latein, *n.*
Latin, *adj.*, lateiniſch.
latter, der letztere, dieſer (§ 130, 1).
laugh, lachen, *w.*
law, Geſetz, *n. s. 2.*
lawyer, Advokat, *m. w.*
lay, legen, *w.*
laziness, Faulheit, *f. w.*
lazy, faul.
lead, führen, *w.*
lead-pencil, Bleiſtift, *m. s. 2.*
leaf, Blatt, *n. s. 3.*
league, Bund, *m. s. 2.* (*pl.* ü).
learn, lernen, *w.*; (= ascertain) erfahren, *s.*
learned, gelehrt, *ppl. adj.*

least, am wenigſten; at —, wenigſtens, mindeſtens.
leave, verlaſſen, *s.*; — for, abreiſen nach, *w.* (*aux.* ſein).
left, — hand, linf; (= remaining), übrig.
legend, Sage, *f. w.*
lend, leihen, *s.*; — a hand, die Hände reichen, *w.*
length, Länge, *f. w.*
lesson, Lektion, *f. w.*
let, laſſen, *s.*; *often translated by subj.*. — him have, habe er; — us go, gehen wir.
letter, Brief, *m. s. 2*; — carrier, Briefträger, *m. s. 1.*
liberal, freigebig.
liberty, Freiheit, *f. w.*
library, Bibliothek, *f. w.*
lie (be situated), liegen, *s.*
lie (speak falsely), lügen, *s.*
life, Leben, *n. s. 1*; city —, Stadtleben; live a —, ein Leben führen.
lift, heben, *s.*
light, Licht, *n. s. 3*; northern —s, Nordlicht.
light, *adj.* (easy, not heavy) leicht; (not dark) hell; make — of, ſpotten (*gen.*).
light, *v.*, anzünden, anſtecken, *w.*
lightning, Blitz, *m. s. 2.*
like, *adj.*, gleich; the —, dergleichen; *adv.*, wie.
like, *v.*, gern haben, lieb haben, *w. irr.*; mögen (§§ 189, 191, 3); I should — company, ich hätte gern Geſellſchaft; to — to do, gern thun; to — best, am liebſten haben.
likewise, gleichfalls.
limit, einſchränken, *w.*
linden (tree), Linde, *f. w.*
line, Zeile, *f. w.*
literature, Litteratur, *f. w.*
little, *often to be translated by a diminutive in* chen *or* lein; (of size) klein; (of quantity) wenig; a —, ein wenig, ein bißchen; the — ones, die Kleinen.
live, leben, *w.*; (= dwell, reside) wohnen, *w.*
lively, lebhaft.
location, Lage, *f. w.*
lock, verſchließen, *s.*
lofty, hoch.
London, London; *adj.*, Londoner (§ 109, 2); — weather, Londoner Wetter.
long, *adj.*, lang; *as adv.*, lang(e).
long, *v.*, ſich ſehnen, *refl. w.* (for = nach, *dat.*).
longer, no —, nicht mehr.
look — for, ſuchen, *w.*; — at, beſehen, *s.*, betrachten, *w.*; — forward to, entgegenſehen, *s.* (*dat.*); — on, ſchauen, *w.*; — into, ſchauen in (*acc.*); = seem, appear, ausſehen, *s.*
look (= glance), Blick, *m. s. 2.*
Lord, Herr, *m. w.*
lose, verlieren, *s.*; — one's way, ſich verirren, *refl. w.*
lost, verloren, *ppl. adj.*; to be —, get —, verloren gehen.
lot, fall to the — of, zu teil werden (*dat. of pers.*).
Louis, Ludwig.
lounge, Sofa, *n. s.* (*pl.* -s).
love, lieben, *w.*
love, Liebe, *f. w.*; in — with, verliebt in (*acc.*); — scene, Liebesſcene, *f. w.*
lovely, (beautiful) ſchön; (amiable) lieblich, liebenswürdig.
low, niedrig; (of the voice) leiſe.
lower, *adj.*, unter.
luck, Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
luckily, zum Glück, glücklicherweiſe.
lucky, glücklich.

mad, toll.
madam, Madame (*Fr.*), gnädige Frau.
maid, — servant, Magd, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
mail, Poſt, *f. w.*
main, (in compounds) Haupt-; Main Street, Hauptſtraße.
majesty, Majeſtät, *f. w.*
majority, Mehrheit, *f. w.*
make, machen; to — the acquaintance of, kennen lernen, *w.*
man, Mann, *m. s. 3*; (= human being) Menſch, *m. w.*; man-of-the-house, Wirt, *m. s. 2*; Hausherr, *m. w.*; man-teacher, Lehrer, *m. s. 1.*
mankind, Menſchen, *w. pl.*
man-of-war, Kriegsſchiff, *n. s. 2.*

manifold, mannigfaltig.
manner, Weiſe, *f. w.*
many, viele, manche; — a, manch (§ 157).
mark, Mark, *f. w.*
marriage, Heirat, *f. w.*
marvellous, wunderbar.
mass, Menge, *f. w.*
master, Meiſter, *m. s. 1*; Herr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1); — work, Meiſterwerk, *n. s. 2.*
mathematics, Mathematik, *f.*
matter, Sache, *f. w.*; — of business, Geſchäftsſache; small —, Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*; in the — of, in betreff, *with gen.*; it is a — of, es gilt (*from* gelten); what is the — with her? was iſt ihr? was fehlt ihr? no —, gleichviel.
may, mögen, dürfen (§§ 189–191).
May, Mai, *m. s. 2.*
me, *acc.* mich; *dat.* mir.
meal, Mahlzeit, *f. w.*
mean, meinen, *w.*; bedeuten, *w.*; I —, ich meine; the word —s, das Wort bedeutet.
means, by no —, keineswegs.
meanwhile, indeſſen.
meat, Fleiſch, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
medicine, (drugs) Arznei, *f. w.*; (the science) Medizin, *f. w.*
meet, treffen, *s.*; begegnen, *w.* (*aux.* ſein, cf. § 323, 1, *d, da.*).
meeting, Verſammlung, *f. w.*
merchant, Kaufmann, *m. s. 3* (§ 238, 2, *a*).
mere(ly), bloß.
messenger, Bote, *m. w.*
method, Methode, *f. w.*
middle, mittel (§ 103, 2); of — age, mittleren Alters.
Middle Ages, Mittelalter, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
mighty, mächtig.
mild, mild.
mile, Meile, *f. w.*
milk, Milch, *f.* (*no pl.*).
mind, Sinn, *m. s. 2.*
mindful, gedenk (of = *gen.*).
mineral, Mineral, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ien).
minute, Minute, *f. w.*
mirror, Spiegel, *m. s. 1.*
miserable, elend.
misfortune, Unglück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
missing, fehlend; be —, fehlen, *w.*
mist, Nebel, *m. s. 1.*
mistake, Fehler, *m. s. 1*; Irrtum, *m. s. 3.*
mistaken, be —, ſich irren, *w.*
modern, *comp. of* neu.
moment, Augenblick, *m. s. 2.*
Monday, Montag, *m. s. 2.*
money, Geld, *n. s. 3.*
monk, Mönch, *m. s. 2.*
monkey, Affe, *m. w.*
month, Monat, *m. s. 2.*
monthly (periodical), Monatsſchrift, *f. w.*
monument, Denkmal, *n. s. 2–3.*
mood, Stimmung, *f. w.*
moon, Mond, *m. s. 2.*
moonlight, Mond[en]ſchein, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
moonlight, *adj.*, mondhell.
moral, ſittlich, moraliſch.
more, *comp.* (§§ 111–114); mehr (§ 158); the —, the, je mehr, deſto; *with numerals*, noch; one more book, noch ein Buch.
moreover, übrigens.
morning, Morgen, *m. s. 1*; — light, Morgenlicht, *n. s. 3*; good —, guten Morgen; this —, heute morgen; to-morrow —, morgen früh; — breeze, Morgenluft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
morrow, to-morrow, morgen, *adv.*; day after —, übermorgen.
most, *superl.* (§§ 111–114); a — interesting city, eine höchſt (or äußerſt) intereſſante Stadt; at the —, höchſtens.
mostly, meiſtens.
mother, Mutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü).
motion, Bewegung, *f. w.*
mount, ſteigen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
mountain, Berg, *m. s. 2*; 'mountains' = mountain-range, or mountain-country, Gebirge, *n. s. 1.*
mouth, Mund, *m. s.* (*2–3*).
much, viel.
multitude, Menge, *f. w.*
museum, Muſeum, *n. mx.* (*pl.* Muſeen).
music, Muſik, *f. w.*; — lesson, Muſikſtunde, *f. w.*
must, müſſen (§§ 189–191); — not (in prohibitions), nicht dürfen.

my, mein; see, however, p. 28, n. 5.
myself, *emphatic*, ſelbſt; *refl.*, *acc.* mich, *dat.* mir.
mystery, Geheimnis, *n. s. 2.*

name, Name, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns); by — of, Namens.
name, *v.*, nennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); (= appoint), ernennen.
namely, nämlich.
narrative, Erzählung, *f. w.*
narrow, eng.
nation, Volk, *n. s. 3*; Nation, *f. w.*
native, — country *or* land, Vaterland, *n. s.*; Heimat, *f. w.*
natural, natürlich; — curiosities, Naturalien, *pl.*; — science, Naturwiſſenſchaft, *f. w.*
naturally, natürlich.
nature, Natur, *f. w.*
near, nah (§ 114, 2); in der Nähe von.
nearly, faſt, beinahe.
neat, nett.
necessary, nötig, notwendig (to = *dat.*).
neck, Hals, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
need, (distress) Not, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ö); (necessity) Bedürfnis, *n. s. 2*; case of —, Notfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
need, *v.*, brauchen, *w.*; bedürfen, *w. irr.* (*gen.*).
negative, answer in the —, verneinen, *w.*
neglect, vernachläſſigen, *w.*
neighbor, Nachbar, *m. mx.*
neither, *pron.*, keiner (-e, -es); *conj.*, neither . . . nor, weder . . . noch.
nephew, Neffe, *m. w.*
nest, Neſt, *n. s. 3.*
never, nie, niemals.
nevertheless, jedoch, trotzdem, nichtsdeſtoweniger.
new, neu.
news, Nachricht, *f. w.* (*usually in pl.*); what's the —? was giebt's Neues?
newspaper, Zeitung, *f. w.*
next, nächſt (§ 114, 2), künftig; *adv.*, weiter.
nice, hübſch, nett.
nickname, Spitzname, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
night, Nacht, *f s. 2* (*pl.* ä); in the —, des Nachts.
nightingale, Nachtigall, *f. w.*
nine, neun.
ninety, neunzig.
No., at —, Numero, *m.* (*indcl.*).
no, *adj.*, kein; *neg. adv.*, nein; — worse, nicht ſchlechter; once and — more, einmal und nicht wieder; — doubt one needs a long time, man braucht wohl eine lange Zeit.
no one, niemand.
noble, edel.
nobleman, Edelmann, *m. s. 3* (§ 238, 2, *a*).
none, kein; — but, lauter.
nonsense, Unſinn, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
noon, Mittag, *m. s. 2.*
nor, noch; — I either, ich auch nicht.
north, Norden, *m. s. 1.*
northern lights, Nordlicht, *n. s. 3.*
nose, Naſe, *f. w.*
not, nicht; — a, kein; — at all, gar nicht.
notably, bedeutend.
note, Notiz, *f. w.*
note, merken, *w.*
nothing, nichts.
notice, merken, bemerken.
novel, Roman, *m. s. 2.*
now, nun, jetzt (§ 380, 1, *f*); — and then, dann und wann; — here is something, hier iſt nun etwas; — guess, raten Sie einmal, *or* nun einmal.
nowadays, heutzutage.
number, Anzahl, *f.* (*no pl.*); (= great —) Menge, *f. w.*
Number, at —, Numero, *m.* (*indcl.*).
numerous, zahlreich.
nut, Nuß, *f. s.* (*pl.* Nüſſe).

obedience, Gehorſam, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
obey, gehorchen, *w.* (*dat.*).
object, Zweck, *m. s. 2*; — of interest, Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*
obliged, be — to, müſſen (§§ 189–191).
obtain, bekommen, *s.*
occupant, Bewohner, *m. s. 1.*
occupy, (take possession of, fill) beſetzen, *w.*; (busy) beſchäftigen, *w.*
occur, vorkommen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — to, einfallen, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*).
ocean, See, *f. w.*; — voyage, Seereiſe, *f. w.*, Seefahrt, *f. w.*
of, *usually translated by genitive;*

von (*dat.*), *especially before proper names or where the case would not otherwise be clear;* a majority of 200 votes, eine Mehrheit von 200 Stimmen; a quantity — minerals, eine Menge Mineralien (§ 246, 1, *a*); — course, natürlich; — it *or* that, davon.

offer, (tender to a person) bieten, anbieten, *s.;* (present) darbieten.

office, Amt, *n. s. 3.*

often, oft, häufig.

oh, o, ach; — that's it! ach so!

old, alt.

olden, älter.

Olympus, Olymp, *m. s.*

on, an (*dat. and acc.*); auf (*dat. and acc.*); — the river (of a boat), auf dem Flusse; (of a house, city, *etc.*), an dem Flusse; — the side, auf der Seite; — the study (= concerning), über das Studium; — your head, auf dem Kopfe; — the first of May, am ersten Mai; — business of state, in Staatsgeschäften; — account of, wegen (*gen.*); — my account, meinetwegen.

once, (= one time) ein'mal; (= just, pray, once upon a time) einmal'; (= some time) einst; — more, wieder, nochmals; at — (= immediately) sofort, sogleich; all at — (= suddenly), auf einmal.

one, *adj.*, ein; *indef. pron.*, man, einer (§§ 149. 156).

only, *adj.*, einzig; *adv.*, nur, bloß, allein; (of time) erst.

open, *adj.*, offen.

open, *verb*, öffnen, *w.*

opera, Oper, *f. w.*

opinion, Ansicht, Meinung, *f. w.*

opponent, Gegner, *m. s. 1.*

opportunity, Gelegenheit, *f. w.*

opposite, gegenüber (*dat., usually follows governed word*).

oppression, Drang, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).

or, oder.

order, in — to, um zu, *with inf.*

ordinary, (= common) gemein; (= usual) gewöhnlich.

origin, Ursprung, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).

other, ander; each —, einander (*indcl.*).

otherwise, (= differently) anders; (= else) sonst.

ought, I —, ich sollte, ich hätte sollen (§§, 189–191).

our, unser.

out, — of, aus (*dat.*); — there, draußen.

outrageous, unverschämt.

outside, draußen.

over, *prep.*, über (*dat. and acc.*); *adv.*, (= past) vorüber; — night, die Nacht über; — yonder, drüben, dort drüben.

over, *adj.* (= left, remaining) übrig.

owe, schuldig sein (*dat. of pers.*)

own, eigen.

owner, Eigentümer, *m. s. 1.*

ownership, Eigentum. *n. s. 3;* Eigentumsrecht, *n. s. 2.*

page, Seite, *f. w.*

pain, Schmerz, *m. mx.;* Pein, *f.* (*no pl.*).

pain, *verb*, schmerzen, *w.*

pains, Mühe, *f. w.*

painter, Maler, *m. s. 1.*

painting, (picture) Gemälde, *n. s. 1;* (the art of —) Malerei, *f.*

pair, Paar, *n. s. 2.*

palace, Palast, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); Schloß, *n. s. 3.*

pale, bleich.

paper, Papier, *n. s. 2;* (= newspaper) Zeitung, *f. w.*

pardon, verzeihen, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*).

parents, Eltern, *pl. only.*

park, Park, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* Parks).

part, Teil, *m. s. 2;* (= share), *n. s. 2;* (= rôle) Rolle, *f. w.*

particularly, besonders.

partly, teils.

pass, *intr.* (away), vergehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein); — by, vorbeigehen; *tr.* (of time, = spend) verbringen, zubringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330).

passage (in a book), Stelle, *f. w.*

past, *adv.*, vorüber; half — nine, halb zehn.

pastor, Pastor, *m. mx.*

path, Pfad, *m. s. 2.*

patience, Geduld, *f.* (*no pl.*).

pause, Pause, *f. w.*

pay, Lohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).

pay, *verb*, bezahlen, *w.*
peace, Friede, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
peak, Gipfel, *m. s. 1.*
peasant, Bauer, *m. mx.*
peculiar, sonderbar.
pen, Feder, *f. w.*; — drawing, Federzeichnung, *f. w.*
penalty, Strafe, *f. w.*
pencil, Bleistift, *m. s. 2.*
penny, Pfennig, *m. s. 2.*
people, (= persons) Leute, *pl. only*; Menschen, *w. pl.*; (= nation) Volk, *n. s. 3*; —live, die Leute leben.
per cent, Prozent, *n. s. 2.*
perfect, vollkommen.
perform (a task), lösen, *w.*
performance, Vorstellung, *f. w.*
perhaps, vielleicht; — I ought to, ich sollte wohl.
perilous, gefährlich.
perish, untergehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein).
permit, erlauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*).
permitted, be —, dürfen (§§ 189–191).
person, Person, *f. w.*
pfennig, Pfennig, *m. s. 2.*
philosophy, Philosophie, *f. w.*
photograph, Photographie, *f. u*
physician, Arzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
piano, Klavier, *n. s. 2*; — lesson, Klavierstunde, *f. w.*
picture, Bild, *n. s. 3*; — gallery, Bildergallerie, *f. w.*; — book, Bilderbuch, *n. s 3*; (illustration) Abbildung, *f. w.*
pick, brechen, *s.*
piece, Stück, *n. s. 2.*
piece-of-luck, Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
pious, fromm.
pipe, Pfeife, *f. w.*
pithy, kräftig.
pity, it is a —, es ist schade.
pity, *verb*, bedauern; sich erbarmen (*with gen.*).
place, Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); Stelle, *f. w.*; Stätte, *f. w.*; (town) Ort, *m. s. 2–3*; — of interest, Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*; in the first —, erstens.
place, take —, stattfinden, *s.*
plain, Ebene, *f. w.*
plain, *adj.* (= evident) offenbar; (= distinct) deutlich.
plan, Plan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
plan, *verb*, entwerfen, *s.*; Pläne machen.
plate, Teller, *m. s. 1.*
play, *verb*, spielen, *w.*
play, (= game) Spiel, *n. s. 2*; (= drama) Drama, *n. mx.*; Stück, *n. s. 2.*
playmate, Spielkamerad, *m. w.*
pleasant, angenehm.
please, gefallen, *s.* (*dat.*); = if you please, (ich) bitte.
pleasure, Freude, *f. w.*; Vergnügen, *n. s. 1*; take — in, sich ergötzen an (*dat.*).
plentiful, reichlich.
plenty, Fülle, *f. w.*
plumbing, Wasserleitung, *f. w.*
pocket, Tasche, *f. w.*; — money, Taschengeld, *n. s. 3.*
poem, Gedicht, *n. s. 2.*
poet, Dichter, *m. s. 1.*
poetic, poetisch.
poetry, Dichtung, *f. w.*; Dichtkunst, *f. s.* (*no pl.*).
point, Punkt, *m. s. 2*; (= sharp —) Spitze, *f. w.*; it is on the — of striking, es will eben schlagen; — of view, Gesichtspunkt.
point (to), deuten (auf, *acc.*), *w.*
police, Polizei, *f. w.*
policeman, Polizist, *m. w.*
polite, höflich.
politeness, Höflichkeit, *f. w.*
political, politisch.
politics, Politik, *f. w.*
poodle, Pudel, *m. s. 1.*
poor, arm; (= bad, inferior) schlecht.
position, (location) Lage, *f. w.*; (employment) Stellung, *f. w.*
possess, besitzen, *s.*
possession, take — of, sich bemächtigen (*gen*).
possible, möglich.
post, (= mail) Post, *f. w.*
pound, Pfund, *n. s. 2.*
pour, gießen, *s.*
powder, Pulver, *n. s. 1.*
power, Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
powerful, kräftig, gewaltig.
practice, Übung, *f. w.*
practice, *verb*, üben, *w.*
praise, loben, *w.*

prank, Streich, *m. s. 2.*
pray, *interj.*, nur (p. 43, ¾ 14); — come along, kommen Sie nur mit; how old are you, —? wie alt sind Sie denn?
prefer, lieber haben, *w. irr.*; lieber mögen (§§ 189–191); vorziehen, *s.*
preparation, Vorbereitung, *f. w.*
preparatory, — school, Vorbereitungsschule, *f. w.*
present, (= gift) Geschenk, *n. s. 2.*
present, *verb*, schenken, *w.*
present, *adj.*, jetzig (from jetzt, now).
present, for the —, vorläufig.
preserve, erhalten, *s.*
president, Präsident, *m. w.*
presidential, — election, Präsidentenwahl, *f. w.*
press, Presse, *f. w.*; freedom of the —, Preßfreiheit, *f. w.*
press, *verb*, — in, eindringen in, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
presume, I —, wohl.
pretty, *adj.*, hübsch.
pretty, *adv.*, ziemlich.
prevent, hindern, verhindern.
prey, fall a — to, verfallen (to = *dat.*), *s.* (*aux.* sein).
price, Preis, *m. s. 2.*
prince, Prinz, *m. w.*
principal, Kapital, *n. s. 2.* (*pl. also* ¨ien).
principal, *adj.*, *in compounds* = Haupt-.
prisoner, Gefangene(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
private, — teacher, Privatlehrer.
prize, Preis, *m. s. 2.*
probable, probably, wahrscheinlich; that is probably an invention, das mag wohl eine Erfindung sein.
professor, Professor, *m. mx.*
proficiency, Fertigkeit, *f. w.*
prologue, Prolog, *m. s. 2.*
promise, *verb*, versprechen, *s.*
promise, Versprechen, *n. s. 1.*
pronunciation, Aussprache, *f. w.*
proof, Beweis, *m. s. 2.*
prop, Stütze, *f. w.*
proper(ly), eigentlich.
property, (= possession) Eigentum, *n. s. 3*; (= wealth) Vermögen, *n. s. 1*; (= characteristic) Eigenschaft, *f. w.*
prophet, Prophet, *m. w.*
propose, vorschlagen, *s.*
prose, Prosa, *f.* (*no pl.*).
proud, stolz.
prove, beweisen, *s.*
proverb, Sprichwort, *n. s.* 3.
Prussia, Preußen.
public, Publikum *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
pulpit, Kanzel, *f. w.*
punish, bestrafen.
punishment, Strafe, *f. w.*
pupil, Schüler, *m. s. 1.*
purchase, Kauf, Einkauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu).
purpose, Zweck, *m. s. 2.*
purse, Beutel, *m. s. 1.*
put, (= set) setzen, *w.*; (= stick) stecken; to — up with (something), sich (etwas) gefallen lassen, *s.*

quaint, seltsam.
quality, Eigenschaft, *f. w.*
quantity, Menge, *f. w.* (§ 246, 1, *a*).
quarrel, Streit, *m. s. 2.*
quarter, Viertel, *n. s. 1*; (= 25 cents) Vierteldollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* =e); a — to 10, drei Viertel (auf) 10.
queen, Königin, *f. w.*
question, Frage, *f. w.*; it is a — of, es handelt sich um (*acc.*); in —, *adj. phrase*, betreffend, *ppl. adj.*
quick, schnell.
quiet, ruhig, still; (soft) sanft.
quite, ganz.

rail, (= railway) Eisenbahn, *f. w.*; by —, mit der Eisenbahn.
rain, *verb*, regnen, *w.*
rain, Regen, *m. s. 1*; —y day, Regentag, *m. s. 2.*
rainy, regnerisch.
range, Umfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
rapid, schnell.
rare, selten.
rate, at any —, jedenfalls, wenigstens.
rather, vielmehr; (= preferably) lieber.
raw, (of weather) rauh.
ray, Strahl, *m. mx.*
reach, reichen; (= arrive at) erreichen, *w.*
read, lesen, *s.*
reader, Leser, *m. s. 1*; (= reading-book) Lesebuch, *n. s. 3.*

readily, leicht.
reading, Lektüre, *f. w.*; — book, Lesebuch, *n. s. 3.*
ready, (prepared) bereit; (finished) fertig.
real, wirklich, eigentlich, wahr.
really, wirklich, wahrhaft, eigentlich.
reason, Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); Ursache, *f. w.*
receive, bekommen, *s.*; erhalten, *s.*; (guests) empfangen, *s.*
recently, neulich.
recess, Pause, *f. w.*
recite, deklamieren, *w.*
reckon, rechnen, *w.* (on = auf, *acc.*).
recommend, empfehlen, *s.*
red, rot.
redound, gereichen, *w.* (to, zu).
reference, Bezug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), in — to, in Bezug auf (*acc.*).
reform, Reform, *f. w.*
regard, Betreff, *m. s.* (*no pl.*); Bezug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); Rücksicht, *f. w.*; in — to, in betreff, *or* betreffs (*with gen.*); in Bezug auf (*acc.*); mit Rücksicht auf (*acc.*), über (*acc.*).
regard, *verb*, halten für (cf. § 265, 3, *c*).
region, Gegend, *f. w.*
regret, Reue, *f. w.*
regret, *verb*, bereuen.
regular, regelmäßig; (= thorough) vollkommen.
rejoice, *trans.*, freuen, *w.*; *intrans.*, sich freuen, *refl. w.*
relate, erzählen, *w.*
related, be —, sich verhalten, *s.*
relation, Verhältnis, *n. s. 2.*
relative, Verwandte(r), *decl. like adj* (cf. § 290, 2).
rely (upon), sich verlassen (auf, *acc.*), *refl. s.*
remain, bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (be left) übrig bleiben; 'I —' (at close of a letter) ich verbleibe.
remaining, übrig.
remark, bemerken, *w.*
remarkable, merkwürdig.
remember, sich erinnern, *refl. w.* (*with gen.*).
remind, erinnern, *w.* (of = an, *acc.*).
renounce, entsagen, *w.* (*dat.*).
rent, Miete, *f. w.*
repay, belohnen, *w.*
repeat, wiederholen, *w.*
repeatedly, wiederholt.
repentance, Reue, *f. w.*
reply, erwidern.
report, Bericht, *m. s. 2*; (= news) Nachricht, *f. w.*
report, *verb*, berichten, *w.*
represent, darstellen, *w.*
republic, Republik, *f. w.*
republican, Republikaner, *m. s. 1.*
repulsive, abstoßend, *ppl. adj.*
reputation, Ruhm, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
request, *verb*, bitten, *s.*
request, Bitte, *f. w.*
require, verlangen, *w.*
rescue, retten, *w.*
resemble, gleichen, *s.* (*dat.*).
reserve, reservieren, *w.*
residence, Wohnung, *f. w.*
resolve, sich entschließen, *refl. s.*
respect, Betreff, *m. s.* (*no pl.*); Hinsicht, *f. w.*; in — to, in betreff (*with gen.*); in this —, in dieser Hinsicht.
rest, Ruhe, *f.* (*no pl.*).
rest, *verb*, ruhen, *w.*; — one's self, sich ausruhen, *refl. w.*
rest, the — (remainder), das übrige.
restless, unruhig.
result, Folge, *f. w.*
resume, wiederaufnehmen, *s.*
retain, behalten, *s.*
return, *verb*, wiederkehren, zurückkehren, *w.* (*aux.* sein).
return, Rückkehr, *f. w.*; (= way back) Rückweg, *m. s. 2*; —journey, Rückreise, *f. w.*
reward, Lohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
reward, *verb*, belohnen, *w.*
rheumatism, Rheumatismus, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
Rhine, Rhein, *m.*
ribbon, Band, *n. s. 3.*
rich, reich.
riches, Reichtum, *m. s. 3.*
rid of, los (*with acc.*).
riddle, Rätsel, *n. s. 1.*
ride, (in a conveyance) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (on horseback) reiten, *s.* (*aux.* sein, cf. § 323, 1, *c*.).
rider, Reiter, *m. s. 1.*
right, *adj.* (= proper) recht; (=

correct) richtig; right-hand, recht; to be —, recht haben; *adv.*, — before, gerade vor; — at. ſchon an; (= very) — good, recht gut.
right, Recht, *n. s. 2.*
rightly, mit Recht.
ring, Ring, *m. s. 2.*
ripe, reif.
rise, (= mount) ſteigen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); (= get up) aufſtehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185 *aux.* ſein); (of the sun) aufgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185 *aux.* ſein).
rise, (rising) Aufgang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
risk, Gefahr, *f. w.*
river, Fluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe).
rob, rauben, *w.*; — of (*tr.*), berauben.
robber, Räuber, *m. s. 1.*
rock, Felſen, *m. s. 1* (§ 279, 2, *a*).
rock, *verb*, ſchaukeln, *w.*
rocking, — chair, Schaukelſtuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); — horse, Schaukelpferd, *n. s. 2.*
rogue, Schelm, *m. s. 2.*
rôle, Rolle, *f. w.*
roll, (bread) Semmel, *f. w.*
Roman, römiſch.
roof, Dach, *n. s. 3.*
room, (= space, place) Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); (apartment) Zimmer, *n. s. 1*; adjoining —, Nebenzimmer.
rose, Roſe, *f. w.*
rough, rauh.
route, Reiſeplan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
row, Reihe, *f. w.*
row-boat, Kahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
royal, königlich.
ruin, verderben, *s.*
rule, Regel, *f. w.*; as a —, in der Regel.
rule, *verb*, herrſchen, *w.*
rumor, Gerücht, *n. s. 2.*
run, (of motion) laufen, *s.*; — away, davonlaufen; — to meet, entgegenlaufen; (of water) rinnen, *s.* (all with *aux.* ſein); (= purport) lauten, *w.*

sad, traurig.
saddle, Sattel, *f. w.*; — horse, Reitpferd, *n. s. 2.*
safe, ſicher.
Saint, (title) der Heilige.
sake, for the — of, um . . . (*gen.*) . . . willen; for your —, um deinetwillen, um Ihretwillen (§§ 127, 306, 1).
salamander, Salamander, *m. s. 1.*
same, the —, derſelbe (§ 134); just the —, gleichviel, *adv.*
sapling, Bäumchen, *n. s. 1.*
satisfied, zufrieden.
satisfy, befriedigen, *w.*
Saturday, Samstag, *m. s. 2*; Sonnabend, *m. s. 2.*
save (= rescue) retten; (of money) ſparen, erſparen, *w.*; — up, aufſparen, *w.*
saving, ſparſam.
savior, Retter, *m. s. 1.*
say, ſagen, *w.*; *often to be translated by a form of* ſollen (§ 191, 5); that is to —, nämlich, *adv.*
saying, Spruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
scamp, Schelm, *m. s. 2.*
scarcely, kaum, ſchwerlich.
scene, (of a drama) Scene, *f. w.*; (place of occurrence) Schauplatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
scholar, (pupil) Schüler, *m. s. 1*; (learned man) Gelehrte(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
school, Schule, *f. w.*; — building, Schulgebäude, *n. s. 1*; — director, Schuldirektor, *m. mx.*; — year, Schuljahr, *n. s. 2.*
schoolmate, Schulkamerad, *m. w.*
science, Wiſſenſchaft, *f. w.*
scream, ſchreien, *s.*
sea, Meer, *n. s. 2*; See, *f. w.*; — voyage, Seereiſe, Seefahrt, *f. w.*
seasick, ſeekrank.
season, Jahreszeit, *f. w.*
seat, Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); Sitz, *m. s. 2*; to take a —, Platz nehmen, *s.*
seat, *verb*, — one's self, ſich ſetzen, *refl. w.*
second, (der) zweite; —ly, zweitens.
secret, *adj.*, geheim.
secure, ſicher.
see, ſehen, *s.*; — again, wiederſehen, *s.*; (catch sight of) erblicken, *w.*; — to it, zuſehen.
seek, ſuchen, *w.*
seem, ſcheinen, *s.*
seeming(ly), ſcheinbar.
seize, greifen, ergreifen, *s.*; faſſen, *w.*

seldom, ſelten.
self, ſelbſt, ſelber (§ 124).
self-possessed, beſonnen, *ppl. adj.*
sell, verkaufen, *w.*
send, ſchicken, *w.*; ſenden, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
sense, Sinn, *m. s. 2.*
sensible, verſtändig; be — of, empfinden, *s.*
September, September, *m. s. 1.*
serious, ſchwer; (earnest) ernſt.
servant, Diener; — girl, Dienſtmädchen, *n. s. 1.*
serve, dienen (*dat.*).
service, Dienſt, *m. s. 2*; (attendance) Bedienung, *f. w.*
set, ſetzen, *w.*; — in, hereinbrechen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — out, ſich auf den Weg machen, *w.*
several, mehrere (§ 158); — times, mehrmals.
severe, (= strict) ſtreng; (of sickness) ſtark.
severity, Strenge, *f.* (*no pl.*).
shade, **shadow**, Schatten, *m. s. 1.*
shall, *future*, werden (§ 168, 2); *modal*, ſollen (§§ 189, 191).
shameful, ſchändlich.
share, Teil, *n. s. 2.*
share, *verb*, teilen, *w.*
she, ſie.
shelter, Obdach, *n. s. 3.*
shine, ſcheinen, *s.*
ship, Schiff, *n. s. 2.*
shoe, Schuh, *m. s. 2.*
shoemaker, Schuhmacher, *m. s. 1.*
shop, Handlung, *f. w.*; Laden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
shop, *verb*, Einkäufe machen, *w.*
shoot, ſchießen, *s.*
shore, Ufer, *n. s. 1.*
short, kurz; —ly, kurz.
shot, Schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe).
show, zeigen, *w.*
shrewdly, verſchmitzt.
shrewdness, Klugheit, *f. w.*
shut, ſchließen, *s.*
sick, krank; be taken —, erkranken, *w.*
sicken, erkranken, *w.* (*aux.* ſein).
sickness, Krankheit, *f. w.*
side, Seite, *f. w.*
sight, (spectacle) Anblick, *m. s. 2*; (thing worth seeing) Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*
sign, unterſchreiben, *s.*
significant, bedeutend.
signify, bedeuten, *w.*
silence, Schweigen, *n. s.* (§ 365).
silent, be *or* become *or* keep —, ſchweigen, *s.*
silver, Silber, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
silver, *adj.*, ſilbern.
similar, ähnlich (to = *dat.*)
simple, **simply**, einfach.
sin, Sünde, *f. w.*
since, *prep.*, ſeit (*dat.*); *conj.* (= because), da, indem, *sub. conj.*
sincere, (candid) aufrichtig; (hearty) herzlich.
sincerely, herzlich.
sing, ſingen, *s.*
single, einzig.
sink, ſinken, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
sir, mein Herr.
sister, Schweſter, *f. w.*
sit, ſitzen, *s.*; to — down, ſich ſetzen, *refl. w.*; let us — down, ſetzen wir uns (p. 43, n. 4).
sitting, — room, Wohnzimmer, *n. s. 1.*
situated, be —, liegen, *s.*
situation, Lage, *f. w.*
six, ſechs.
skate, Schlittſchuh, *m. s. 2.*
skate, *verb*, ſchlittſchuhlaufen, *s.*
skill, Fertigkeit, *f. w.*
skillful, geſchickt.
sky, Himmel, *m. s. 1.*
slave, Sklave, *m. w.*; Knecht, *m. s. 2.*
sleep, Schlaf, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
sleep, *verb*, ſchlafen, *s.*
slow(ly), langſam.
small, klein.
smell, riechen, *s.*
smoke, rauchen, *w.*
snow, Schnee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
snow, *verb*, ſchneien.
so, ſo; (= accordingly, then) alſo; — far as I am concerned, was mich betrifft; — have I (*in answers*), das habe ich auch; — very strange, ſo ſeltſam; *referring to a foregoing verb, often translated by* es: . . . but I cannot do so, . . . aber ich kann es nicht.
so-called, ſogenannt.
society, Geſellſchaft, *f. w.*

sofa, Sofa, *n. s.* (*pl.* -s).
soft, (of the voice, of light) ſanft.
softly, leiſe.
sojourn, Aufenthalt, *m. s. 2.*
soldier, Soldat, *m. w.*
sole(ly), einzig.
solve, löſen, *w.*
some, irgend ein (§ 152); *in the sing. and collectively* (*of things*), etwas (§ 151); *pl.* einig-, etlich- (§ 150); — bread, etwas Brot; — books, einige Bücher; — friend, irgend ein Freund; — friends, einige Freunde; *referring to something before mentioned*, welch (§ 162); — more, (*sing.*) noch etwas, (*pl.*) noch einige.
some one, jemand, irgend jemand (§§ 152, 154).
something, etwas.
sometimes, bisweilen, zuweilen.
somewhat, etwas.
son, Sohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
song, Lied, *n. s. 3.*
songstress, Sängerin, *f. w.*
soon, bald; as — as, ſobald, *sub. conj.*
sore, (= grave, serious) ſchwer.
sorrow, Leiden, *n. s. 1.*
sorrowful, traurig.
sorry, I am —, es thut mir leid.
sort, Art, *f. w.*; what — of, was für (§ 145); all sorts of, allerlei (*indcl.*).
soul, Seele, *f. w.*; (= feeling) Gemüt, *n. s. 3.*
sound, klingen, *s.*
south, Süden, *m. s.* (*no pl.*); South Germany, Süddeutſchland.
southward, nach Süden.
souvenir-card, Anſichtskarte, *f. w.*
Spain, Spanien, *n.*
Spaniard, Spanier, *m. s. 1.*
Spanish, ſpaniſch.
speak, ſprechen, *s.*; to — pieces, deklamieren, *w.*
special, beſonder.
spectator, Zuſchauer, *m. s. 1.*
speech, (address) Rede, *f. w.*; (= language) Sprache, *f. w.*
speed, Haſt, *f.* (*no pl.*).
spirit, Geiſt, *m. s. 3.*
spite, in — of, trotz, *prep.* (*gen. or dat.*).
splendid, prächtig; (= glorious) herrlich.
spoil, verderben, *s.*
spook, Geſpenſt, *n. s. 3.*
spoon, Löffel, *m. s. 1.*
spring, (season) Frühling, *m. s. 2.*
spring, *verb*, ſpringen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
stage, Bühne, *f. w.*
stairs, stairway, Treppe, *f. w.*
stake, be at —, gelten, *s.*
stand, ſtehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
star, Stern, *m. s. 2.*
start, Aufbruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
start, *verb*, ſich auf den Weg machen, *refl. w.*
state, Staat, *m. mx.*
state, *verb*, angeben, *s.*
station, Bahnhof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
stay, (= remain) bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); (= tarry, sojourn) verweilen, *w.*; ſich aufhalten, *refl. s.*
stay, Aufenthalt, *m. s. 2.*
steal, ſtehlen, *s.*
steamer, Dampfer, *m. s. 1.*
stenographer, Stenograph, *m. w.*
step, treten, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); ſchreiten, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — back, zurücktreten.
step, Schritt, *m. s. 2.*
stick, Stock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
stick, (= put) ſtecken, *w.*
still, *adj.*, ruhig.
still, *adv.*, (*time, degree*) noch; (*adversative*) doch.
stock, (supply) Vorrat, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); (race, family) Stamm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
stop, *intrans.*, aufhören.
store, Laden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä); Handlung, *f. w.*
storm, Sturm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); (= thunder —) Gewitter, *n. s. 1.*
stormy, ſtürmiſch.
story, Geſchichte, *f. w.*; Erzählung, *f. w.*
stout, ſtark.
stove, Ofen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ö).
straight, (direct) direkt.
strange, (peculiar) ſonderbar, ſeltſam; (foreign, unwonted) fremd.
stranger, Fremde(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
straw, Stroh, *n. s.* (*no pl.*); hat, Strohhut, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
stream, Strom, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
street, Straße, *f. w.*

strength, Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
strict, ſtreng.
stride, ſchreiten, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
strife, Streit, *m. s. 2.*
strike, ſchlagen, *s.*
stroke, Streich, *m. s. 2.*
strong, ſtark, kräftig; (= effective) wirkungsvoll; (= firm) feſt.
stronghold, Burg, *f. w.*
student, Student, *m. w.;* woman —, Studentin, *f. w.;* — life, Studentenleben, *n. s. 1.*
study, Studium, *n. mx.*
study, *verb*, ſtudieren, *w.*
stupid, dumm.
style, Stil, *m. s. 2.*
subject, Unterthan, *m. mx.*
subject, *verb*, unterwerfen, *s.*
submit, ſich unterwerfen, *refl. s.;* — to (put up with), ſich bequemen, *w.* (*dat.*).
subsequently, nachher.
succeed, be successful, gelingen, *impers. s. with dat.* (*aux.* ſein); I did not succeed, es gelang mir nicht.
such, ſolch (§ 135); — a, ſo ein; any — thing, ſo etwas.
sudden(ly), plötzlich, auf einmal.
suffer, leiden, *s.*
suffering, Leiden, *n. s. 1.*
suffice, genügen, *w.*
suit (of clothes), Anzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
sum, Summe, *f. w.*
summer, Sommer, *m. s. 1;* — day, Sommertag, *m. s. 2;* — term, Sommertermin, *m. s. 2.*
summit, Gipfel, *m. s. 1.*
summon, rufen, *s.*
sun, Sonne, *f. w.*
sunbeam, Sonnenſtrahl, *m. mx.*
Sunday, Sonntag, *m. s. 2.*
sunrise, Sonnenaufgang, *m. s.*
supper, Abendeſſen, *n. s. 1.*
supply, Vorrat, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
support, *verb*, ſtützen.
support, Stütze, *f. w.*
sure, ſicher; to be —, freilich, allerdings; —ly, gewiß; they —ly know, man weiß doch wohl, man weiß ja.
surround, umgeben, *s.*
swamp, Sumpf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
swarm, Schwarm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
swear, ſchwören, *s.*
sweet, ſüß; a — girl, ein liebliches Mädchen; (= fragrant) lieblich.
swift, ſchnell.
swim, ſchwimmen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
Switzerland, die Schweiz (§ 225, 3).
sword, Schwert, *n. s. 3.*
sympathy, Sympathie, *f. w.*

table, Tiſch, *m. s. 2.*
tailor, Schneider, *m. s. 1.*
take, nehmen, *s.;* to — cold, ſich erkälten, *refl. w.;* to — a seat, Platz nehmen; to — a walk, einen Spaziergang machen, *w.;* to — off (a garment), ausziehen, *s.*
tale, Erzählung, *f. w.*
talk, reden, *w.;* there is much — about, man redet viel über (*or* von), es wird viel geredet über.
tall, hoch; (of persons) groß.
tally, ſtimmen, *w.*
tarry, verweilen, *w.*
task, Aufgabe, *f. w.*
taste, Geſchmack, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä, *rare*); artistic —, Kunſtgeſchmack.
teach, unterrichten, lehren, *w.;* — to (show), belehren.
teacher, Lehrer, *m. s. 1;* woman —, Lehrerin, *f. w.*
tear, Thräne, *f. w.*
tear, zerreißen, *s.*
tedious, langweilig.
tell, ſagen, *w.;* (= relate) erzählen, *w.;* (= inform of) mitteilen, *w.*
ten, zehn.
tendency, Tendenz, *f. w.*
term, Termin, *m. s. 2.*
terrible, ſchrecklich.
test, Prüfung, *f. w.*
text (for reading), Lektüre, *f. w.*
text-book, Lehrbuch, *n. s. 3.*
thaler, Thaler, *m. s. 1.*
than, als.
thank, danken, *w.* (*dat.*); (I) — you, danke.
thankful, dankbar.
thanks, Dank, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
that, *dem. pron.*, das; jener (§ 129); *rel. pron.*, der, die, das; welcher, welche, welches (§§ 136–139); *with neut. pron. or adj.*,

or a sentence, as antecedent, was (§ 141, *a*, 2).
that, *conj.*, daß, *sub. conj.*
the, *def. art.*, der, die, das (§ 72); *with comp.:* — more, deſto mehr; *in 'proportional' clauses:* — more . . . — better, je mehr . . . je (*or* deſto) beſſer (§ 381, 1, *f*).
theater, Theater, *n. s. 1.*
their, ihr.
them, *dat.* ihnen, *acc.* ſie; there are six of —, es ſind deren ſechs.
then, (*inferential*) denn, alſo; (*temporal*) dann; just —, zur Zeit.
there, da, dort; — is, — are, es giebt, *also* es iſt, es ſind (§ 340); in —, drinnen.
therefore, darum, daher.
therein, drinnen, darin.
thereupon, darauf.
they, ſie; *indef.*, man.
thick, dick; (= dense) dicht; a — book, ein dickes Buch; a — woods, ein dichter Wald.
thicket, Gebüſch, *n. s. 2.*
thief, Dieb, *m. s. 2;* (woman) —, Diebin, *f. w.*
thing, Ding, *n. s. 2;* (= matter, affair) Sache, *f. w.;* any such — as, ſo etwas wie.
think, denken, *w. irr.* (§ 330); meinen, *w.;* (= believe) glauben, *w.;* to — of, an (*acc.*) . . . denken; — of (remember), gedenken (*gen.*); to — much of (*i.e.*, esteem) one, viel von einem halten, *s.*
third, (der) dritte.
this, dies (§§ 129, 130); — time, diesmal; — evening, heute abend.
thorough(ly), gründlich; (= complete) vollkommen.
those, — are, das ſind (§ 131, 1).
though, *sub. conj.*, obgleich, obwohl; *adv.*, doch; wasn't it warm —, war es doch warm.
thought, Gedanke, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
thousand, tauſend.
threaten, drohen, *w.* (*dat.*).
three, drei; — times, dreimal.
throat, Hals, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
through, durch (*acc.*); — with, fertig mit (*dat.*).
throw, werfen, *s.*
thunder, — storm, Gewitter, *n. s. 1.*
Thursday, Donnerstag, *m. s. 2.*
thus, ſo, alſo.
ticket, Billet, *n. s. 2* (*pl.* -tte).
time, (duration) Zeit, *f. w.;* (occasion) Mal, *n. s. 2;* this —, diesmal; at the —, damals; (at) what —, (um) wie viel Uhr; for a —, eine Zeitlang; for a long —, lange; once upon a —, einmal'; some —, einſt; for the — being, vorläufig.
times, at —, bisweilen.
timid, furchtſam.
tire, ermüden, *w.*
tired, müde.
title, Titel, *m. s. 1.*
to, *often translated by the dative, esp. with indirect object of a verb and with some adjectives* (§§ 258, 260); zu (*dat.*), nach (*dat.*), an (*acc.*), gegen (*acc.*), cf. § 377, *s. v.;* — and fro, hin und her; — the concert, ins Konzert; — the edge, bis an den Rand; to step — the window, ans Fenſter treten; — London, — the station, nach London, nach dem Bahnhofe; go — bed, zu Bett gehen; go — church, zur Kirche gehen; write —, an (*acc.*) . . . ſchreiben; kind —, freundlich gegen; *with inf.*, —, in order —, zu, um zu (§ 367, 1 and *a*); *omitted with certain verbs*, § 366, 1, 2.
tobacco, Tabak, *m. s. 2.*
to-day, heute.
to-day's, heutig, *adj.*
together, zuſammen.
tolerably, ziemlich.
to-morrow, morgen; — evening, morgen abend; — morning, morgen früh; day after —, übermorgen.
to-night, heute abend.
too, (*of degree*) zu; (= also) auch.
tooth, Zahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
toothache, Zahnſchmerz, *m. mx.*
top, Gipfel, *m. s. 1;* Spitze, *f. w.*
tormented, be —, ſich quälen, *refl. w.*
torrent, Strom, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
toward(s), gegen (*acc.*), nach (*dat.*), entgegen (*dat.*), § 377.
tower, Turm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
town, Stadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); little —, Städtchen, *n. s. 1.*

trade, Handel, *m. s.* (*no pl.*); by — (calling), seines Zeichens.
train, Zug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); express —, Schnellzug.
tramp, (pedestrian tour) Fußwanderung, *f. w.*
translate, überseţ'en, *w.*
translation, (act of translating) Überseţen, *n. s.* (§ 365).
travel, fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein); reisen (*aux.*, § 323, 1, *c*).
travel(s), Reise, *f. w.*; Wanderung, *f. w.*
traveller, Reisende(r), *decl. like adj* (§ 290, 2).
tread, *intr.* treten, *s.* (*aux.* sein); *tr.* betreten.
treat, behandeln, *w.*
treatment, Behandlung, *f. w.*
tree, Baum, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu).
tremble, zittern, *w.*
trial, (test) Prüfung, *f. w.*
tributary, Nebenfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse).
trick, Streich, *m. s. 2.*
trifle, Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*
trip, Reise, Fahrt, *f. w.*
triviality, Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*
trouble, (difficulty) Mühe, *f. w.*; (suffering) Leiden, *n. s. 1*; (distress) Not, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
trouble, *verb* (worry), bange machen, *w.* (*with dat. of pers.*); (concern) kümmern; he doesn't — himself about it, er kümmert sich nicht darum.
true, wahr; (= faithful) treu.
truly, wahrhaft.
trunk, Koffer, *m. s. 1.*
trust, vertrauen, *w.* (*dat.*).
truth, Wahrheit, *f. w.*
truthful, wahrhaft.
try, versuchen, *w.*
Tuesday, Dienstag, *m. s. 2.*
turn, wenden, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
turn out, werden, *irr.* (*aux.* sein).
twelve, zwölf.
twenty, zwanzig; twentieth, (der) zwanzigste; the — first, der einundzwanzigste.
twice, zweimal.
two, zwei; the —, die beiden (§ 148).
tyrant, Tyrann, *m. w.*

umbrella, Regenschirm, *m. s. 2.*
unamiable, unfreundlich.
unanswered, unbeantwortet.
unbearable, unerträglich.
uncle, Onkel, *m. s. 1*; Oheim, *m. s. 2.*
under, unter (*dat. and acc.*); — it, — that, darunter.
understand, verstehen, *s.*
understanding, Verständnis, *n. s. 2*; Verstand, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
undertake, unternehmen, *s.*
undisturbed, ungetrübt.
undoubtedly, unzweifelhaft.
uneasy, unruhig.
unfortunately, leider (p. 102, n. 1); unglücklicherweise.
unfriendly, unfreundlich.
ungrateful, undankbar.
unhappiness, Unglück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
unhappy, unglücklich, unglückselig.
united, vereinigt.
university, Universität, *f. w.*
unkind, unfreundlich.
unpleasant, unangenehm.
unrest, Unruhe, *f. w.*
unsatisfactory, ungenügend.
unthankful, undankbar.
until, bis; not — (this evening), erst (heute abend).
unwelcome, unwillkommen.
unwell, unwohl.
up, auf; — there, droben; further —, weiter hinauf *or* aufwärts.
upon, auf (*dat. and acc.*); once — a time, einmal'; — the whole, im ganzen.
upper, ober-.
us, *dat. and acc.* uns.
use, *verb*, gebrauchen, *w.*; benutzen, *w.*; (= spend, *as time*) zubringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
use, make — of, brauchen, *w.* (*gen.*).
usual(ly), gewöhnlich.
utterly, vollends, ganz und gar.

vacation, Ferien, *pl. only.*
vain, in —, vergebens.
valley, Thal, *n. s. 3.*
value, schätzen, *w.*
vanish, schwinden, verschwinden, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
vengeance, Rache, *f.* (*no pl.*).
Venice, Venedig.
venture, wagen, *w.*

verb, Verbum, *n. s.* (*pl.* -ba).
veritable, wahrhaft.
very, ſehr; — much (*of degree*), ſehr; — well (= agreed, 'all right'), ſehr gern; he is doing — well, es geht ihm ſehr gut.
Vesuvius, Veſuv, *m.*
vexed, be —, ſich ärgern, *refl. w.*
vicinity, Nähe, *f. w.*
victory, Sieg, *m. s. 2.*
view, (sight of) Anblick, *m. s. 2;* (opinion) Anſicht, *f. w.;* (prospect) Ausſicht, *f. w.;* take a — of, in Augenſchein nehmen, *s.;* in — of all that, nach alle (§ 317, 1) dem.
village, Dorf, *n. s. 3;* little —, Dörfchen, *n. s. 1.*
villager, Dorfbewohner, *m. s. 1.*
violent, heftig.
violet, Veilchen, *n. s. 1.*
visit, *verb*, beſuchen, *w.*
visit, Beſuch, *m. s. 2.*
voice, Stimme, *f. w.*
vote, Stimme, *f. w.*
vote, *verb*, ſtimmen, *w.*
vow, geloben, *w.*
voyage, Seereiſe, Seefahrt, *f. w.*
vulgarity, Gemeinheit, *f. w.*

wagon, Wagen, *m. s. 1.*
wait, warten, *w.* (for = auf, *acc.*).
wake, wachen.
walk (for pleasure), Spaziergang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); take a —, einen Spaziergang machen.
walk, *verb*, gehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein); — about, herumgehen; go walking (for pleasure), ſpazieren gehen.
wall, (of a room) Wand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); (brick or stone —), Mauer, *f. w.;* — of rock, Felswand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
wandering, Wanderung, *f. w.*
want, (= desire) mögen (§§ 189, 191), wünſchen, *w.;* (= need) brauchen, *w.;* (= require, demand) verlangen, *w.*
war, Krieg, *m. s. 2.*
war-ship, Kriegsſchiff, *n. s. 2.*
warm, warm; grow —, erwarmen, *w.* (*aux.* ſein).
warn, warnen, *w.* (of = vor, *dat.*).
warning, Warnung, *f. w.*
waste, vergeuden, *w.*
watch, Taſchenuhr, Uhr, *f. w.*
water, Waſſer, *n. s. 1.*
way, Weg, Pfad, *m. s. 2;* (= manner) Art, Weiſe, *f. w.;* the — home, the — back, der Heimweg, Rückweg; by — of, über (*acc.*); in the — of, in (*dat.*); lose one's — ſich verirren, *refl. w.*
we, wir.
weak, ſchwach.
wealth, Vermögen, *n. s. 1;* Reichtum, *m. s. 3.*
wear, tragen, *s.*
weather, Wetter, *n. s. 1.*
Wednesday, Mittwoch, *m. s. 2.*
week, Woche, *f. w.*
weekly, wöchentlich.
weep, weinen, *w.*
weigh, wiegen, *s.*
welcome, willkommen.
welfare, Wohl, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
well, *adj.* (in good health) geſund.
well, *adv.*, gut; very — (= agreed, 'all right'), ſehr gern; he has done that —, das hat er gut gemacht; (of the health) wohl; I am —, I am doing —, ich befinde mich wohl; I do not feel —, mir iſt nicht wohl.
well, *interj.* (as an introductory word), nun.
well-behaved, artig.
well-known, wohlbekannt.
west, Weſten, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
west, *adj.*, weſtlich.
westward, weſtlich.
wet, naß.
what, *inter. pron.*, was, welch; *inter adj.*, welch (§§ 143, 144); *compound rel. pron.* (= whatever), was (§ 141); — sort, kind of, was für (§ 145); — for, wozu.
wheel, Rad, *n. s. 3.*
when, *inter.* wann; *rel.*, wenn (*of pres. and fut. and repeated action in past*); als (*of simple past*), *sub. conj.* (§ 381, 1, *a, b, i, k, l*).
whence, woher.
where, wo.
whether, ob, *sub. conj.*
which, *rel. pron.*, der, welch (§§ 136–138); *inter. pron.*, welch (§ 144); *with neut. pron. or*

adj., *or a sentence, as antecedent*, was (§ 141, *a*, 2).
while, Zeit, *f. w.*; (for) a —, eine Zeitlang; (= pains), Mühe, *f. w.*; worth —, der Mühe wert.
while, indem, während, *sub. conj.*
white, weiß.
Whitsuntide, Pfingſten, *pl. only*.
who, *rel. pron.*, der, welch (§§ 136–138); *compound rel.*, whoever, he —, wer (§ 140); *inter. pron.*, wer (§§ 143, 144).
whoever, wer, wer auch.
whole, ganz; on the —, im ganzen.
why, *inter.*, warum, weshalb; *interj.*, doch.
wide, weit; (= broad) breit; far and —, weit und breit.
wife, Frau, *f. w.*; Weib, *n. s. 3.*
wild, wild.
will, *future*, werden (§ 186, 2); *modal*, wollen (§§ 189, 191).
will, Wille, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
willingly, gern.
win, gewinnen, *s.*
wind, Wind, *m. s. 2.*
window, Fenſter, *n. s. 1.*
wine, Wein, *m. s. 2.*
wing, Flügel, *m. s. 1.*
winter, Winter, *m. s. 1*; — evening, Winterabend, *m. s. 2.*
wisdom, Weisheit, *f. w.*
wise, weiſe.
wish, wünſchen, *w.*; wollen (§§ 189, 191).
wish, Wunſch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
witch, Hexe, *f. w.*
with, mit (*dat.*); — it, damit; (= in the family *or* at the house of), bei (*dat.*).
withal, dazu.
withdraw, zurückziehen, *s.*
within, (*of time only*) binnen (*dat.*).
without, ohne (*acc.*).
woe! weh!
woman, Dame, *f. w.*; Frau, *f. w.*, Weib, *n. s. 3.*
wonder, Wunder, *n. s. 1.*
wonder, *verb*, ſich wundern, *refl. w.*; I wonder (am surprised) that, mich wundert's, daß; I — whether, ich möchte wiſſen, ob; how late is it, I —, wie ſpät iſt es wohl.
wonderful, wunderbar.
wood, Holz, *n. s. 3*; 'woods', Wald, *m. s. 3.*
word, Wort, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 276, *a*).
work, (*abstract*, = labor) Arbeit, *f. w.*; (of an author) Werk, *n. s. 2*; (*collectively in the abstract*, = activity) Wirken, *n. s.* (§ 365); *v.* arbeiten, *w.*
workman, workingman, Arbeiter, *m. s. 1.*
work-of-art, Kunſtwerk, *n. s. 2.*
world, Welt, *f. w.*
world-famous, weltberühmt.
worn-out, erſchöpft.
worth while, to be —, ſich lohnen, *refl. w.*
worse, worst, ſchlechter, ſchlechteſt-; ſchlimmer, ſchlimmſt-.
worth, wert (*gen.*).
worthy, würdig (of = *gen.*).
wretched, elend.
write, ſchreiben, *s.*; — to, ſchreiben an (*acc.*).
writer, (author) Schriftſteller, *m. s. 1.*
writing, Schrift, *f. w.*
wrong, *adj.*, unrecht; (= incorrect) falſch.
wrong, Unrecht, *n. s. 2.*

year, Jahr, *n. s. 2*; — in and — out, Jahr aus Jahr ein; for a — and a day, auf Jahr und Tag.
yellow, gelb.
yes, ja; — indeed, jawohl.
yesterday, geſtern; — morning, geſtern morgen; day before —, vorgeſtern.
yet, (*temporal*) noch; (*adversative*) doch; not —, noch nicht.
yonder, dort; over —, drüben.
you, du (§ 301, *a*, 1, 4): ihr (*pl.* of du); Sie (*polite address*, § 301, 3, 4); *acc.* dich, euch, Sie; *dat.* dir, euch, Ihnen; *the forms of* du *and* ihr *are capitalized in letters* (§ 301, 5); *indef.* man (§§ 156, 149. 1).
young, jung; — lady, Fräulein, *n. s. 1*; — man, Jüngling, *m. s. 2.*
youngish, jünger.
your, dein, euer, Ihr (§§ 125, 301, 5).

yours, (der) deinige, eurige, Ihrige, etc. (§ 126, 1); **a friend of —**, ein Freund von **dir**, **Ihnen**.
yourself, *emphatic*, ſelbſt; *refl.*, §§ 123, 201, 202.

youth, (*abstract* or *collective*) Jugend, *f.* (*no pl.*); (*concrete*) Junge, *m. w.*; Jüngling, *m. s. 2.*

zeal, Eifer, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).

INDEX.

The numbers refer to sections. *For strong verbs consult the list in § 331.*

a, pronunciation of, **15**; written instead of aa, App. I, **3**, 4.

ä, pronunciation of, **22**; as umlaut of aa, **85**, 1, *a*; Ä and Äe, App. I, **3**, 1.

ab, prep. **377**.

aber, **379**, 1; oder aber, **379**, 3.

ablaut, **328**, 2; classes, **329**; in derivation, **384**, 1, **386**.

abstract nouns, use of art. with, **226**; plu. of, **238**, 1, *a*.

accent, **61–4**; in compound verbs, **207**, 4; in compound nouns, **399**; in compound particles, **408**.

accusative, use of, **263–9**; with verbs, **263–5**; cognate, **264**; two objects, **265**, **345**, 1; adverbial, **266**; absolute, **267**, **369**, 3; with prepositions, **268**, **376**, 2; with adjectives, **269**; in impersonal constructions, **205**, 1, 2, **263**, 3.

active voice, **71**, **164**; with passive force after laſſen, etc., **366**, 1, *a* and 2, *b*.

address, nom. in, **243**; pronouns of, **121**, **301**.

adjectives, inflection, **101–9**, **286–9**; comparison, **111–14**, **292–6**; derivation, **389–91**; composition, **404–6**; syntax, **286–96**; without inflection, **101**, **286**, **109**, 2–4; strong, **102–5**; weak, **106–7**; strong or weak, **288**; as substantive, **108**, **290**; in predicate, **110**, **289**; irregularities of inflection, **109**; of comparison, **114**, **296**; with gen., **252**; with dat., **260**; with acc., **269**; with prepositions, **291**; repetition necessary, **232**, 2; orthography of proper adjectives, **4**, 3, and App. I, **3**, 13, *b*.

adjective clauses, **414**.

adverbial clauses, **415**.

adverbs, **216**; classification, **371**; primitive, **372**; relation to adj., **373**; from nouns, **374**; comparison, **375**; ordinal, **299**, 1; relative, **316**; prepositional, **376**, 5, *a*; position of, **96**, **424**; combined with substantive inf., **365**, 2, *a*; with partitive gen., **253**, 3; for rel. pron., **139**, 2.

After-, **388**, 1.

-age, **234**, 2.

ai, pronunciation, **27**; limited use, App. I, **3**, 3.

-al, pl. of nouns in, **275**, 4, *a*; neuter nouns in, **280**, 2.

all, **146**, **317**; alle, **317**, 1; alles, **317**, 2; allwo, **316**, 3.

allein, **379**, 1.

allenfalls, **288**, 1, *a*.

aller-, **294**, 1; allerliebſt, **294**, 1, *a*.

Alphabet, German, **2**; script, **7**.

als, **381**, 1, *a*; with predicate nom., **242**, 2, **271**; with appositive, **265**, 3, **271**, 1–3; with following rel., **314**, 3; for als ob, **359**, 3, *a*; in comparisons, **381**, 1, *a*; omitted after ſo, **381**, 1, *h*.

als ob, als wenn, with unreal subj., **359**, 3.

als wie, in comparisons, **381**, 1, *a*.

am, with superl., **112**, **294**, 5; in superl. of adv., **375**, 2.

an, **377**.

ander, **147**; anders = *else*, **253**, 2, *c*; anderthalb, **118**, 3, *b*.

angſt, **260**, 2, *b*.

anſtatt, **377**; with inf., **367**, 6.

Ant-, **388**, 2; Antwort, **235**, 2.

antworten, construction with, **257**, 1, *a*.

apostrophe, in gen., **284**, 1, *b*; cf. also App. I, **3**, 14.

apposition, **270–2**, **285**; immediate, **270**; mediate, **271**; spurious, **272**.

appositional, gen., **246**, 4, *a*; predicate, **110**, 1, **289**, 1, **368**, 2, **369**, 2.

Armut, **235**, 1, *a*.

-artig, **390**, 1.

article, **72–3**; use, **223–32**; see under def. and indef. art.

Atlas, pl. of **281**, 1, *a*.

au, pronunciation, **28**.

äu, pronunciation, **31**; Ä, not Äe, App. I, **3**, 1.

auch, **380**, 1, *a*, *b*; in indef. rel. clauses, **140**, 2, **381**, 1, *m*.

auf, **377**; auf daß, **381**, 1, *c*.

auferſtehen, **343**, 1.

aufs, in superl. of adv., 112, 2, 375, 2.
aus, außer, außerhalb, 377.
auserlesen, 343, 1.
auxiliaries, of tense, 171–2; use, 168, 1–2, 323; omission, 324; periphrastic and causal, 325; modal, 188–94, 332–8; of voice, 195, 344.
ay, 29, 1.

b, pronunciation, 35; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 7, 2.
Band, pl. of, 276, *a*.
bange, 260, 2, *b*.
Bank, 275, 1, *a*.
-bar, 390, 2.
Bau, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.
be-, 208, 1, *a*, 396, 1.
begegnen, 263, 1, *b*.
bei, 377.
beide, 148; beides, 148, 1.
bevor, 341, 1, 381, 1.
bezahlen, 263, 1, *c*.
binnen, 377.
bis, prep., 377; sub. conj., 381, 1.
bitten, with double object, 265, 1, *a*.
bleiben, with inf., 366, 3.
Boot, pl. of, 275, 3.
borrowed words, accent, 64; gender, 236; declension, 281–2.
brauchen, inf. for perf. pple., 326, 2, *b*.
Brett, pl. of, 276, *a*.
Buchstabe, gen. of, 279, 2, *a*.

c, pronunciation, 36; in new spelling, 36, 1, App. I, 3, 12.
capital letters, use of, 4; in pronouns of address, 301, 5; in verbal phrases, 342, 2, *b* and 3, *a*; cf. also App. I, 3, 13.
case, 70; see under nom., gen., etc.
causal clauses, dependent, 415, 5.
ch, pronunciation, 37.
ch, as intensive stem suffix, 395, 1.
-chen, 79, 387, 1.
Chor, gender and decl., 275, 3.
Christian names, pl. of, 284, 3, *b*.
chs, pronunciation of, 37, 5.
ck, 2, 2; pronunciation of, 36, 2.
cognates, Eng. and Ger., 1, 2, and App. II.
collective nouns, congruence of verb with, 346, 1.
comma, use of, 6.
comparative clauses, 415, 7.
comparison of adjectives, 111–14, 292–6; of adverbs, 216, 2, 375.
composition of nouns, 399–403; adjectives, 404–6; verbs, 206–14, 341–3; particles, 63, 1, 408.
concessive clauses, 415, 4.
conditional mode, 168, 3, 362.
conditional sentences, 359, 415, 3.
conjugation, 171–93, 323–31; weak, 174–8; strong, 179–85, 328; mixed, 186.
conjunctions, 218, 378–81; general connectives, 379; adverbial, 380; subordinating, 381, 415.
connecting vowel, use of, 169, 176, 327; dropped in strong verbs, 183.
consecutive clauses, 415, 9.
consonants, classification, 33; pronunciation, 34–60; representation in Eng. cognates, App. II.

d, pronunciation, 38; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 8, 2.
da(r), in compounds, with prep., 122, 2, 132, 310, 413, 1, *c*, 367, 6, *a*; with verb, 341, 1.
da, added to rel., 316, 2; with rel. force, 316, 3; as sub. conj., 381, 1, *b*.
damit, 381, 1, *c*.
das, as absolute subject, 131, 1; referring to persons, 309, 4; for was referring to sentence, 315, 2.
daß, 381, 1, *d*; omission of, 360, *a*.
dative, formation, 77, 2, 81, 2, 84, 2, 89, 94; meaning, 70, 256; use, 256–62; with verbs, sole object, 257; secondary object, 258; of interest, 259; ethical, 259, 4; with adjectives, 260; with nouns, 261; with interjections, 261, 1, *a*; with prepositions, 376, 3, 4; = possessive, 227, *a*, 259, 1, *a*; with von = [gen., 247.
dauern, 257, 1, *a*.
-de, 387, 2.
declension, 66; of articles, 72–3; nouns, 76–100, 273–85; foreign nouns, 281–2; proper names, 99–100, 284–5; adjectives, 101–18, 286–8; of pronouns, 120–63.
definite article, 72; use, 223–32; contractions, 223; omission, 224; use with proper names, 225; generic, 226; = possessive, 227; distributive, 228; in phrases, 229; repetition, 232.
demonstratives, 129–35, 309–11; = personal pron., 122, 2, *a*.

Denkmal, pl. of, 276, *a*.
denn = *for*, 379, 2; = *then*, 380, 1; = *than*, 381, 1, *a*; with concessive subj., 356, 1, *a*.
denominative verbs, 394.
dependent clauses, 413–15.
dependent order; see word-order.
der, art., 72; dem., 129, 131, 309; rel., 136, 138, 314.
derivation, 384–98; general principles of, 384; nouns, 385–8; adjectives, 389–91; verbs, 392–6; pronouns and particles, 397–8; see further under composition.
derjenige, 133, 311.
derer, 309, 2.
Dero, 309, 5.
derſelbe, 134, 311, 1, 397.
deš, 309, 1, *a*.
deshalb, deswegen, 132, 1.
deſto, 381, 1, *f*.
determinatives, 129, 133–5, 311.
dialects, 8, 221; loss of pret. in, 351. 1, *c*.
dieš, inflection, 129; use, 130; absolute subject, 130, 2.
dieweil, derivation, 408, 2.
diesſeits, 377.
digraphs, 2, 2.
dimidiatives, 118, 3, *b*.
diminutive suffixes, 79, 387, 4, 395, 2.
Ding, pl. of, 276, *a*.
diphthongs, 2, 2, 26–31.
doch, 380, 1, *a*, *c*.
Dorn, pl. of, 279, 1, *a*.
Druck, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.
du, orthography, 4, 2, 301, 5; use in address, 301, *a*, 1; declension, 120.
dünken, 263, 1, *b*, 330, *a*.
durch, as prep., 377; as prefix, 212, 341, 3.
dürfen, 188, 189, 191, 1, 333.
Dutch, relation to German, 1, 1, App. II, 3

e, pronunciation, 16; dropped in inflection of adjectives in *el*, *en*, *er*, 287; dropped in comparison, 113, 3, 292, 2; use as connecting vowel, 176, 183, 327, **-e**, as nominal suffix, 387, 3; in adverbs, 373, 3; omission of, in imv., 183, 2, 327, 2 and 2, *a*.
ehe, eher, 296, 3.
ei, pronunciation, 29.
-ei, 93, 387, 4.
ein, indef. art., 73; num., 116, 297; pron., 116, 1, 149, 1, 318.
einander, 304, 2.
einig-, 150, 319.
eins, 297, 318, 1 and 1, *a*.
einundderselbe, 311, 1, *c*.
einverleiben, 343, 1.
eitel, 286, 5.
eln, 263, 1, *b*. [395, 2.
-el, nouns in, 79, 387, 5; as verbal suffix,
emp-, 396, 2, *c*.
-en, nouns in, 79; as adjective suffix, 390, 3; as verbal suffix, 392, 1; in sing. of weak feminines, 277, 1.
-enš, in gen., 97, 2, 279, 2; in ordinal adverbs, 299, 1; in absolute superlatives, 375, 2, *a*.
ent-, 208, 1, *b*, 396. 2.
entgegen, 377.
entlaſſen, 249, 2, *a*.
entweder, 379, 3.
er, inflection, 120; use in address, 301, 2.
er-, 208, 1, *c*, 396, 3.
-er, nouns in, 79, 387, 6; adjectives in, 390, 4; as verbal suffix, 395, 3.
-erei, 387, 4.
erinnern, 249, 3, *a*.
-erlei, 299, 1, 390, 5.
-ern, weak verbs in, 177; as adjective suffix, 390, 3.
erſt, 114, 5, 296, 3.
erz-, 388, 3, 391, 1.
eš, special uses of, 122, 3, 303; omission with impersonal verbs, 204, 2; as gen., 252, 1, *a*, 265, 1, *d*, 300, 2.
etlich-, 150, 319, 1, *a*.
etwaš, 151; with adj., 105, 2, 253, 2, *a*; as adv., 320, 1.
eu, pronunciation, 30; for *ie* in archaic verb forms, 328, 3, *a*.
exclamation, nom. in, 243; gen. in, 255; dat. in, 261, 1, *a*; inf. in, 367, 7.
exclamatory sentences, 410, 1, 420, 2.
ey, 29, 1.

f, pronunciation, 39; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 7, 3.
-fach, 299, 1, 390, 6.
factitive verbs, 393, 1; factitive object, 263, *a*, 264, 1; predicate, 110, 1, *b*.
fahren, with inf., 366, 4.
-faltig, -fältig, 390, 7.
faſt, feſt, 373, 3.
Fels, Felſen, 279, 2, *a*.
feminine nouns, uninflected in sing., 77, 1; exception, 277, 1; with **-š** in compounds, 400, 2, *a*.
final clauses, 415, 8.
finden, with inf., 366, 3.

Floß, pl. of, **275**, **3**.
fragen, **265**, **1**, *a*.
Fräulein, gender, **233**, **2**, *a*; with name, **285**, **1**, *b*.
frei, **252**, **1**, *b*.
fühlen, with inf., **366**, **2** and **2**, *b*.

g, pronunciation, **40**; in Eng. cognates, App. II, **9**, **2**.
ganz, uninflected, **109**, **3**.
Ge-, as prefix of nouns, **388**, **4**; of adjectives, **391**, **2**; of verbs, **396**, **4**; as augment of pple., **167**, **1**, **326**.
geboren, **344**, **2**.
gegen, **gen**, **341**, **1**, **377**.
gegenüber, **377**.
Gehalt, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
gehen, with inf., **366**, **4**, **369**, **5**.
Geheim(er)rat, inflection, **401**, *a*.
gemäß, **377**.
gender, **69**; determination of, **75**; rules for, **233–7**; by meaning, **233**; by form, **234**; in compounds, **235**; in borrowed words, **236**; variable, **237**.
genitive, formation of, **80**, **84**, **1**, **89**, **94**, **97**, **2**, **99**, **1**, **100**, **1**; use, **245–55**; with nouns, **246**; with verbs, sole object, **248**; with verbs, secondary object, **249**; partitive gen., with verbs, **250**; with adjectives, pronouns and adverbs, **253**; adverbial (place, time, manner), **251**, **374**; with adjectives, **252**; in exclamations, **255**; with prepositions, **376**, **5**; substitutes for, **100**, **1**, **247**.
German language, relation to Eng., **1** and App. II; historical periods, **220**; literary language and dialects, **221**; good German, **8**, **222**.
Germanic languages, App. II, **3**; shifting of consonants in, App. II, **6**.
gern, comparison of, **375**, **1**.
gerundive, **370**.
Gesicht, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
gicbt (es gicbt), **263**, **3**, *a*, **303**, **1**, *a*, **340**.
glauben, **257**, **1**, *a*.
-gleichen, **127**, **2**, **132**, **2**, **306**, **2**.
Grimm's Law, App. II, **6**, **1**, *a*.
Gunst, **zu Gunsten**, **275**, **1**, *a*.

h, pronunciation, **41**; in Eng. cognates, App. II, **9**, **3**.
haben, conjugation, **171–2**; use as aux., **168**, **1**, **323**, **201**, **1**; impersonal use of, **263**, **3**, *a*, **303**, **1**, *a*; with inf., **366**, **3** and **7**.
-haft, **390**, **8**.
halb, uninflected, **109**, **3**; halber, **289**, **2**, *b*.
-halb, **-halben**, **-halber**, **127**, **306**, **1**, **377**.
-halb, in dimidiatives, **118**, **3**, *b*.
Hand, **240**, **1**; **zu Handen**, **vorhanden**, etc., **275**, **1**, *a*.
Haupt, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
heißen, perf. pple. of, **326**, **2**, *b*; with dat., **265**, **1**, *b*; with inf., **366**, **2** and **2**, *a*; with predicate inf., **366**, **5**; with predicate, perf. pple., **369**, **6**.
-heit, **93**, **387**, **7**.
helfen, with acc., **263**, **1**, *b*; perf. pple. of, **326**, **1**, *b*; with inf., **366**, **2** and **2**, *a*.
her, **210**, **2**.
Herr, pl. of, **94**, **1**; as title, **278**, **1**, *b*; once used in address, **301**, **2**
Herz, **97**, **2**, *a*.
hier-, **132**, *a*.
High German, **220**; High German shifting of consonants, App. II, **6**.
hin, **210**, **2**.
hinter, as prep., **377**; as prefix, **212**, **1**.
hoch, **109**, **1**, **114**, **2**.
Hohepriester, **Hohelied**, inflection, **401**, *a*.
hören, use of inf. for perf. pple., **188**, **3**, *a*, **326**, **2**, *b*; with inf., **366**, **2** and **2**, *b*.
hundert, **115**, **1**, **297**, **4**.
hyphen, use of, **6**, **400**, **4**.

i, pronunciation, **17**; never doubled, **14**, **1**, *a*.
ich, inflection, **120**; omission, **302**, **3**.
-icht, **387**, **8**, **390**, **9**.
ie, pronunciation, **17**, **2**.
-ie, nouns in, **93**, **2**.
-ieren, verbs in, **174**, **1**, *a*, **326**, **2**, *a*, **395**, **4**.
-ig, as suffix of adjectives, **390**, **10**; of verbs, **395**, **5**.
ihr, in address, **301**, **1**; omission of, **302**, **2**, **303**, **1**.
Ihre, **308**, **1**.
immer, in indef. rel. clauses, **140**, **2**, **381**, **1**, *m*.
imperative, **71**; tenses of, **168**, **4**; omission of e in, **327**, **2**; use of, **363**; substitutes for, **363**, **3**; passive imv. with **sein**, **344**, **1**.
impersonal verbs, **204–5**, **339–40**; with

secondary object in gen., 249, 4; with dat., 259, 2, *a*, *b*; with acc., 263, 3; use of es with, 303, 1.
-in, 93, 94, 2, 387, 9; names of women in, 285, 1, *c*.
indefinite article, 73; use, 230; omission, 231.
indem, 381, 1, *c*.
indefinite pronouns, 146–63, 317–22.
indicative, 71; use, 354; for imv., 363, 3, *c*.
indirect discourse, 360–1; indirect question, 142, 1, 360, 4.
Indo-European languages, App. II, 2.
infinitive, 71, 166; declension, 274; use, 364–7; nature of, 364; substantive, 365; without zu, 366; with zu, 367; for imv., 366, 6; after prep., 217, 3; omission with modal aux., 193; position of, 425.
innerhalb, 377.
inseparable prefixes, 208, 396.
interjections, 219, 382–3; nature of, 382; list, 383.
interrogative pronouns, 143–5, 312–13.
intransitive verbs, 164, 1; aux. with, 323; passive of, 198, 345, 2.
inversion, see word-order.
irgend, 152. [292, 2.
-isch, 390, 11; superl. of adjectives in,
iterative numerals, 299, 1; pret. 350, 1; verbs, 395, 2, 3.

j, pronunciation, 42; in cognates, App. II, 10.
ja, 380, 1, *d*.
je, 381, 1, *f*.
jedenfalls, 288, 1, *a*.
jed-, jedermann, jeglich, 153.
jemand, 154, 321, 2.
jen-, 129–30.
jenseits, 377.
jüngst, 375, 3.

k, pronunciation, 43; in cognates, App. II, 9, 1.
kein, 155; keineswegs, 288, 1, *a*.
-keit, 93, 387, 7.
Klima, pl. of, 281, 1, *a*.
kommen, with perf. pple., 369, 5.
können, 188–9, 191, 1, 334.
kosten, 263, 1, *b*.
kraft, 377.
-kunft, 275, 1, *a*.

l, pronunciation, 44; in cognates, App. II, 10.
lachen, with gen., 248, 1, *a*.
Laden, pl. of, 274, 1, *a*.
Land, pl. of, 276, *a*.
längs, 377.
Langweile, inflection, 401, *a*.
lassen, as aux., 325, 1; perf. pple. of, 326, 2, *b*; with reflexive = passive, 199, 205, 3, *a*; with inf. and object. in dat., 265, 1, *b*; with inf., 366, 1, *a*, *b*; with act. inf. = pass. imv., 344, 1, 363, 3, *d*.
Latin, relation to German, App. II; inflections, 281, 1, 284, 2 and 2, *a*.
laut, 377
lauter, 286, 5.
lehren, 265, 1, *a*; in pass., 345, 1, *a*; with inf., 366, 2 and 2, *a*; inf. of, used for perf. pple., 326, 2, *b*.
leid, 260, 2, *b*.
-lein, 79, 387, 1.
-ler, 387, 6.
lernen, with inf., 366, 2 and 2, *a*; inf. for perf. pple., 326, 2, *b*; used for lehren, [265, 1, *c*.
leßt, 114, 5, 296, 3.
-leute, in compounds, 238, 2, *a*.
-lich, 373, 1, 390, 12.
Licht, pl. of, 276, *a*.
liegen, with inf., 366, 3.
-ling, 83, 387, 10; -lings, 374, *b*.
lohnen, 249, 4, *a*.
los, 252, 1, *a*, *b*; -los, 390, 13.
Low German, 220.
Lügen strafen, 265, 1, *d*.
Lump, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.

m, pronunciation, 45; in cognates, App. II, 10.
machen, as aux., 325, 1, *b*; with inf., 366, 2 and 2, *a*; inf. for perf. pple., 326, [2, *b*.
Magen, pl. of, 274, 1, *a*.
mahnen, 249, 1, *a*.
Mal, 276, *a*.
man, 156, 321, 199.
manch, 157.
Mann, pl. of, 276, 1, *a*.
Mark, after num., 240, 1.
-mäßig, 390, 14.
measure, nouns of, 240; acc. of, 266, 3.
mehr, 158; in comparison, 113, 295.

mehrer, 158, 319, 3.
meiner, comparative of mein, 308, 2.
meiſt, meiſtens, 295, 3.
Middle German, 220, 2.
miß-, 212, 2, 388, 5.
mit, 377.
mittels, mittelſt, 377.
mittler, 296, 2.
mixed declension, 76, 3, 97–8, 279–80; [conjugation, 186.
modal auxiliaries, 188–94, 332–38, 326, 2, *b*.
modes, 71, 165; use of, 354–63.
mögen, 188–9, 191, 3, 193, 2, 335.
Mord, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.
multiplicatives, 299, 1.
-mut, in compounds, 285, 1.
müſſen, 188–9, 191, 4, 336.

n, pronunciation, 46; in cognates, App. II, 10.
nach, nächſt, 377.
nachahmen, 263, 1, *c*.
Nacht, nachts, 275, 1, *a*.
neben, nebſt, 377.
negation, double, 410, *b*; pleonastic, 410, 1, *c*.
nennen, construction with, 265, 2.
-ner, 387, 6.
ng, pronunciation, 47.
nicht, with gen., 320, 2; pleonastic use of, 410, 1, *c*.
nichts, 159, 320, 2; with adj., 105, 2, 253, 2, *a*.
niemand, 160, 321, 2.
-niß, 83, 85, 2, 237, 2, *a*, (1), 387, 11.
noch, 380, 1, *e*.
nominative, 241–4; as subject, 241; as predicate, 242; in address, 243; absolute, 244.
normal order, see under word-order.
nouns, 74–100, 273–85.
number, of nouns, 69, 238–40; plu. or sing. lacking, 238; redundant plu., 239; sing. for plu., 240; congruence of verb in, 346; see under plu. and sing.
numerals, 115–18, 297–99; cardinals, 115–7, 297; ordinals, 118; with part. gen., 253, 1; derivatives, 118, 299.
nun, 380, 1, *f*, *g*.
nur, in relative clauses, 140, 2, 381, 1, *m*.

o, pronunciation, 18.
ö, pronunciation, 23.
ob, prep., 377; sub. conj., 381, 1; als ob, 359, 3 and 3, *a*.
obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, 381, 1, *g*.
oberhalb, 377.
object-clauses, 360, 361, 413.
oder, 379, 3.
ohne, 377; with inf., 367, 6.
Old German, 220, 1.
-or, nouns in, 97, 3, 279, 3.
Ort, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.
Orthography, 3, and Appendix I.

p, pronunciation, 48; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 7, 1.
paar, Paar, 319, 1.
Park, pl., 275, 2, *a*.
participle, 71, 167; used as adj., 101, 3; when compared, 292, 1; syntax of, 368–70; pres. pple., 368; perf. pple., 369; gerundive, 370.
passive, 195–9, 344–5; conjugation, 196; impersonal use of, 198, 345, 2; substitutes for, 199; formed with ſein, 344, 1.
perfect, 168, 349, 3; use of, 351.
person, congruence of verb in, 347.
persons, names of, 99, 284–5.
personal pronouns, 120, 300–4; omission of, 302; place taken by man, 321, 1; adjective after, 105, 4, 288, 4.
pf, pronunciation, 49; in cognates, App. II, 7, 1, *a*.
pflegen, construction with, 248, 1, *a*.
ph, pronunciation, 48, 1; use in new spelling, App. I, 8, 8.
plural, of nouns, formation, 81, 85, 90, 94, 97; lacking, 238; redundant, 239; sing. used for, 240; umlaut in, 274, 1, 275, 1, 2, 3, 4, *a*, 276; double plurals, 274–6; of abstracts, 238, 1, *a*; pl. verb with sing. subject, 346, *a*.
possessives, 125–8, 305–8; strong forms, 125; weak, 126; compounds, 127, 306; congruence, 128; ambiguous, 307, 1; postpositive, 308; repetition, 232, 2.
predicate, nom., 242; after laſſen with inf., 366, 1, *a*; appositive, 271, 368, 2, 369, 2; predicate adj., 110, 289; inf., 366, 5.
prefixes, inseparable, 208, 396; separable, 210, 341–3; doubtful, 212, 341, 3; of derivation, 384, 2, 388, 391.
preposition, 217, 376–7; with gen., dat., etc., 376; list, 377.
present, 168; use, 349.
preterite, 168; use, 350; pret.-pres. verbs, 188.

pronouns, 119–63, 300–22; see under personal, relative, etc.
pronunciation, 8–64; standard of, 8.
proper names, inflection, 99–100, 284–5.
punctuation, 6.

q, qu, pronunciation, 50.
quantity of vowels, 14.
quotation-marks, 6.

r, pronunciation, 51; in cognates, App. II, 10
reciprocal pronoun, 123, 3, 304, 2.
reflexive pronoun, 123, 201, 304; verbs, 201–3; with gen., 249, 3.
reiten, with inf., 366, 4.
relative pronoun, 136–41, 314–16; substitutes for, 139; never omitted, 137, 1; compound, 314, 2; adverbs, 316; clauses, 137, 413–14; comparison, 294, 375, 2.
roots, 384, 2.
rufen, 263, 1, *c*.

ſ, pronunciation, 52; ſ, ß, ſſ, ß, App. II, 8, 1, *a*.
-s, as plural-sign, 282, 284, 3; as adverbial suffix, 374, *a*.
ſagen, construction after, 258, 1, *a*.
-ſal, 83, 234, 3, *a*, 387, 12.
-ſam, 390, 15.
ſamt, 377.
ſch, pronunciation, 53; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 8, 4, *a*, 9, 1, *a*.
-ſchaft, 93, 387, 13.
Schild, pl. of, 276, *a*.
ſchmeicheln, 263, 1, *b*.
Schmuck, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*
ſchon, 372, 1; relation to ſchön, 373, 3.
script, German, 7, App. III.
ſehen, with inf., 366, 2 and 2, *b*; perf. pple. of, 326, 2, *b*.
ſehr, comparison, 375, 1.
ſein, verb, 171–2; use of as aux. of tense, 323; of voice, 195, 1, 2, 344; with predicate inf., 366, 5.
ſein, poss., 128, 2, 307; ſeiner Zeit, 307, 2, *a*.
ſeit, 377; as subj. conj., 381, 1.
ſeitens, 376, 5, *a*.
-ſeits, 306, 3.
ſelb, ſelbander, 299, 2.
ſelber, ſelbſt, 124, 289, 2, *b*, 304, 3, 311, 3, 397, 1.
-ſelig, 390, 16.
sentence, 409–12; dependent clauses, 413–15.
separable prefixes, 206–7, 210–11, 341–3.
sequence of tenses, 361.
ſich, 304; orthography, 4, 2; in subordinate clause, 304, 1; as reciprocal, 123, 3, 304, 2.
Sie, 301, 3, 4, 5; with imv., 172, 3.
singular, for plural, 240; with more than one subject, 346, 3.
ſo, as resuming particle, 200, 2, 380, 1, *h*; as sub. conj., 381, 1, *h*; as rel., 316, 1; ſo ein, 135, 1, *a*; ſo etwas, 151, 1.
ſolch, 135, 311, 2; inflection, 135, 1.
ſollen, 188–9, 191, 5, 337.
ſonder, 377.
ſondern, 379, 1.
Sporn, pl. of, 279, 1, *a*.
ſpotten, 248, 1, *a*.
ß, see under ſ.
ſtatt, 377; with inf., 367, 6.
ſtehen, with inf., 366, 3.
ſterben, with gen., 248, 1, *b*.
strong declension, of nouns, 273, 78–5, 274–6; first class, 79–82, 274; second class, 83–6, 275; third class, 88–91, 276; of adjectives, 102–5.
strong conjugation, 328, 174, 179–85; list of strong verbs, 331.
subject accusative with inf., 367, 3, *a*.
subjunctive, 71, 172; use of, 355 61; kinds of, 355; imperative, 356; concessive, 356, 1; optative, 357; potential, 358; diplomatic, 358, 1; dubitative, 358, 2; unreal, 359; dependent, 360, for conditional, 362, 1.
substantive adjective, 108, 290, 2; inf., 365; clauses, 413.
suffixes, in general, 384; of nouns, 387; of adjectives, 390; of verbs, 395; of adverbs, 374.
superlative, 111–14, 294–6; predicate superl., with am, 112, 294, 5; uninflected superl. as adv., 111, 4, *a*, 373, 2, *b*, 375, 3; of adverb, 112, 2, 113, 1, 375.
syllabication, 5.
syllables, open and closed, 14, 2, *a*.

t, pronunciation, **54**; in cognates, App. II, 8, 1.
Teil, gender, **235**, 3.
-teils, **306**, 3.
-tel, **118**, 3.
temporal clauses, **415**, 2.
Tenor, pl. of, **275**, 4, *a*, 279, 3, *a*.
tenses, **168**; use of, **348–53**; progressive tense forms lacking in Ger., **348**, 1; sequence of, **361**.
th, pronunciation, **55**; limited use of, in new spelling, App. I, **3**, 10.
thun, as aux., **325**.

u, pronunciation, **17**.
ü, 2, 2; pronunciation, **24**.
über, **377**.
um, as prep., **377**; as doubtful prefix, **212**, **341**, 3; with inf., **367**, 1, *a*, 5, *b*.
um . . . willen, **127**, **377**.
-um, Latin nouns in, **280**, 2.
umlaut, nature of, **21**; how written, **21**, 1; as sign of plu., **81**, 1, **274**, 1, **85**, 1, **275**, 1, 2, **90**, **276**; in comparison, **111**, **293**; caused by suffix, **373**, 3, **384**, 2, **387**, **389**, 2; in pres. of strong verbs, **182**, **328**, 3; in pret. subj. of strong verbs, **179**, **328**, 4, *a*; as a factor in derivation, **384**, 2.
un-, accent of words in, **63**, 3, **388**, 6, **391**, 3.
unangesehen, **377**.
und, with inversion, **379**, 4.
unbeschadet, **377**.
unfern, **unweit**, **376**, 5, *b*.
ungeachtet, **377**.
-ung, **93**, **387**, 15.
unter, as prep., **377**; as doubtful prefix, **212**, **341**, 3.
unterhalb, **377**.
ur-, **388**, 7, **391**, 4.
-us, Lat. nouns in, with pl. in **-en**, **281**, 1, *a*; pl. of proper names in, **284**, 3, *d*.

v, pronunciation, **57**; in cognates, App. II, 7, 4.
ver-, **208**, 1, *e*, **396**, 5.
verb, **71**, **164–215**, **323–70**; see voice, mode, etc.; irregular strong verbs, **185**; list of strong verbs, **331**; irregular weak verbs, **330**; verbs with gen., **248–50**; with dat., **257–8**; with acc., **263–5**.
verloren gehen, **369**, 5.
vermöge, **377**.
versichern, **249**, 1, *a*, **263**, 1, *a*.
viel, **161**, **322**; **vieles** = **vielerlei**, **322**, 2.
voice, active and passive, **71**, **164**, **344–5**.
voll-, **212**, 2; **voller**, **289**, 2, *b*.
von, **377**; with dat. as substitute for gen., **247**; with passive verbs, **197**; gen. of names in, **285**, 3, *a*.
vor, **377**.
vowels, **11–25**; quantity of, **14**; modification (umlaut), **21**.
vowel-change in strong verbs, in pres., **179**, **182**, **328**, 3 and 3, *a*; in pret. (ablaut), **179–80**, **328–9**.

w, pronunciation, **58**; in cognates, App. II, 10.
Wagen, pl. of, **274**, 1, *a*.
während, **377**, **381**, 1.
wann, **381**, 1, *i*, *m*.
warten, **248**, 1, *a*.
-wärts, **373**, 2, *a*.
was, inter., **143**, **312**; as rel., **141**, **315**; as indef., **162**, **320**; = **warum**, **312**, 3.
was für, **145**, **313**.
weak declension, of nouns, **273**, **76**, 2, **92–5**, **277–8**; of adjectives, **106–7**, **288**.
weak verbs, **174**, **175–8**; use of connecting vowel in, **176**, **327**; in **-eln** and **-ern**, **177**; irregular weak verbs, **330**.
wegen, **377**; **-wegen**, **127**, **306**, 1.
Weihnachten, **275**, *a*.
weil, **381**, 1, *j*.
-weise, **251**, 3, *a*, **374**, 2.
welch, rel., **136**, **138**; inter., **144**, **313**; indef., **162**, **319**, 1, *c*; derivation, **397**, 2.
wenig, **163**, **322**.
wenn, **381**, 1, *k*, **359**, **359**, 3, *a*.
wer, inter., **143–4**, **312**; rel., **140**, **315**; indef., **162**.
werden, conjugation, **171**; use as aux. of tense, **168**; of voice, **195**, 1, 2, **344**; of

conditional, **168**; ward and wurde, **328**, 4; worden, **326**, 2, *c*.
weś, **143**, 1, *a*, **312**, 1, **315**, 3.
weś-, **139**, 1.
wider, **212**, 1, **377**.
wie, **242**, 2, **271**, 2, **265**, 3, *a*, **381**, 1, *l*, *m*.
wieder, **214**, 1, **341**, 3.
wiſſen, **188**, **190**.
wo, **381**, 1, *m*, **316**; wo(r)-, **139**.
wohl, **372**, 1, **375**, 1, **380**, 1, *g*.
wollen, **188–9**, **191**, 6, **338**, **344**, 1.
word-formation, **384–98**; see under derivation and composition.
word-order, **87**, **96**, **142**, **173**, **187**, **194**, **215**, **416–426**; the normal order, **416**, 1, *a*, **417**; the inverted order, **416**, 1, *a*, **418**; the interrogative order, **416**, 2, **419**; the dependent order, **416**, 3, **420**; position of adjuncts, **421**, 6; of the noun, **421**; of the verb, **422**; of objects, **423**; of adverbs, **424**; of dependent infinitives, **425**; of dependent clauses, **426**.
Wort, pl. of **276**, *a*.
Wunder, es nimmt mich, **265**, 1, *d*; was Wunder, **253**, 2, *b*.

ẓ, pronunciation, **59**.

ỿ, pronunciation, **20**.

ʒ, pronunciation, **60**; in cognates, App. II, **8**, 1.
-ʒen, in verbs, **395**, 6.
ʒer-, **208**, *f*, **396**, 5.
ʒu, **377**; with inf., **364**, **367**; position in inf. of compounds, **207**, 2; with dat. for predicate, nom., **242**, 1, *b*; forming gerundive, **367**, 4, **370**; with dat. after verbs of making, etc., **265**, 2, *a*.
ʒween, **297**, 1, *a*.
ʒwiſchen, **377**.
ʒwo, **ʒwoł-**, **297**, 1, *a*.

SELECTED GERMAN TEXTS.

Bound in cloth unless otherwise indicated.

SUDERMANN'S FRAU SORGE. A Romance. With introduction and notes by Prof. GUSTAVE GRUENER of Yale. *With portrait.* xx + 268 pp. 16mo. 80c., *net.*

HAUPTMANN'S DIE VERSUNKENE GLOCKE. *Ein deutsches Märchen-Drama.* With introduction and notes by THOS. S. BAKER, Associate in the Johns Hopkins University. xviii + 205 pp. 16mo. 80c., *net.*

"Probably the most remarkable play since Goethe's 'Faust.'"—*Prof. H. C. G. Brandt of Hamilton College.*

SCHILLER'S HISTORY OF THE THIRTY YEARS' WAR. Selections portraying the careers and characters of Gustavus Adolphus and Wallenstein. Edited, with introduction, notes, and map, by Prof. ARTHUR H. PALMER of Yale. xxxvii + 202 pp. 16mo. 80c., *net.*

SCHILLER'S WILHELM TELL. Edited, with introduction, notes, and a full vocabulary, by Prof. A. H. PALMER of Yale. Illustrated. lxxvi + 300 pp. 16mo. 80c., *net.* (Without vocabulary 60c.)

LESSING'S MINNA VON BARNHELM. Edited, with introduction and notes, by A. B. NICHOLS of Harvard. With 12 illustrations by Chodowiecki. xxx + 163 pp. 16mo. 60c., *net.*

LESSING'S MINNA VON BARNHELM. With an introduction and notes by Prof. WILLIAM D. WHITNEY of Yale. *New vocabulary edition.* 191 pp. 16mo. 60c., *net.*

GOETHE'S DICHTUNG UND WAHRHEIT. Selections from Books I.-IX. Edited, with introduction and notes, by Prof. H. C. G. VON JAGEMANN of Harvard. xiv + 373 pp. 16mo. $1.12, *net.*

GOETHE'S GÖTZ VON BERLICHINGEN. Edited, with introduction and notes, by Prof. F. P. GOODRICH of Williams. xli + 170 pp. 16mo. 70c., *net.*

GOETHE'S HERMANN UND DOROTHEA. Edited, with introduction and notes, by Prof. CALVIN THOMAS of Columbia. *New edition with vocabulary.* xxii + 150 pp. Bds. 40c., *net.*

JUNG-STILLING'S LEBENSGESCHICHTE. With introduction and vocabulary by SIGMON M. STERN. xxvi + 285 pp. 12mo. $1.20, *net.*

A book giving intimate glimpses of Goethe.

STERN'S AUS DEUTSCHEN MEISTERWERKEN (*Nibelungen, Parcival, Gudrun, Tristan und Isolde*). Erzählt von SIGMON M. STERN. With a full vocabulary. xxvii + 225 pp. 16mo. $1.20, *net.*

A simple version of these great German legends.

BAUMBACH'S SOMMERMÄRCHEN. Eight stories. With introduction, notes, and vocabulary by Dr. EDWARD MEYER of Western Reserve University. vi + 142 pp. 16mo. Bds. 35c., *net.*

ROSEGGER'S DIE SCHRIFTEN DES WALDSCHULMEISTERS. An authorized abridgment. Edited, with introduction and notes, by Prof. LAWRENCE FOSSLER of the University of Nebraska. With two poems by Baumbach and frontispiece. xii + 158 pp. Bds. 40c., *net.*

REGENTS' GERMAN AND FRENCH POEMS FOR MEMORIZING. Prescribed by the Examinations Department of the University of the State of New York. *Revised* 1900. 98 pp. 12mo. Bds. 20c., *net.*

Descriptive List of the Publishers' Modern Language Books free

HENRY HOLT & CO. 29 West 23d St., New York
378 Wabash Ave., Chicago

RECENTLY PUBLISHED

GERMAN LITERATURE

SCHILLER: **Life and Works.** By Prof. CALVIN THOMAS of Columbia. Student's Ed. 481 pp. 12mo. $1.50 *net.*

The same. With photogravure Ills. 8vo. $3.25 *net.* (Postage 20c.)

—— **Poems.** Translated by E. P. ARNOLD-FORSTER. 361 pp. $1.60 *net.* (Postage 12c.)

—— **Die Braut von Messina.** Edited by Professors A. H. PALMER of Yale and J. G. ELDRIDGE of University of Idaho. lvi + 193 pp. 60c. *net.*

—— New Editions of **Wallenstein** (Carruth, $1.00 *net*); **Maria Stuart,** *with vocabulary* (Joynes, 70c. *net*); **Jungfrau von Orleans,** *with vocabulary* (Nichols, 60c. *net*).

GOETHE: **Poems** (in German). Edited by Prof. JULIUS GOEBEL of Stanford University. xix + 239 pp. 80c. *net.*

—— **Reineke Fuchs.** Five Cantos. Edited by L. A. HOLMAN. Illustrations by KAULBACH. xix + 71 pp. 50c. *net.*

LESSING: **Hamburgische Dramaturgie.** Abridged and edited by Prof. CHARLES HARRIS of Adelbert College. xl + 356 pp. $1.00 *net.*

SUDERMANN: **Frau Sorge.** Edited by Prof. GUSTAV GRUENER of Yale. xvii + 268 pp. 80c. *net.*

HAUPTMANN: **Die versunkene Glocke.** Ein deutsches Märchen-Drama. Edited by Dr. THOMAS S. BAKER of Johns Hopkins University. xviii + 205 pp. 80c. *net.*

VON KLEIST: **Michael Kohlhaas.** Edited by Dr. WILLIAM KURRELMEYER of Johns Hopkins. xxv + 149 pp.

KELLER: **Legenden.** (Six Legends.) Edited by Professors M. MÜLLER and CARLA WENCKEBACH of Wellesley College. *Vocabulary.* xii + 145 pp. 35c. *net.*

FULDA: **Der Talisman.** *Edited with the author's sanction.* By Dr. EDWARD MEYER of Adelbert College.

—— **Unter vier Augen,** bound with BENEDIX'S **Der Prozess.** Two short plays. Edited by WM. A. HERVEY of Columbia. *Vocabulary.* 135 pp. 35c. *net.*

SEIDEL: **Wintermärchen.** (Four Tales.) Edited by CORINTH L. CROOK. *Vocabulary.* 129 pp. 35c. *net.*

HENRY HOLT & CO. **29 West 23d Street, New York**
378 Wabash Avenue, Chicago

"I have seen almost no book of selections from literature which seems to be so satisfactorily complete."—F. B. White, St. Paul's School.

Pancoast's STANDARD ENGLISH PROSE

From Bacon to Stevenson. Selected and edited by HENRY S. PANCOAST. ix+676 pp. 12mo. $1.50 *net.*

About one hundred selections (most of them complete in themselves) from Bacon, Walton, Sir Thomas Browne, Fuller, Milton, Jeremy Taylor, Cowley, Bunyan, Dryden, Defoe, Swift, Addison, Steele, Johnson, Goldsmith, Burke, Coleridge, Southey, Lamb, Landor, Hazlitt, De Quincey, Carlyle, Macaulay, Newman, Froude, Ruskin, Thackeray, Matthew Arnold, Pater, and Stevenson.

Prof. Chas. M. Gayley, *University of California:*—"The conception is excellent and the selections are representative. The book is timely and should meet with a warm welcome."

Prof. R. K. Root, *of Yale:*—"The list of authors represented is thoroughly comprehensive and the selections themselves are chosen with excellent taste. I am specially pleased that Mr. Pancoast has given complete essays, rather than mere fragments."

"I do not know where else, within the limits, to find so delightful a selection of noble poems."—Prof. Thomas R. Price, of Columbia.

Pancoast's STANDARD ENGLISH POEMS

From Spenser to Tennyson. 749 pp. 16mo. $1.50 *net.*

Some 250 complete poems, *besides* selections from such long poems as "The Faërie Queene," "Childe Harold's Pilgrimage," etc. There are 19 pages of Ballads, 33 of Spenser, 22 of Elizabethan Songs and Lyrics, 16 of Elizabethan Sonnets, 51 of Seventeenth-Century Songs, 51 of verse from Dryden to Thomson, 277 of verse from Thomson to Tennyson, and 100 of Victorian verse, 164 of Notes (chiefly biographical and appreciative), and an index of titles.

New York Tribune:—"We believe it will be received cordially by all lovers of poetry, whether elementary students or not. Basing his selections on the individual excellence and historic importance of the poems, the editor has not allowed his fidelity to the latter test to overrule his taste, and there is very little matter in the book which is historically significant alone. First and last, this is an anthology of the best poetry."

Prof. Henry A. Beers, *of Yale, author of "English Romanticism in the Eighteenth Century," etc.:*—"The collection seems to me in general made with excellent judgment, and the notes are sensible, helpful, and not too *weitläufig.*"

HENRY HOLT & CO. 29 West 23d Street, New York
378 Wabash Avenue, Chicago

VI '03

E

E